



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

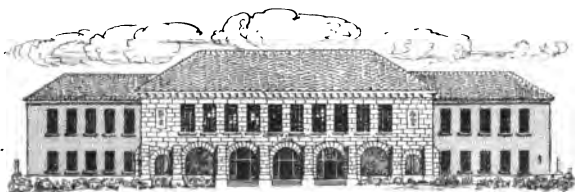
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 121 160 530

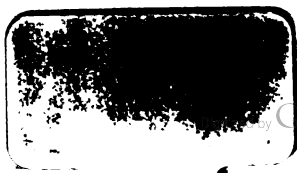


**SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY**

**TEXTBOOK
COLLECTION**



**STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES**





CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.
(Bust in the Museum of the Louvre.)

CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR

BOOKS I-IV

(*ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S EDITION*)

REEDITED BY

JAMES B. GREENOUGH

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGHE AND M. GRANT DANIELL



GINN & COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON

597581
C

COPYRIGHT, 1886, 1898, 1904, BY
GINN & COMPANY

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

36.11

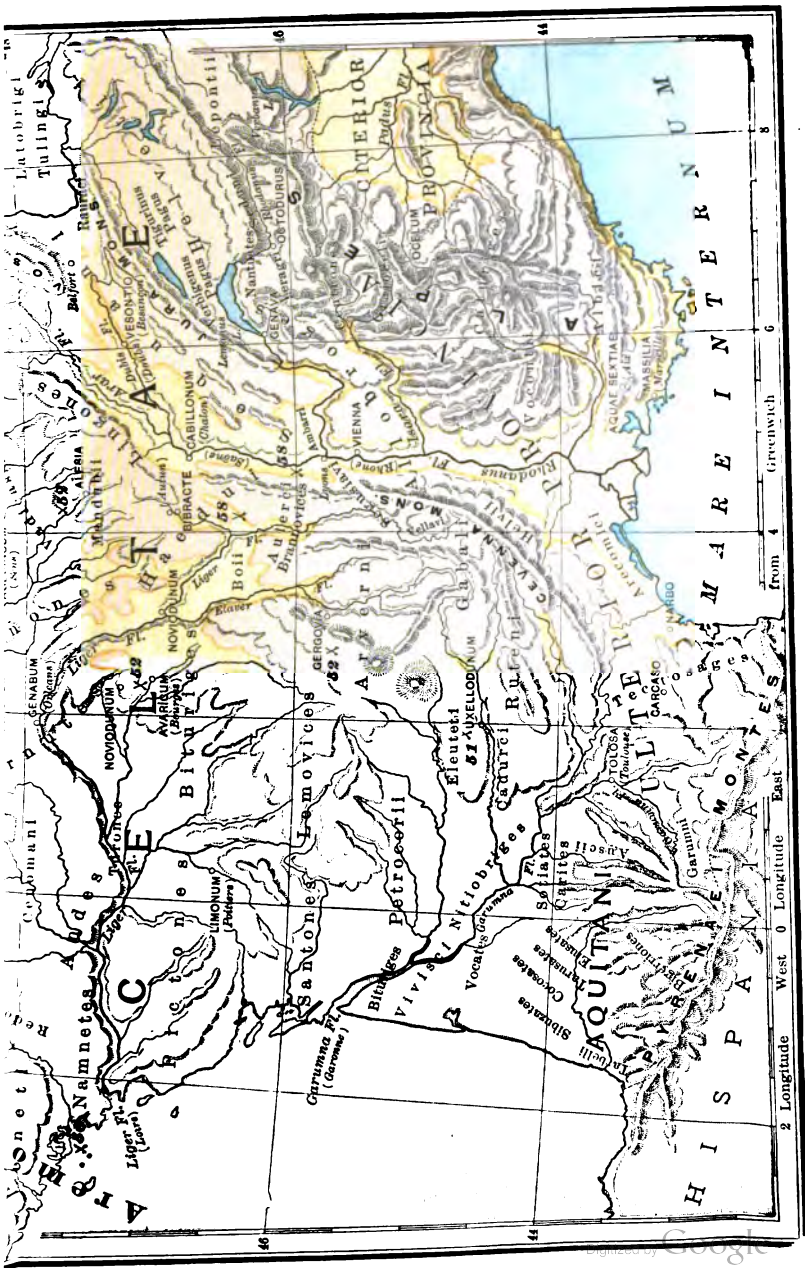
The Athenæum Press
GINN & COMPANY · PRO-
PRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

P R E F A C E

THE editors have undertaken the task of reëditing entirely the well-known Allen and Greenough *Cæsar* to satisfy the ever-increasing demands of modern secondary education. In view of the improvements lately made in the text of *Cæsar* by Meusel and others, they have changed the readings in many places, following chiefly Meusel's as almost a new *textus receptus*. Most of the changes will at once commend themselves. The editors have in general been conservative in regard to spelling, especially the new spelling of old Gallic names, feeling that much that is proposed of that kind as yet lacks certainty. But they have adopted the spelling *-is* for the accusative plural of *i*-stems in accordance with the prevailing usage. They have allowed themselves full liberty in enriching the notes as to grammar, exegesis, and subject-matter. They have added very full suggestions for parallel reading, and have spared no pains to enrich the study of this famous piece of literature. The treatises on military affairs and other introductory matters have been rewritten and brought out of the notes under one head, so that a pupil may have a chance to gain some general information before he begins to read. Special attention has been given to indirect discourse, the bugbear of Latin education, and throughout the earlier books the direct form has been printed in full in the notes, that any teacher who desires may

begin either the first or second book and avoid at the start the enormous difficulties of the indirect form. They have endeavored to put in every kind of illustration that might tend to make the story more real to the pupil's imagination.

In order to encourage pupils to associate words together for acquiring a vocabulary they have made a large number of groups of words containing the same elements without introducing the vague notion of roots. It is hoped that these may be found convenient to learn by heart, at least in some measure. Attention is also called to the foot-notes which have been added to the text; these refer backward to some previous use of the same word. The editors have not thought it desirable to give any pronouncing vocabulary of proper names, as generally these may be pronounced in the Latin manner, except those few that are familiar enough to have become English words, like *Cæsar* and *Cicero*, which of course must be pronounced like English. The vocabulary has been enriched by a fuller insertion of idioms, and the etymological matter has been made clearer without sacrificing its peculiar character.



OF

THE

I

II

II

I

,

.

THE

3,

6

6

3

(

CONTENTS.



	PAGE
LIST OF MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS	vii
INTRODUCTION:	
I. LIFE OF CÆSAR	xiii
II. ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS	xxix
III. GAUL AND THE GAULS	xlv
IV. THE BRITONS	lii
V. THE GERMANS	liii
VI. THE CAMPAIGNS IN GAUL	liv
VII. DIRECTIONS FOR READING	lv
BOOK I	I
BOOK II	49
BOOK III	74
BOOK IV	94
NOTES	117
GROUPS OF RELATED WORDS	251
ADDITIONAL ILLUSTRATIONS	261
VOCABULARY.	

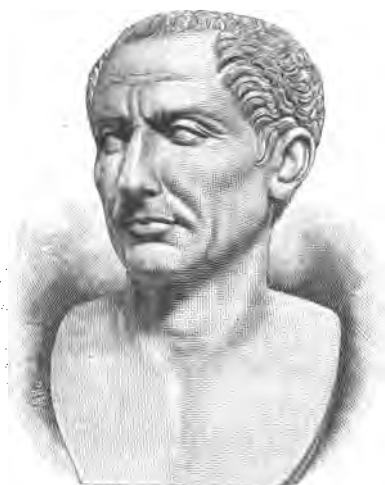


FIG. 2. — CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.
(Bust in the Naples Museum.)

LIST OF MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

ABBREVIATIONS.

- Babelon*. — Description historique et chronologique des Monnaies de la République romaine. 1885.
- Baumeister*. — Denkmäler des klassischen Altertums. 1885-88.
- Bertrand and Perrot*. — Revue archéologique, 3^e Série, Tome X.
- Cohen*. — Description générale des Monnaies de la République romaine, etc. 1857.
- Fleury*. — Antiquités et Monuments du département de l'Aisne, etc. 1877-78.
- Froehner*. — La Colonne trajane d'après le surmoulage exécuté à Rome en 1861-62, reproduite en phototypographie par Gustave Arosa. 1872.
- von Göller*. — Caesar's Gallischer Krieg, etc. 1880.
- Grasset*. — Costumes de Guerre de l'âge du bronze et de l'ère gauloise. 1886.
- Guhl and Kohner*. — The Life of the Greeks and Romans, described from Antique Monuments. 1875.
- Head*. — A Guide to the Principal Gold and Silver Coins of the Ancients. (Br. Mus.) 1881.
- Jeuffrain*. — Essai d'Interprétation de Types de quelques Médailles muettes, émises par les Celtes-Gaulois. 1846.
- von Kampen*. — XV ad Caesaris de Bell. Gall. Commentarios Tabulae. 1879.
- Lindenschmidt*. — Tracht und Bewaffnung des Römischen Heeres während der Kaiserzeit, etc. 1882.
- Oehler*. — Bilder-Atlas zu Caesars Büchern de Bell. Gall. 1890.
- Rheinhard*. — C. Iulii Caesaris Commentarii de Bell. Gall. 1896.
- Schreiber*. — Atlas of Classical Antiquities.
- Stoffel*. — Guerre de César et d'Arioviste. 1890.
- Visconti*. — Iconographie romaine. 1817-24.

FIG.

PAGE

- Cæsar. Bust in the Museum of the Louvre . . . *Frontispiece*.
1. Map of Gaul.
 2. Cæsar. Bust in the Naples Museum . . . vi
 3. Campaign map of B.C. 58 . . . I
 4. Two coins of Cæsar. (1) Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: Æneas with Anchises and the palladium. CAESAR. (2) Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: trophy and captives. CAESAR. *Head* . . . I
 5. Pas de l'Ecluse (looking down stream). *Photograph* . . . 5
 6. Map of Helvetia. *Oehler* . . . 5

FIG.	PAGE
7. Junction of the Rhône and Saône (looking south). <i>Photograph</i>	9
8. Coin of Piso. Obverse: head of a youth with winged diadem; behind, a star and crown; before, a <i>simpulum</i> . Reverse: M. PISO. M[arci] F[ilius] FRUGI; a <i>patera</i> and a <i>secespita</i> , inclosed within a laurel wreath. <i>Cohen</i>	10
9. Coin of Cassius. Obverse: head of Apollo with sceptre behind. Reverse: Q. CASSIUS. Eagle resting on a thunderbolt, between a <i>lituus</i> and a <i>præfericulum</i> . <i>Cohen</i>	10
10. Loading boats with supplies. <i>Froehner</i>	14
11. Gallic remains. <i>Grasset</i>	16
12. Cavalryman charging. Gravestone in Mainz. <i>Oehler</i>	19
13. Cavalryman with <i>vexillum</i> . Col. of M. Aurelius. <i>Oehler</i>	19
14. Soldiers marching with packs (<i>sarcinae</i>). <i>Froehner</i>	21
15. Roman javelins (<i>pila</i>). <i>Oehler</i>	22
16. Plan of battle with the Helvetii. <i>von Kampen</i>	23
17. Roman swords. <i>Oehler</i>	25
18. View of Besançon (Vesontio). From a drawing	33
19. C. Marius. Impression of a coin. <i>Visconti</i>	35
20. View of the fortress of Belfort. <i>Photograph</i>	38
21. Coin of the Fabian family. Obverse: ROMA Q. MAX. Laurelled head of Apollo, lyre in front. Reverse: horn of plenty filled with fruits; thunderbolts; the whole in a wreath of grain ears and poppy. <i>Cohen</i>	41
22. Map of the campaign with Ariovistus. <i>Stoffel</i>	43
23. Soldiers attacked while encamping. <i>Froehner</i>	44
24. Ostheim, looking towards Zellenberg. <i>Photograph</i>	47
25. Plan of battle with Ariovistus. <i>Stoffel</i>	47
26. Campaign map of B.C. 57	48
27. Writing materials: <i>atramentarium</i> (for black and red ink); papyrus letter sealed and addressed (M LVCRETIO FLAM[ini] MARTIS DECVRIONI POMPEI[s]); <i>dip-tycha</i> (folding tablet), <i>stilus</i> , and erasing knife. Wall painting. <i>Overbeck's Pompeii</i>	49
28. Gaul with trumpet. Restoration from carvings on the <i>Arc de Triomphe</i> at Orange. <i>Grasset</i>	50
29. Coin of Diviciacus, king of the Suessiones. <i>Fleury</i>	51
30. Slinger (<i>funditor</i>). <i>Dict. des Antiquités</i>	53
31. Berry au Bac. <i>Photograph</i>	54
32. Battle on the Aisne. <i>Oehler</i>	55

FIG.		PAGE
33.	Vinea or Testudo. <i>Oehler</i>	58
34.	Hautmont. <i>Photograph</i>	60
35.	Defeat of the Nervii. <i>Oehler</i>	61
36.	Lituus	63
37.	Tuba	63
38.	Cornu	63
39.	Aquilifer. <i>Lindenschmidt</i>	66
40.	Centurio. <i>Lindenschmidt</i>	66
41.	Citadel of Namur. <i>Photograph</i>	69
42.	Siege of the stronghold of the Aduatuci. From first ed. .	69
43.	Siege works. <i>von Göler</i>	70
44.	Gallic coins. (1) Obverse: a Gaul running, with torch in one hand and <i>torque</i> (?) in the other. Reverse: bear (?). (2) Obverse: ox-head. Reverse: bear of the Helvetii. <i>Fleury</i>	73
	(3) (4) Of uncertain interpretation. Some modification of the human head is seen, also the form of a horse or boar, with ornaments. <i>Jeuffrain</i>	73
45.	Shipbuilder. Grave relief (Ravenna). <i>Schreiber</i>	74
46.	Map of Octodurus. <i>von Kampen</i>	75
47.	Cæsar. Bust in the British Museum	76
48.	Galley. From the Præneste relief. <i>Baumeister</i>	79
49.	Map of the Veneti neighborhood. Altered from modern map	81
50.	View at mouth of the Loire. <i>Photograph</i>	82
51.	Roman battle ship. Wall painting at Pompeii. <i>Oehler</i> . .	83
52.	Trading vessel. Ancient relief. <i>Baumeister</i>	85
53.	Gallic sword-blade. Museum at Namur. <i>Photograph</i> . .	87
54.	Soldiers making camp. <i>Froehner</i>	91
55.	Paëk-wagons and carts. Col. of M. Aurelius. <i>Oehler</i> . .	94
56.	Campaign map of B.C. 55-53	94
57.	Coins of Cæsar. (1) Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: trophy of Gallic arms. CAESAR. (2) Obverse: veiled head of <i>Pietas</i> . CAESAR CO[n]S[ul]TER. Reverse: <i>lituus</i> , <i>præfericulum</i> , and axe. A[ulus] HIRTIUS PR[æfectus]. <i>Head</i>	96
58.	Scenery on the Meuse. <i>Photograph</i>	99
59.	Bridge. From first ed.	103
60.	Cliffs of Dover. "Shakespeare's Cliff." <i>Photograph</i> . .	107
61.	Catapulta. Modern restoration	109

FIG.		PAGE
62.	Anchor and tackle. <i>Arc de Triomphe</i> at Orange. <i>Schreiber</i>	111
63.	Soldiers foraging. <i>Froehner</i>	113
64.	Gallic coin. <i>Jeuffrain</i>	116
65.	The legionary. Slightly altered from Bartholdi's Model in the Museum of St. Germain	118
66.	Coin of Cæsar. Obverse: head of Augustus. IMP[erator] CAESAR·DIVI·F[ilius] III(trium)·VIR·ITER[um] R[ei] P[ublicæ] C[onstituendæ]. Reverse: Julius Cæsar standing in a temple. DIVO IVL[io]. Star and altar. CO[n]·S[ul] ITER[um]·ET·TER·DESIG[natus]. <i>Cohen</i>	119
67.	Gallic coin. <i>Fleury</i>	122
68.	Gallic coin. Obverse: horse. VIRO (perhaps name of a chief), or VIRO[mandui]. Reverse: various devices. <i>Fleury</i>	125
69.	Gallic coin. Rude representation of a human head. <i>Fleury</i>	128
70.	Gallic coin. Horse, stars, circles. <i>Fleury</i>	131
71.	Gallic coin. Cock. <i>Fleury</i>	133
72.	Signifer. <i>Lindenschmidt</i>	137
73.	Soldiers. From first ed.	143
74.	Scutum. <i>Rheinhard</i>	153
75.	Scutum. <i>Rheinhard</i>	153
76.	Wall and ditch. <i>Oehler</i>	177
77.	Castra Romana. <i>Rheinhard</i>	180
78.	General view of siege operations. <i>Rheinhard</i>	202
79.	Vexillum	205
80.	Aquila	244
81.	Gallic coin. Reverse: L. Hostilius Sasern[a]. Warrior fighting, armed with spear and shield, in a Gallic chariot (<i>essedum</i>) driven by a charioteer holding a whip. <i>Babelon</i> .	246
82.	Gallic coin. Reverse: Warrior armed with spear and shield, and holding a Gallic trumpet (<i>carnyx</i>), standing in a two-wheeled chariot, drawn by two galloping horses. L[ucius] LIC[inius] CN[aeus] DOM[itius]. <i>Bertrand & Perrot</i>	247
83.	Caliga. <i>Oehler</i>	249

ADDITIONAL ILLUSTRATIONS.

FIG.		PAGE
84.	Signa Militaria. <i>Guhl and Kohner</i>	261
85.	Soldiers building camp, with guards. <i>Froehner</i>	261
86.	Bridge. Model in the Museum of St. Germain. <i>Oehler</i>	262
87.	Scorpio. Modern restoration	263
88.	Testudo. <i>Froehner</i>	263
89.	Ballista. Modern restoration	264
90.	Sacrifice in camp. Military band (<i>Cornicines</i>). <i>Froehner</i>	264
91.	Signum	265
92.	Tabernaculum. <i>Rheinhard</i>	265
93.	Oppugnatio. From first ed.	265
94.	Chain mail. Fragment found at Mainz. <i>Oehler</i>	265
95.	Helmets. <i>Schreiber</i>	266
96.	Light-armed soldier. <i>Lindenschmidt</i>	266
97.	Archer. <i>Lindenschmidt</i>	266
98.	View of siege works. <i>von Kampen</i>	267
99.	Plan of siege works. <i>von Kampen</i>	267
100.	Gallic <i>torques</i> . Museum at Namur. <i>Photograph</i>	268
101.	Hollow square. Col. of M. Aurelius. <i>Oehler</i>	268
102.	Pluteus. Modern restoration	268
103.	Pluteus. Modern restoration	268

INTRODUCTION.

I.

THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR.

"Julius Cæsar, whose remembrance yet
Lives in men's eyes, and will to ears and tongues
Be theme and hearing ever." — *Shakespeare.*

"The greatest name in history." — *Merivale.*

I. THE POLITICAL CONDITION OF ITALY IN THE FIRST CENTURY B.C.

THE Roman state was in form and name a commonwealth or republic. While Rome was a small agricultural community and her citizens a body of patriotic, sturdy, and independent freeholders, the task of government was easy and the constitution well adapted to its purpose. The wars that followed for the establishment and extension of her power at first fostered unity and soundness of national life. But in course of time Rome became an imperial state and took upon herself the guardianship of every country in the world. Wealth flowed into her coffers from every quarter of the earth, her citizens became corrupt, and the rule of the people became the rule of a rich landed aristocracy, whose principal ambition was to perpetuate its mischievous power. The organ of this aristocracy was the senate, a body of six or seven hundred men, who became members of it nominally by virtue of holding certain high offices, and who remained senators for life. In theory, therefore, the senate was elective, and rested on the popular will; but the members really became such on account of noble blood, wealth, or political, social, or other influence. Moreover, the great offices of the state came to be bought and sold openly and without shame, and opposing factions contended not with ballots alone, but with iron and

steel, so that the election place was frequently stained with the blood of the slain. It became increasingly difficult for one not possessing and willing to use such means to be elected to any office.

Opposed to the landed aristocracy was a class of wealthy capitalists known as *equites*, the "Equestrian Order." Many of these were as rich as the senators, but their wealth — most of it gained by usury, state contracts, slave-dealing, and tax-gathering — consisted of money instead of land. They took no active interest in politics excepting so far as they could influence legislation to their advantage by lobbying and bribing.

There was no industrious middle class among the free citizens of Rome. Manufacture on a large scale, as a means of wealth, was absolutely unknown ; while all mechanical industries were carried on by slaves. The poorer class of citizens, the *plebs*, were wholly influenced in their votes by their wealthy patrons or by scheming demagogues. The freedmen were the only class who could become rich by industry.

The rural portions of Italy were for the most part held in large plantations (*latifundia*), owned by nobles and cultivated by slaves, or, more frequently, occupied by great droves of cattle. This plantation system had crowded out the free peasant proprietors in almost all parts of the peninsula. After throwing up their farms, which foreign competition had made unprofitable, they flocked to Rome to swell the idle mob that lived on what their votes would bring. There still remained, especially in Northern Italy, a considerable body of small land owners ; and the municipal towns (*municipia*), about four hundred in number, whose territories comprised, politically speaking, the whole area of Italy, were still the home of a fairly prosperous middle class. These had all received Roman citizenship after the social war (B.C. 90) and might, by their substantial character and intelligence, have served as a strong opposition to the corrupt aristocracy at Rome ; but they lacked organization and leadership, and when they went to Rome to vote, they were wholly powerless against the turbulent political clubs of the metropolis, whose violence was a regular feature of all public proceedings. Yet in this class alone was the old Roman virtue to be found, and in it lay whatever hope there was to redeem the state.

Another menace to the government was in the constitution of the armies. After a man had been consul, he was given charge of a province and was put in command of several legions. While abroad he was not amenable to the government at home, and when he returned he used his old soldiers to further his political schemes, and rewarded them at the expense of the opposing faction, often by wholesale spoliation and murder.

Partisans of the nobility were known as *Optimates*; those opposed to them as *Populares*. Before Cæsar, the most conspicuous leader of the former had been Sulla, of the latter, Marius, Cæsar's uncle by marriage. These two men by their thirst for power and mutual hatred filled all Italy with bloodshed and terror for years. Under the established *régime* there was no continuity in government, but a perpetual see-saw between rivals. Rome was kept in a constant electioneering excitement accompanied by the worst forms of demoralization. All the vast interests of the Roman world were sacrificed to the luxury and ambition of a governing class wholly incompetent for its task; and the only resource against anarchy appears to have been that some one man, by craft or by force, should get all the reins of power into his single hand. That man was destined to be Julius Cæsar.

II. CÆSAR'S EARLIER CAREER.

"Better be first, he said, in a little Iberian village,
Than be second in Rome." — *Longfellow*.

Caius Julius Cæsar (*Gaius Iulius Caesar*) was born July 12th, B.C. 100, or, according to some authorities, two years earlier. Assuming the later date, he was six years younger than Pompey, his great rival, and Cicero, the distinguished orator. His ancestry was of the noblest, and was supposed to reach back on his mother's side to Ancus Marcius, the Roman king, and on the father's to Æneas, the founder of the Roman nation and reputed to be the son of a goddess.

The time of his birth was during the great ascendancy of the *Populares* under Marius, his uncle; and his childhood was passed amid the horrors of the proscriptions that marked Marius's dictatorship. Though Cæsar was connected by blood with the oldest and

proudest houses of Rome, he early showed his predilection for the party of the people ; and the sturdy Marius, with all his defects, doubtless exercised a marked influence over the life and destinies of his young nephew. Cæsar lost his father early in life, so that most of the responsibility for his education and bringing up rested upon his mother, Aurelia. She was a typical matron of the old school, managing her house with simplicity and frugality, and holding to the traditions and virtues of the ancient Romans. Tacitus, the Roman historian, couples her name with that of Cornelia, the famous mother of the Gracchi. Cæsar owed much of his future greatness to her influence, and his love and reverence for her are highly honorable to both.

In the year 86, when Cæsar was still a boy, he was appointed a priest of Jupiter. This office was a perfunctory one and had little real religious significance. In 83 he married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, an act which identified him thus early with the *Populares*; for Cinna was a very prominent leader of that party. It was soon after this that Sulla, the leader of the *Optimates*, returned from Asia Minor with a victorious army, prepared to take a terrible revenge for the proscription of Marius. Cæsar soon fell under his displeasure because of his relationship to Marius. He was ordered to divorce his young wife because she was Cinna's daughter. In this crisis Cæsar showed a prominent trait of his character, a trait which led him during all his life to brave every danger rather than allow himself to be controlled. Though but a youth, he refused to obey Sulla's command. A price was set on his head and he was obliged to flee for his life. Often he was in great peril, and once he was taken, and escaped only by bribing his captor. His friends interceded for him, pleading his youth, and finally obtained his pardon, Sulla saying, "Take him, since you will have it so ; but I would have you know that the youth for whom you are so earnest, will one day overthrow the aristocracy. I see in him many Mariuses."

Cæsar thinking it safer to leave Italy for a time went to Asia Minor, where he gained some military experience and distinguished himself for valor by saving a comrade's life. Sulla died in 78 and Cæsar returned to his family and resumed his studies. He was a diligent and thorough student and doubtless followed the usual course

of Greek, rhetoric, grammar, philosophy, and oratory. To be a good speaker was essential to political success, and Cæsar was especially anxious to excel in that direction. He gave some public exhibitions of his skill and won much applause; but anxious to perfect himself still farther he went to Rhodes in 76, to study under Apollonius Molon, the most famous teacher of oratory and rhetoric of the day. On this journey, when near Miletus, he was captured by pirates and held for a heavy ransom. He spent some time among them while waiting for the money, and joined in their sports and games with the greatest freedom, at the same time assuring them that he would hang them all as soon as he was free. They seem to have regarded him with mingled awe and admiration. The ransom was paid. Cæsar was released, went at once to Miletus, where he hastily collected a few ships and made a descent on the pirates before they dreamt of danger. He recovered the ransom money and punished the pirates as he had threatened.

On his return to Rome, he began his political career (B.C. 68) by serving as quæstor, an office connected with the public treasury and the first step toward the consulship. This was followed in 65 by the ædileship. The taking of this office, which was one of the chief magistracies, though it involved only the care of the public buildings and the oversight of the great festivals and games, was considered a direct bid for a future consulship, and a man's claims upon that higher office were determined in large measure by the lavishness and splendor of his ædileship. Cæsar was poor, but with characteristic boldness he played for the highest political stakes and did not hesitate to incur enormous debts, in fact so enormous that those who had not the most perfect confidence in his capacity and his powers believed him irretrievably ruined. His ædileship surpassed all before it in magnificence; but he left it — as he remarked with grim humor — worth more than a million dollars less than nothing.

After his ædileship he identified himself more and more with the popular faction, and even dared to restore some of the statues and trophies of Marius, which had been banished from sight seventeen years before by the order of Sulla. The people began to hope for a successful revival of the Marian party and to look to Cæsar as its leader.

In B.C. 63 he was elected *pontifex maximus* against the strong opposition of the *Optimates*. This office was one of great political power and dignity, though not formally a civil office. Cæsar held it for the rest of his life. In 62 he was elected prætor, an office of a judicial character, and this was followed by a year of command in Spain as proprætor. Before leaving for Spain, his creditors became insistent and threatened to detain him unless he paid them. Cæsar then obtained a large loan from the richest man in Rome, Crassus, who was ambitious for office and doubtless hoped to make good use in turn of Cæsar's brilliant abilities to further his own ends.

In Spain Cæsar gained valuable military experience and made his administration so profitable to himself, as was usual with provincial governors, that, though he left Rome owing millions of sesterces, he returned in the year 60 with enough money to pay all his debts. His design was to run for the consulship, the highest office in the gift of the people. To secure his election he effected a union of interests between himself and Crassus and Pompey. These were the two most powerful men in Rome, — Crassus because of his wealth, Pompey because of his fame as a general and his popularity with the army. The latter was, in fact, really the first man in the state. He had but recently returned from Asia Minor laden with the spoils of the Mithridatic war, and might easily have seized the dictatorship had he so chosen ; but he disbanded his army and preferred to appear as a private citizen, but with almost autocratic power. He had quarreled with Crassus, but Cæsar reconciled them, and the three formed a sort of offensive and defensive alliance known as the first triumvirate, — what we should call a political deal. This was for Cæsar, who was at that time quite their inferior in fame and influence, a master stroke of craft and diplomacy.

In 59 Cæsar was elected consul almost without opposition. He well understood the critical condition of affairs and saw clearly the dangers that threatened the state, and instituted valuable reforms looking to its regeneration and salvation. The army and the moneyed classes represented by Pompey and Crassus were with him, and he could do almost as he pleased. His first act was the passage of an agrarian law, by which thousands of acres were to be distributed to the poor. This was not a mere act of bribery, but an attempt to

restore the peasant freeholders, who had been dispossessed by the rich. Then he passed the excellent body of laws known as the *Leges Juliae*, which mark an epoch in Roman jurisprudence, and which were devised in the interests of individual rights, purity of justice, morality, and good government. All that one man could do in a single year to save his country from anarchy, Cæsar did.

Cæsar was now forty-three years of age. With the exception of the time spent in Spain, his life had been employed in petty miserable contests with Roman factions. He longed for a new and larger field where he might have freedom to perform deeds worthy of his surpassing abilities and unbounded ambition. This opportunity came to him when, as proconsul, he was entrusted with the protection of the northern frontier against the Gauls, and was assigned the provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum. It was a most hazardous post and doubtless many of the *Optimates* thought that they were well rid of him.

III. CÆSAR IN GAUL.

"What security men derive from a resolute spirit." — *Cæsar*.

By the 'deal' of the triumvirate, Cæsar was to have the government of Gaul for five years, while Crassus and Pompey were to remain in the city to look after the interests of the coalition. The bond was farther strengthened by the marriage of Pompey with Julia, Cæsar's young and beautiful daughter.

Cæsar, as we have seen, was over forty when he went to Gaul. He was more of a civilian than a soldier and was far more at home in the Forum than in the camp. Alexander, Hannibal, and Napoleon had been trained in war from childhood. The qualities that are most potent in war — hope, confidence, audacity, and pugnacity — are qualities that belong to youth. So Cæsar is an anomaly in military history. In spite of his years and his comparative inexperience, he leaped at once to the highest place, and is counted to-day among the three or four greatest generals in history, if not the greatest of them all. He never lost a set battle and he showed infinite versatility in adapting means to ends, always doing the right thing at the

right time. He never admits the possibility of defeat and overcomes the most stupendous difficulties with such ease that he rarely speaks of them. His promptness of decision and rapidity of execution were such that the enemy were constantly overwhelmed with awe and were led to regard him as a supernatural being. 'Forced marches,' 'continuous marching day and night,' 'as quickly as possible' are phrases that recur again and again in his narrative. Only a natural ruler of men could get things done with such swiftness. He carried out his plans with the greatest audacity and, at the same time, without recklessness. No one could be more minute and thorough in preparations than he. No one left less chance for luck, good or bad, to enter into the result. In all that was done, his was the masterful and presiding genius, and the legions rarely accomplished much in his absence. His relations with his soldiers were most cordial. They idolized him and he respected and admired them and constantly labored for their safety and comfort. He allows them to share in the glory of his victories and in his story lingers with delight over their heroic exploits. He shared all their dangers and privations, he excelled personally in deeds of arms, and he allowed himself no luxury but a favorite horse. It is not strange that when trouble came upon their master, his soldiers were true to him, and even volunteered to serve without pay. Only three of his officers, two of them Gauls, went over to the enemy, while thousands came to him from the other side.

After two successful campaigns in Gaul, in the spring of B.C. 56, Cæsar met his two confederates at Luca, in Etruria, to arrange their future schemes. The conference was held with great display, almost like a royal court. More than two hundred senators were present, and one hundred and twenty lictors were in attendance, attached to the several magistrates. At this conference it was agreed that Pompey and Crassus should hold the consulship the following year, and, after their term of office, should receive by popular vote a similar command to that held by Cæsar, — namely, that Pompey should command in Spain and Crassus in Syria for five years each; also that when Cæsar's five years were up, he should receive in the same way a second term of five years. His ten years' administration would then close at the end of B.C. 49; after which time

— an interval of ten years having elapsed — he would be eligible again as consul.

The programme was duly carried out. Crassus departed (B.C. 54) to his province, where he was defeated the next year by the Parthians in the battle of Carrhæ, and shortly after entrapped and killed. Pompey put his province into the hands of one of his subordinates, and remained in the neighborhood of Rome, unwilling to remove from the seat of his personal influence.

Cæsar served eight campaigns in Gaul, an account of which is contained in the eight books of his Commentaries. Seven of these he wrote himself. The eighth was written by his friend and staff-officer, Hirtius. During these years he stormed more than 800 towns and subdued 300 tribes, engaged with more than 3,000,000 men, swept over a million human beings from the earth, and took a million more prisoners to be sold into slavery. "He was the first to lead an army into interior Gaul, the first to cross the Rhine into Germany, the first to bring a navy into the Western Ocean or to sail into the Atlantic with an army to make war." He left a magnificent country for the Romans to appropriate and retain until their increasing corruption left it in turn an easy prey to the Germans. He inspired such terror of the Roman arms that the tide of barbarian invasion was stayed for centuries.

IV. CÆSAR'S LATER CAREER.

"The foremost man of all this world." — *Shakespeare*.

"Cæsar could bear no superior, Pompey no equal." — *Lucan*.

Meanwhile events had been moving on at Rome. With Crassus dead, Cæsar and Pompey were left in the enjoyment of almost absolute authority. They had been friends from youth, but none the less rivals, and the death of Julia (B.C. 54) sundered the last ties that bound them together. In 52 Pompey had been made sole consul and found himself at the head of a party which, under cover of the constitution, was determined to destroy Cæsar that it might retain the power which his reforms threatened to place in worthier hands.

Cæsar's proconsulship of Gaul would expire at the end of B.C. 49. He wished to run for a second consulship in B.C. 48. The senate

resolved to prevent this, and commanded him to resign his office and disband his army several months before the expiration of his term. If they could once get him to Rome as a private citizen without an army, they knew they could crush him. Cæsar knew this too, and refused to obey the decree unless Pompey should also disband his troops. Pompey would have been willing to agree to this fair proposition, but his friends would not permit him, and were bent on destroying Cæsar. Naturally the charge of false play was made on both sides, and the strife continued until Cæsar was finally declared a public enemy. He therefore crossed the Rubicon, a small stream which formed the boundary of his province and the limit of his authority, and began to march towards Rome. He took but a single legion with him and continued his efforts to come to an understanding with the *Optimates*, having hopes of a compromise. He made a speech to his soldiers, explaining the situation, and was assured of their enthusiastic support. Labienus alone deserted him, corrupted, it is said, by Roman gold.

Cæsar's march through Italy was like a triumphal procession ; the cities opened their gates to him and he was everywhere hailed with enthusiasm. Among the *Optimates* there was nothing but consternation and fear. They had pinned their faith to Pompey, who had boasted that he had but to stamp his foot on the ground and legions would spring from the earth ready to obey him. He had vastly overrated himself (as was his wont), and had no conception of Cæsar's power and genius. Cicero well sums up the situation in a letter to his friend Atticus : "The consuls are helpless. There has been no levy. With Cæsar pressing forward and our general doing nothing, the men will not come to be enrolled. Pompey is prostrate, without courage, without purpose, without force, without energy." Pompey had been looked upon by his partisans as almost divine. He had been peculiarly fortunate throughout his career and had made a great military reputation by assuming the laurels that others had won. Mommsen says of him : "He was radically a commonplace man, formed by nature to make a good corporal, but forced by circumstances to be a general." Now that he was confronted by a really serious difficulty and by a really able man, he was paralyzed.

Pompey with his forces and accompanied by the senators fled in

a panic to Brundisium and sailed across the Adriatic to Epirus. Cæsar meanwhile continued his victorious advance, and in sixty days was master of Italy. Then he went to Spain, and before autumn closed had met and defeated all opposition there. Returning to Rome he made preparations to follow Pompey. Many prominent *Optimates* had fallen into his hands, but he let them all go free, to their own great amazement and to Cæsar's eternal praise. In a letter he says: "I will conquer after a new fashion and fortify myself in the possession of the power I acquire by generosity and mercy."

Cæsar followed Pompey across the sea from Brundisium, transporting his army in two divisions. He encountered considerable difficulty on account of storms and the lack of ships. After much skirmishing, anxiety, and suffering (on Cæsar's part), owing to scarcity of food and supplies, he fought a battle at Pharsalia in Thessaly on Aug. 9, B.C. 48. Before the battle Pompey's officers felt so sure of victory that a rich banquet was spread awaiting their return from the field. In numbers and equipment Pompey was much superior, and with him was all the wealth and respectability of Rome. He had 45,000 infantry and 5000 cavalry against Cæsar's 22,000 and 1000, respectively; but he was overwhelmingly defeated and the battle ended in a terrible panic and great slaughter, in which 15,000 men lost their lives. As Cæsar viewed the slain he said sadly: "They would have it so. After all that I had done for my country, I, Gaius Cæsar, should have been condemned as a criminal if I had not appealed to my army."

Pompey fled for his life and took ship to Egypt and was there murdered by the king, who hoped thus to win Cæsar's favor. When Cæsar arrived there, however, a few days later, and Pompey's head was presented to him, he is said to have turned away from the sight with horror and grief. He now overcame all remaining opposition in several short and brilliant campaigns. The first of these was in Asia Minor, where he conquered so easily that he reported it to the senate in the words that have since become famous: "*Veni, vidi, vici.*" By the battle of Thapsus in Africa (B.C. 46) and that of Munda in Spain (B.C. 45), the Pompeian party was finally crushed.

Cæsar now returned to Rome, where he was made *imperator* — possessing the entire *imperium*, or military dominion of Rome, not

of a single colony or province merely — and perpetual dictator (*dictator perpetuo*), which offices clothed him with all the political authority of the state. By the powers thus conferred he laid the foundations of the Imperial constitution, which was afterwards (B.C. 30) set in operation by his grand-nephew and adopted son, Octavianus, later known as Augustus. This scheme of government eventually became (as was possibly foreseen from the start) an hereditary monarchy, under the name and form of a republic. During the short period of Cæsar's rule he continued the good work of his first consulship and carried a series of measures of wise and practical statesmanship, such as the reform of the calendar, the regulation of the administrative system, and the policy of checks upon the abuses of the money power. He also planned extensive military expeditions against Parthia, Scythia, and Germany, and large public works and improvements, such as draining the Pomptine marshes and cutting through the isthmus of Corinth. With characteristic energy he accomplished much in a very short time.

But the possession of this exalted authority involved the utter overthrow of the constitution and necessarily excited alarm and jealousy among patriots and demagogues alike. Rumors were abroad that Cæsar was seeking to be king, a name detested at Rome since the foundation of the republic. His rivals were jealous, and not a few friends were disappointed at not having received as large favors as they thought they deserved. Many of his former enemies were bitter against him, because he had been magnanimous enough to forgive them. These feelings culminated in a conspiracy against his life. The leaders were Cassius, a violent and fearless man driven mad by jealousy and baffled ambition; and Marcus Brutus, who had no better friend than Cæsar, but who fancied that he must emulate his ancestor, Brutus the first consul, who expelled the Tarquins. Cæsar received many warnings of what was going on, but disregarded them all with his usual indifference to danger. The deed was consummated in the senate-house on the Ides of March, B.C. 44. The great dictator was struck down by false friends and fell, pierced with wounds, at the foot of Pompey's statue. This dastardly act received the condemnation it deserved, and few have dared to defend it on the ground of patriotism. Those concerned in it all

died violent deaths soon after. Both Brutus and Cassius committed suicide, the latter stabbing himself with the very dagger which he had used against Cæsar.¹

V. PERSON AND CHARACTER OF CÆSAR.

"Death makes no conquest of this conqueror
For now he lives in fame, though not in life."—*Shakespeare.*
"Great Julius, whom all the world admires."—*Milton.*

Suetonius describes Cæsar when a youth as tall, slight, and handsome, with dark piercing eyes, a sallow complexion, large nose, lips full, features refined and intellectual, neck sinewy and thick. He adds further that he was neat to effeminacy about his dress and appearance. Fond of athletics, he excelled in all manly sports, especially in riding. In danger he knew no fear and often performed acts of great personal daring. His health was vigorous until his later years, and he could endure an apparently unlimited amount of labor and hardship. Added years gave him a majestic and commanding presence without detracting from the grace and courtesy of his bearing. We judge him to have been a man of singular charm and of unusual personal magnetism.

Thanks to the peculiar skill possessed by the ancients in the art of portraiture, many believe that we may see the great dictator as he was, from existing statues and busts. Two of the most noted of these are the busts in the British Museum (Fig. 47) and that in the Louvre (frontispiece). The one in the Naples Museum (Fig. 2) is judged by competent critics to be conventional and not modelled after the living man. Those first mentioned are thought by many to be true to life. The one in the British Museum represents Cæsar the statesman, the man of peace; the one in the Louvre, Cæsar the man of action, the martial hero.²

¹ For a vivid imaginative account of the conspiracy, see Shakespeare's "Julius Cæsar."

² On the portraits of Cæsar, see an illustrated article by Mr. John C. Ropes in *Scribner's Magazine* for February, 1887, S. Baring-Gould's "Tragedy of the Cæsars," Vol. I, and Scott's "Portraits of Cæsar."

What Alexander was to the Greeks, and Hannibal to the Carthaginians, that and much more was Cæsar to the Romans. The two former excelled all men of their times in war only ; but Cæsar had such extraordinary abilities in widely different directions that many regard him as the most remarkable man that history records. In whatever he did, he always did the best possible. He had the greatest diversity of gifts : as a student of language, he composed a treatise on grammar while crossing the Alps ; as an orator, Quintilian says he would have rivalled Cicero had he devoted his time to this art ; as a general, he has had no superior and hardly a peer ; and, above all, he was the greatest politician and statesman of his time. To his statecraft all his other acts are subordinate, and by this they should be interpreted.

Cæsar was too great a man to be without enemies. He has been accused of being a traitor to his country, who by a deep-laid scheme overthrew its constitution. He was undoubtedly ambitious for power, and he used it in making such changes in the constitution as were sorely needed to keep it from going to pieces ; but how far the acts by which he accomplished this desirable end were the result of a plan to further his personal ambition, and how far they were compelled by the stress of circumstances, we cannot judge. We do know, however, that he professed an earnest desire for peace, until he was driven into war by the hatred and perversity of his opponents.

He has also been accused of immorality, cruelty, and irreligion. It would be vain to maintain that Cæsar was a model of virtue in an age that was notoriously and openly wicked and profligate. We know that Cæsar was a man of perfect self-control, and that he was remarkable for extreme abstemiousness in eating and drinking. As for the rest, he was probably no worse than the average.

Doubtless he was cruel, judged by modern standards. He butchered without mercy thousands of defenceless men, women, and children. But we must remember that Cæsar was a Roman, of a people naturally cruel and careless of bloodshed, and, again, that he was dealing with Gauls and Germans, whom the Romans despised, and for whom he had not, nor could have, any feelings of sympathy or kindness. The doctrine of human brotherhood is something he never heard of. But, on the other hand, contrast with this his constant care

and anxiety for the welfare of his soldiers, his patience and forbearance with their mistakes, such as no modern commander has exhibited in his memoirs, and, above all, recall his mercy to his opponents in the Civil War, whom he freely pardoned and restored to honor and favor. Contrast Cæsar's dictatorship with the horrors of Marius and Sulla, and we cannot wonder that his clemency became famous.

That Cæsar was a skeptic is no doubt true. The age was skeptical and the learned classes no longer believed in the gods of their forefathers. What Cæsar's real beliefs were, or if he had any, we do not know. He often speaks of fortune as ruling in the affairs of men, and probably had some vague and dimly defined belief in a supreme power.

VI. CÆSAR'S LITERARY WORK.

As a man of letters Cæsar is hardly less eminent. His vast and massive intellect could hold in its grasp a great variety of subjects. He wrote on many different themes, such as philosophy, language, astronomy, and divination. Of all his books only his Commentaries on the Gallic and Civil Wars have come down to us in complete form. They stand as the best military history that was ever written. Their ulterior purpose was to justify him in the eyes of the world for the course he took in opposing the senate and the government. He does this rarely by argument, but by such a tactful and masterful collocation of facts that the unthinking reader feels himself persuaded that Cæsar could hardly have done otherwise.

The style of these memoirs is remarkable for directness, terseness, and simplicity. Cicero, one of the greatest masters of style, says of them, "I pronounce them indeed to be very commendable, for they are simple, straight-forward, agreeable, with all rhetorical ornament stripped from them as one strips off a garment." While the language is lucid, it is packed full of meaning, and even a good Latinist needs to read slowly and with deliberation that the full thought of each sentence may be gathered. Sometimes a whole sentence is crammed into an adjective or a participle. To translate into good English requires, therefore, frequent amplification.

Like all great men, Cæsar rarely speaks of himself. In his works he refers to himself in the third person and with such modesty and

impartiality that you would never suspect him to be the writer. He betrays his identity by three slips of the pen where he uses the first person. He never struts or poses for effect, not even when he is narrating sublime deeds of heroism.

Cæsar wrote his Commentaries in the midst of intense activity. They were jotted down as he journeyed and fought; mere notes, as it were, for future amplification. Hirtius says, "While others know how faultlessly they are written, I know with what ease and rapidity he dashed them off."

For us the Gallic War has a peculiar interest because it treats of the peoples with whom we are most familiar and from whom most of us derive our ancestry. It marks, in a sense, the beginning of modern history. Active, keen-sighted, and truthful, Cæsar gives us such insight into these nations as serves to explain many of their present political and social peculiarities.

VII. IMPORTANT EVENTS IN CÆSAR'S LIFE.

B.C. 100	Born, July 12th.
" 83	Marries Cornelia, the Daughter of Cinna.
" 80-78	Serves with the Army in Asia.
" 76-75	Studies Oratory at Rhodes.
" 68	Quæstor.
" 65	Ædile.
" 63	Pontifex Maximus.
" 62	Prætor.
" 61	Proprætor in Spain.
" 60	Forms the First Triumvirate.
" 59	Consul.
" 58-49	Proconsul in Gaul.
" 56	Meeting of the Triumvirate at Luca.
" 50	The Trouble with Pompey begins.
" 49	Crosses the Rubicon. Civil War begun.
" 48	The Battle of Pharsalia.
" 46	The Battle of Thapsus. Declared Dictator for ten years.
" 45	The Battle of Munda. Appointed Imperator for life.
" 44	The Conspiracy. Assassinated in the Senate House on the Ides of March.

II.**ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS.****I. THE ARMY AND ITS DIVISIONS.**

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. The Legions. | 4. The Engineers and Artisans. |
| 2. The Cavalry. | 5. The Artillery. |
| 3. The Auxiliaries. | 6. The Baggage Train. |
| 7. The Officers and their Staff. | |

II. THE STANDARDS.**III. THE MUSIC.****IV. THE LEGIONARY.**

- | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>a.</i> Enlistment. | <i>d.</i> Weapons. | <i>g.</i> Work. |
| <i>b.</i> Clothing. | <i>e.</i> Baggage. | <i>h.</i> Pay. |
| <i>c.</i> Armor. | <i>f.</i> Food. | <i>i.</i> Discipline. |

V. THE CAMP.**VI. THE MARCH.****VII. THE BATTLE.****VIII. THE SIEGE.****IX. THE FLEET.****I. THE ARMY AND ITS DIVISIONS.****1. The Legions.**

The Roman legion corresponded to a modern Division, but was more an organic whole, since it was the smallest unit that had separate line officers. What its normal strength was in Cæsar's time we have no means of knowing ; but a probable estimate puts it at 5000 men. The actual effective strength in the field, however, was usually much less, falling to 3000 men, as at the battle of Pharsalia (on Cæsar's own authority). This variation in number was due to the many absences from duty which always occur in a military organization, and to the losses incurred by the individual legions in previous campaigns. Losses in old legions were not usually made good by new recruits, but the latter were formed into new legions ; hence the older the legion, the smaller usually its enrollment. The average effective strength of the legion in the Gallic War was probably near 3600 men.

The subdivisions of the legions were as follows :

1 legion = 10 cohorts of about 360 men each.

1 cohort = 3 maniples of 120 men each.

1 maniple = 2 centuries of 60 men each.

There were, therefore, 10 cohorts, 30 maniples, and 60 centuries in each legion. These divisions did not, however, like our companies, have special "commissioned officers," but were commanded by centuries who came from the ranks. The legions constituted the main body of the army and did most of the fighting, but there were other arms employed for various purposes (see below). The legions were designated by numbers, given in the order of their enlistment.

2. The Cavalry.

The cavalry (*equitatus*), originally of Roman citizens, was in Cæsar's time composed almost exclusively of recruits from subject or allied states. In Cæsar's army it was composed of Gauls, Spaniards, and Germans. There was no fixed ratio between the number of legionaries and cavalry. In the campaign against the Helvetians, Cæsar had 4000 *equites*, in the battle of Pharsalia, 1000; but the number of legions was the same in both.

The cavalry was divided into regiments (*alae*) of about 330 horsemen each; these were subdivided into 10 squadrons (*turmae*) of 33 horsemen each; and these again into 3 squads (*decuriae*) of 11 each. See Figs. 12, 13.

3. The Auxiliaries.

The auxiliaries (*auxilia peditum*) were infantry forces from allied and subject states. Cæsar nowhere gives the number of his *auxilia*, and it was doubtless as various as that of his cavalry. They were the light-armed soldiers (*milites levis armaturae*), the archers (*sagittarii*), and the slingers (*funditores*). See Figs. 30, 73, 96, 97. The best slingers came from the Balearic Islands, the best archers from Crete and Numidia. The light-armed soldiers wore no heavy armor and carried a light round shield (*parma*). The archers had neither corselet, helmet, nor shield. The latter they could not carry on account of their bows.

Cæsar placed little reliance on his *auxilia* for actual fighting, but used them for the most part to make a show of force and frighten the enemy (Bk. i. 51), and to assist in building fortifications. In engagements the bowmen and slingers were usually stationed on the wings (*alae*), and from this were called *alarii*.

4. The Engineers and Artisans.

The engineers and artisans (*fabri*) sometimes formed a separate corps under the command of a chief engineer (*præfectus fabrum*), and sometimes they were called from the ranks of the legions when their services were needed. Cæsar had a chief engineer, but no special body of men (cf. Bk. v. 11). They were employed in building bridges, ships, winter quarters, and in repairing weapons and equipments.

5. The Artillery.

Engines of war were not often used on the battlefield, where modern artillery forms such an important branch of the service, but mainly in the defence and assault of fortified cities or camps. They had a limited use also in the fleet (Bk. iv. 25).

We have no exact account of the construction of these engines. Cæsar almost always calls them *tormenta* (cf. *torquere*, to twist), a name which clearly points to the elasticity of twisted rope, sinew, or hair, for the source of their energy. They were of three kinds: *catapultae*, *ballistae*, and *scorpiones* (see Figs. 61, 89, 87). The *catapultae* shot great arrows in a horizontal direction, like a cannon; the *ballistae* hurled great stones or heavy blocks of wood through the air in a high curve, as a mortar throws shells. The range of these weapons was from 1500 to 2000 ft. A *scorpio* was a small catapult having a range of about 350 ft. It was an accurate and deadly weapon. Cæsar tells of one at the siege of Avaricum that marked and killed man after man in the same spot (Bk. vii. 25). The *tormenta* were usually served and kept in repair by the *fabri*, but as Cæsar had no such corps, they were probably in his army served by legionaries.

6. The Baggage Train.

The baggage of the army, except the packs corresponding to knapsacks which the soldiers themselves carried (*sarcinae*), was borne by horses and mules (*iumenta*), and in wagons. The latter, however, were used mainly by the traders (*mercatores*) and sutlers (*lixae*) that followed the legion. The baggage of each legion was by no means inconsiderable. It consisted of tents, blankets, tools, the *tormenta*, provisions, etc., and required no less than 500 pack-animals to a legion. The inconvenience and delay occasioned by the care of so much baggage caused the Romans to call it *impedimenta* (incumbrances), and a legion marching with its baggage was called *legio impedita*; when without, *legio expedita*. Along with the baggage train went a multitude of drivers, grooms, officers' servants, and other menials, all of whom are included in the general term *calones*. Most or all of these were slaves. See Figs. 14, 55.

7. The Officers and their Staff.

The superior officers were: (1) the commander-in-chief (*imperator* or *dux belli*). He possessed the *imperium* or supreme military authority by virtue of his office, but by etiquette first received the name *imperator* from his soldiers after his first victory. In Cæsar's case it was bestowed after his victory over the Helvetii.

(2) The *legati*. These were men of senatorial rank (i.e. who had once held a curule magistracy). They were appointed by the senate or the people on the nomination of the proconsul. The senate also determined the number that a general should have; Cæsar had ten. They often acted as ambassadors and made treaties, but their chief duties were military. Their powers were in no way independent, but derived from the general, who might put them in command of one or more legions or confer upon them the *imperium* in his absence (*legatus pro praetore*). In his battle with Ariovistus Cæsar placed a *legatus* at the head of each of his legions (Bk. i. 53), thus giving them an independent command, a practice which he afterwards continued to the great advantage of the service.

(3) The *quaestores* were officers elected by the people annually to administer the financial affairs of the provinces, one for each *imperator*.

They had charge of the military chest, and saw to the pay, clothing, shelter, and general equipment of the legions serving in their respective provinces. On occasion they exercised the military authority of a *legatus* (Bk. i. 53); they were the ancient equivalent of a modern quartermaster. Besides these general officers, there were attached to each legion six *tribuni militum*, who were probably originally in command of the legion. They were divided into three pairs, each pair taking command in its turn. In Cæsar's time they were no longer trained soldiers, but chiefly young men of equestrian rank, who went into the army for a year or two to get some military experience and thus begin their public career (cf. Bk. i. 39), so that ordinarily the legion had no proper commanding officers. Cæsar was not slow to see that these political and social favorites were not the men to lead his legions into battle, and he therefore introduced the lasting reform of transferring this duty to the *legati*, as mentioned above (cf. Bk. ii. 20 ; v. 1, 25, 47). Thereafter the duties of the tribunes became mainly administrative and judicial ; they cared for the levying, the discharge, and the equipment of the troops, and for the army supplies, under the orders of the *quaestor*; and they presided at courts-martial and took part in the councils of war. Sometimes they led the legions on the march and received subordinate military commands (cf. Bk. vii. 47, 52).

Surrounding the superior officers there was always a large number of young men, forming a kind of staff, who acted as orderlies and body-guards. The only officers "of the line" were the tribunes, and, as appears above, their command was limited.

The real leaders of the men were the inferior ("non-commissioned") officers, the centurions. Corresponding to sergeants and corporals, these were always plebeians, often of the lowest birth, who were promoted from the ranks entirely on account of their fighting qualities, and could never rise higher. There were two centurions in each maniple, making six for each cohort and sixty for the legion. The six centurions of the first cohort outranked the others and were called *centuriones primorum ordinum*, and were the only ones that ordinarily sat with the superior officers in the council of war. The first cohort always contained the flower of the legion, and the men in the first century of this cohort excelled all the others. Their leader,

the first centurion of the whole cohort (*primus* or *primipilus*) and so of the whole legion, must needs be a man of great personal prowess and skill, an actual fighter, one to whom all could look as to a model soldier. Such was, for example, Publius Sextius Baculus, who repeatedly deserved the praise of his general (cf. Bk. ii. 25 ; iii. 5 ; vi. 38), and Titus Balventius (*vir fortis et magnae virtutis*, Bk. v. 35). As a badge of his office the centurion carried a short staff (*vitis*), but he was armed much like the other soldiers (see Fig. 40).

The chief distinction in dress between the officers and men was the red *tunica militaris* worn by the legates and tribunes, and the purple cloak (*paludamentum*) worn by the general (Bk. vii. 88). The officers wore also coats-of-mail of gilded bronze (see Fig. 94).

Between the centurions and common soldiers in rank were the *speculatores*, *evocati*, *beneficiarii*, *aquiliferi* or *signiferi*, and *bucinatores*, *tubicines*, or *cornicines*. The *speculatores* or scouts obtained news of the enemy and carried despatches. The *evocati* were veterans who had completed their term of service, but remained in the army at the request of their commander. The *beneficiarii* were soldiers that had received some gift or privilege for meritorious service. The *signiferi* or *aquiliferi* were the standard bearers: soldiers selected for their courage and fidelity. The *bucinatores* and *tubicines* were the musicians. All of these had rights and exemptions not enjoyed by the common soldiers. See Figs. 39, 72, 90.

II. THE STANDARDS.

The term *signa* is applied in a general sense to all the standards of the army. That of the legion was an eagle (*aquila*), usually of silver or bronze, about the size of a dove, on a wooden staff. It was sometimes carried by the chief centurion (*primipilus*) of the legion. Sometimes it had below it a little red or white banner (*vexillum*), inscribed with the number or name of the legion. See Figs. 13, 79, 80.

In a narrower sense, *signum* was used for the standard of the cohort or the maniple. Each cohort had its own *signum* (Bk. ii. 21), and in earlier times each maniple, but probably not in Cæsar's day.

The cavalry and light-armed troops and all separate detachments carried only the *vexillum* (Bk. vi. 36). The general's flag at headquarters was also called *vexillum* . It was a large white banner with an inscription in red, giving the name of the general and that of his army. A large red *vexillum* displayed at headquarters was the signal for battle (Bk. ii. 20). See Fig. 79.

III. THE MUSIC.

The difficulty of carrying the voice through the din of battle early led the Romans to use the penetrating tones of brass instruments for giving orders. The four instruments used by them were the bugle (*bucina*), the trumpet (*tuba*), the cavalry trumpet (*lituus*), and the horn (*cornu*). See Figs. 36, 37, 38, 90.

The *bucina* , whose shape and appearance are uncertain, sounded the changes of the night-watch and the reveille in the morning. The *tuba* , a straight trumpet of brass more than three feet long, with a bell-shaped mouth, gave the signal for attack or retreat, the signal being taken up and repeated by the *cornu* . The latter was a circular-shaped instrument which the performer often placed about his neck. The *tuba* had a deep tone ; the *cornu* a sharper one. The general's call to an assembly (*contio*) was the *classicum* , sounded by all the instruments at once.

IV. THE LEGIONARY.

a. Enlistment. — The legion was composed of Romans only. Citizens were liable to conscription between the ages of seventeen and forty-six. The recruit must be of sound health and of suitable height. The Romans, as a rule, were rather undersized. Cæsar expressly mentions the small stature of his troops as compared with that of the Germans (Bk. i. 39 ; ii. 30) ; but the Romans had learned the lesson of civilization, — that victories are gained not by huge bones and big bodies, but by trained skill and scientific tactics. Man for man, the Germans were doubtless more than a match for the Romans ; but against the organized and disciplined legion — the most effective machine for battle that the world had yet seen — they were almost

powerless. The term of service was twenty years, and after this the veteran was discharged with enough to provide for his old age. Often he reënlisted for farther service (*evocatus*).

b. Clothing. — All the legionaries were clothed alike. Next the skin was a nearly or quite sleeveless woollen shirt (*tunica*), reaching nearly to the knees; over this a leathern coat strengthened by bands of metal across the breast, back, and shoulders (*lorica*). In cold or wet weather the soldier wore about him a wide woollen mantle (*sagum*), which was fastened by a clasp (*fibula*) on the right shoulder, leaving the right arm free. At night the *sagum* served as a blanket. About his waist was a leather belt (*cingulum militiae*), bound with metal and with strips of metal hanging from the front as a protection to the lower part of the body. His feet were covered with strong half-boots (*caligae*). This might be called his undress uniform. See Figs. 65, 73, 83, etc.

c. Armor. — The defensive armor consisted of a coat-of-mail (*lorica*, described above), a helmet, and a shield. The helmet (*galea* or *cassis*), of iron or of leather strengthened with brass, was open in front and adorned with a white crest, which was one of the *insignia* put on at the beginning of a battle (Bk. ii. 21). See Fig. 95, etc. The shield (*scutum*) was rectangular, about four feet long and two feet wide; it was made of wood slightly curved, and covered with linen and heavy leather. About the rim it was bound with metal, and also in the centre. There was a single handle on the inside and opposite it on the outside a boss or knob (*umbo*) of metal, to divert missiles and to strengthen the whole. A common device on the outside was a winged thunderbolt. See Figs. 74, 75, etc.

d. Weapons. — The weapons of offence were the sword and spear. The sword (*gladius Hispanus*) was about two feet long, straight and two-edged. It was used more for thrusting than for striking, and was not usually hung from the body-belt, but from a belt passing over the left shoulder to the right hip (*balteus*). See Figs. 17, 73, etc.

The spear (*pilum*) of Cæsar's soldiers was between six and seven feet long. The shaft was of wood and about four feet long. Into this was fitted the slender iron shank that ended in a barbed head. From monuments and from remains that have been found in various places, the weight is estimated at about three pounds and the

hurling distance about 100 feet. Each legionary had one of these weapons. See Figs. 15, 65.

e. Baggage (Packs).— Besides his arms and armor, the legionary carried tools for digging, cooking utensils (*vasa*), food for at least two weeks (*cibaria*), his cloak or blanket (*sagum*), and usually one or two stakes (*valli*) for the rampart of the camp. The weight of the whole was about sixty pounds. For convenience in carrying, the *vasa*, *cibaria*, and other small articles were tied in a compact bundle to the end of a forked stick and carried over the shoulder. During a halt this rested on the ground and the soldier could lean on it for support. Upon a sudden call to battle he could quickly lay it down and be ready (*expeditus*) for the fray. The forked sticks were named Marius's mules (*mulī Mariāni*), after the great Marius who introduced their use. The collective personal baggage of the legionary was called his *sarcina* (see Figs. 14, 73).

f. Food.— The food provided for the legionary was coarse flour or unground wheat or barley. This he must grind for himself. The ration of food for one day was about two pounds. Every fifteen days he received two *modii*,—about two pecks. This monotonous diet was varied occasionally by meat and such food as he could find by foraging; and there was always the chance of bartering his rations for the greater variety carried by the traders (*mercatores*), who followed the army in large numbers and did a thriving business with the soldiers.

g. Work.— It has been truthfully said that Cæsar conquered Gaul as much with the spade and shovel as with the sword and spear. The legionary was above all a skilful digger, and besides the actual fighting, no small part of his labor was the almost daily task of fortifying the camp (*castra munire*). At least three hours were needed for this work. After this there were the watches to keep, the arms to burnish, and all the other busy routine of camp life.

h. Pay.— Cæsar paid his legionaries 12½ cents a day or about \$45 a year. This was nearly the same amount that a day laborer could earn at Rome. The soldier was better off than the laborer merely by his shelter and by the certainty of employment. A deduction from the pay was made for food and equipments furnished by the state. Food, however, was very cheap, and a soldier in active

service could always expect a considerable increase in his income from booty and from the gifts of his general.

i. Discipline.—The martial spirit of the soldiers and their attention to duty were maintained and increased by appropriate rewards and punishments. Among the latter the most usual were withholding of wages, degradation in rank, corporal punishment, dismissal from the service, and, in cases of flagrant offences, death. A minor offence committed by a company of soldiers was punished by putting them on barley rations and giving them extra work on the fortifications. Among rewards may be mentioned public praise in the presence of the army, promotion in rank, increase in wages, or the presentation of a crown of leaves or grasses, which corresponded to the bestowal of a modern military decoration.

V. THE CAMP.

The success of Roman arms in hostile and barbarous countries was largely due to the custom of guarding against surprise by making fortified camps. The summer camp (*castra aestiva*) and the winter camp (*castra hiberna*) seem to have been alike in all essential features. In the latter, however, more provision was made for the comfort and convenience of the men. Instead of tents, huts of timber and earth, thatched with straw or covered with hides, were provided for them. The camp was regularly in the form of a square, often with rounded corners, but the lay of the land necessitated many variations from the regular plan (see Fig. 77). Of all the camps of Cæsar that have been discovered, but one, that on the Aisne (Bk. ii. 5), approaches a square form. The site was chosen with great care, and was always on high ground and near wood and water. An ideal spot was the slope of a hill with some kind of natural defence on the sides and rear, and with sufficient ground in front for the array of the legions. Such a position would give the Romans an opportunity for their favorite onslaught *e superiore loco* (cf. Bk. ii. 8; Bk. v. 50).

A small force of soldiers under centurions was sent ahead to select the site for the camp and stake it out. Two bisecting lines were drawn at right angles to each other to mark the four gates (see Fig. 77): the *porta praetoria*, facing the enemy; the *porta decumana*,

in the rear; the *porta principalis dextra*, on the right side; the *porta principalis sinistra*, on the left. Between the gates on the right and left ran a broad street, the *via principalis*. The forward half of the camp was allotted to the soldiers, the rear half to the officers and their attendants. All about the inside of the fortifications ran a broad space, at least one hundred feet wide, left vacant for baggage, evolutions of troops, and to protect the tents within from missiles that the enemy might hurl over the walls. Near the middle of the camp was an open square (*praetorium*), in which stood the general's tent (*tabernaculum ducis*). Before this was the altar on which he sacrificed, and on the left was a sodded mound of earth (*tribunal* or *suggestus*; cf. Bk. vi. 3), from which he pronounced judgment and addressed the assembled soldiers. The full details of the interior arrangement of Cæsar's camp are not known; but every officer, every cohort, every maniple, every man had his appointed place.

No night passed that the army was not housed in such a camp, fortified by wall and ditch. As soon as the soldiers arrive at the spot marked out for them, laying aside helmet, shield, and spear, they begin to dig the ditch (*fossa*), the earth from which is used in constructing the wall (*vallum*). If time permits, the sides of the embankment are covered with sods to hold the earth, or with bundles of brush (*fascines*). The ditch was usually nine feet wide and seven feet deep, the wall six to ten feet high, and wide enough on the top to afford good standing room for a soldier in action. An ordinary camp for a night's sojourn could be fortified in about three hours. If the camp was intended for more than one night (*castra stativa*), the fortifications were made stronger. The earth was made firmer by imbedding in it several lines of fascines parallel to the length, and on its top was set a breastwork of stakes (*valli* or *sudes*; cf. Bk. v. 40; Bk. vii. 72). This breastwork was about four feet high (see Fig. 76). Often wooden towers were erected on the walls (cf. Bk. v. 40; Bk. vii. 72), connected by galleries (*pontes*). The wall was made easy of access on the inner side by steps of brush. Sometimes small redoubts (*castella*) were built at a distance from the main camp. These were made on the same general plan.

After the camp had been fortified and the leathern tents (*tentoria*, *pelles*) put up in their assigned places, guards were set at the gates, and the regular routine of camp life began.

VI. THE MARCH.

When the trumpet gave the signal (*signum profectionis*) to up camp (*castra movere*), the soldiers struck their tents and put their baggage (*vasa conligere*); at the second signal the baggage (*impedimenta*) was put on the pack-animals and in the evening at the third signal the army (*agmen*) began its march. The march was made usually at sunrise, but it might be made earlier on some occasion. The ordinary day's march lasted about seven hours and covered about 15 miles; a forced march (*magnum iter*) about which Cæsar made many such, his men travelling immense distances with incredible swiftness.

When marching in the enemy's country, the main body of the army (*agmen*) protected itself by a vanguard (*agmen primum*) of light-armed infantry, and scouts (*exploratores*), and by a rearguard (*agmen novissimum*). Sometimes individual spies (*speculatores*) were sent far in advance to reconnoitre the country and the movements of the enemy's forces.

The order of march of the main body depended on the nearness of the enemy. When no enemy was near, each legion marched in a single column and was followed by its baggage train (see Bk. ii. 17). In the neighborhood of the enemy, a single column of troops in fighting trim (*expediti*), i.e. without packs (*sarcinae*), followed directly after the vanguard; then came the baggage of the whole army, while the remaining forces acted as a rear guard (cf. Bk. ii. 19). Sometimes, for additional security against flank attacks, columns of infantry marched on each side of the baggage train, forming a hollow square (*agmen quadratum*; see Fig. 101). If, when marching in this order, the army was compelled to halt and defend itself, the soldiers, by facing about, presented to the foe a complete circle (*orbis*) of armed men. When the foe was near and the ground level and open, the march was sometimes made in three parallel columns, which, by a simple evolution, could be quickly changed to the triple battle line (*acies triplex*), the regular formation for an engagement.

Streams were crossed either by fords or bridges. Romans could cross deeper fords than we, for they had no powder to keep dry

(cf. Bk. v. 18). Sometimes a line of cavalry was sent across the stream to break the force of the current (cf. Bk. vii. 56). Bridges were usually very simple affairs of logs covered with earth and brush, or of boats, but Cæsar's masterpiece of military engineering was his roadway forty feet wide with which he twice spanned the Rhine (Bk. iv. 17 ; Bk. vi. 9 ; see Figs. 59, 86).

VII. THE BATTLE.

As has been said (V), the camp was so chosen that the ground in front of it would be suitable for battle. The usual order of battle was *triplex acies*. The first line of the legion was formed of four cohorts and each of the others of three. In each cohort the three maniples stood side by side, and in each maniple the two centuries stood one behind the other, varying in formation according to the depth of the line. As to the distance between the lines we have no definite information ; nor even as to whether spaces were left between the cohorts. There were probably spaces between the different legions and doubtless between the centre (*media acies*), where the legionaries stood, and the wings (*cornua*), composed of auxiliaries and cavalry. Cæsar's lines were probably eight men deep. That would give each legion, estimated at 3600 men, a front of 180 legionaries, 45 for each cohort. When standing in open order for fighting, giving to each man the space necessary for the free use of his weapons, the front of each legion covered probably about 1000 feet, supposing the cohorts to stand close together ; all this, however, is very uncertain.

When an attacking enemy had reached the right distance, the bugle sounded the charge, and the legions rushed forward, sword in sheath, and the front ranks with spears uplifted ready to hurl. When within range, the spears were thrown in a shower, the swords drawn, and a fierce charge made upon the mass of the foe, more or less disordered by the volley of spears. Along the front of the cohort rages a series of combats. The rear ranks press forward, throw their spears over the heads of their comrades, and take their places as the latter are wounded or weary. When the first line of cohorts has done its best, it makes room for the second line, re-forms, and gets breath for a new onset. Thus the battle goes on with the two

lines in almost constant motion. The enemy are given no rest and are worn out by the repeated charges of the cohorts. The third line, however, is held in reserve, and is brought into action only in case the other two prove insufficient.

The cavalry in the rear, or on the wings, stand ready when the enemy break and flee to ride down the fugitives and cut them to pieces.

There were times when troops had to be arranged in special formations. The most important of these were the *cuneus*, or wedge, the *testudo*, or tortoise, and the *orbis*, or circle. The first was an attack in column instead of in line, and was of use in cutting through and dividing an opposing battle line. The second, in which the shields overlapped above like shingles on a roof, was used especially in approaching and storming walls, or whenever the enemy were to be driven from a higher position (cf. Bk. ii. 6; see Fig. 88). The last formation was like a modern hollow square with officers in the centre—except that from the character of ancient fighting it was rather circular than rectangular. It was necessary when the attack came from all sides at once (see Bk. iv. 37).

VIII. THE SIEGE.

The Romans excelled in the art of taking walled cities, and this skill gave them an immense advantage in their warfare with semi-barbarous and ignorant peoples. There were three methods of doing this: first, by an immediate attack (*oppugnatio repentina*); second, by an active siege, brought to a close by an assault (*expugnatio*); third, by investment and blockade (*obsidio*).

If there seemed to be a chance of success, a city was stormed at once with no formal preparation (*ex itinere*). Its defenders were driven from the walls by a shower of missiles (Bk. iii. 25); the moat was filled with brush and earth; the assaulters with shields locked in a *testudo* attempted to break open the gates or scale the walls with ladders.

If this method proved unsuccessful or impossible, a regular siege was begun. The work of a regular siege centred about the mound or *agger*, and to its construction everything else was subordinated.

It was begun at a distance from the wall, very nearly out of reach of the missiles of the enemy. It was then gradually extended in the direction of the point to be attacked, and was at the same time gradually increased in height until on a level with the top of the wall, or even higher. At Avaricum the mound was 80 feet high (Bk. vii. 23-28). Its width was possibly 40 or 50 feet. It was made of earth and timber, and had connected galleries running through its various stories, through which the soldiers could move under cover (see Fig. 78). The men engaged in constructing the *agger* had to be protected from the enemy. Those who were building worked behind lines of *plutei* (see Figs. 102, 103), large standing shields, which were moved forward from time to time as the *agger* progressed. Those bringing material for the builders walked under rows of sheds called *vineae* (see Figs. 33, 78), extending the length of the *agger*. The workmen were protected also by archers and slingers and by engines of war (*tormenta*) standing behind lines of *plutei* or upon movable towers (*turres*). The latter stood on the *agger* or on either side of it, and advanced with it, and as they advanced increased in height story by story. As the workmen get nearer the wall the *plutei* will no longer protect them. Then they find refuge under strong sheds of wood called *testudines* or *musculi*, placed at the ends of lines of *vineae*.

When the mound has reached the wall, a breach is made through it for the final assault (*expugnatio*). Sometimes this was accomplished by undermining the wall, or it was pulled down from the top with huge iron hooks (*falces murales*). But the most common and most effective means was the battering ram (*aries*), a huge swinging beam from 60 to 100 feet long with a heavy mass of metal at one end, often shaped like a ram's head. This under a *testudo*, or in the lowest story of a tower, was brought with tremendous force against the opposing masonry. When the final assault was made, soldiers rushed in from every quarter, over the mound, through the breach, and from the movable towers, from whose highest stories draw-bridges stretched to the walls.

Against these forms of assault the inhabitants used such means of resistance as they could. The most effective were masses of stone, thrown from the wall upon the works, and fire. To guard against

the latter, the besiegers had to cover all exposed woodwork with green hides. Battering rams and mural hooks were caught in slings and held fast, or drawn into the city, and mines were met by countermines. See Figs. 93, 98, 99.

When the location of the place was such that it could not be taken by such a siege as that described above, it was invested on every side (*obsidio*) and the inhabitants starved into submission. Among sieges of this kind were those of Gergovia (Bk. vii. 44-53) and Alesia (Bk. vii. 72-80), of which the last was one of the most remarkable of ancient times.

IX. THE FLEET.

Cæsar mentions two principal classes of ships: *naves longae*, or war galleys, and *naves onerariae*, or freight and transport vessels. As compared with the former, the latter were shorter, broader, and deeper; hence could carry greater burdens and were more seaworthy. They depended mainly on their sails, but often had rowers in addition. The *naves actuariæ* of Bk. v. 1 were a special class of transport vessel, with both sails and oars. Cæsar used them to carry troops, horses, and munitions of war to Britain. See Figs. 48, 51, 52.

The war galley was long, low, and narrow; armed at the prow with a sharp beam (*rostrum*) shod with bronze, for ramming the enemy's ships; and propelled by one or two sails and a large force of rowers. The seamen (*nautæ*) attended to the steering and the managing of the sails, and were freemen. The rowers (*remiges*) were usually slaves. Galleys in Cæsar's time mostly had three banks of oars. The steering apparatus was two broad-bladed oars near the stern, one on each side. The speed of these vessels was remarkable, almost equalling that of a modern steamship.

The fighting men were the legionaries embarked for the purpose. In fact, there was no distinct naval service, as with us. A fleet was simply an army afloat, and was commanded by military officers. Before going into action *tormenta* were placed on the deck, and also a *turris*; the mast was taken down and the sails and tackle housed. See Fig. 62.

III.

GAUL AND THE GAULS.

I. THE GALLIC PROVINCE.

THE district upon whose government Cæsar entered in the spring of B.C. 58 consisted primarily of the two Gallic provinces, Cisalpine and Transalpine. Cisalpine Gaul was the northern portion of Italy, which several centuries earlier had been occupied by invaders from Gaul proper, and was not yet reckoned politically as a part of Italy; it was a wealthy, populous, and orderly country, the proconsul's main dependence for troops and supplies, and his regular winter residence. Transalpine or Narbonnese Gaul received its name from its capital, the Roman colony Narbo. It contained some thriving cities and peaceful districts; but as a whole it had been but recently brought under the authority of Rome, and was still essentially a foreign country. It comprised the whole coast of the Mediterranean from the Pyrenees to the Alps, having for its northern boundary an irregular and uncertain line, which separated the territory of the conquered nations of Gaul from the states which were still free. To these two provinces was added also Illyricum, which was a source of strength, but did not receive much of his attention.

The authority of the governor over his province was that of a military commander, whose power was not limited by the laws which protected the citizens of Rome. A few privileged cities or nations, such as the old Greek city Massilia, were wholly exempted from his authority; but all other parts of the province, including Roman colonies like Narbo, were liable to tribute and under the jurisdiction of the governor, though the rights of Roman citizens were secured to them. A consular army consisted regularly of two legions; to these were added auxiliaries, both foot and horse, but the governor had power to levy new legions as he required them. Thus we find that Cæsar had six legions in his campaign against the Nervii.

The free territories adjoining a Roman province were in no respect under the authority of the governor; but they were regarded as a legitimate field for his ambition, if there was any excuse for war, and

of such excuses there was usually no lack. The Roman policy was to enter into friendly relations with one of the parties or tribes in the free territory, load this with favors and privileges, and make use of it to overcome its rivals; in Gaul the Haedui, attached to Rome through some local rivalries, very well served this purpose.

Cæsar's province, at its western extremity, reached to Spain, a country which had belonged to the empire for more than a hundred and fifty years. To the north lay four great nationalities, with all of which he was ultimately brought in contact. These were the Gauls proper, the Belgians, the Germans, and the Britons.

Free Gaul (*Libera Gallia*) at that time consisted of all the unsubdued territory between the Pyrenees and the ocean on the one side, and the Rhine and the Alps on the other, thus comprising, in general, modern France and Belgium, with parts of Holland, Germany, and Switzerland. The central portion of this territory, fully a half of it in extent and population, was occupied by the Gauls proper, or, as they called themselves, Celts, no doubt originally the same word. Southwest of these were the Aquitani, a separate people of Iberian race, cognate to the Spanish; of these, the Basques of the present day are the representatives. To the northeast lived the Belgians, whose ethnic affinities are much disputed; all that can be considered certain is that they were largely mixed with Germans. The Belgians occupied more territory than is now known as Belgium, including a considerable part of Holland on the one hand, and the northern belt of France on the other.

2. THE GALLIC PEOPLE.

a. Origin and Early History. — The Gauls were a branch of the great nations of the Indo-European family that in prehistoric times occupied parts of Asia and the greater part of Europe. They were known to the ancients as Celts or Gauls, and this name was applied without discrimination to all the barbarous peoples of the unknown west of Europe. The term was rather geographical than racial. The Romans, though they had been brought into contact with the barbarians of the north by war and commerce for many centuries, made no distinction, before Cæsar's time, between German and Gaul.

The Phœnicians, those pioneer traders and intrepid sailors of antiquity, had had commercial dealings with the Gauls at a very remote period. Several centuries later, but still at an early date (about B.C. 600), the Greeks had made a settlement near the mouth of the Rhone, which afterwards grew into the prosperous city of Massilia (Marseilles), and opened up some trade routes into the interior. Both Phœnicians and Greeks found the most powerful part of the Celts already well established in western Europe, and showing evidence of previous possession for a period going back of any assignable date.

The Celts had been for centuries a migratory and always a warlike people. These characteristics led them into many countries where they made settlements of more or less importance. Besides those who occupied Gaul proper, there were Iberian Celts (Celtiberi) in Spain, British Celts, Belgic Celts, Italian Celts in northern Italy, Celts in the Alps (notably the Helvetii), Illyrian Celts, and Asiatic Celts, who had settled in Asia Minor and were known as Galatians. It was to them, after they were Christianized, that Paul wrote his well-known epistle.

What knowledge the Greeks and Romans had of this powerful nation of barbarians was extremely vague. They had long hung like a dark storm-cloud on the northern frontier of both countries, and at intervals poured forth in overwhelming and destructive numbers. Once they spread desolation and dismay through Greece, and all but succeeded in plundering the rich temple of Delphi. In B.C. 390 Rome was destroyed by these same barbarians, and in B.C. 102 it was only the military genius of C. Marius that spared Italy a similar visitation.

Long before the time of Cæsar, the Romans had succeeded in subduing the Gauls south of the Alps, making the prosperous and orderly province of Cisalpine Gaul, as related above. Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum were more recent additions to the empire, and were less thoroughly subdued and civilized. They had been finally conquered by Q. Fabius Allobrogicus. All to the north had as yet been unexplored and uninvaded by Roman arms. The Gauls, according to circumstances and location, showed at this time various degrees of civilization. Those to the south and west, being nearer to the refinement of the province, had made rapid strides, had built many

flourishing cities, enjoyed prosperous and on the whole peaceful community life, and practised the arts and commerce. But those farther removed in the east and north, and the Britons, were still in a semi-savage condition. Cæsar's expeditions among these are somewhat like similar military expeditions that nations are sending in our day to explore and subdue unknown Africa; and the trading posts established among them by the enterprising Greek merchants of Massilia, like the business ventures formerly sent among the Indians.

b. Character and Customs.—The Gauls are described as tall and of great physical strength, with a fair skin and blonde hair, which they often reddened by artificial means. Men of rank and of authority wore the hair and beard long. The more barbarous tribes gave themselves a terrible aspect by painting hideous devices on their half-naked bodies. Their voices were rough and harsh, their words few, and their language obscure and figurative. Disparaging others, boastful of themselves, arrogant, fond of idleness, they were very quarrelsome and always ready to fight, to relieve the monotony of their existence, if for no other reason. They were, however, high-spirited and brave to utter recklessness and contempt for death.

The Gallic women are described by an ancient writer as the most beautiful of all barbarian women and as thrifty housewives. He adds that, aided by his wife, who is much more formidable than he, the Gaul will hold his own in any conflict. The Roman invaders were often witnesses of the heroism of these veritable Amazons.

The Gauls lacked stability of character, and are often criticized by Cæsar for their fickleness; they were also very avaricious and given to superstitions. On the other hand, they were not vicious, but naturally of a simple and teachable disposition. They were very quick to learn and adopt whatever useful arts their neighbors brought to them. Their love of freedom was passionate; but their long years of wandering had not developed in them that feeling of national unity and that love of the soil that we include under the term patriotism.

The life of the less civilized tribes was rude in the extreme. Their houses were little more than huts of clay and wood, thatched with straw and branches. The dwelling was open to daylight by the door

alone, and had little or no furniture. Their beds were heaps of straw or furs. War was their principal occupation. They gave some attention to agriculture, raising the coarser grains, the better sort of fruits and vegetables being unknown to them. They also had large flocks and herds. They ate but little bread, but large quantities of meat, which they are described as cutting with their swords and eating in a ravenous manner.

The Gauls knew something of the arts and sciences. They did some weaving, and those on the coast had skill in shipbuilding and in navigation, and the Aquitanians were skilful miners. Their attempts at art were mainly imitations of what other lands brought to them. For example, they made more or less successful attempts to imitate the artistic coins of the Greeks and Romans. Several illustrations of Gallic coins may be found in the text (see Figs. 29, 64, 69, 70, etc., etc.). Cæsar was the first to bring to the world authentic information about most of these matters, and the student is referred for farther interesting details to his narrative (see especially Bk. vi).

c. Dress.—The details of Gallic dress are not fully known. Like most semi-civilized or savage people, they were very fond of bright colors and finery. They wore much jewelry—both men and women—of gold, if they could afford it, otherwise of bronze. Especially characteristic was the heavy collar of twisted gold (*torquis*, see Fig. 100), worn about the neck. The principal garments were a short, bright-colored tunic, either with or without sleeves, confined by a girdle of silver or gold, and trousers (*bracæ*). Over the shoulders was worn a short cloak (*sagum*) often of fine material and of gorgeous color. The character of the costume depended upon the rank and wealth of the wearer. The feet were protected by shoes or by soles of wood strapped on with leathern thongs. See Fig. 28.

d. Arms and Military Tactics.—As has been said, a Gaul's chief business was war. He was always a soldier and, whether in youth or in old age, hastened to war with the same ardor. His principal weapon was a long two-edged sword, hanging from an iron or steel chain at the right side. It was adapted for striking and cutting, but not so much for thrusting, and was but poorly tempered. This in itself gave the Romans a great advantage through the superiority of their arms. The Gallic bronze sword came into use later,

and was a much better weapon. In Cæsar's time the iron sword probably still predominated. They had also various kinds of pikes, lances, and javelins, some made with peculiar waving and twisted blades to cause an uglier wound. Many weapons are mentioned with special names, but they are not capable of identification. Bows and slings, too, were used by them.

Ordinarily the Gaul wore no defensive armor. In fact, the common soldier went into battle with body almost bare. But the principal warriors wore chain mail (see Fig. 94), which is said to be a Gallic invention. At first this was made of iron. Later, better and lighter suits were made of bronze, and were sometimes adorned with silver and gold. The usual means for defence were the helmet and the shield. Shields were of various shapes and sizes and were adorned with figures of animals, etc., to suit the caprice or wealth of the owner, but the designs were of ancient origin. The helmets were surmounted with great horns, forms of birds or beasts, etc., designed to terrify the enemy (see Fig. 11). These also were, no doubt, survivals of earlier barbarism.

In battle they placed much reliance on their cavalry and in Northern Gaul and Britain on their war chariots. The infantry was arranged in great masses of men in close order, like the old Greek phalanx, with a line of shields before and on the sides, and sometimes with a roof of shields overhead, something like the *testudo* formation of the Romans. When they had drawn near, champions were accustomed to leave the ranks, and, brandishing their arms, challenge the foe to single combat. The first onset of the Gallic phalanx was terrific and often swept everything before it; but if that could be withstood, the advantage lay with the open and pliable order of the legion. In the latter every soldier was called into action, but in the former the great bulk of the Gallic warriors was practically imprisoned in the mass, and only those on the outside could use their arms.

e. Government.—The Gauls were not a single nation, but a group of nations or tribes, about sixty in number, united by a very slight bond of consanguinity and common religion. These tribes, which may be loosely compared to those of the North American Indians, though most of them were at a very much higher degree of civilization, varied greatly in extent and power, the smaller ones often main-

taining only a nominal independence under the protection of some larger one. They were for the most part ruled by a turbulent and oppressive aristocracy, sometimes with an elected chief magistrate. But sometimes an ambitious leader, like Orgetorix, succeeded in establishing for a time a kingly power. Thus the several states were torn by hostile parties, and were at the same time grouped into national factions, under the lead of the more powerful states. At the time of Cæsar, royalty had been almost abolished, and yearly magistrates (*vergobrets*) were elected instead. Every year representatives from the different states met in assembly, and questions of national policy were discussed. Owing to the violent and excitable natures of the Gauls, these assemblies often ended in tumultuous scenes of disorder.

At the commencement of war, a call to arms was sounded, to which old and young responded. The last man to appear was put to death with tortures in the presence of the assembled people.

f. Religion. — *The Druids.* — Cæsar says that the Gauls were devoted to religious matters. They were under the control of a class of priests known as Druids, who acted not only as priests, but also as arbiters and judges. By them was treasured the religious and philosophic lore of the Gauls, and to them the Gallic youth went for instruction, some of them remaining in training as long as twenty years. One of their most important doctrines was that of the transmigration of souls. Belief in immortality gave the Gauls a contempt for death which enabled them to face the greatest dangers without flinching.

The Druids gave their instructions and performed their bloody sacrifices in the depths of the forest. The oak and the mistletoe were sacred in their eyes. The mysterious rites of their worship are not well known, but many cruel and horrible practices are attributed to them by ancient writers, among them human sacrifices. Cæsar mentions these, but did not know of their actual occurrence from personal observation.

The principal religious observances of the Gauls were gradually abolished under Roman rule, but many of them were 'baptized' into Christianity and survive to-day in various modified forms as a part of the popular religion.

The strange monuments of stone found in many lands, called 'cromlechs' and 'menhirs,' popularly supposed to be Druidic monuments, are far older than the Druids and have nothing to do with their religion.

Cæsar gives the first authentic information about the Druids in his narrative (Bk. vi. 13-16).

3. SUBSEQUENT HISTORY OF GAUL.

Cæsar left Gaul subdued and open to Roman occupation and greed. The country was rapidly colonized and civilized. Augustus divided it into four provinces and established the Roman authority on a firm basis. Only one great patriotic uprising occurred after Cæsar's time, though the Gauls took part in the contests later for the imperial throne. In course of time the very language of Gaul became Latin, and this became the parent of modern French. In the fifth century tribes of Germans began to make inroads on the Roman domain, and the Franks, under Clovis as king, firmly established themselves in the north. Their power spread; they subjugated the inhabitants, and gave their name to the country, which it bears to this day,—France, the lands of the Franks. There were many social and political changes after this time, but the same life flowed on from Roman Gaul to modern France. The French still display many of the characteristics of the ancient Gauls; they live in substantially the same limits; many of their mountains, cities, and streams still bear the old names.

IV.

THE BRITONS.

WITH Cæsar begins the history of England. He found there a Celtic people, differing but little from those on the continent, save that they were more barbarous. What the condition or history of the British Isles was before Cæsar's invasion is wrapped in obscurity. A few Greek writers refer vaguely to them, and there was an equally vague knowledge of the smaller islands lying near. Even Cæsar

gained but little detailed and accurate knowledge of the country, and after him the Romans did not go there for nearly one hundred years. Subsequently it was subdued and brought under Roman dominion. England still shows many traces of the Roman occupation. Many of her cities were founded by the Romans and bear Roman names. After the Romans came the northern invaders, who drove out or destroyed most of the original Celtic population. Those that survived are represented to-day by the Irish, the Welsh, and the Highland Scotch, among whom a branch of the Celtic language is still spoken to a considerable extent.

V.

THE GERMANS.

THE Germans first appear in history in the campaigns of the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 113-101), the latter of whom were undoubtedly of Germanic origin. The Romans obtained their first considerable knowledge of the country from Cæsar. The ancient limits assigned to it were less on the west and south, but indefinitely greater on the east and north, than the modern. In those directions it was *terra incognita* to the Romans, and always remained so. They never did more than subdue the border tribes along the Rhine and Danube. Cæsar had relatively little to do with the Germans, but made such investigations as he could, the results of which are succinctly given in his narrative (Bk. iv. 1-3; Bk. vi. 21-28). The next account, in greater detail, was given by Tacitus in his "Germania," who corroborates Cæsar in all important particulars.

The Germans were much less civilized than most of the Gauls. They were just at the end of the nomadic stage, and were settling down and beginning community life. Their last onward nomadic movement was that under Ariovistus, which it was Cæsar's fortune to arrest (Bk. i. 31-54). They were a more manly and vigorous race than the Gauls, warlike, independent, and virtuous. The country is described as a dismal land, covered for the most part with forests and swamps, producing little food, and subject to almost constant winter.

VI.

THE CAMPAIGNS IN GAUL.

THE campaigns of Cæsar in Gaul lasted through eight seasons (B.C. 58–51), and are told in eight books,—the last written by Hirtius, an officer of Cæsar,—each book containing the operations of a single year. The following is a brief outline :

Book I. B.C. 58. Cæsar checks the attempt of the Helvetians to settle in Western Gaul, and, after a bloody defeat, forces the remnant to return to their own territory. He then engages with a powerful tribe of Germans, who had made a military settlement in Eastern Gaul, and drives them, with their chief, Ariovistus, back across the Rhine.

Book II. B.C. 57. A formidable confederacy of the northern populations of Gaul is suppressed, with the almost complete extermination of the bravest Belgian tribe, the *Nervii*, in a battle which seems to have been one of the most desperate of all that Cæsar ever fought. In this campaign the coast towns of the west and northwest (Brittany) also are reduced to submission.

Book III. B.C. 56. After a brief conflict with the mountaineers of the Alps, who attacked the Roman armies on their march, the chief operations are the conquest of the coast tribes of Brittany (*Veneti*, etc.), in a warfare of curious naval engineering in the shallow tide-water inlets and among the rocky shores. During the season, the tribes of the southwest (*Aquitani*), a mining population, allied to the Iberians or Basques, are reduced by one of Cæsar's officers.

Book IV. B.C. 55. An inroad of the Germans into Northern Gaul is repulsed, and Cæsar follows them by a bridge of timber hastily built across the Rhine. Returning, he crosses to Britain in the early autumn for a visit of exploration.

Book V. B.C. 54. The partial conquest of Britain (second invasion) is followed by various movements in Northern Gaul, in which the desperate condition of the Roman garrisons is relieved after serious losses by the prudent and brave conduct of Labienus and Quintus Cicero.

Book VI. B.C. 53. Cæsar makes a second brief expedition across the Rhine against the Germans. Some general disturbances are quelled, and Northern Gaul is reduced to peace.

Book VII. B.C. 52. Vercingetorix, a brave and high-spirited chief of Southern Gaul, effects a confederacy of the whole country, which is at length subdued. Vercingetorix surrenders himself to secure the quiet of the country, and is taken in chains to Rome, where he was afterwards put to death at Cæsar's triumph.

Book VIII. B.C. 51. Slight insurrections breaking out here and there are easily subdued; and by the capture of the last native stronghold, Uxellodunum, the subjugation of Gaul is made complete.

VII.

DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

As "Cæsar," though in many respects a book for advanced students, is often the first Latin classic put into the learner's hands, it may be well to give a few hints as to the method of study.

1. Before beginning to read, the learner should be familiar with the forms of Inflection, the simpler rules of Agreement and Construction of Cases and Moods; § 594 (pp. 381 ff.); B., pp. 117 ff.; G., pp. 437 ff.; H. 662 (558); H-B. 219 ff.; and the Definitions contained in § 269-280 (171-180); B. 160-165; G. 201-209; H. 376-384 (345-361); H-B. 219-229.

2. Notice at once the inflectional terminations, so that the number, case, tense, person, etc., — which show the corresponding relations of the words and ideas to each other, — may be present to your mind. If the form of the word gives several possibilities, hold them all in your mind, so far as may be, till something occurs in the progress of the sentence to settle the doubt.

3. Always try to take in the ideas in that order in which the Latin presents them. Read every word as if it were the last on a page and you had to turn over without being able to turn back. The mind soon becomes accustomed to the order of any language, as we see by the constant and almost unnoticed inversions of common speech and poetry. If, however, you are obliged to turn back, begin again at the beginning of the sentence and proceed as before. The greatest difficulty to a beginner is his inability to remember the first parts of a complex idea. This difficulty can often be lessened

by jotting down, in a loose kind of English, the words as they come in the Latin. In this way it is often easy to see what a string of words *must* mean, though we should never say anything like it in English.

4. Don't try to *translate formally* until you have got a complete *idea* of some *integral part* of the sentence. It makes nonsense to render words mechanically, without thinking the corresponding ideas.

5. From the outset, notice that the emphatic position of words plays a most important part in Latin writing, and try to feel the emphasis of position as you read. See § 595-601 (343-346), and compare B. 348-351; G. 671-687; H. 663-685 (559-573); H-B. 620-630.

As an illustration of § 5 we append a translation of the first chapter of Book II with especial reference to the emphasis indicated by the order. As the translation is made expressly to bring out explicitly the force of order, it should not be taken as a model of desirable translation. Such a translation as is here given forces the emphasis on the attention more than is perhaps natural in English. The force is all present in the Latin, but in English it may often be left to be brought out by the context or by some kindred emphasis which the English substitutes. A short, easy passage from Book V is also given without comment for study and practice.

<p>And BEING¹ thus in <i>Hither</i>² Gaul, as I have shown above, CÆSAR³ had FREQUENT⁴ rumors brought to him,⁵ and DESPATCHES⁶ also from LABIENUS⁷ continued to inform him that</p>	<p>Cum esset Caesar in citeriøre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvī-mus, crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs adferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnīs</p>
--	---

¹ The emphasis on *being* binds this part of the narrative with the situation left at the end of the last book, as if it were "Cæsar went to Hither Gaul, — and while he was engaged there."

² Opposed to *Farther* Gaul, where the troops were.

³ The main subject of discourse.

⁴ The repetition of the stories is the significant fact, "he *kept* hearing," but at the same time the rumors are opposed to Labienus's despatches.

⁵ An emphasis continued in Latin from *Cæsar*, the main person, but lost in English; see § 598. 1 (344. 1); H-B. 627. 2.

^{6, 7} Opposed to the rumors.

ALL⁸ the BELGÆ,⁹ who constituted a *third part*¹⁰ of [the whole of] Gaul, as I had [previously] stated, were conspiring [for an attack] against the *Roman government*¹¹ and exchanging hostages. That for THIS CONSPIRACY¹² the reasons were *these*,¹³ namely: in the first place, because THEY WERE AFRAID¹⁴ (i.e. in their own minds) that when Gaul was ALL¹⁵ *subdued*,¹⁶ our army would be brought against *them*¹⁷; and in the second place, because *some*¹⁸ of the *Gauls*¹⁸ (i.e. from outside) were tampering¹⁸ with them. These Gauls were PARTLY those who were disturbed that the ROMAN¹⁹ army should pass the *winter*²⁰ and *get a*²⁰ *footing* in Gaul, *just as*²¹

Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrāndi hās esse causās: primum quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōn nullis Gallis sollicitārentur, —partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmāni exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere

^{8, 9} Both words together the subject of discourse, but the adjective most prominent, "*the entire body of the Belgæ.*"

¹⁰ Opposed to the whole, as one might say, "*a full third of the whole.*"

¹¹ Here not the conspiracy itself, but the aim of it, is the most important part of the idea.

¹² The main subject of discourse, "*now this conspiracy, the reports said,*" etc.

¹³ The difference between "*the reasons why were these*" and "*these were the reasons why*" is obvious. Cæsar might say either.

¹⁴ A peculiar emphasis not directly carried out. Cicero would very likely have been more rhetorical and have opposed "*fear*" to "*being tampered with.*" But Cæsar changes his point of view in the course of the sentence; and, as if he had said *ipsi* in the first member, opposes to the motives of the Belgæ *themselves*, the Gauls by whom *outside* influence was brought to bear.

^{15, 16} The *completion* of the business now in hand is first emphasized, then the business itself.

¹⁷ Cæsar brings out the whole force of the idea by opposing "*them*" to "*Gaul,*" which has not before been emphatic, but which is now made so by being contrasted with the Belgians; cf. Chiasmus, § 598. *f* (344. *f*); B. 350, 11. *c*; G. 682 and R.; H. 666. 2 (562); H-B. 628.

¹⁸ See note 14.

¹⁹ Opposed to the "*Germans.*"

²⁰ Opposed to "*stay any longer.*"

²¹ The English emphasis here represents the position of the two clauses, relative and antecedent.

they had been unwilling that the GERMANS²² should *stay any longer*²³ there, and PARTLY those who from [mere] *fickleness*²⁴ and *unsteadiness*²⁴ were [always] eager for *new*²⁵ forms of government; [they were stimulated] by SOME also besides, who, inasmuch as in *Gaul*²⁶ regal power was regularly usurped by the *more powerful*²⁷ and by those who had means to *employ soldiers*,²⁸ could not SO EASILY²⁹ succeed in *such usurpations*³⁰ under our *imperial control*.³¹

in Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant, — ab nōn nullis etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātis habēbant volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī poterant.

²² Opposed to the "Romans."

²³ See note 20.

²⁴ Notice that the view of the first party is a rational idea seriously thought out, to which implied state of mind the *inconstancy* of the second party is opposed.

²⁵ A natural consequence of their character. For no good reason they got tired of the established order and wanted a *change*.

²⁶ Opposed to other countries in which the government was more stable.

^{27, 28} The two means of attaining regal power.

²⁹ And consequently wanted to rebel.

³⁰ The Latin often compresses into an indefinite, and to us unemphatic, word (as *rem* here) a whole important idea. In such cases the true emphasis appears in English only when a suitable descriptive word is substituted for the vague one according to our way of saying things.

³¹ This control, of course, tended towards establishing order.

V. 23. AFTER TAKING HOSTAGES he led his *army* back to the sea [where he] found the *ships* repaired. HAVING LAUNCHED THEM, inasmuch as he had a great number of *captives*, and *some* of the ships had been lost in the *storm*, he proceeded to transport his army in *two voyages*. And [fortunately] it so HAPPENED that out of so *many* ships in so *many* voyages not a *single* one was lost that carried soldiers either *that year*

Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, nāvis invenit reffectas. His dēductis, quod et captivōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, et nōn nullae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre instituit. Ac sic accidit uti ex tantō nāvium numerō, tot nāvigationibus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae militēs

or the year *before*, while of THE SHIPS which were sent back to him *empty* from the continent after discharging the soldiers of the first voyage, as well as of the sixty others that Labienus had had built *later*, very few reached their destination. Almost all the *rest* were driven back.

portāret dēsiderārētur; at ex eīs quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, [et] priōris commeātūs expositīs militibus, et quās postea Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur.

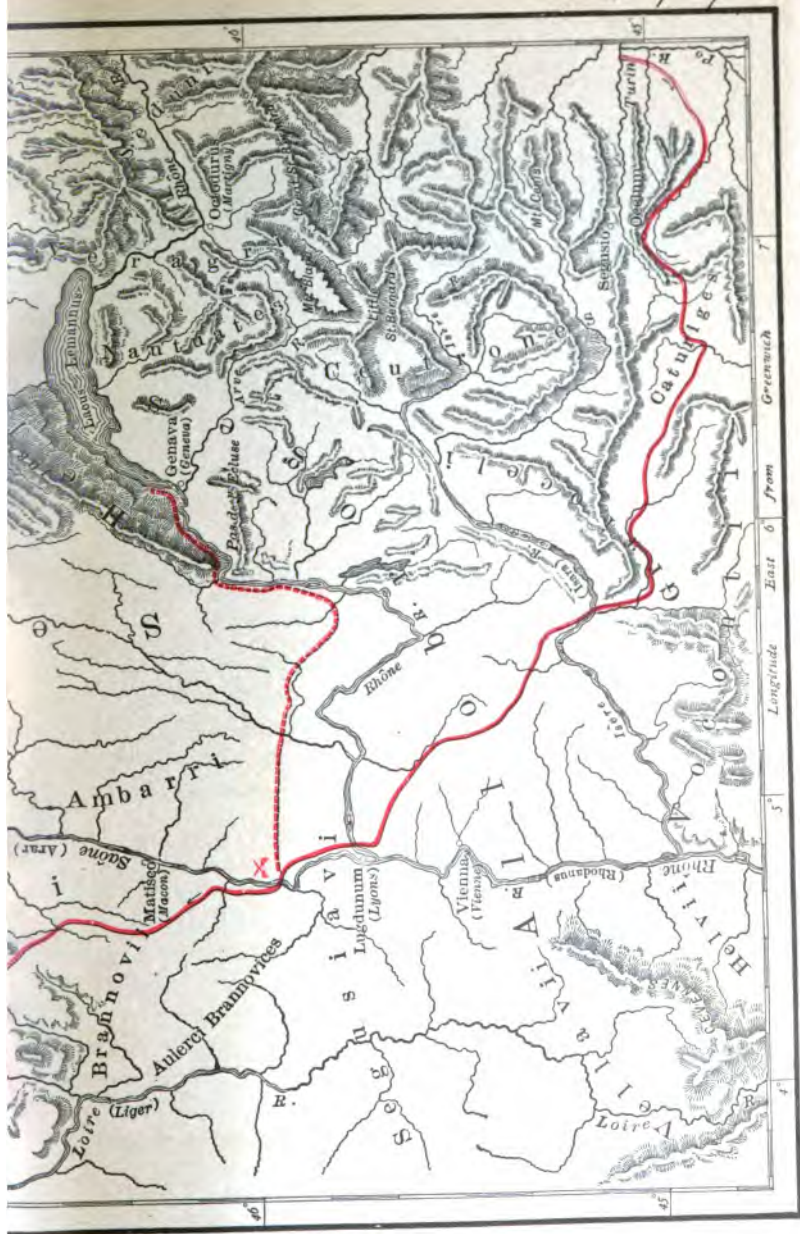




FIG. 4.—COINS OF CÆSAR.

THE GALLIC WAR.

BOOK I.

CAMPAIGNS AGAINST THE HELVETII AND ARIOVISTUS. B.C. 58.

The Nations of Gaul.

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partis trīs ; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen, ā Belgis Mātrona et Sēquana dividit.¹ 5

Their Characters Compared.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitātē prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimeque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important ; proximique sunt Germānis quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt,² quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsi in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. 10

Cf. ¹ *divisa*, l. 1. — ² *incolunt*, l. 2.

The Territories of Each.

Eōrum ūna pars,¹ quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēni, spectant in septentrionem et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montis et eam partem Ōceani quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet;² spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.

Orgetorix with his Fellow Nobles Forms a Plan to Invade Gaul.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē³ nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcīt, et civitātī persuāsīt ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri.

He Persuades his People, the Helvetii.

Id hōc facilius eis persuāsīt, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētīi continentur:⁴ unā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dividit.

They Assent, being Warlike and feeling Cramped by their Narrow Limits.

His rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte homi-

Cf. ¹ *partis*, p. 1, l. 1. — ² *pertinent*, l. 5. — ³ *longissimē*, 1, 7. — ⁴ *continētur*, l. 2.

nēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitudīne autem hominū et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis, angustōs sē finis¹ habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinē milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinē CLXXX patēbant.

5

They Employ Two Years in Preparations.

3. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent² comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentis quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs³ civitatibus pācem et 10 amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

Orgetorix Conspires with Other Gallic Chiefs.

Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad civitatīs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet⁴ Cas- 15 ticō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat⁵ et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in civitatē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Diviciāci, quī eō tempore principātum in civi- 20 tatē obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnāretur persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat.

His Arguments.

Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae civitatīs imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quā tōtius Galliae plūrimū Helvētīi possent; 25 sē suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōn-

Cf. ¹ finibus, p. 2, l. 3. — ² pertinent, 2, 5. — ³ proximī, 1, 9. — ⁴ persuāsīt, 2, 14. — ⁵ obtinēre, 2, 1.

firmit. Hāc ōrātiōne adducti inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō¹ per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri² posse spērant.

Orgetorix is Brought to Trial.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiis per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus
5 suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt. Dam-
nātum poenam sequi oportēbat ut igni cremārētur.

He Escapes.

Diē cōstitutā³ causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium
ōmnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique
coēgit, et omnis clientis obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnum
10 numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam
diceret sē ēripuit.

His Death.

Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armis iūs suum exsequi
cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistrātūs
cōgerent,⁴ Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut
15 Helvētīi arbitrantur, quā ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit.

Still the Helvetii Persist in the Attempt.

5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id quod cōn-
stituerant facere cōnantur,⁵ ut ē finibus suis exeant.⁶ Ubi
iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrāti sunt, oppida sua
omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua
20 privāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum⁷ omne, praeter quod
sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut — domum reditiōnis
spē sublātā — parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent;
trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre
iubent.

Cf. ¹ occupāret, p. 3, l. 19. — ² potiri, 2, 16. — ³ cōstituērunt, 3, 7.
— ⁴ coēgit, l. 9. — ⁵ cōnārētur, l. 13. — ⁶ exirent, 2, 14. — ⁷ frūmenti,
3, 10.

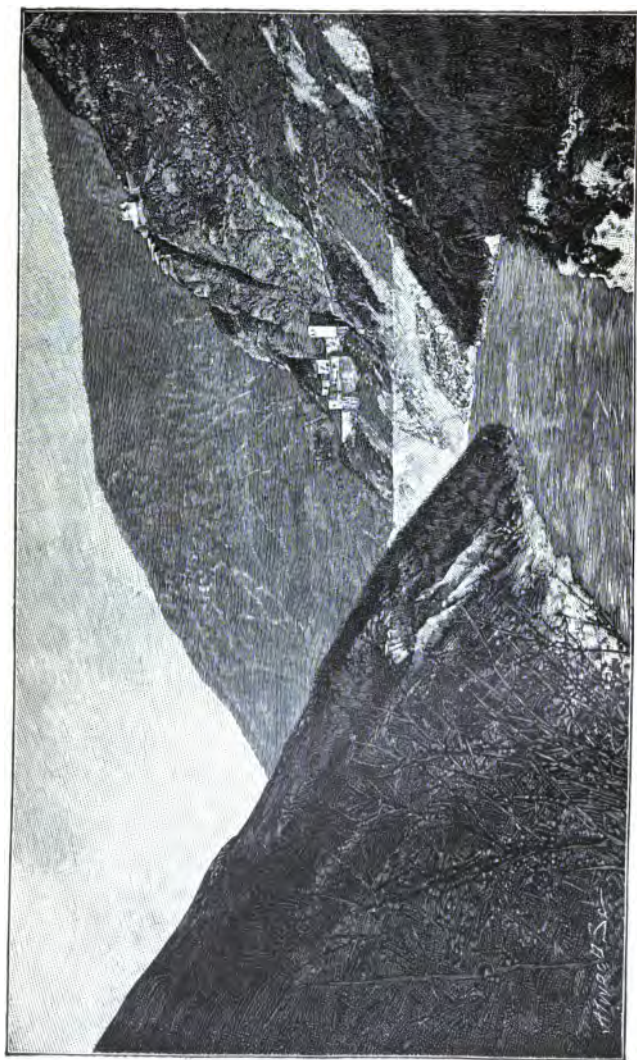


FIG. 5. — PAS DE L'ECLUSE.

Other Tribes are Persuaded to Join them.

Persuādent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis uti eōdem ūsi cōsiliō, oppidis suis vicisque exūstis, ūnā cum eis proficiscantur¹; Bōiōsque, qui trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

Two Routes for Invasion Described.

6. Erant omninō itinera duo quibus itineribus domo exire possent : ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile,

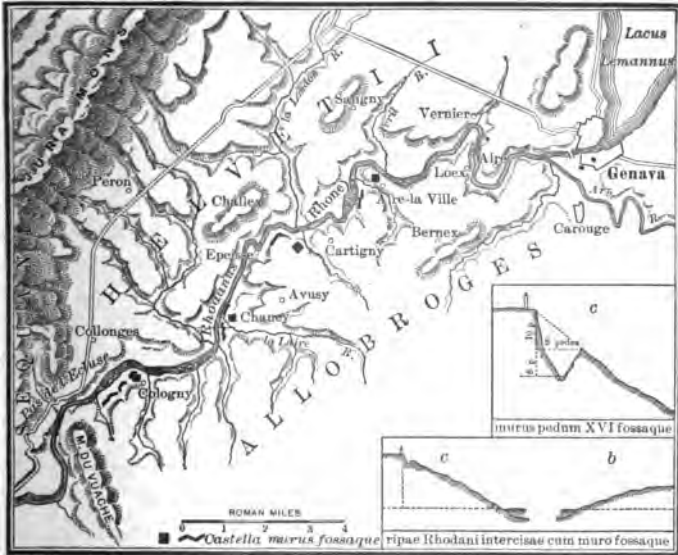


FIG. 6. — MAP OF HELVETIA.

inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singuli carrī² dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut

Cf. ¹ proficiscendum, p. 3, l. 7. — ² carrōrum, 3, 8.

facile perpauci prohibēre¹ possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finis Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, qui nūper pācāti erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullis locis vadō trānsitur.²
 5 Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque³ Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva.

They Decide to March through the Province.

Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs (quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur) existimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs⁴ ut
 10 per suōs finis eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad perfectiōnem comparātis diem dicunt quā diē ad ripam Rhodani omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kāl. Apr., L. Pisōne A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.

Cæsar Resolves to Stop them, and Destroys the Bridge near Geneva.

7. Cæsari cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam
 15 nostram iter facere cōnārī,⁵ mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī,⁶ et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem qui erat ad Genāvam
 20 iubet rescindi.

They Ask Cæsar's Permission.

Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgatiōnis⁷ Nammēius et Verudoctius principem locum obtinēbant, qui dicerent 'sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prō-
 25 vinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter⁸ habērent nullum; rogāre ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.'

Cf. ¹ prohibent, p. 1, l. 14. — ² trānsierant, 5, 4. — ³ proximīs, 3, 10. — ⁴ coēgit, 4, 9. — ⁵ cōnantur, 4, 17. — ⁶ proficiscantur, 5, 3. — ⁷ lēgatiōnem, 3, 14. — ⁸ itinera, 5, 6.

Cæsar Unwilling, but Puts them off to Gain Time.

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occisum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundi,¹ temperātūrōs ab iniuriā et maleficiō existimābat.² 5 Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum militēs quōs imperāverat convenirent,³ lēgātis respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum; si quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.

Cæsar Constructs Fortifications to Stop the Helvetii.

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque 10 quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finis Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem mūrū, in altitudinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō⁴ praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō 15 facilius, si sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

The Helvetii Attempt to Pass, but are Repulsed.

Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, et lēgāti ad eum revertērunt,⁵ negat sē mōre et exemplō populi Rōmānī posse iter ūlli per prōvinciam dare; et, si vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiecti, 20 nāvibus iūctis ratibusque complūribus factis, alii vadis⁶ Rhodanī, quā⁷ minima altitudō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius⁸ noctū, si perrumpere possent cōnāti, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsi, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt. 25

Cf. ¹ facere, p. 6, l. 25. — ² existimābant, 6, 9. — ³ convenient, 6, 12.

— ⁴ perficere, 3, 23. — ⁵ reverterentur, l. 9. — ⁶ vadō, 6, 4. — ⁷ quā, 5, 8.

— ⁸ saepe, 1, 8.

Through the Influence of Dumnorix, a Hæduan, they are Allowed to Pass through the Sequanian Territory.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanis invit¹is propter angustias² ire nōn poterant. His cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanis impetrārent. Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plurimū³ poterat et Helvētiis erat amicus, quod ex eā civitatē Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat; et cupiditatē rēgni adductus novis rēbus studēbat et quam plurimās civitātis suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem
10 suscipit et ā Sēquanis impetrat ut per finis suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur,⁴ obsidēsque uti inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trāseant.

Cæsar Opposes this Movement also.

10. Caesari renūtiātur Helvētiis esse in animō⁵ per
15 agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finis facere, quī nōn longē⁶ ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in Prōvinciā. Id si fieret,⁷ intellegēbat magnō cum periculō⁸ prōvinciae futurum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populi Rōmāni inimicōs, locis patentibus⁹ maximēque frū-
20 mentāriis finitimōs habēret.

He Takes Active Measures.

Ob eas causās ei mūnitiōnī¹⁰ quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliā magnis itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs quae circum

Cf. ¹ invitō, p. 7, l. 16. — ² angustum, 5, 7. — ³ plurimum, 3, 25. — ⁴ paterentur, 6, 10. — ⁵ esse in animō, 6, 24. — ⁶ longissimē, 1, 7. — ⁷ fēbat, 2, 23. — ⁸ pericula, 4, 22. — ⁹ patēbant, 3, 5. — ¹⁰ mūnitiōne, 7, 24.

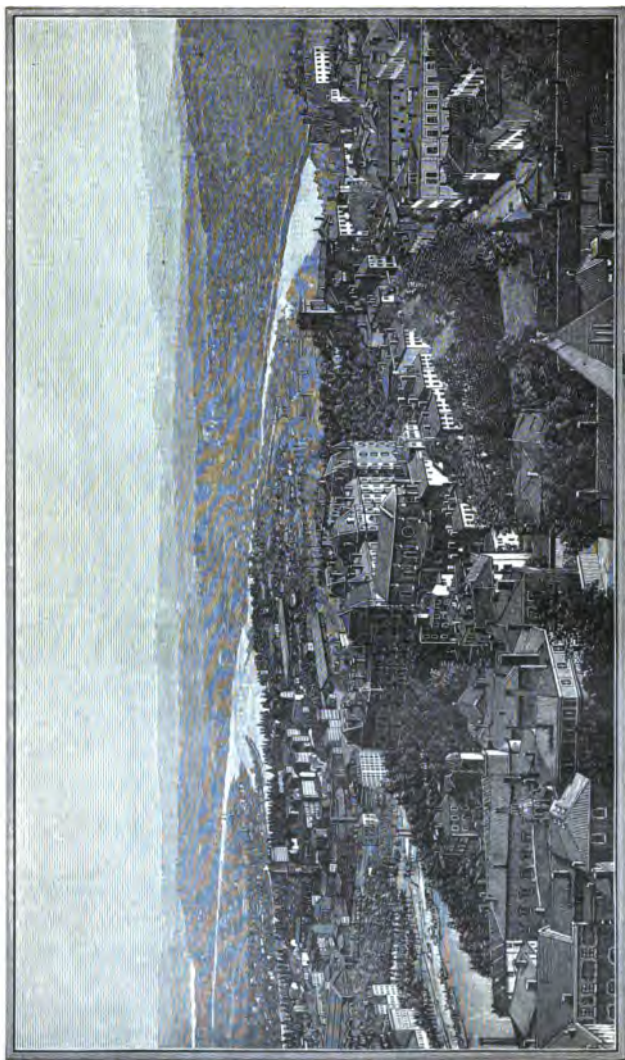


FIG. 7.—JUNCTION OF THE RHONE AND SAÔNE.

Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hibernis ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem¹ Galliam per Alpīs erat; cum his quinque legiōnibus ire contendit.

Some Tribes Resist his March, but he Crosses the Rhone with his Army.

Ibi Ceutrones et Grāiocelī et Caturiges locis superiōribus occupātis itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus his proeliis pulsīs,² ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finis Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit;³ inde in Allobrogum finis, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hi sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī. 10

The Helvetii Commit Depredations on their March, and Several Tribes Ask for Cæsar's Help against them.

11. Helvētīi iam per angustīās et finis Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finis pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab eis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum⁴ auxilium: 'Ita sē omni tempore dē populō Rō- 15 mānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vastārī, liberī [eōrum] in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint.' Eōdem tempore Haeduī Ambarri, necessārii et cōsanguinei Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem⁵ faciunt sēsē dēpopulātis agris nōn facile ab oppidis vim 20 hostium prohibēre. Item Allobroges, qui trāns Rhodanum vicōs⁶ possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī.⁷ Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum, omnibus fortūnis sociōrum⁸ cōsumptis, in 25 Santonōs Helvētīi pervenirent.

Cf. ¹ ulteriōrem, p. 6, l. 16. — ² pulsum, 7, 2. — ³ pervenit, 6, 17. — ⁴ rogāre, 6, 26. — ⁵ certiōrēs, 6, 21. — ⁶ vicōs, 4, 19. — ⁷ reliqua, 4, 19. — ⁸ sociōs, 5, 5.

The Helvetii Attempt to Cross the Saône.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finis Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lēnitāte ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi ratibus ac lintribus iūctis trānsibant. Ubi per
 5 explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partis cōpi-
 ārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse,¹ quartam ferē partem
 citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum
 legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus,² ad eam partem per-
 vēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

Cæsar Cuts to Pieces a Part (the Tigurini), Who had not yet Crossed.

10 Eōs impeditōs et inopinantīs adgressus māgnam partem
 eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunť atque in
 proximās³ silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tiguri-
 nus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divisa
 est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset,⁴ patrum nostrōrum
 15 memoriā L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum
 sub iugum mīserat.

Thus he Wipes out a Long-standing Disgrace.

Ita sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum immortalīum, quae pars



FIG. 8. — COIN OF PISO.



FIG. 9. — COIN OF CASSIUS.

civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō
 intulerat,⁵ ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar

Cf. ¹ trādūxerant, p. 9, l. 12. — ² proficisci, 6, 15. — ³ proximum, 9, 1.
⁴ exire, 5, 7. — ⁵ inferre, 2, 24.

nōn solum publicās sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est ; quod eius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurinī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

Caesar Crosses the Saône.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Arari faciendum cūrat atque 5 ita exercitum trādūcit.

The Helvetii Send an Embassy.

Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū¹ commōti, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant,² ut flūmen trānsirent, illum unō diē fēcisse intellexerent,³ lēgātōs ad eum mittunt ; cūius lēgatiōnis Divicō princeps fuit, qui bellō Cassiānō dux 10 Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Divico's Speech.

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit : 'Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset⁴ atque esse voluisset ; sīn bellō persequī perseverāret, reminiscerētur et 15 veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī quī flūmen trānsissent suis auxilium⁵ ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūti tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret ; sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque 20 suis didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut insidiīs nīterentur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex calamitāte populi Rōmāni et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.'

Cf. ¹ adventū, p. 6, l. 21. — ² cōficiendās, 3, 11. — ³ intellegēbat, 8, 17. — ⁴ cōstitutā, 4, 7. — ⁵ auxilium, 9, 15.

Cæsar's Reply.

14. His Caesar ita respondit : 'Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētīi commemorāssent memoriā tenēret,¹ atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidissent ; quī sī alicūius iniūriæ sibi cō-
 5 scius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre ; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellexeret² quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret.³ Quod sī veteris⁴ contumēliæ oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriarum, quod eō invitō⁵ iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent,
 10 quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriā dēpōnere posse ? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse⁶ admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre.⁷ Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortālis, quō gravius hominēs ex commutātiōne
 15 rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci⁸ velint, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitatem concēdere.⁹

He Proposes Terms, Which are not Accepted.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ab eis sibi dentur, utī ea quæ polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē
 20 iniūriis quās ipsis sociisquē eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eis pācem esse factūrum.' Divicō respondit : 'Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus¹⁰ suis institūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērint ;¹¹ ēius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem.' Hōc respōnsō datō
 25 discessit.

Cf. ¹ tenēbat, p. 7, l. 1. — ² intellegēbat, 8, 17. — ³ putābat, 7, 3. — ⁴ veteris, 11, 16. — ⁵ invitō, 7, 16. — ⁶ ferre, l. 3. — ⁷ pertinent, 1, 9. — ⁸ ultus, 11, 1. — ⁹ concēdendum, 7, 3. — ¹⁰ māiōribus, 11, 20. — ¹¹ cōsuēsse, l. 13.

Slight Reverse of Cæsar's Cavalry.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociis coāctum¹ habēbat, praemittit qui videant quās in partis hostēs iter faciant. Qui cupidius² novissimum agmen inse- 5 cūti aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostris cadunt.

The Helvetii Move on; Cæsar Follows.

Quō proeliō sublāti Helvētīi, quod quīngentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam³ et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs 10 lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapinis [pābulātiōnibus] populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnis milibus passuum 15 interesset.

The Hædui Neglect to Furnish Grain.

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent publicē polliciti flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus⁴ (ut ante dictum est) posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn erant, sed nē 20 pābuli quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat;⁵ eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvēxerat proptereā minus ūti poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētīi āverterant, ā quibus discēdere⁶ nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Hæduī; cōnferri, comportārī, adesse dicere. 25

Cf. ¹ coēgit, p. 4, l. 9. — ² cupidī, 3, 1. — ³ nōn numquam, 7, 22. — ⁴ septentrionēs, 2, 4. — ⁵ suppeteret, 3, 10. — ⁶ discessit, 12, 25.

Cæsar Summons their Chiefs and Upbraids them.

Ubi sē diūtius dūci intellēxit¹ et diem instāre quō diē frūmentum militibus metiri oportēret, convocātis eōrum principibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, — in



FIG. 10. — LOADING BOATS WITH SUPPLIES.

his Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātui praeerat quem
 5 vergobretum appellant Haedui, quī creātur annuus et vitæ
 necisque in suōs habet potestātem, — graviter² eōs accūsāt,
 quod, cum neque emī neque ex agris sūmī³ posset, tam
 necessariō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab eis nōn

Cf. ¹ intellēgēbat, p. 8, l. 17. — ² gravius, 12, 14. — ³ sūmptūrum, 7, 8.

sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit,¹ multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

Liscus Explains the Situation: a Party Opposed to the Romans Prevents the Supply.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: ‘Esse nōn nullōs² quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem³ plūrimum valeat, qui privātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiosā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrēre nē frumentum cōferant⁴ quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam principātum⁵ Galliae obtinēre⁶ nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; 10 neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduis libertātem sint ēreptūrī.⁷ Ab eisdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus ēnūtiārī;⁸ hōs ā sē coērcēri nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessariō rem coactus Caesarī ēnūtiārīt, intelligere sēsē 15 quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.’

Liscus Privately Discloses the Ambition and Treachery of Dumnorix, who Favors the Helvetii.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Lisci Dumnorigem, Diviciāci frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat,⁹ celeriter concilium dimittit, 20 Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audācius.¹⁰ Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vērā: ‘Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter liberalitātem grātiā,¹¹ cupidum rērum novārum. Complūris annōs portōria 25

Cf. ¹ suscipit, p. 8, l. 10. — ² nōn nullis, 6, 4. — ³ plēbī, 3, 21. — ⁴ cōnferri, 13, 25. — ⁵ principātum, 3, 20. — ⁶ obtinēbant, 6, 23. — ⁷ ēripuit, 4, 11. — ⁸ ēnūtiātā, 4, 4. — ⁹ nōlēbat, 13, 24. — ¹⁰ audācius, 13, 9. — ¹¹ grātiā, 8, 5.

reliquaque omnia Haeduorum vectigalia parvō pretiō redēpta habēre, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licēri audeat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātis ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnū
 5 numerum equitātū suō sūptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque solum domī sed etiam apud finitimās¹ civitātis largiter posse; atque hūiūs potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre
 10 et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātis conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiis propter eam adfinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēiūs dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Si quid accidat
 15 Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendi² venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā, dēspērāre.³ Reperiēbat⁴ etiam in quaerendō⁵ Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis⁶ ante diēbus esset factum, initium⁶ [ēiūs] fugae
 20 factum ā Dumnorige atque ēiūs equitibus, — nam equitātū, quem auxiliō Caesari Haeduī miserant, Dumnorix praeerat;⁷ eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

Caesar Thinks that Dumnorix should be Punished.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, — quod per finis Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset,⁸
 25 quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et civitātis sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accusārētur, — satis esse causae arbitrābātur⁹ quā rē in

Cf. ¹ finitimōs, p. 8, l. 20. — ² obtinēre, 15, 9. — ³ reperit, 15, 23. — ⁴ quaerit, 15, 23. — ⁵ paucī, 13, 7. — ⁶ initium, 2, 1. — ⁷ praeerat, 14, 4. — ⁸ cūrat, 11, 5. — ⁹ arbitrantur, 4, 15.

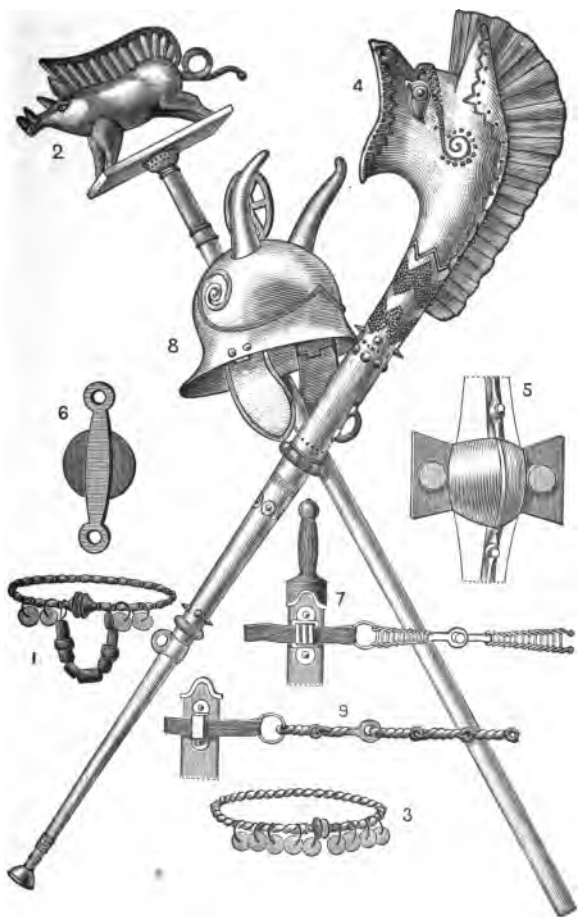


FIG. 11. — GALLIC REMAINS.

1 and 3. Necklaces with amber and coral pendants. 2. Military standard. 4. Bronze trumpet (carnyx). 5. Iron boss of shield. 6. Iron holder. 7. Sword-hilt and girdle. 8. Iron helmet. 9. Iron belt-chain.

eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitatem animadvertere iubēret.

But Summons Diviciacus, Whom he does not Wish to Offend.

His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntatem,¹ ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnō- 5 verat : nam nē ēius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur,² Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et cotidiānis³ interpretibus remōtis per C. Valerium Procillum, principem⁴ Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum 10 fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur ; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō [Gallōrum] dē Dumnorige sint dicta ; et ostendit⁵ quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit ; petit atque hortātur ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse de eō, causā cōgnitā, statuāt⁶ vel civitatem 15 statuere iubeat.

Diviciacus Pleads for his Brother's Pardon.

20. Diviciācus, multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret : ' Scire sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris⁷ capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domi 20 atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per sē crēvisset ; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā sed paene ad perniciem suā ūterētur ;⁸ sēsē tamen et amorē frāternō et existimātiōne volgi commovērī. Quod si quid ei ā Caesare gravius accidisset,⁹ 25 cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nēmīnem¹⁰

Cf. ¹ voluntāte, p. 6, l. 26. — ² cōnārī, 6, 15. — ³ cotidiānis, 1, 12. — ⁴ principibus, 14, 2. — ⁵ ostendit, 7, 20. — ⁶ statuit, 9, 25. — ⁷ dolōre, 3, 1. — ⁸ ūtī, 13, 23. — ⁹ accidat, 16, 14. — ¹⁰ nēmō, 16, 3.

existimātūrum¹ nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.²

And for his Sake Dumnorix is Spared.

Numi Haec cum plūribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prendit; cōsōlātus rogat finem ōrandi faciat; 5 tantī ēius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit utī et rei pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntāti ac precibus³ condōnet. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur,⁴ prōpōnit;⁵ monet ut in reliquum tempus omnis 10 suspiciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātri condōnāre dicit. Dumnorigī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scire possit.

Cæsar Prepares for a Battle.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus⁶ certior factus hostīs sub monte cōsēdisse īilia passuum ab ipsius castris octō, 15 quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, qui cōgnōscerent misit. Renūtiātum⁷ est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā⁸ T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eis ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsili⁹ sit 20 ostendit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris peritissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.¹⁰

Cf. ¹ existimābat, p. 7, l. 5. — ² āverterant, 13, 23. — ³ precibus, 15, 1. — ⁴ queritur, 15, 3. — ⁵ prōpōnit, 15, 5. — ⁶ explōrātōrēs, 10, 5. — ⁷ renūtiātur, 8, 14. — ⁸ vigiliā, 10, 7. — ⁹ cōnsilia, 15, 13. — ¹⁰ praemittit, 13, 4.

Considius, being Panic-stricken, Delays the Plan.

22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius¹ mille et quīgentis passibus abesset,² neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut



FIG. 12. — CAVALRYMAN CHARGING. FIG. 13. — CAVALRYMAN WITH *Vexillum*.

ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cōgnitus³ esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dicit montem quem ā Labiēnō
occupārī⁴ voluerit⁵ ab hostibus tenēri; id sē ā Gallicis armis
atque insignibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum⁶ collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ei
praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius
cōpiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique ūnō
tempore in hostis impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs
exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per
explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suis tenēri et

Cf. ¹ longē, p. 8. l. 16. — ² absunt, 1, 7. — ³ cōgnōverat, 17, 5. — ⁴ occupātis, 9, 5. — ⁵ velint, 12, 15. — ⁶ proximās, 10, 12.

Helvêtiōs castra mōvisse¹ et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vidisset prō visō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōsuērat intervāllō, hostis sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

Cæsar Turns towards Bibracte to Get Supplies. The Helvetii, Emboldened, Follow him.

5 23. Postridiē ēius diēi, quod omninō² biduum supererat cum exercitui frumentum metiri³ oportet,⁴ et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius⁵ milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frumentariæ prōspiciendum existimāvit; *itaque* iter ab Helvêtiis āvertit
10 ac Bibracte ire contendit.⁶ Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemili, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvêtii, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis quod pridīe superiōribus locis occupātis proelium nōn commisissent,⁷ sive eō quod rē frumentariā⁸
15 interclūdī posse cōfiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō⁹ agmine insequi¹⁰ ac lacessere¹¹ coepērunt.

Both Sides Prepare for Battle.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitātumque quī sustinēret
20 hostium impetum¹² misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit¹³ legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre¹⁴ proximē cōscripserat et omnia auxilia conlocārī, [ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā] sarcinās in ūnum locum

Cf. ¹ movent, p. 13, l. 1. — ² omninō, 6, 18. — ³ metiri, 14, 2. — ⁴ oportet, 14, 2. — ⁵ amplius, 13, 15. — ⁶ contendit, 18, 21. — ⁷ committeret, 19, 9. — ⁸ frumentariis, 8, 19. — ⁹ novissimum, 13, 5. — ¹⁰ insecuti, 13, 5. — ¹¹ lacessere, 13, 11. — ¹² impetus, 19, 11. — ¹³ instruit, 19, 8. — ¹⁴ citerioris, 9, 6.

cōferri, et eum ab his quī in superiōre aciē cōstitērant¹
mūniri iussit. Helvētīi cum omnibus suis carris secūti,



FIG. 14. — SOLDIERS MARCHING WITH PACKS (*sarcinae*).

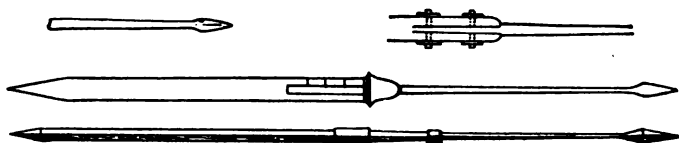
impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsi cōfertis-
simā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub
prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

5

Cf. ¹ cōstitissent, p. 11, l. 23.

The Battle.

25. Caesar primum suō deinde omnium ex cōspectū¹ remōtis equis, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum fecērunt. Gallis māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedimentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtis ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et conligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā

FIG. 15. — ROMAN JAVELINS (*pila*).

impeditā² satis commodē pūgnārē poterant, multī ut diū
10 iactātō brachiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem volneribus dēfessi et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mille passuum, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus³ nostris, Bōii et Tulingī, qui hominum milibus circiter xv agmen
15 hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs *ab* latere apertō adgressi⁴ circumvenire; et id cōspicāti Helvētīi, qui in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmāni conversa signa bipartitō intulērunt: prima et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac
20 submōtis resisteret; tertia, ut venientis sustinēret.

Cf. ¹ cōspectū, p. 9, l. 16. — ² impeditōs, 10, 10. — ³ succēssērunt, 21, 5. — ⁴ adgressus, 10, 10.

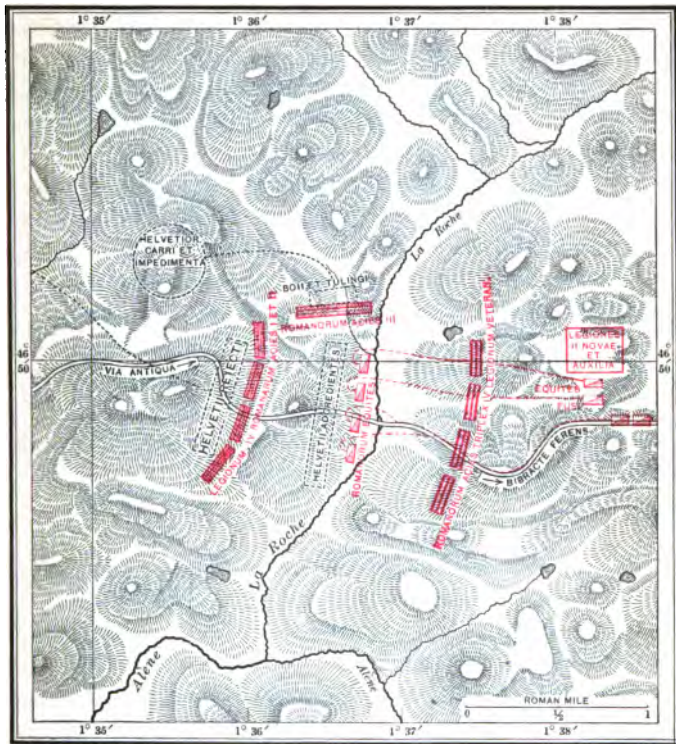


FIG. 16. — DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII.

The Helvetii are Defeated with Great Loss. They Retreat.

26. Ita ancipiti proeliō diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre¹ nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alteri sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alteri ad impedimenta² et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum 5

Cf. ¹ *sustinēret*, p. 20, l. 19. — ² *impedimenta*, 21, 3.

sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pūgnātum est, propterea quod prō vallō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientis tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūlli¹ inter carrōs rēdāsque
 5 matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque volnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potiti² sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter³ iērunt: [nūllam partem
 10 noctis itinere intermissō] in finis Lingonum diē quartō pervēnērunt,⁴ cum et propter volnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum⁵ nostrī [triduum morātī] eōs sequi nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque misit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī si iūvissent, sē
 15 eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse triduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis⁶ eōs sequi coepit.

Negotiations for Surrender.

27. Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum misērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī
 20 flentēs⁷ pācem petissent,⁸ atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum⁹ exspectāre iussisset, pārūrunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs,¹⁰ arma, servōs qui ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit.

Six Thousand Helvetii Flee, but Later are Captured.

Dum ea conquiruntur et cōferuntur,¹¹ [nocte intermissā]
 25 circiter hominum milia vi ēius pāgi¹² quī Verbigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterriti,¹³ nē armīs trāditis suppliciō¹⁴

Cf. ¹ nōn nūllōs, p. 15, l. 5. — ² potiri, 2, 16. — ³ continenter, 1, 10. — ⁴ pervēnit, 10, 8. — ⁵ occisum, 7, 2. — ⁶ cōpiās, 19, 7. — ⁷ flēns, 18, 3. — ⁸ peteret, 18, 3. — ⁹ adventū, 16, 12. — ¹⁰ obsidēs, 12, 18. — ¹¹ cōferri, 21, 1. — ¹² pāgus, 10, 12. — ¹³ perterritōs, 20, 12. — ¹⁴ suppliciō, 17, 6.

adficerentur, sive spē salūtis inducti, quod in tantā multitudīne dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō

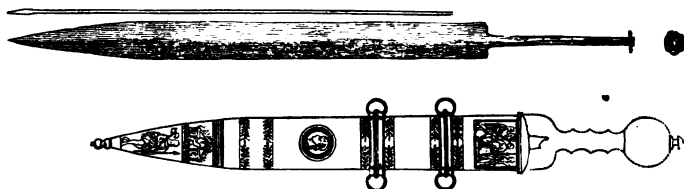


FIG. 17.—ROMAN SWORDS (*gladii*).

ignōrārī posse existimārent,¹ primā nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finisque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finis ierant, his
uti conquīrerent² et reducerent, si sibi pūrgātī esse vellent,
imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit;³ reliquōs
omnis, obsidibus, armis, perfugis trāditis in dēditionem⁴
accēpit.

The Helvetii Forced to Return.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finis suōs, unde erant
profecti, reverti iussit; et quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis
domi nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus impe-
rāvit ut eis frūmenti cōpiam⁵ facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōs-
que, quōs incenderant,⁶ restituere⁷ iussit. Id eā maximē
ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī disces-
serant⁸ vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germāni, qui
trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finis
trānsirent, et finitimī⁹ Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque
essent. Bōiōs, petentibus Haeduis, quod ēgregiā¹⁰ virtūte
erant cōgniti, ut in finibus suis conlocārent, concessit;¹¹

Cf. ¹ existimātūrum, p. 18, l. 1. — ² conquīruntur, 24, 24. — ³ habitūrum, 24, 15. — ⁴ dēditione, 24, 18. — ⁵ cōpiam, 14, 3. — ⁶ incendunt, 4, 20. — ⁷ restitūtus, 16, 14. — ⁸ discēdere, 20, 12. — ⁹ finitimās, 16, 6. — ¹⁰ ēgregiam, 17, 5. — ¹¹ concēdere, 12, 17.

quibus illi agrōs dedērunt, quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātisque condiționem atque ipsi erant recēpērunt.

Census of the Tribes Before and After their March.

29. In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae¹ sunt litteris Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis
5 nōminātim ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō exisset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim *quot* puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum milium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum milium XXXVI, Lato-
brigōrum XIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex his
10 quī arma ferre possent, ad milia XCII. Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x.

Gallic Chiefs Congratulate Caesar.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī,
15 principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: 'Intellegere sēsē, tametsi prō veteribus² Helvētiōrum iniūriis populi Rōmānī ab his poenās bellō repetisset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populi Rōmānī accidisse; ³ propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimis rēbus
20 domōs suās Helvētiī reliquissent,⁴ utī tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentur⁵ locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent,⁶ quem ex omni Galliā opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque civitātis stipendiāriās habērent.'

They Request a Council.

25 Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere liceret:⁷ sēsē habēre

Cf. ¹ reperiēbat, p. 16, l. 17. — ² veteris, 12, 7. — ³ accidisset, 17, 25. — ⁴ relinquēbātur, 8, 1. — ⁵ potitī, 24, 7. — ⁶ dēligitur, 3, 14. — ⁷ liceat, 6, 26.

quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō peteré vel-
lent. Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre
iūrāndō nē quis ēnūntiāret,¹ nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō
mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

Private Interview with Caesar.

31. Eō conciliō dimissō idem principēs civitātum qui 5
ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt² petiēruntque uti
sibi sēcrētō [in occultō] dē suā omniumque salūte³ cum eō
agere⁴ liceret. Eā rē impetrātā⁵ sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesari
ad pedēs prōiēcērunt:⁶ ‘Nōn minus sē id contendere et
labōrāre, nē ea quae dixissent ēnūntiārentur, quam uti ea 10
quae vellent impetrārent; proptereā quod, si ēnūntiātum
esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.’

Speech of Diviciacus the Haëduan. He Complains of the Encroachments
of the Germans.

Locūtus⁷ est prō his Diviciācus Haëduus: ‘Galliae tōtius
factionēs esse duās; hārum alterius principātum tenēre
Haëduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantōpere dē poten- 15
tātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse uti
ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germāni mercēde arcesserentur.
Hōrum primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; postea-
quam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs feri ac
barbari adamāssent, trāductōs plūris; nunc esse in Galliā 20
ad centum et xx milium numerum. Cum his Haëduōs
eōrumque clientis semel atque iterum armis contendisse;
māgnam calamitātem pulsōs⁸ accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem,
omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmississe.⁹ Quibus proe-
liis calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populi 25
Rōmāni hospitio atque amicitia plūrimum ante in Galliā

Cf. ¹ ēnūntiārī, p. 15, l. 14. — ² revertī, 25, 11. — ³ salūtis, 25, 1. —
— ⁴ ēgit, 11, 12. — ⁵ impetrat, 8, 10. — ⁶ prōiēcissent, 24, 19. — ⁷ locūtī,
24, 19. — ⁸ pulsā, 9, 6. — ⁹ āmissis, 25, 11.

potuissent, coāctōs¹ esse Sēquanis obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrāndō civitātem obstringere² sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs³ neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum dīcīōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī civitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex civitāte prōfūgissee et Rōmam ad senātum vēnissee auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrāndō neque obsidibus
 10 tenērētur.⁴

The Hard Lot of the Sequani.

7 Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanis quam Haeduīs victīs accidissee, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdissee⁵ tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, qui esset optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvissee, et nunc dē alterā
 15 parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, proptereā quod paucis mēnsibus⁶ ante Harūdum milia hominum xxiiii ad eum vēnissee, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucis annis utī omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsirent; neque enim cōferendum
 20 esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam.

Tyranny of Ariovistus.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vice-rit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque⁷ liberōs
 25 poscere,⁸ et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque⁹ ēdere, si qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius¹⁰ sustinēri.

Cf. ¹coāctus, p. 15, l. 15.—²obstrictās, 8, 9.—³repetīisset, 26, 17.—⁴tenēri, 19, 6.—⁵cōnsēdissee, 18, 14.—⁶mēnsium, 4, 23.—⁷quisque, 17, 13.—⁸poposcit, 24, 23.—⁹cruciātum, 27, 12.—¹⁰diū, 23, 1.

The Gauls have no Hope but in Caesar.

Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxili, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium aliās sēdis remōtās ā Germānis petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accadat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quī 5 dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victoriā vel nōmine populi Rōmāni dēterrere posse nē māior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcatur,¹ Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti iniuriā posse dēfendere.’ 10

The Sequani Remain Silent. Diviciacus Shows their Desperate Condition.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Diviciācō habitā omnēs quī aderant māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt.² Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs³ ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēteri facerent, sed tristis capite dēmissō terram intuēri. Eius rei quae causa esset mirātus ex ipsis quae- 15 siit.⁴ Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādē tristitiā taciti permanēre. Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, idem Diviciācus Haedius respondit : ‘Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum,⁵ quod sōli nē in occultō 20 quidem queri⁶ neque auxilium implōrāre audērent, absensque Ariovisti crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās⁷ darētur, Sēquanis vērō, quī intrā finis suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruci- 25 atūs essent perferendi.’

Cf. ¹ trāductōs, p. 27, l. 20. — ² coepit, 24, 16. — ³ ūnum, 28, 5. — ⁴ quaerendō, 16, 18. — ⁵ reliquās, 26, 23. — ⁶ querātur, 18, 9. — ⁷ facultāte, 7, 4.

Caesar's Reasons for Checking Ariovistus.

33. His rēbus cōgnitis¹ Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbis cōfirmāvit, pollicitusque² est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; māgnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriis factūrum. Hāc ōrāti-
 5 ōne habitā concilium dimisit. Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur³ quā rē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret: imprimis, quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque⁴ saepenumērō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne⁵ vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque
 10 obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populi Rōmāni turpissimum sibi et rei pūblicae esse arbitrābātur.⁶ Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere⁷ Rhēnum trānsire et in Galliam māgnam eōrum multitudinem venire, populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat;
 15 neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs⁸ existimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fēcissent, in prōvinciam exirent atque inde in Italiā contenderent; [praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus divideret]; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē
 20 occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spiritūs, tantam adrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn viderētur.

He Requests an Interview with Ariovistus, Who Declines.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent uti aliquem locum medium
 25 utriusque conloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summis utriusque rēbus cum eō agere.⁹ Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: 'Si quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē

Cf. ¹ cōgnitus, p. 19, l. 4. — ² polliciti, 13, 18. — ³ hortātur, 17, 14. — ⁴ cōsanguineī, 9, 19. — ⁵ diciōne, 28, 5. — ⁶ arbitrābātur, 16, 28. — ⁷ cōnsuērat, 20, 3. — ⁸ temperātūrōs, 7, 5. — ⁹ agere, 27, 8.

ad eum ventūrum fuisse; si quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venire oportere.¹ Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partis Galliae venire audere² quās Caesar possideret, neque exercitū sine māgnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in unum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidēri³ quid in 5 suā Galliā, quam bellō vicisset, aut Caesari aut omninō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.'

Caesar Sends a Second Message Stating his Demands.

35. His respōnsis ad Caesarem relātis, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātis mittit: 'Quoniam tantō suō populique Rōmāni beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōsulātū 10 suō rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in conloquium venire invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūni⁴ rē dicendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: primum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius⁵ trāns 15 Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde obsidēs quōs haberet ab Haeduis redderet, Sēquanisque permitteret ut quōs illi haberent voluntāte eiūs reddere illis liceret; nēve Haeduōs iniuriā lacesseret,⁶ nēve his sociisque eōrum bellum inferret. Si id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpe- 20 tuam grātiā atque amicitiam cum eō futūram; si nōn impetrāret,⁷ sēsē, — quoniam M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus senātus cēnсуisset uti quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblīcae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amicōs populī Rōmāni dēfenderet, — sē Haeduō- 25 rum iniuriās nōn neglētūrum.'

Ariovistus's Haughty Reply.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: 'Iūs⁸ esse bellī ut

Cf. ¹ oportēbat, p. 4, l. 6. — ² audērent, 29, 21. — ³ vidērentur, 6, 9. — ⁴ commūnī, 27, 1. — ⁵ amplius, 20, 8. — ⁶ lacessere, 13, 11. — ⁷ impetrātā, 27, 8. — ⁸ iūris, 26, 1.

quī vicissent eis quōs vicissent quem ad modum vellent
imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius
praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōsuēsse.¹
Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum
5 suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in
suō iūre impediri. Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortunam
temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stipendi-
āriōs² esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere quī
suō adventū vectigālīa³ sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē
10 obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque his neque eōrum sociīs
iniūriā bellum inlātūrum,⁴ sī in eō manērent quod convēnis-
set stipendiumque quotannis penderent; sī id nōn fēcis-
sent, longē eis frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum.
Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn
15 neglētūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē⁵ contendisse.
Cum vellet, congregederētur; intellēctūrum quid invictī Ger-
mānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs xiv tēctum
nōn subissent, virtūte possent.’

Complaints of the Hædui and Treveri. Cæsar Hastens against Ariovistus.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur,⁶
20 et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haeduī ques-
tum⁷ quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī
essent, finis eōrum populārentur;⁸ sēsē nē obsidibus quidem
datis pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem,
pāgōs centum Suēvōrum ad ripam Rhēnī cōnsēdisse,⁹
25 quī Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; his praeesse Nasuam et
Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer com-
mōtus mātūrandum¹⁰ sibi existimāvit, nē, sī nova manus
Suēvōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset,
minus facile resisti posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam

Cf. ¹ cōnsuēsce, p. 30, l. 13. — ² stipendiāriās, 26, 24. — ³ vectigā-
lia, 16, 1. — ⁴ inferret, 31, 20. — ⁵ perniciem, 17, 23. — ⁶ relātīs, 31, 8.
— ⁷ querī, 29, 21. — ⁸ populābantur, 9, 13. — ⁹ cōnsēdisset, 28, 13. —
¹⁰ mātūrat, 6, 15.

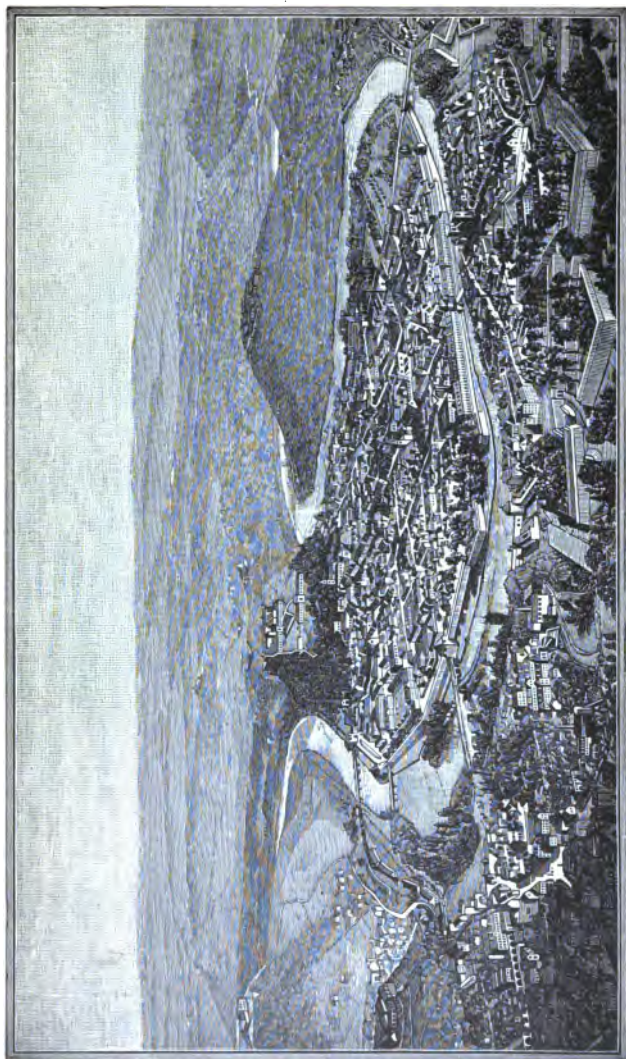


FIG. 18. — BESANÇON (*Vesontio*).

celerrimē¹ potuit comparātā, māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Both Strive to Reach Vesontio.

38. Cum tridui² viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, 5 [triduique viam ā suis finibus prōcessisse]. Id nē accideret³ māgnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimābat. Namque omnium rerū quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nātūrā loci sic mūniēbātur ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem,⁴ proptereā 10 quod flūmen Dubis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sexcentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine, ita ut rādicēs montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem 15 efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnīs nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit,⁵ occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

The Roman Soldiers are Panic-stricken.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontionem rei frūmentariae commeātusque⁶ causā morātur,⁷ ex percontātiōne nostrōrum 20 vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingenti māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibili virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armis esse praedicābant, — saepenumērō⁸ sēsē cum his congressōs⁹ nē voltum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse, — tantus subitō timor omnem exer- 25 citum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentis animōsque perturbāret. Hic primum ortus¹⁰ est ā tribūnis militum,

Cf. ¹ celeriter, p. 15, l. 20. — ² trīduum, 24, 12. — ³ accidat, 29, 4. — ⁴ facultās, 29, 23. — ⁵ contenderent, 30, 18. — ⁶ commeātū, 31, 4. — ⁷ morāti, 24, 12. — ⁸ saepenumērō, 30, 8. — ⁹ congrederētur, 32, 16. — ¹⁰ oriuntur, 2, 5.

praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petēbat ut ēius voluntāte¹ discēdere
 5 liceret; nōnnūlli pudōre adducti, ut timōris suspiciōnem vitarent,² remanēbant. Hī neque voltum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditi³ in tabernāculis aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus⁴ suis commūne periculum miserābantur. Volgō tōtis castris testa-
 10 tāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulatim etiam ei qui māgnū in castris ūsum habēbant, militēs centuriōnēsque quique equitātui praeerant, perturbābantur. Qui sē ex his minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris et māgnitudinem silvārum quae
 15 intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē⁵ supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōn nūlli etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferri iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientis militēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

Caesar Makes Light of their Fears, and Proposes to Advance at Once.

20 40. Haec cum animadvertisset,⁶ convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitis⁷ centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: primum quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum⁸ putārent. ‘Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populi
 25 Rōmāni amicitiam adpetisse; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam⁹ ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret?’¹⁰ Sibi quidem persuādērī, cōgnitis suis postulātis atque aequitate conditionum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populi Rōmāni

Cf. ¹ voluntāte, p. 31, l. 18. — ² vitet, 18, 10. — ³ abdidērunt, 10, 12. — ⁴ familiārem, 17, 10. — ⁵ commodē, 22, 9. — ⁶ animadvertit, 29, 12. — ⁷ adhibet, 18, 7. — ⁸ cōgitandam, 30, 6. — ⁹ quemquam, 17, 19. — ¹⁰ iūdicāssent, 26, 23.

grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque āmentīā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentiā dēspērārent?¹ Factum ēius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonis ā Gaiō Mariō pulsus nōn minōrem laudem 5 exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritis² vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servilī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid



FIG. 19. — MARIUS.

ūsus³ ac disciplina quam ā nobis accēpissent sublevārent.⁴ Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē boni cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermis sine causā 10 timuissent, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.⁵

Dēnique⁶ hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepe-numerō Helvētiī congressi, nōn solum in suis sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superārint; quī tamen parēs⁷ esse nostrō exercitui nōn potuerint. Si quōs adversum proelium et 15 fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, si quaerent, reperire posse diūturnitāte belli dēfatigātis Gallis Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsis castris sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestā-

Cf. ¹ dēspērāre, p. 16, l. 17. — ² meritis, 9, 16. — ³ ūsum, 34, 2. —

⁴ sublevētur, 15, 1. — ⁵ superāverint, 15, 11. — ⁶ dēnique, 19, 12. —

⁷ parem, 26, 1.

tem fēcisset, dēspērantis iam dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō adortum,¹ magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vicisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capi
5 posse.

Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferrent, facere adroganter, cum aut dē officiō² imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescribere³ vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs,
10 Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agris frūmenta mātūra; ⁴ dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs.

Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī⁵ dicantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scire enim, quibuscumque⁶ exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortunam
15 dēfuisse, aut aliquō⁷ facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, fēlicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.⁸

Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem cōnlātūrus fuisset praesentātūrum, et proximā nocte dē quartā vigiliā castra
20 mōtūrum, ut quam primum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor⁹ atque officium an timor plūs valeret.¹⁰ Quod si praetereā nēmō sequātur,¹¹ tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē
25 et propter virtūtem cōnfidēbat maximē.

Effect of Caesar's Speech. He Advances.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās¹² bellī gerendī innāta est; princepsque¹³ decima legiō per tribūnōs

Cf. ¹ adortus, p. 11, l. 17. — ² officiō, 34, 26. — ³ praescriberet, 32, 4. — ⁴ mātūra, 13, 20. — ⁵ lātūrōs, 34, 19. — ⁶ quaecumque, 29, 4. — ⁷ aliquem, 30, 24. — ⁸ perspectā, 34, 28. — ⁹ pudōre, 34, 5. — ¹⁰ valeat, 15, 5. — ¹¹ secūtī, 34, 2. — ¹² cupiditāte, 8, 7. — ¹³ princeps, 10, 19.

militum ei grātiās¹ ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnis militum et primōrum ordinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt uti Caesarī satisfacerent :² 'Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse
 neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse
 existimāvisse.' Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere ex-
 quisitō per Diviciācum, quod ex aliis ei maximam fidem³
 habēbat, ut milium amplius quinquāgintā circuitū locis aper-
 tis exercitum dūceret, dē quartā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus
 est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explorātō-
 ribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs milia pas-
 suum quattuor et vīginti abesse.

Ariovistus Requests an Interview. Caesar's Precautions.

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit : 'Quod antea dē conloquiō⁴ postulāsset, id per sē
 fieri licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse existimāret.' Nōn respuit condiōnem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānitātem reverti arbitrābātur, cum id quod antea petenti⁵ dēnegāsset ultrō pollicērētur; māgnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis tantis populique Rōmānī
 in eum beneficiis, cōgnitis suis postulātis,⁶ fore uti pertināciā dēsisteret.

Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar
 addūceret : 'Verērī sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.' Caesar, quod neque conloquium interpositā causā tolli⁷ volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equi-

Cf. ¹ grātiā, p. 31, l. 12. — ² satisfaciant, 12, 21. — ³ fidem, 17, 11.
 — ⁴ conloquiō, 30, 25. — ⁵ petēbat, 34, 4. — ⁶ postulārent, 30, 24. —
⁷ tolleret, 22, 2.

tātui committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis, eō legiōnariōs milites legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōfidēbat,¹ impōnere, ut praesidium² quam amicissimum, si quid opus³ 5 factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inridiculē quidam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum;⁴ ad equum rescribere.

Caesar Pleads with Ariovistus, but Renews his Demands.

43. Plānitēs erat māgna et in eā tumultus terrēnus satis 10 grandis. Hīc locus aequō ferē⁵ spatiō ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equis dēvēxerat passibus ducentis ab eō tumultō cōstituit. Item equitēs Ariovisti parī intervallō cōstitērunt.⁶ Ariovistus ex equis ut conlo- 15 querentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad conloquium addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō orātiōnis sua senātusque in eum beneficia commemorāvit,⁷ quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amicus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse et prō 20 māgnis hominum officiis cōsuēsse tribui docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac liberalitātē suā ac senātus ea praemia cōsecutum. Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Haeduis intercēderent, quae senātus 25 cōnsulta, quotiēns quamque honorifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtius Galliae principātum Haedui tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam adpetissent. 'Populi Rōmāni hanc esse cōsuētūdinem⁸ ut sociōs atque amicōs nōn modo sui nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitātē,

Cf. ¹ cōfidēbat, p. 36, l. 25. — ² praesidiō, 22, 15. — ³ opus, 30, 27. — ⁴ habuit, 25, 7. — ⁵ ferē, 26, 14. — ⁶ cōstitērant, 21, 1. — ⁷ commemorāssent, 12, 2. — ⁸ cōsuētūdinem, 28, 21.



FIG. 20. — BELFORT.

honore auctiores vellet esse ; quod vero ad amicitiam populi Rōmāni adtulissent, id eis eripi¹ quis pati posset?' Postulavit deinde eadem quae legatis in mandatis dederat : ne aut Haeduīs aut eorum sociis bellum inferret ; obsides redderet ;² si nullam partem Germānōrum domum remittere³ 5 posset, at ne quos amplius Rhēnum transire pateretur.

Ariovistus Arrogantly Repeats his Claims.

44. Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit ; de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit :⁴ 'Transisse Rhēnum sese non sua sponte, sed rogatum et accessum a Gallis ; non sine magna spe magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque⁵ 10 reliquisse ; sedis habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos ; stipendium capere iure⁶ belli quod victores victis imponere consueverint. Non sese Gallis, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse ; omnis Galliae civitatis ad se oppugnandum venire ac contra se castra habuisse ; eas⁷ 15 omnis copias a se uno proelio pulsas ac superatas esse. Si iterum⁸ experiri velint, se iterum paratum esse decertare ; si pace uti velint, iniquum esse de stipendio recusare quod sua voluntate ad id tempus pependerit.'⁹

Amicitiam populi Rōmāni sibi ornamentum et praesidium,¹⁰ 20 non detrimentum esse oportere, idque se hac spe petisse. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittatur et dediticii¹¹ subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese recusaturum populi Rōmāni amicitiam quam adpetierit.¹²

Quod multitudinem Germānorum in Galliam traducat, id¹³ 25 se sui munienti, non Galliae impugnandae causam facere : eius rei testimonium esse quod nisi rogatus non venerit, et quod bellum non intulerit, sed defenderit. Se prius in

Cf. ¹ erepturi, p. 15, l. 12. — ² redditurum, 32, 10. — ³ praedicabant, 33, 23. — ⁴ propinquas, 16, 10. — ⁵ ius, 31, 27. — ⁶ iterum, 31, 8. — ⁷ penderent, 32, 12. — ⁸ praesidium, 38, 4. — ⁹ dediticiorum, 25, 2. — ¹⁰ adpetissent, 38, 27.

Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populi Rōmāni Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressum.¹ Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessionēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut
 5 illam nostram. Ut ipsi concēdi² nōn oportēret, si in nostrōs finis impetum faceret, sic item nōs esse iniquōs quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperitū³ esse rērum ut nōn
 10 scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs, in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populi Rōmāni ūsōs esse.

Dēbere⁴ sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amicitīā quem
 15 exercitum in Galliā habeat suī opprimendī causā habēre. Qui nisi dēcēdat⁵ atque exercitum dēducāt ex his regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod si eum interfēcērit,⁶ multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populi Rōmāni grātum esse factūrum; id sē ab ipsis per
 20 eōrum nūntiōs compertum⁷ habēre quōrum omnium grātiā atque amicitiam ēius morte redimere⁸ posset. Quod si dīcessisset et liberam possessionē Galliae sibi trādidisset,⁹ māgnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum, et quaecumque bella geri vellet sine ūllō ēius labōre et periculō cōfectūrum.¹⁰

Cæsar Does not Yield.

25 45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quā rē negōtiō¹¹ dēsistere nōn posset: 'Neque suam neque populi Rōmāni cōsuētūdinem pati¹² utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse

Cf. ¹ ēgressī, p. 25, l. 4. — ² concessit, 25, 20. — ³ imperitōs, 36, 3. — ⁴ dēbeant, 15, 9. — ⁵ dēcēdere, 28, 15. — ⁶ interfēcērat, 10, 15. — ⁷ compertō, 36, 15. — ⁸ redimere, 32, 23. — ⁹ trāditis, 25, 8. — ¹⁰ cōfectō, 26, 14. — ¹¹ negōtī, 31, 7. — ¹² patī, 39, 2.

Ariovisti quam populi Rōmāni. ✓ Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populi Rōmāni iūstissimum esse 5

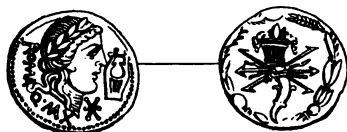


FIG. 21. — COIN OF THE FABIAN FAMILY.

in Galliā imperium;¹ si iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, liberam debēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suis lēgibus ūtī voluisset.'

The Germans Make a Treacherous Attack, and Cæsar Withdraws.

46. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur,² Caesari nūtiātum est equitēs Ariovisti propius³ tumulum accēdere,⁴ et ad nos- 10 trōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere.⁵ Caesar loquendi finem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque imperāvit nē quod omninō tēlum in hostis rēicerent. Nam etsi sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, ut pulsus 15 hostibus dici posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs.⁶ Posteaquam in volgus militum ēlātum est quā adrogantiā in conloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omni Galliā Rōmānis interdixisset, impetumque⁷ in nostrōs ēius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs conloquium ut dirēmisset, multō māior 20 alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercitui iniectum est.

Cf. ¹ imperiō, p. 28, l. 5. — ² gerantur, 15, 13. — ³ propius, 37, 16. — ⁴ accessisset, 37, 16. — ⁵ coniciēbant, 24, 4. — ⁶ circumvenirētur, 37, 26. — ⁷ impetum, 40, 6.

Seizure of Two of Cæsar's Envoys by Ariovistus.

47. Biduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit :
 'Velle sē dē his rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque
 perfectae essent agere cum eō ; utī aut iterum conloquiō
 diem cōstitueret,¹ aut, sī id minus vellet, ē suis lēgātis
) 5 aliquem ad sē mitteret.' Conloquendi Caesarī causa visa
 nōn est ; et eō magis quod pridīē² ēius diēi Germānī reti-
 nērī nōn poterant quā tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum
 [ē suis] sēsē māgnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et homi-
 nibus ferīs obiectūrum existimābat. Commodissimum³
 10 visum est Gāium Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri Caburi
 filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscētem, — cūius
 pater ā Gāiō Valeriō Flaccō civitatē dōnātus erat, et propter
 fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam
 Ariovistus longinquā cōsuētūdine ūtēbatur, et quod in eō
 15 peccandi Germānis causa nōn esset, — ad eum mittere, et
 M. Mētium, qui hospitio⁴ Ariovisti ūtēbatur. His man-
 dāvit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cōgnōscerent et ad sē
 referrent.⁵ Quōs cum apud sē in castris Ariovistus cōn-
 spēxisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit : 'Quid ad sē
 20 venirent ? an speculandi causā ?' Cōnantis dicere prohibuit
 et in catēnās coniēcit.

Manœuvering and Skirmishing.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus passuum sex ā
 Caesaris castris sub monte cōsēdit. Postridiē⁶ ēius diēi
 praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus pas-
 25 suum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit, eō cōnsiliō utī frūmentō
 commeātūque qui ex Sēquanis et Haeduis supportārētur
 Caesarem interclūderet.⁷ Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quinque
 Caesar prō castris suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem instrūctam⁸

Cf. ¹ cōstituērunt, p. 27, l. 2. — ² pridīē, 20, 13. — ³ commodissi-
 mum, 38, 1. — ⁴ hospitio, 27, 26. — ⁵ referēbantur, 32, 19. — ⁶ postridiē,
 20, 5. — ⁷ interclūdī, 20, 15. — ⁸ instrūxit, 20, 21.

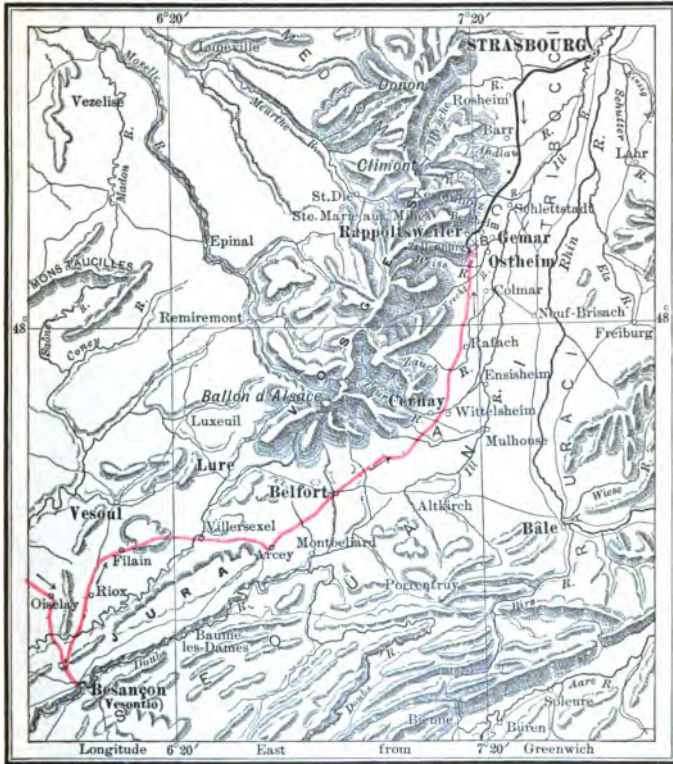


FIG. 22. — MAP OF THE CAMPAIGN WITH ARIOVISTUS.

habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās¹ nōn deēsset.² Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proeliō cotidiē³ contendit.

German Method of Fighting.

Genus hōc erat pūgnæ quō sē Germāni exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vëlōcissimī 5

Cf. ¹ potestātem, p. 35, l. 18. — ² dēfuisse, 36, 15. — ³ cotidiē, 13, 17.

ac fortissimi, quōs ex omni cōpiā singuli singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant ; cum his in proeliis versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant ;¹ hī, si quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant ; si quī graviōre² vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, 5 circumsistēbant ; si quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius³ recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

Cæsar Fortifies another Camp.

49. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Ger-



FIG. 23. — SOLDIERS ATTACKED WHILE ENCAMPING.

10 mānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab his, castris idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplici instrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciē in armis esse, tertiam castra munire⁴ iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter

Cf. ¹ recēpit, p. 41, l. 12. — ² graviōrem, 29, 19. — ³ celerrimē, 33, 1. — ⁴ muniēbātur, 33, 9.

passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum numerō sēdecim milia expedita cum omni equitātū Ariovistus misit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent¹ et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sēcūs Caesar, ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnitis castris duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum,² quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit.

More Skirmishing, but No General Engagement.

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ē castris utrisque³ cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā māiōribus castris prōgressus aciem instrūxit, hostibus pūgnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdire⁴ intellēxit, circiter meridiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae castra minōra⁵ oppūgnāret misit. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pūgnātum est. Sōlis occāsū⁶ suās cōpiās Ariovistus multis et inlātis⁷ et acceptis⁸ volneribus in castra redūxit.

Reason for the Germans' Delay.

Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret,⁸ hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset ut matrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinatiōnibus dēclārārent utrum proelium committi ex ūsū⁹ esset necne; eās ita dicere: 'Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.'

Caesar Forces a Battle.

51. Postridiē ēius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrisque castris quod satis esse visum est reliquit, ālāriōs omnīs in cōspectū hostium prō castris minōribus cōstituit,¹⁰ quod minus multi-

Cf. ¹ perterriti, p. 24, l. 26. — ² auxilia, 20, 23. — ³ uterque, 37, 27. — ⁴ prōdeundum, 44, 5. — ⁵ minōrem, 35, 5. — ⁶ occāsū, 2, 9. — ⁷ intulerat, 10, 19. — ⁸ dēcertāre, 39, 17. — ⁹ ūsū, 26, 18. — ¹⁰ cōstituit, 38, 13.

tūdine militum legiōnariōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat,¹
 ut ad speciem ālariis ūterētur; ipse triplici instrūctā aciē
 ūsque ad castra hostium accessit.² Tum dēmum necessariō
 Germāni suās cōpiās castris ēdūxērunt generātimque cōn-
 5 stituērunt paribus intervāllis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tri-
 bocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēvōs, omnemque
 aciem suam rēdis et carris circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in
 fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs³ imposuērunt, quae ad
 proelium proficiscentis, passis manibus flentēs, implōrābant
 10 nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānis trāderent.

Description of the Battle.

52. Caesar singulis⁴ legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quae-
 stōrem praefēcit,⁵ uti eōs testis⁶ suae quisque virtūtis habē-
 ret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam
 hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri
 15 ācritē in hostis signō datō impetum fēcērunt, ita-que hostēs
 repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium⁷ pila in hostis
 coniciendi nōn darētur. Rēiectis pilis cōminus gladiis pū-
 gnātum est. At Germāni celeriter ex cōsuētūdine suā
 phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Reperti
 20 sunt complūrēs nostri quī in phalanga⁸ insilirent et scūta
 manibus revellerent et dēsUPER volnerārent. Cum hostium
 aciēs ā sinistrō⁹ cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset,
 ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram
 aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus
 25 adulēscēns,¹⁰ quī equitātui praeerat, quod expeditior¹¹ erat
 quam ei quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōran-
 tibus nostris subsidiō mīsīt.

Cf. ¹ valēret, p. 36, l. 21. — ² accēdere, 41, 10. — ³ mulierēs, 26, 7. —
⁴ singuli, 44, 1. — ⁵ praeficit, 8, 22. — ⁶ testem, 12, 24. — ⁷ spatium, 7,
 6. — ⁸ phalange, 21, 4. — ⁹ sinistrā, 22, 8. — ¹⁰ adulēscēntem, 42, 11. —
¹¹ expedita, 45, 2.

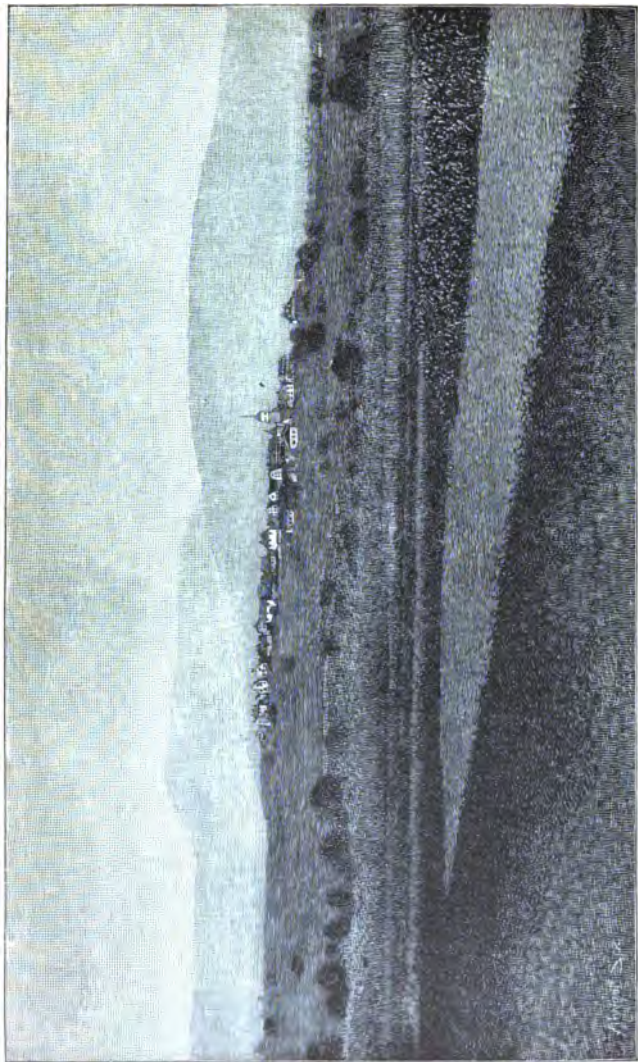


FIG. 24. — View from Ostheim, looking towards Zellenberg.

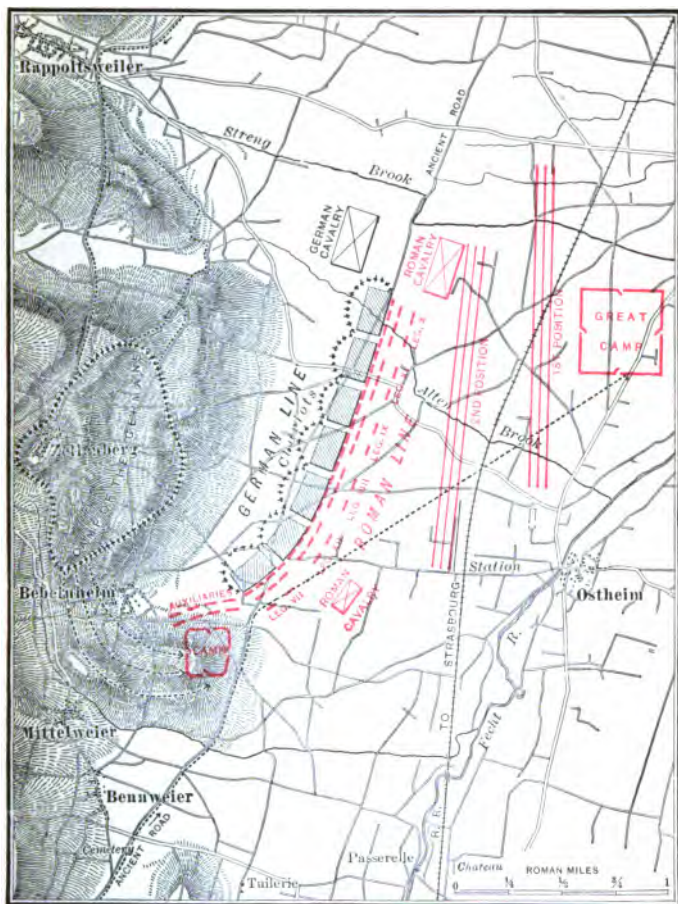


FIG. 25. — PLAN OF BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS.

Complete Defeat of the Germans. Recovery of the Two Envoys.

53. Ita proelium restitutum est atque omnēs hostēs terga
vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt¹ quam ad flūmen

Cf. ¹ dēsistere, p. 40, l. 26.

Rhēnum, milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut viribus cōfisi¹ trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus² inventis sibi salūtem repperērunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad
 5 ripam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnis cōsecūti equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duæ fuērunt Ariovisti uxōrēs, ūna Suēva nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Duæ filiae hārū
 10 altera occīsa, altera capta est. Gāius Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus³ in fugā trīnis catēnis⁴ vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostis equitātū insequentem incidit. Quæ quidem rēs Caesari nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem adtulit, quod hominem honestissimum
 15 prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium, sibi restitūtum vidēbat; neque ēius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat.⁵ Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus⁶ cōsultum dicēbat utrum ignī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus
 20 reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

The Army Goes into Winter Quarters. Caesar Goes to Hither Gaul.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēvī, quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum reverti⁷ coepērunt; quōs Ubīi, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs inseculi
 25 māgnūm ex eis numerum occidērunt. Caesar ūnā aestāte duōbus maximis bellis cōfectis, mātūrius⁸ paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hibernis Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

Cf. ¹ cōfīdēbat, p. 36, l. 25. — ² lintribus, 10, 4. — ³ custōdēs, 18, 11. — ⁴ catēnās, 42, 21. — ⁵ dēminūta, 16, 13. — ⁶ sortibus, 45, 20. — ⁷ reverti, 37, 18. — ⁸ mātūrrimē, 30, 19.

ESAI

que

nãre

ere

ad

tês

ina

ca,

re

m

s,

ê-

i-

a

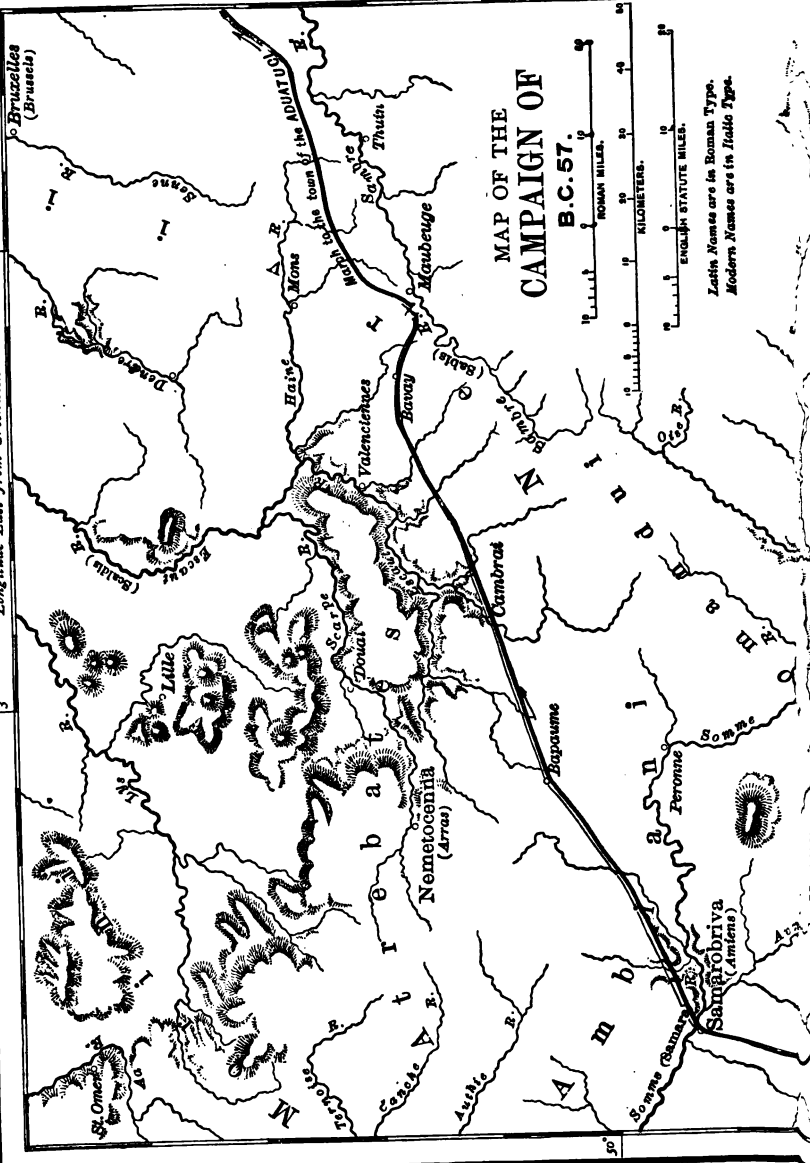
n

i

Longitude East from Greenwich

3°

4°



MAP OF THE CAMPAIGN OF

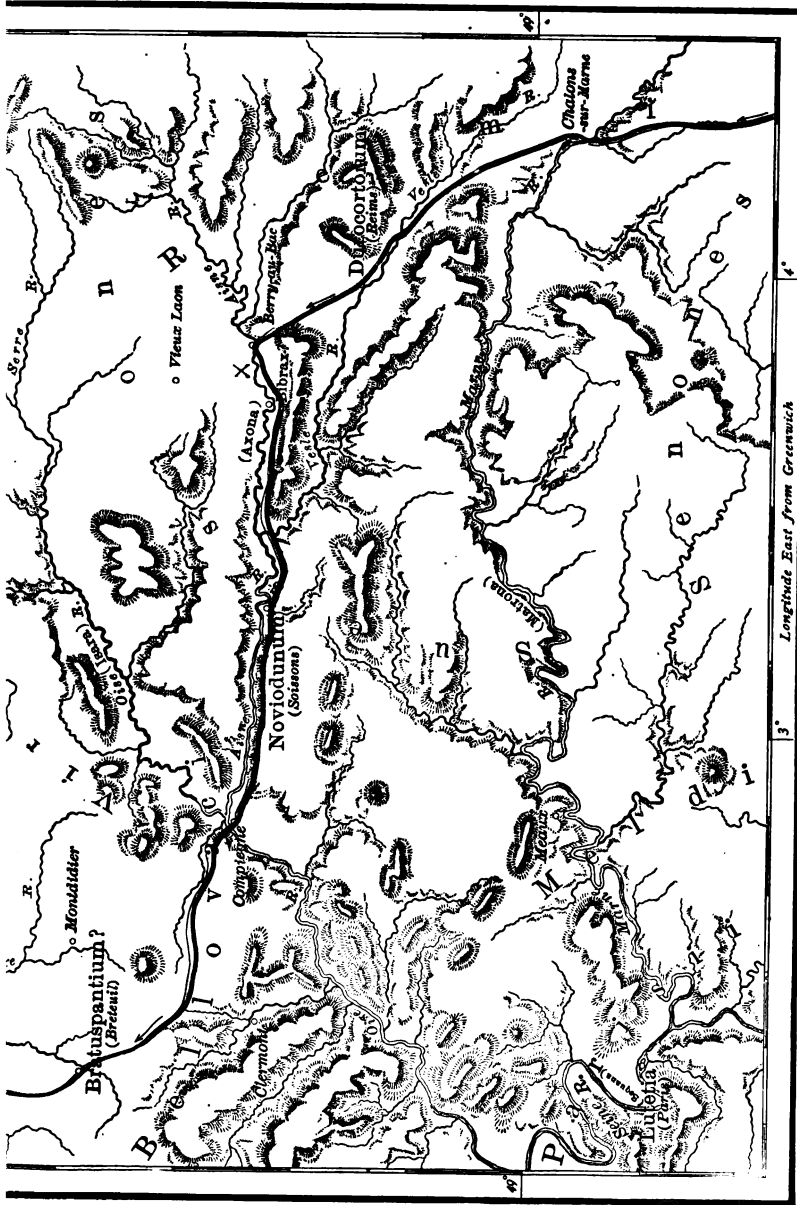
B.C. 57.

ROMAN MILES.

KILOMETERS.

ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.

Latin Names are in Roman Type.
Modern Names are in Italic Type.



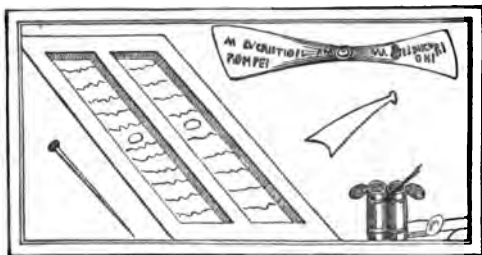


FIG. 27. — WRITING MATERIALS.

BOOK II.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY. B.C. 57.

All the Belgian Tribes Conspire against the Romans. Reasons for this.

CUM esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā ita uti suprā dēmōstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur,¹ litterisque item Labiēni certior² fiēbat omnis Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās : primum quod verērentur³ nē omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur ; deinde quod ab nōn nullis Gallis sollicitārentur, — partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī⁴ nōluerant, ita populi Rōmāni exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant ; partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novis imperiis studēbant, — ab nōn nullis etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eis quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātis habēbant volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī⁵ poterant.

Cf. ¹ adtulit, p. 48, l. 14. — ² certior, 37, 12. — ³ verērī, 34, 14. — ⁴ versābantur, 44, 2. — ⁵ cōsecūtum, 38, 22.

Cæsar promptly Moves against them.

2. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit, et initā aestātē¹ in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret Q. Pedium lēgātum misit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum
 5 vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis quī finitimī Belgis erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs² cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum cōdūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit quā ad eōs
 10 proficiscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finis Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi Submit and Promise Aid.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque³ omnium opiniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andocombogium, primōs civitātis, misērunt, quī dicerent: ‘Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in
 15 potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquis Belgis cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse,⁴ parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidis recipere et frūmentō cēterisque⁵ rēbus iuvāre;⁶
 20 reliquōs omnīs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant,⁷ sēsē cum his coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātres cōnsanguineōsque⁸ suōs, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs
 25 habeant, dēterrere⁹ potuerint quā cum his cōsentirent.’

Origin and Strength of the Belgæ as Told by the Remi.

4. Cum ab his quaereret¹⁰ quae civitātēs quantaque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: plē-

Cf. ¹ aestātē, p. 48, l. 25. — ² manūs, 32, 27. — ³ celerius, 44, 5. — ⁴ coniūrāre, 49, 5. — ⁵ cēteri, 29, 14. — ⁶ iuvārent, 24, 14. — ⁷ incolunt, 48, 24. — ⁸ cōnsanguineōs, 30, 7. — ⁹ dēterrere, 29, 8. — ¹⁰ quaereret, 45, 17.



FIG. 28. — GAUL WITH TRUMPET (*carnyx*).

rōsque Belgās esse ortōs¹ ab Germānis, Rhēnumque anti-
 quitus trāductōs propter loci fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse
 Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent expulisse, sōlōsque² esse
 quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni Galliā vexātā,³ Teu-
 tonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finis ingredi prohibuerint; quā 5
 ex rē fieri uti eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōri-
 tātem māgnōsque spīritūs⁴ in rē militāri sūmerent.⁵ Dē *med*
 numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dicēbant,
 proptereā quod propinquitātibus adfinitātibusque coniūcti,
 quantam quisque multitudinem in commūni Belgārum con- 10



FIG. 29. — COIN OF DIVICIACUS, KING OF THE SUSSIONES.

ciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter
 eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō
 valēre; hōs posse cōficere armāta milia centum, pollicitōs⁶
 ex eō numerō ēlēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque belli imperium
 sibi postulāre.⁷ Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs;⁸ finis lātissi- 15
 mōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem
 nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissi-
 mum,⁹ quī cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam
 Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam;
 ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summā¹⁰ tōtius 20
 belli omnium voluntāte dēferri; oppida habēre numerō XII,
 pollicēri milia armāta quinquāgintā; totidem Nervio, quī

Cf. ¹ ortus, p. 33, l. 27. — ² sōlā, 36, 22. — ³ vexāssent, 12, 10. — ⁴ spī-
 ritūs, 30, 21. — ⁵ sūmpserat, 30, 21. — ⁶ pollicitum, 38, 7. — ⁷ postulandī,
 38, 21. — ⁸ finitimī, 50, 5. — ⁹ potentiōribus, 49, 12. — ¹⁰ summā, 37, 6.

maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint;¹
 quīdecim milia Atrebātēs, Ambianōs decem milia, Morinōs
 xxv milia, Menapiōs vii milia, Caletōs x milia, Velicassēs
 et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs decem et novem milia;
 5 Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Paemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine
 Germānī appellantur,² arbitrārī ad xl milia.

Cæsar Marches to the Aisne, and Encamps beyond it.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōrātiōne prōse-
 cūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre principumque liberōs
 obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter
 10 ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Haeduum māgnopere³
 cohortātus docet quantō opere rei publicae commūnisque
 salutis⁴ intersit manūs⁵ hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā
 multitudīne ūnō tempore cōfligendum sit. Id fierī posse,
 sī suās cōpiās Haedui in finis Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint
 15 et eōrum agrōs populārī⁶ coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātis eum
 ā sē dimittit. Postquam omnis Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum
 locum coāctās⁷ ad sē venīre [vidit] neque iam longē abesse
 ab eis quōs miserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit,
 flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus,
 20 exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit⁸ atque ibi castra posuit.
 Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum ripis flūminis mūniēbat
 et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et com-
 meātūs⁹ ab Rēmīs reliquisque civitātibus ut sine periculō ad
 eum portārī possent efficiēbat. > In eō flūmine pōns erat.
 25 Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium
 Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in
 altitudinem pedum xii vāllō fossāque duodēviginti pedum
 mūniri iubet.

Cf. ¹ aberat, p. 45, l. 1. — ² appellātōs, 40, 8. — ³ māgnopere, 33, 7.
 — ⁴ salutem, 48, 3. — ⁵ manūs, 50, 8. — ⁶ populārentur, 32, 27 — ⁷ cōgī,
 50, 8. — ⁸ mātūrandum, 32, 27. — ⁹ commeātū, 42, 26.

The Belgæ Attack Bibrax, a Town of the Remi, Eight Miles Away.

6. Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū Belgæ oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē¹ eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitudīne hominū tōtis moenibus undique in mūrū lapidēs iaci coepti sunt² mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā [portās] succēdunt mūrūque



FIG. 30. — SLINGER (*funditor*).

subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nulli. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fēcisset, Iccius¹⁰ Rēmus summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex eis quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submitātur, sēsē diūtius³ sustinēre nōn posse.

Cf. ¹ aegerrimē, p. 11, l. 8. — ² coeptae, 42, 2. — ³ diūtius, 49, 9.

Cæsar Sends Relief and the Belgæ Advance on his Camp.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Cæsar isdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō¹ oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium² prōpugnandi accessit, et hostibus eādē dē causā spēs potiundi oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs³ aedificiisque quō adire potuerant incēnsis, ad castra Cæsarīs omnibus cōpiis contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae
10 castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

Cæsar Strengthens his Position.

8. Cæsar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit;⁴ cotidie tamen equestribus proeliis quid hostis virtūte posset
15 et quid nostrī audērent⁵ periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportūnō⁶ atque idōneō,—quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitie⁷ ēditus, tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat quantum loci aciēs instructa
20 occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris⁸ dēlectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastigātus paulatim⁹ ad plānitiem redibat,—ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum
25 aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantis suōs circumvenire possent. Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōscripserat¹⁰ in castris

Cf. ¹ subsidiō, p. 46, l. 27. — ² studium, 41, 21. — ³ vicōs, 25, 13. — ⁴ statuit, 38, 1. — ⁵ audēbat, 38, 1. — ⁶ opportūnissimum, 26, 22. — ⁷ plānitie, 38, 9. — ⁸ latus, 52, 21. — ⁹ paulatim, 34, 10. — ¹⁰ cōscripsit, 50, 2.

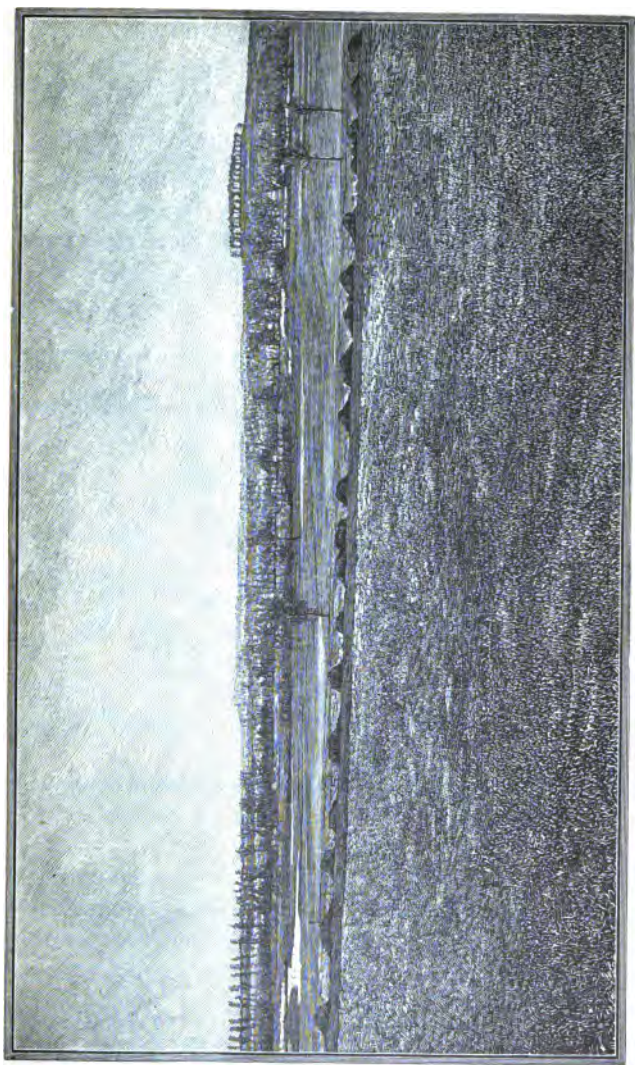


FIG. 31.—BERRY AU BAC.

relictis, ut, si quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās instrūxērunt.

2-20-1.

The Belgæ Try to Cross the Aisne to Attack him in the Rear.

9. Palūs erat nōn mǎgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. 7 Hanc si nostrī trānsirent hostēs expectābant; nostrī autem, si ab illis initium trānseundī fieret, ut impeditōs adgrederentur¹ parātī in armis erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutri trāns-

9. 5

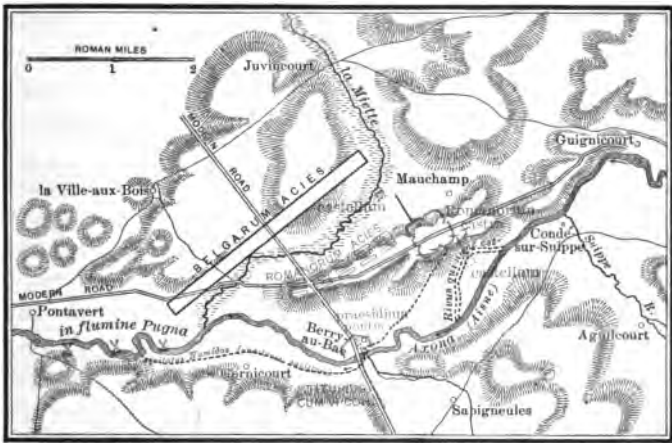


FIG. 32—BATTLE ON THE AISNE (Axona).

eundī initium faciunt, secundiōre² equitum proeliō nostris Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum³ est. Ibi vadis repertis⁴ partem suā-

Cf. ¹ adgressī, p. 22, l. 16. — ² secundiōrēs, 12, 16. — ³ dēmōnstrāvimus, 49, 1. — ⁴ reperiēbat, 50, 27.

rum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt, eō cōnsiliō ut, si possent, castellum cui praeerat¹ Q. Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; si minus² potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur,³ quī māgnō nōbis ūsui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque⁴ nostrōs prohibērent.

Cæsar Crosses, and Defeats them. They Decide to Disband.

10. *Caesar* certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs⁵ sagittariōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācrit̄er in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostis impeditōs nostrī in flūmine adgressi
10 māgnū eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantis multitudīne tēlōrum reppulērunt, primōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt, neque
15 nostrōs in locum iniquiōrem prōgredi pūgnandi causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria⁶ dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque⁷ revertī, et, quōrum in finis primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique⁸ convenīrent,
20 ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domesticis cōpiis rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cōgnōverant. His persuādērī ut diūtius
25 morārentur⁹ neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

On their Retreat, they are Pursued with Great Slaughter.

11. Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castris ēgressi nūllō certō ordine neque imperiō,

Cf. ¹ praeerat, p. 53, l. 12. — ² minus, 42, 4. — ³ populārī, 52, 15. — ⁴ commeātus, 52, 22. — ⁵ funditōrēs, 54, 2. — ⁶ frūmentāriae, 36, 6. — ⁷ quisque, 51, 10. — ⁸ undique, 53, 5. — ⁹ morātī, 54, 6.

cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectio¹ videretur. Hanc rem statim² Caesar per speculatores cognita,³ insidias veritus, quod qua de causa discederent⁴ nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima⁵ luce confirmata rem ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum qui novissimum agmen moraretur praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculium Cottam legatos praefecit; T. Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimos adorti⁶ et multa milia passuum prosecuti⁶ magnam¹⁰ multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt; cum ab extremo agmine, ad quos ventum erat, consisterent fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent, priores, quod abesse a periculo viderentur neque ullam necessitate neque imperio continerentur,⁷ exaudito clamore perturbatis ordinibus omnes¹⁵ in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sine ulla periculo tantam eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt quantum fuit diei spatium; sub occasum solis sequi destiterunt seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, reciperunt.

The Suessiones, Alarmed by Caesar's Advance, Surrender.

12. Postridie eius diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex²⁰ terrore ac fuga reciperent, in finis Suessionum, qui proximi⁸ Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare⁹ conatus,¹⁰ quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae mureque altitudinem paucis defendentibus²⁵ expugnare non potuit. v. Castris munitis vineas agere quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proximam

Cf. ¹ profectiōnem, p. 6, l. 10. — ² statim, 48, 19. — ³ cognoscant, 50, 6. — ⁴ discessisset, 40, 21. — ⁵ adortum, 36, 2. — ⁶ prosecutus, 52, 7. — ⁷ continēbat, 13, 11. — ⁸ proximī, 50, 13. — ⁹ oppugnāre, 53, 3. — ¹⁰ cōnantis, 56, 11.

nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum āctis, aggere iactō turribusque cōstitūtis,¹ māgnitūdine operum, quae

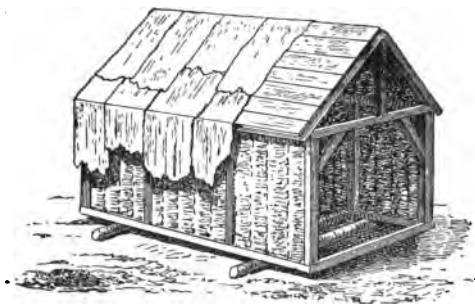


FIG. 33. — VINEA OR TESTUDO.

neque viderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē² mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur impetrant.³

In Like Manner the Bellovacī Surrender.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitātis atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditis in dēditionem Suessionēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum
10 Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem⁴ ac potestātem venire neque contrā populum Rōmānum armis conten-
15 dere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs⁵ manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

Cf. ¹ cōstituit, p. 54, l. 24. — ² dēditionem, 25, 8. — ³ impetrāret, 31, 22. — ⁴ fidem, 50, 15. — ⁵ passīs, 46, 9.

Diviciacus, Leader of the Hæduli, Pleads for the Bellovacæ.

14. Prō his Diviciācus — nam post discessum Belgārum dimissis¹ Haeduōrum cōpiis ad eum reverterat — facit verba : ‘Bellovacōs omni tempore in fidē atque amicitia civitātis Haeduae fuisse ; impulsōs² ab suis principibus, qui dicerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redactōs³ omnis indignitātis contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduis dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōsili principēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitatem civitāti intulissent, in Britanniam profūgissee. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō his Haeduōs ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs utātur. Quod si fēcirit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem⁴ apud omnis Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus,⁵ si qua bella inciderint, sustentāre⁶ cōsuērint.’

The Ambiani Surrender. Reports of the Nervii, Who are Waiting to Give Battle beyond the Sambre.

15. Caesar honōris Diviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit, et quod erat civitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitudine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. His trāditis omnibusque armis ex oppidō conlātis, ab eō locō in finis Ambianōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdērunt. Eōrum finis Nervii attingēbant ; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat : Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus ; nihil pati vinī reliquārumque⁷ rērum ad lūxuriā pertinentium inferri, quod his rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtūtem existimārent ; esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis ; increpitāre atque incūsāre⁸ reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent

Cf. ¹ dīmissō, p. 27, l. 5. — ² impulsus, 35, 1. — ³ redēgisset, 41, 3. — ⁴ auctōritātem, 51, 6. — ⁵ opibus, 17, 22. — ⁶ sustentātum, 53, 3. — ⁷ reliquiā, 50, 5. — ⁸ incūsāvit, 34, 22.

patriamque virtutem prœiēcissent; cōfirmāre¹ sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiționem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum finis trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ā castris suis non amplius milia
5 passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnis Nervīōs cōnsēdisse² adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimis suis (nam hīs utrisque³ persuāserant uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur⁴); exspectārī etiam ab eis Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in
10 itinere; mulierēs quique per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtīlēs vidērentur in eum locum conīēcisse, quō propter palūdēs⁵ exercitūi aditus nōn esset.

The Nervii, on Information Given by Deserters, Decide to Attack Cæsar while Pitching Camp.

17. Hīs rēbus cōgnitis explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque prae-mittit quī locum castris idōneum⁶ dēligant.⁷ Cum ex
15 dēditiciīs Belgis reliquīsque Gallis complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut postea ex captivīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā,⁸ nocte ad Nervīōs pervēnērunt; atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum
20 māgnū numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prima legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnū spatium abessent,⁹ hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentisque direptis futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium
25 quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervīi antiquitus,¹⁰ cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī rei student,¹¹ sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent¹² cōpiis), quō facilius

Cf. ¹ cōfirmāvit, p. 37, l. 2. — ² cōnsēdisse, 51, 2. — ³ utrāque, 54, 20. — ⁴ experiantur, 29, 4. — ⁵ palūs, 55, 4. — ⁶ idōneum, 44, 11. — ⁷ dēlēgerant, 44, 2. — ⁸ perspectam, 36, 17. — ⁹ absint, 52, 1. — ¹⁰ antiquitus, 51, 1. — ¹¹ studēbant, 49, 12. — ¹² valēre, 51, 13.

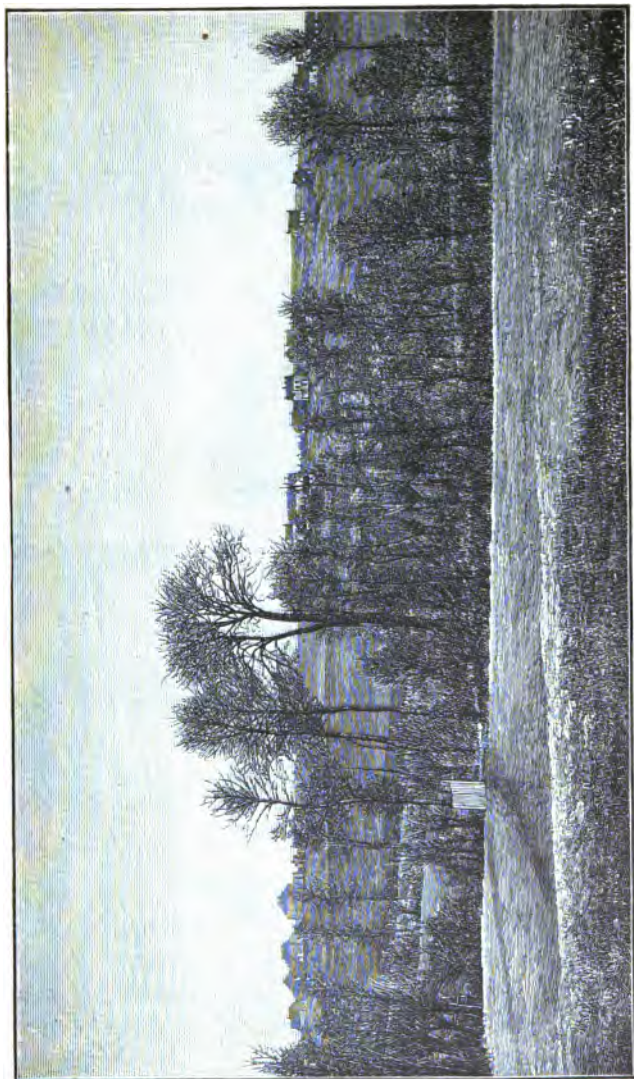


FIG. 34. — HAUTMONT.

finitimōrum equitātum, si praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis, crēbrisque in lātitudinem rāmis ēnātis, et rubis sentibusque interiectis, effēcerant¹ ut instar mūri hae saepēs mūnimenta praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem 5 posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedirētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nervii existimāvērunt.

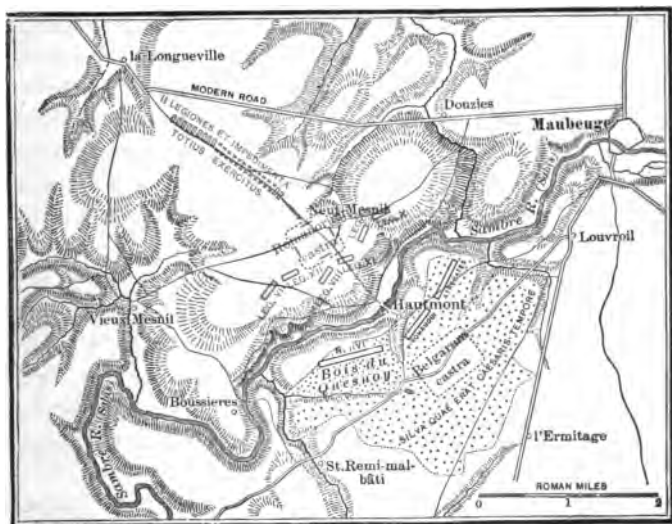


FIG. 35. — DEFEAT OF THE NERVII.

Nature of the Ground.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castris delēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclivis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine 10 pari² acclivitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus³ huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus,⁴ ab superiōre

Cf. ¹ efficiēbat, p. 52, l. 24. — ² paribus, 46, 5. — ³ adversus, 54, 18. — ⁴ apertis, 37, 9.

parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statīōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

The Nervii Make a Furious Assault and Throw the Romans into Confusion.

5 19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbatur¹ omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās² dūcēbat; post eās totius exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat; 10 inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē³ cōscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque⁴ impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittariisque flūmen trāsgressi cum hostium equitātū proelium commisērunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suos reciperent ac rūsus⁵ ex silvā in 15 nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentis insequi audērent,⁶ interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere 20 dimēnsō castra mūnire coepērunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab eis quī in silvis abditī⁷ latēbant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendi proeli convēnerat,⁸ ut 25 intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōstituerant⁹ atque ipsi sēsē cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātis, incrēdibili celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut 30 paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine [et iam in manibus nostris] hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupāti erant contendērunt.

Cf. ¹ subsequi, p. 57, l. 9. — ² expedita, 45, 2. — ³ proximi, 50, 13. — ⁴ praesidium, 52, 25. — ⁵ rūsus, 22, 17. — ⁶ audērent, 54, 15. — ⁷ abditī, 34, 7. — ⁸ convēnisset, 32, 11. — ⁹ cōstituit, 54, 24.

The Critical Situation. The Discipline of the Roman Army.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda : vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret), sīgnū tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendi causā prōcesserant arcescendī, aciēs instruenda,¹ militēs cohortandī,² sīgnū dandum. 5 Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitas et successus hostium impediēbat.³ / His difficultātibus duae rēs erant



FIG. 36. — LITUUS.



FIG. 37. — TUBA.

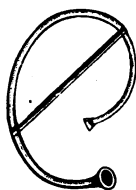


FIG. 38. — CORNŪ.

subsidiō,⁴ — scientia⁵ atque ūsus militum, quod superiōribus proeliis exercitātī quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere quam ab aliis docērī⁶ poterant ; et 10 quod ab opere singulisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnitis castris vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

15

Caesar Addresses the Tenth ; the Rest are Already Engaged.

21. Caesar necessāriis rēbus imperātis ad cohortandōs militēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad

Cf. ¹ instruendam, p. 54, l. 16. — ² cohortātus, 52, 7. — ³ impedirent, 61, 2. — ⁴ subsidium, 53, 13. — ⁵ scientiam, 42, 13. — ⁶ docet, 52, 11.

legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Militēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus quam uti suae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur¹ animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam
 5 quō tēlum adici posset, proeli committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus, pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tantā fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus² ad dimicandum animus ut nōn modo ad insignia accommodanda sed etiam ad galeās induendās
 10 scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prima signa cōspēxit ad haec cōstitit,³ nē in quaerendis suis pūgnandī tempus dimitteret.

The Varying Fortunes of the Battle.

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū magis ut loci nātūra dēiectusque⁴
 15 collis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque⁵ dēnsissimis (ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus) interiectis⁶ prōspectus impedirētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque quid in quāque parte
 20 opus⁷ esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum iniquitatē fortunae quoque ēvēntūs variī sequēbantur.

Two Legions Force the Atrebates into the River ; Two Pursue the Viromandui, but the Nervii Gain the Camp.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōstitērant, pilis ēmissis cursū ac lassitudīne ex-
 25 animātōs volneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs — nam his ea pars obvenerat — celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsire cōnantis⁸ insecūtī gladiis māgnam

Cf. ¹ perturbātis, p. 57, l. 15. — ² parātissimam, 37, 2. — ³ cōnsistendī, 53, 9. — ⁴ dēiectūs, 54, 20. — ⁵ saepēs, 61, 4. — ⁶ interiectis, 61, 4. — ⁷ opus, 55, 1. — ⁸ cōnātus, 57, 23.

partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen non dubitaverunt, et in locum iniquum¹ progressi rursus resistentis hostis redintegrato proelio in fugam coniecerunt. Item alia in parte diversae duae legiones, undecima et octava, profligatis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. At totis ferē castris a fronte et ab sinistra parte nudatis,² cum in dextro cornu³ legio duodecima et non magno ab ea intervallō septima constitisset, omnes Nervii confertissimō agmine duce Boduognatō, qui summam⁴ imperi tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quorum pars apertō latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit.

The Enemy have the Advantage. The Treveri, Panic-stricken, Withdraw to their Homes.

24. Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae⁵ peditēs, qui cum eis una fuerant, quos primō hostium impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum se in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et calōnēs, qui ab decumana portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flumen transisse conspexerant, praedandi⁶ causā egressi, cum respexissent et hostis in nostris castris versari viderent, praecipitēs fugae sese mandabant.⁷ Simul eorum qui cum impedimentis veniebant clamor fremitusque oriebatur, alique aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites Treveri, quorum inter Gallōs virtutis opinio⁸ est singularis, qui auxilii causā a civitate missi ad Caesarem venerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra compleri, legiones premi⁹ et paene circumventas teneri, calōnēs, equites, funditorēs,

Cf. ¹ iniquiorem, p. 56, l. 15. — ² nudatus, 53, 7. — ³ cornu, 46, 22. — ⁴ summam, 51, 20. — ⁵ armaturae, 56, 7. — ⁶ praedandi, 61, 1. — ⁷ mandarunt, 10, 11. — ⁸ opinionem, 54, 13. — ⁹ premēbant, 46, 24.

Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnis partis fugere vidissent, dēspērātis¹ nostris rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris impedimentis²que eōrum hostis potitōs, civitatī renūntiāvērunt.

Cæsar Enters the Fight in Person and Inspires his Soldiers.

- 5 25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgēri signisque in ūnum locum conlātis duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs³ milites sibi ipsōs



FIG. 39. — AQUILIFER.



FIG. 40. — CENTURIO.

ad pūgnam esse impedimentō³ vidit, — quartae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occisis,⁴ signiferō interfectō, signō⁵ 10 āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus

Cf. ¹ dēspērātis, p. 36, l. 1. — ² cōnfertissimo, 65, 10. — ³ impedimentō, 22, 6. — ⁴ occidērunt, 56, 10. — ⁵ signum, 63, 5.

aut volnerātis aut occīsīs, in hīs primipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multis gravibusque volneribus cōfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset; reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nullōs¹ ab novissimis dēsertō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostis neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntis 5 intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre, et rem esse in angustō vidit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submitti² posset,—scūtō ab novissimis [ūni] militi dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō³ vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit; centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātis reliquōs cohortātus 10 militēs signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiis ūti possent. Cūius adventū spē inlātā militibus ac redintegrātō⁴ animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvare cuperet, paulum⁵ hostium impetus tardātus est. 15

Meanwhile Labienus, having Taken the Enemy's Camp, Sends a Reinforcement to Cæsar.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostis inferrent.⁶ Quō factō, cum alius alii subsidium ferret neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audā- 20 cius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. Interim militēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū⁷ incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castris hostium potītus⁸ et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in 25 nostris castris gererentur⁹ cōspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostris misit. Quī, cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra, et

Cf. ¹ nōn nullīs, p. 49, l. 8. — ² submittātur, 53, 13. — ³ scūtīs, 64, 10. — ⁴ redintegrātō, 65, 3. — ⁵ paulum, 45, 9. — ⁶ intulērunt, 22, 19. — ⁷ cursū, 64, 24. — ⁸ potiundī, 54, 5. — ⁹ gerantur, 50, 6.

legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cōgnōvissent, nihil ad cele-
ritātem sibi reliqui fēcērunt.

The Tide of Battle Turns.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut
nostri, etiam qui vulneribus cōfecti¹ prōcubuissent, scūtis
5 innixi proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostis
cōspicāti etiam inermēs armātis occurrerent; ² equitēs vērō,
ut turpitudinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locis pūg-
nant, quō sē legiōnāriis militibus praeferrent. At hostēs
etiam in extrēmā spē salutis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt
10 ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insiste-
rent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; his dēiectis et
coacervātis cadāveribus, qui superessent ut ex tumultō tēla
in nostrōs conicerent³ et pila intercepta remitterent; ut nōn
nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs
15 esse trānsire lātissimum⁴ flūmen, ascendere altissimās ripās,
subire inīquissimum⁵ locum; quae facilia ex difficillimis
animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

The Nervii Utterly Routed, and Most of them Slain.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac
nōmine Nerviorum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs unā cum
20 pueris mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs⁶ coniectōs
dixerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedi-
tum, victis nihil tūtum⁷ arbitrārentur, omnium qui supererant
cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque ei dēdidērunt; ⁸
et, in commemorandā⁹ civitātis calamitāte, ex sexcentis ad
25 trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quīngentōs
qui arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dixērunt. Quōs
Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērē-

Cf. ¹ cōfectōs, p. 64, l. 25. — ² occurrēbant, 65, 17. — ³ cōnicerent, 53, 9. — ⁴ lātissimōs, 51, 15. — ⁵ inīquum, 65, 2. — ⁶ palūs, 55, 4. — ⁷ tūta, 52, 22. — ⁸ dēdidērunt, 59, 20. — ⁹ commemorāvit, 38, 17.

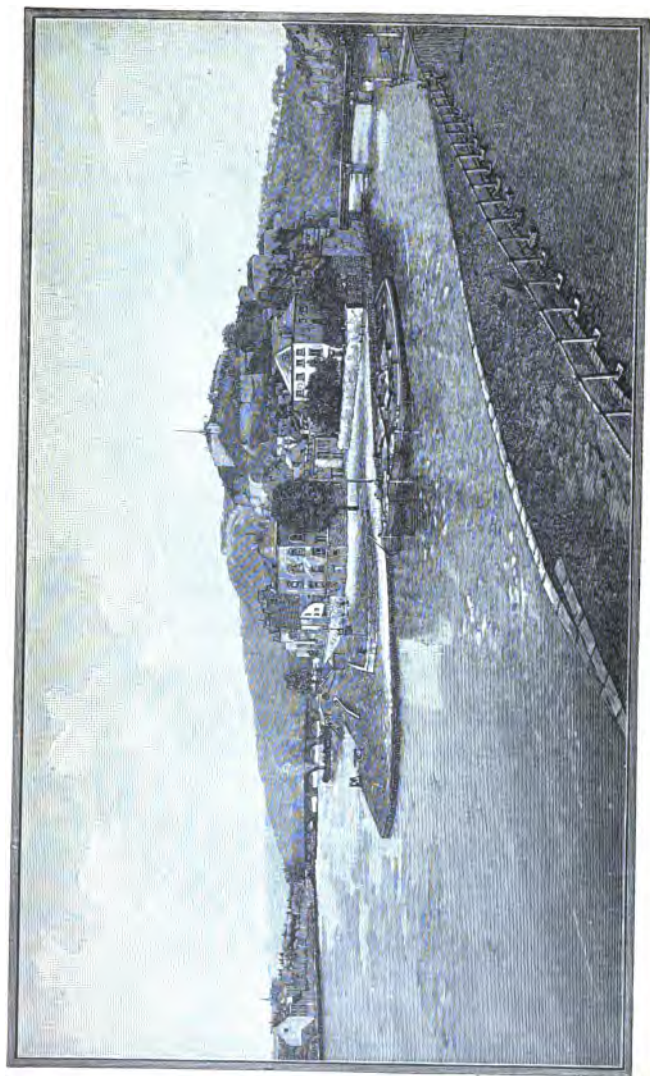


FIG. 41.—CITADEL OF NAMUR.

tur, diligentissimē cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidis
ūt iussit, et finitimis imperāvit ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē
suosque prohibērent.¹

The Aduatuci Withdraw to a Stronghold. Their Origin.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā diximus, cum omnibus
cōpiis auxiliō Nervii venirent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere
domum revertērunt; cūctis oppidis castellisque² dēsertis

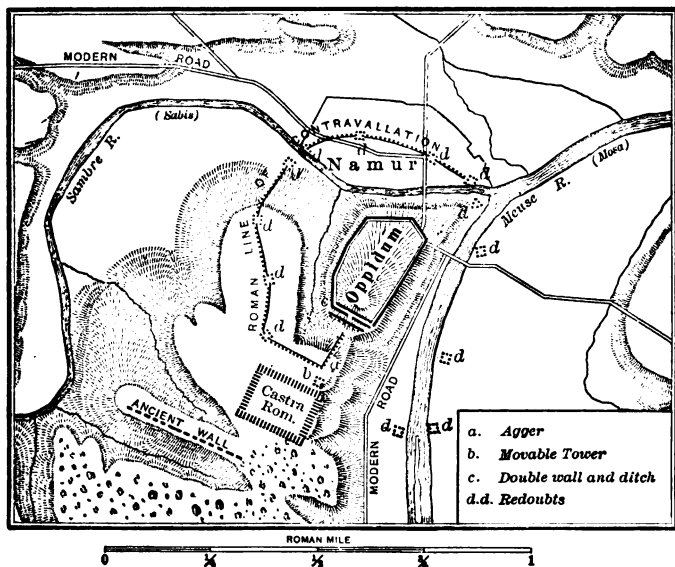


FIG. 42. — SIEGE OF THE STRONGHOLD OF THE ADUATUCI.

sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contu-
lērunt.³ Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissi-
mās rupis dēspectusque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter⁴

Cf. ¹ prohibuerint, p. 51, l. 5. — ² castellum, 56, 2. — ³ contulissent, 58, 10. — ⁴ lēniter, 54, 21.

acclivis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius pedum cc relin-
quēbātur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant;
tum māgnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabīs in mūrō con-
locābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnātī, quī,
5 cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliā facerent, eis
impedimentis quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant
citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositis, custōdiam ex suis ac praesi-
dium sex milia hominū ūnā reliquerant. Hī post eōrum
obitum multōs annōs ā finitimis exagitātī, cum aliās bellum
10 inferrent aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium
pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

They Scoff at the Roman Siege Works.

30. Ac primō adventū¹ exercitūs nostrī crēbrās² ex oppidō
excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris con-
tendēbant; postea vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū xv milium,
15 crēbrisque castellis circummūniti oppidō sēsē continēbant.

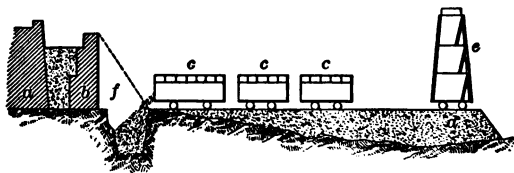


FIG. 43.—SIEGE WORKS.

a, b, Double wall. e, Movable tower.
c, c, c, Vineæ. f, Ditch.
d, Agger.

Ubi vineis³ actis aggere⁴ exstrūctō turrīm procul cōstitui
vidērunt, primum inridere ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus
quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō instituerētur: ‘Qui-
busnam manibus aut quibus viribus⁵ praesertim hominēs
20 tantulae statūrae’—nam plērumque hominibus Gallis prae

Cf. ¹ adventum, p. 60, l. 6.—² crēbrī, 49, 2.—³ vīnēās, 57, 26.—
⁴ aggere, 58, 1.—⁵ viribus, 48, 2.

māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevītās nostra contemptū est
— ‘tantī oneris turrīm in mūrō sēsē conlocāre cōfiderent?’

They Become Alarmed, and Offer to Surrender Conditionally.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre¹ moenibus² vidē-
runt, novā atque inūsītātā speciē commōti³ lēgātōs ad
Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: 5
‘Nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope divinā bellum gerere,
quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritātē⁴ prō-
movēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permit-
tere’⁵ dixērunt. ‘Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō
suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine,⁶ quam ipsī ab aliis audi- 10
rent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sē armīs
dēspoliāret. Sibi omnis ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs ac suae
virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditis armīs nōn
possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur,
quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō pati quam ab his per 15
cruciātum⁷ interfici inter quōs dominārī cōsuēssent.’

They Accept Caesar's Terms, but Treacherously Retain Part of their Arms.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: ‘Sē magis cōsuētūdine
suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōservātūrum, sī, prius
quam⁸ mūrū aries attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis
nūllam esse condiōnem nisi armīs trāditis. Sē id quod 20
in⁹ Nerviis fēcisset factūrum, finitimisque imperātūrum nē
quam dēditiiciis populi Rōmānī iniūriam inferrent.’ Rē
nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dixērunt. Armō-
rum māgnā multitudīne dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante
oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque alti- 25
tūdīnem acervī armōrum adaequārent,¹⁰ et tamen circiter

Cf. ¹ adpropinquāre, p. 56, l. 24. — ² moenibus, 53, 5. — ³ com-
mōtus, 50, 1. — ⁴ celeritās, 44, 6. — ⁵ permittere, 50, 16. — ⁶ mān-
suētūdine, 59, 11. — ⁷ cruciātūs, 28, 25. — ⁸ priusquam, 57, 20. —
⁹ in, 42, 14. — ¹⁰ adaequārent, 44, 7.

parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patēfactis eō diē pāce sunt ūsi.

They Make a Sally from the Town, but are Repulsed. More than 50,000 Sold as Slaves.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex oppidō exire iussit, nē quam noctū oppidāni¹ ā militibus 5 iniūriam acciperent. Illi ante initō (ut intellēctum est) cōnsiliō, quod dēditionē factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, — partim cum eis quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis, quae subitō, ut temporis 10 exiguitās² postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, — tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximis castellis eō concursus³ est, pūgnātumque 15 ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā viris fortibus in extrēmā spē salutis, iniquō locō, contrā eōs qui ex vāllō⁴ turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit,⁵ cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōnsisteret. Occisis ad hominum milibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridiē ēius diēi refrāctis portis, 20 cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis militibus nostris, sectiōnem ēius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eis qui ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est milium quinquāgintā trium.

Crassus Subduces many Coast Towns.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōe 25 ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae civitatēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnis eās civi-

Cf. ¹ oppidānis, p. 54, l. 3. — ² exiguitās, 64, 7. — ³ concurrī, 63, 2. — ⁴ vāllō, 52, 27. — ⁵ dēbēret, 68, 14.

tātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populi Rōmānī esse redāctās.¹

The Army Goes into Winter Quarters. A Thanksgiving for Caesar's Victories is Decreed at Rome.

35. His rēbus gestis, omnī Galliā pācātā,² tanta hūius belli ad barbarōs opiniō perlāta est utī ab eis nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incoherent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur quī sē obsidēs daturās, imperāta³ facturās pollicērentur.⁴ Quās lēgatiōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam Īlyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē reverti iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque civitatēs propinquae eis locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hiberna dēductis in Ītaliā profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litteris Caesaris diēs quīrdecim supplicatiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.

Cf. ¹ redāctō, p. 68, l. 19. — ² pācātā, 49, 6. — ³ imperāta, 50, 18. — ⁴ pollicitōs, 51, 13.

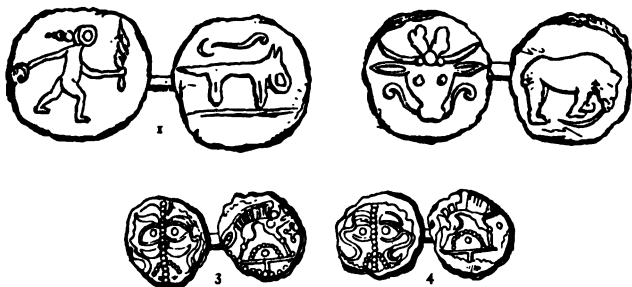


FIG. 44. — GALLIC COINS.



FIG. 45. — SHIPBUILDER.

BOOK III.

CÆSAR'S THIRD CAMPAIGN. B.C. 56.

Galba is Sent to Guard the Passes of the Alps about the Upper Rhone.

CUM in Ìtaliā proficiscerētur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne XII et parte equitātūs in Nantuātis, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpīs pertinent.* Causa mittendi fuit quod iter per Alpīs, quō māgnō cum periculō māgnisque cum portōriis¹ mercātōrēs ire cōsuērānt, patē fieri volēbat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitrārētur, uti in his locis legiōnem hiemandi causā conlocāret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque complūribus
 10 eōrum expūgnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortis duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs ēius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in valle, nōn māgnā adiectā plānitīē, altissimis
 15 montibus undique continētur. Cum hic in duās partis flūmine dividerētur, alteram partem ēius vicī Gallis [ad hiemandum] concessit, alteram vacuam² ab his relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vallō fossāque mūnīvit.

Cf. ¹ portōria, p. 15, l. 25. — ² vacuum, 57, 24.

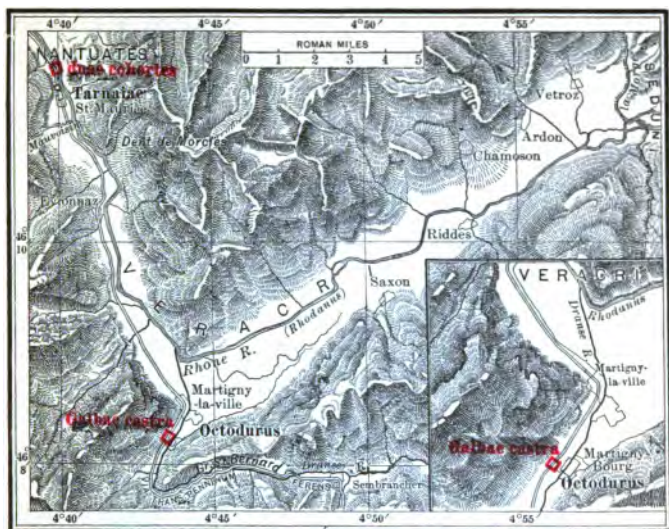


FIG. 46. — MAP OF OCTODURUS.

Having Gone into Winter Quarters, He is Threatened by Large Numbers of the Native Tribes, Who Occupy the Neighboring Heights.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīci quam Gallis concesserat omnis noctū discessisse, montisque quī impendērent ā maximā multitudine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causis acciderat ut subitō Galli belli renovandi legiōnisque opprimendae cōsiliū caperent: primum, quod legiōnem — neque eam plēnissimam, detrāctis cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillatim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missi erant — propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant;¹ tum etiam quod propter iniquitātem locī, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem posse impetum suum sustinērī existimābant. Accēdēbat

Cf. ¹ dēspiceret, p. 11, l. 20.

quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant,¹ et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possēssiōnis culmina Alpiū occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habē-
5 bant.

Galba Calls a Council. He will Defend the Camp, if Possible.

3. Hīs nūntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōnēque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptis nihil dē bellō timendum existi-
10 māverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentinī² periculi praeter opiniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudīne armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur, neque subsidiō veniri neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs
15 itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nullae eiūs modi sententiae³ dicēbantur ut, impedimentis relictis ēruptiōne factā, isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Māiōrī tamen parti placuit hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō interim rei ēventum experiri
20 et castra dēfendere.

The Gauls Attack Vigorously.

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut eis rēbus quās cōstituissent conlocandis atque administrandis tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaeque in vāllum conicere. Nostri primō integris viribus
25 fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsoribus premi⁴ vidēbatur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī quod diūturnitāte pūgnae hostēs dēfessi⁵ proeliō excēdēbant, alii integris viribus succēdēbant: quārū

Cf. ¹ doleant, p. 12, l. 15. — ² repentinō, 11, 7. — ³ sententiam, 56, 21. — ⁴ premi, 65, 27. — ⁵ dēfessi, 22, 11.



FIG. 47. — GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR.

rērum ā nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pūgnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem ēius loci ubi cōnstiterat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

The Battle Rages for Six Hours. The Only Hope is in Making a Sortie.

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pūgnārētur ac nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent,¹ atque hostēs ācrius instārent languidiōribusque nostris vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, primī pili centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum volneribus diximus, et item Gāius Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōnsili māgnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, si ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experirentur.¹ Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter militēs certiōrēs facit paulisper² intermitterent proelium, ac tantummodō tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent; post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

The Gauls are Defeated with Great Loss; but Galba Withdraws to the Province.

6. Quod iūssī sunt faciunt ac subitō omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī quid fieret neque suī conligendī hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā³ fortunā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt; et ex hominum milibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam cōniciunt ac nē in locis quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque exūtis sē intrā mūnitiōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortunam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō

Cf. ¹ dēficere, p. 56, l. 16. — ² paulisper, 54, 6. — ³ commūtātō, 20, 15.

sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis occurrisset
rēbus viderat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā¹ per-
mōtus, posterō diē omnibus ēius vicī aedificiis incēnsis in
prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac nullō hoste prohibente aut
5 iter dēmorante incolumem² legiōnem in Nantuātis, inde in
Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

Operations in Northwestern Gaul on the Seacoast. Crassus Sends
Messengers to Collect Supplies.

7. His rēbus gestis cum omnibus dē causis Caesar pācā-
tam Galliam existimāret [superātis Belgis, expulsis Germā-
nis, victis in Alpibus Sedūnis], atque ita initā hieme in
10 Illyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adire et
regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coōr-
tum est. Eius belli haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns
cum legiōne vii proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hie-
mābat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frūmenti erat, praefectōs
15 tribūnōsque militum complūris in finitimās civitātis frūmenti
causā dimisit; quō in numerō erat T. Terrasidius missus in
Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum
T. Siliō in Venetōs.

The Messengers are Seized by the Veneti, under whose Lead the Maritime
Tribes Demand a Return of their Hostages.

8. Hūius est civitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis
20 ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvis habent Veneti
plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōsuērunt, et
scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et
in māgnō impetū maris vāsti atque apertī paucis portibus
interiectis, quōs tenent ipsi, omnis ferē quī eō marī ūti cōn-
25 suērunt habent vectigālis. Ab his fit initium retinendī Sili
atque Velāni, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō
dedissent recuperātūrōs existimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte
finitimī adducti (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentina cōn-

Cf. ¹ inopiā, p. 24, l. 17. — ² incolumem, 48, 20.

silia), eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent ; et celeriter missis lēgātis per suōs principēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnis fortunae exitum esse lātūrōs ; reliquāsque cīvitatēs sollicitant¹ ut in eā libertāte quam ā māiōribus accēperint permanēre 5 quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem lēgatiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt : ‘ Si velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.’²



FIG. 48. — GALLEY.

Cæsar Orders a Fleet to be Built on the Loire. The Veneti Prepare for War and Summon Allies.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Cæsar ab Crassō certior factus, quod 10 ipse aberat longius, nāvis interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod influit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā institui, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. His rēbus

Cf. ¹ sollicitārentur, p. 49, l. 8. — ² remittere, 39, 5.

celeriter administrātis ipse, cum primum per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item civitatēs cōgnitō Caesaris adventū [certiōrēs facti], simul quod quantum in sē facinus¹ admisissent intellegēbant, lēgā-

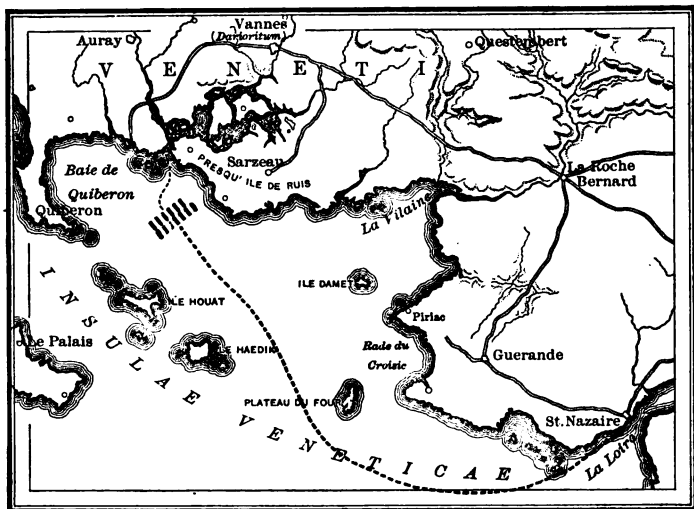


FIG. 49. — MAP OF THE VENETI NEIGHBORHOOD.

5 tōs — quod nōmen ad omnis nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātum-
que semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs,
prō māgnitūdine perīculi bellum parāre et maximē ea quae
ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre instituunt, hōc māiōre
spē quod multum nātūrā loci cōfidēbant. Pedestria esse
10 itinera concisa aestuāriis, nāvigātiōnem impeditam propter
īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque
nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmenti īnopiam diūtius apud sē
morārī posse cōfidēbant ; ac iam ut omnia contrā opiniōnem

Cf. ¹ facinore, p. 36, l. 15.

acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, insulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō mari atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. His 5 initis cōsiliis oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agris in oppida comportant, nāvis in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat,¹ quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt; auxilia 10 ex Britannīā, quae contrā eas regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.²

Cæsar's Reasons for Prosecuting the War. His Strategy "Divide and Conquer."

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datis obsidibus, tot civitātum 15 coniūrātiō, imprimis nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellexeret omnis ferē Gallōs novis rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbilit̄er celeriterque excitārī, omnis autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiōnem servitūtis ōdisse,³ priusquam plūrēs 20 civitātēs cōspirārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

Labiēnus Sent to the East, Crassus to the South, Sabinus to the North. Brutus has Charge of the Fleet.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, qui proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō 25 contineat; Germānōsque, qui auxiliō ā Gallis arcessitī dicē-

Cf. ¹ cōnstābat, p. 77, l. 25. — ² arcessendī, 63, 4. — ³ ōdisse, 16, 11.

bantur, si per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnariis XII et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae
 5 nātiōnēs coniungantur. / Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam¹ cūret. D. Brūtum adulescentem classī Gallicisq̄ue nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisq̄ue pācātis regiōnibus convenire iusserat,
 10 praeficit, et cum primum possit in Venetōs proficisci iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiis contendit.

Situation of the Strongholds of the Veneti.

12. Erant ēius modi ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulis prōmuntūriisque neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset (quod [bis]
 15 accidit semper hōrārū XII spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod rūsus minuente² aestū nāvēs in vadīs adflictārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediēbātur; ac si quandō — māgnitūdine operis forte superāti, extrūsō mari aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidi moenibus adaequātis —
 20 dēspērāre fortūnis suis coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium adpulsō, cūius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūsus isdem opportunitātibus loci dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae
 25 nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur summaque erat vāstō atque apertō mari, māgnis aestibus, rārīs ac prope nullis portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

Description of their Ships. Comparison with those of the Romans.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant: carinae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārū

Cf. ¹ *distinēri*, p. 52, l. 12. — ² *minuendam*, 17, 23.

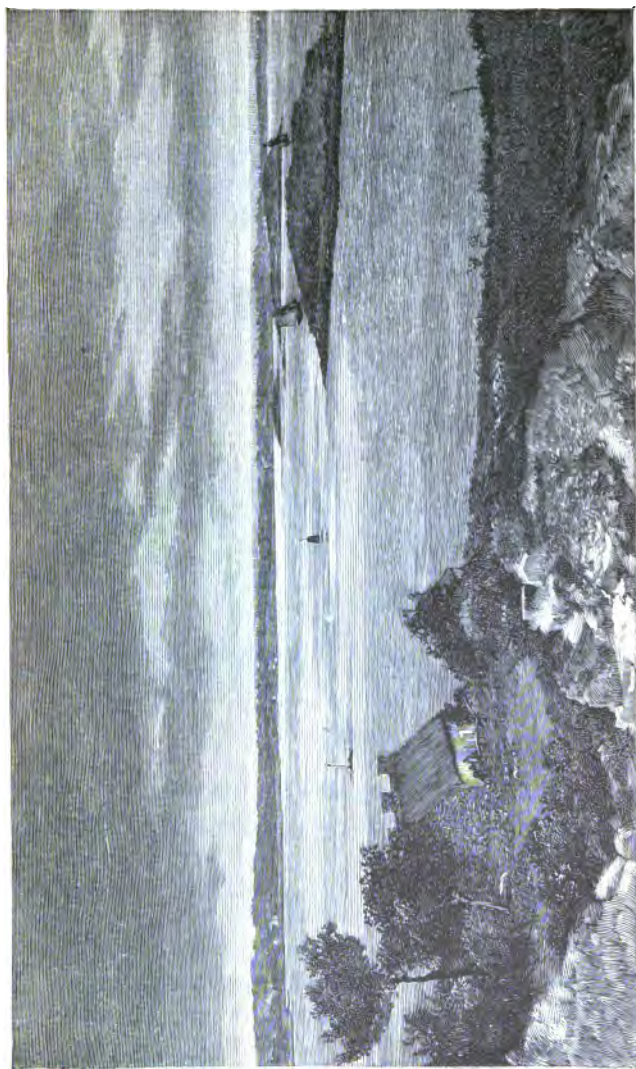


FIG. 50. — MOUTH OF THE LOIRE.

nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodatae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitudinem trabibus cōn- 5
fixa clāvis ferreis digitī pollicis crassitudine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreis catēnīs¹ revinctae; pellēs² prō vēlis alūtaeque tenuiter cōfectae, sive propter inopiam linī atque eius ūsūs

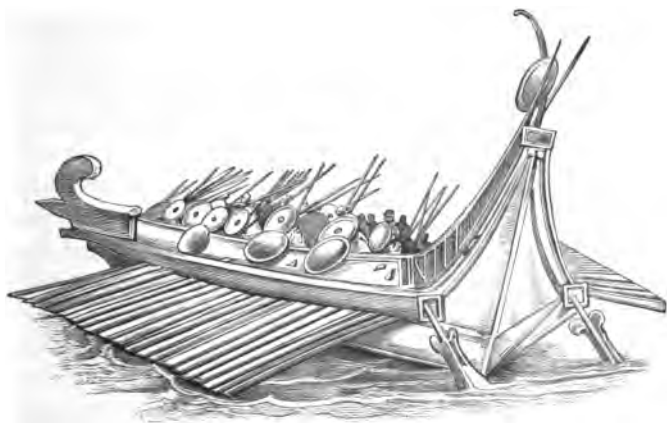


FIG. 51. — ROMAN BATTLE SHIP.

inscientiam sive eō (quod est magis vērissimile) quod tantās tempestātis Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinēri ac 10
tanta onera nāvium regī vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae clāssi eius modī congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum prae-
stāret; reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vi tempestātum, illis essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eis nostrae 15
rōstrō nocēre poterant — tanta in eis erat firmitūdō — neque

Cf. ¹ catēnīs, p. 48, l. 11. — ² pellibus, 72, 10.

propter altitudinem facile tēlum adigēbātur et eādem dē
 causā minus commodē cōpulis continēbantur. Accēdēbat
 ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et
 tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadis cōnsisterent tūtius
 5 et ab aestū relictæ nihil saxa et cōtis timērent; quārum
 rērum omnium nostris nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

The Battle. How the Romans Overcame their Disadvantages.

14. Complūribus expūgnātis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellēxit
 frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captis
 oppidis reprimī neque eis nocērī posse, statuit expectan-
 10 dam classem.¹ Quæ ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus
 visa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum parātissimæ atque
 omni genere armōrum ōrnatissimæ profectæ ex portū nos-
 tris adversæ cōstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, qui classī
 praeerat, vel tribūnīs militum centuriōibusque, quibus sin-
 15 gularæ nāvēs erant attribūtæ, cōnstābat quid agerent aut
 quam ratiōnem pūgnæ insisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī
 nōn posse cōgnōverant; turribus autem excitātis tamen hās
 altitudō puppiū ex barbaris nāvibus superābat ut neque
 ex inferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa
 20 ā Gallis gravius acciderent. Ūna erat māgnō ūsui rēs prae-
 parāta ā nostris, — falcēs praeacūtæ² insertæ adfixæque
 longuriis nōn absimili formā mūrālium falcium. His cum
 fūnēs qui antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsi
 adductique erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praeurmpēbantur.
 25 Quibus abscisis antemnae necessariō concidēbant; ut, cum
 omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs in vēlis armāmentisque cōsis-
 teret, his ēreptis³ omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperē-
 tur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostri
 militēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū
 30 Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nullum

Cf. ¹ classī, p. 82, l. 8. — ² praeacūtās, 70, 3. — ³ ēripī, 39, 2.

paulō fortius factum latēre¹ posset ; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

They Defeat the Enemy and Capture their Ships.

15. Disiectis (ut diximus) antemnis, cum singulās binae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī trāns-
dere in hostium nāvis contendēbant. Quod postquam bar-
bari fieri animadvertērunt, expūgnātis complūribus nāvibus,
cum ei rei nūllum reperirētur auxilium, fugā salutem petere



FIG. 52. — TRADING VESSEL.

contendērunt. Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit
ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad
negōtium cōficiendum maximē fuit opportūna ; nam
singulās nostrī cōsectāti expūgnāverunt, ut perpaucae ex
omni numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum
ab hōrā ferē IIII ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.

Cf. ¹ latēbant, p. 62, l. 19.

The Veneti Surrender. Their Leaders are Put to Death, the Rest Sold as Slaves.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōsili aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat in
 5 ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissis reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesari dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbaris iūs lēgātōrum cōservāretur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēdidit.

Meanwhile Sabinus Goes among the Venelli, and is Challenged by them. He Avoids an Engagement.

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabinus cum eis cōpiis quās ā Caesare accēperat in finis Venellōrum pervēnit. His praecerat Viridovix ac summam imperi tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum quae dēfēcera¹, ex quibus
 15 exercitum māgnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque his paucis diēbus Aulerci, Eburovicēs, Lexovii²que senātū suō interfecit, quod auctōrēs belli esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovice coniunxērunt; māgnaque praeterea
 20 multitudō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, et quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agricultūrā et cotidiānō² labōre revocābat. Sabinus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castris sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōnsēdisset
 25 cotidiēque prōductis cōpiis pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabinus veniret sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opiniōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat

Cf. ¹ dēfēcisse, p. 59, l. 6. — ² cotidiānīs, 17, 8.

quod cum tantā multitudīne hostium, praesertim eō absente quī summam imperi tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dimicandum nōn existimābat.

By a Stratagem he Induces Viridovix to Attack him.

18. Hāc cōfirmatā opiniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eis quōs auxili 5 causā sēcum habēbat. Huic māgnīs praemiis pollicitātiōibusque persuādet uti ad hostis trāseat et quid fieri velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā¹ ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiis ipse Caesar ā Venetis premātur docet; neque longius abesse quā proximā nocte 10



FIG. 53. — GALLIC SWORD-BLADE.

Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxili ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsionem negōti bene gerendi āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra iri oportēre. Multae rēs ad hōc cōsiliū Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī 15 cunctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab eis erat prōvisum, spēs Venetici belli, et quod ferē libenter² hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. His rēbus adducti nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dimittunt quam ab eis sit concessum arma uti 20 capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laeti ut explōratā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque conlētis quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant,³ ad castra pergunt.

Complete Victory of Sabinus.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus⁴ et paulātīm ab imō acclivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt, 25

Cf. ¹ perfugis, p. 25, l. 8. — ² libenter, 39, 23. — ³ complēta, 76, 13. — ⁴ ēditus, 54, 18.

ut quam minimum spatī ad sē conligendōs armandōsque Rōmānis darētur, exanimātique pervēnērunt. Sabinus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portis ēruptiōnem
 5 fieri iubet. Factum est opportunitāte locī, hostium inscientiā ac dēfatigātiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum pūgnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integris¹ viribus milites nostri cōsecūtī māgnū numerum eōrum occidē-
 10 runt; reliquōs equitēs cōsectātī paucōs qui ex fugā ēvāserant reliquērunt. Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pūgnā Sabinus et dē Sabīnī victoriā Caesar est certior factus; civitatēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōptus est
 15 animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātis preferendās mēns eōrum est.

In Aquitania Crassus is Attacked by the Sotiates.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus cum in Aquitāniam pervēnisset, — quae, ut ante dictum est, [et regiōnum lātitudine et multitudīne hominū] est tertiā pars Galliae [est
 20 aestimanda], — cum intellexeret in eis locis sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius Praecōninus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Manlius prōcōsul impedimentis āmissis prōfūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi diligentiā adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē
 25 frumentāriā prōvisā, auxiliis equitātūque comparātō, multis praetereā viris fortibus Tolōsā et Narbōne (quae sunt civitatēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae [ex] his regiōnibus) nōminatim ēvocātis, in Sōtiātium finis exercitum intrōdūxit. Cūius adventū cōgnitō Sōtiātēs māgnis cōpiis
 30 coāctis equitātūque, quō plūrimū valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī primum equestre proelium commisē-

Cf. ¹ *integrīs*, p. 76, l. 29.

runt; deinde equitatū suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostris, subito pedestris cōpiās, quās in convalle in insidiis conlocaverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.¹

He Defeats them in Battle and Besieges their Stronghold. They Surrender.

21. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs superioribus victōriis frēti in suā virtūte tōtius Aquitāniae salutem positam putārent; nostri autem quid sine imperātore et sine reliquis legiōnibus adulēscēntulō duce efficere possent perspicī² cuperent; tandem cōfecti vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum māgnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppūgnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineās turrisque ēgit. Illi, aliās ēruptionē temptātā, aliās cuniculis ad aggerem vineāsque āctis (cūius rei sunt longē perītissimi³ Aquitāni, proptereā quod multis locis apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi diligentiā nostrōrum nihil his rēbus prōfici posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēditionē ut recipiat petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma trādere iūssi, faciunt. 15

The Soldurii, or Brothers in Arms.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentis animis, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperi tenēbat, cum de dēvōtis, quōs illi solduriōs appellant, — quōrum haec est condiciō uti omnibus in vitā commodis⁴ unā cum eis fruantur quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint; sī quid his per vim accadat, aut eundem cāsum unā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnsciscant;⁵ neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam quī, eō interfectō cūius sē amicitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret, — cum his Adiatunnus ēruptionē facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad 25

Cf. ¹ renovandī, p. 75, l. 6. — ² perspiciebant, 81, 5. — ³ perītissimus, 18, 22. — ⁴ commodō, 31, 24. — ⁵ cōnsciverit, 4, 15.

arma militēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen uti eādem dēditionis condiōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

Crassus Proceeds against Other Aquitanian Tribes Who are Conspiring, and Decides to Give Battle.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in finīs Vocā-
 5 tium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī com-
 mōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā loci et manū mūnitum paucis
 diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expūgnātum cōgnōverant,
 lēgātōs quōqueversus dimittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē
 dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās
 10 civitātis lēgātī quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae
 Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur; quōrum
 adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et māgnā hominum multitu-
 dine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō ei dēliguntur qui
 unā cum Q. Sertōriō omnis annōs fuerant summamque sci-
 15 entiam rei militāris habēre existimābantur. Hī cōnsuētū-
 dine populi Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus
 nostrōs interclūdere instituunt.¹ Quod ubi Crassus animad-
 vertit, — suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile didūci,
 hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castris satis praesidi
 20 relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frumentum
 commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum
 augērī, — nōn cunctandum existimāvit quā pūgnā dēcer-
 tāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentire
 intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōstituit.

The Enemy Keep to their Camp, Which Crassus Attacks.

25 24. Primā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplici aciē
 institūtā, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs
 cōnsili caperent expectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudi-
 nem et veterem belli glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē
 tūtō dimicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius² esse arbitrā-

Cf. ¹ instituunt, p. 80, l. 8. — ² tūtius, 84, 4.

bantur obsessis viis, commeātū interclūsō, sine vulnere victoriā potiri; et, si propter inopiam rei frūmentāriæ Rōmāni sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs infirmiorēs animō adoriri cōgitābant. Hōc cōsiliō probātō, ab ducibus prōductis Rōmānōrū cōpiis, sēsē castris 5



FIG. 54. — SOLDIERS MAKING CAMP.

tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opiniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriorēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur expectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quā ad castra irētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit. 10

They Hold their Own for a Time.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multis tēlis coniectis dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque (quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōfidēbat) lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis speciem atque opiniōnem pūgnantium prae- 15

bērent; cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timide pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitis hostium castris Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādē esse diligentia ab decumānā portā castra
5 mūnita facilemque aditum habere.

But are Forced to Abandon their Camp and Flee.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut māgnis praemiis pollicitatiōnibusque¹ suos excitārent, quid fieri velīt ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, dēvectis eis cohortibus quae praesidiō castris relictæ intritæ ab labōre erant
10 et longiōre itinere circumductis, nē ex hostium castris cōspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pūgnam intentis, celeriter ad eas quās diximus mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt, atque his prōrutis prius in hostium castris cōstitērunt quam plānē ab his vidēri, aut quid rei gererētur cōgnōsci
15 posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostri redintegrātis² viribus, quod plērumque³ in spē victōriæ accidere cōsuēvit, ācrius impūgnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventi, dēspērātis omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salutem petere contendērunt.
20 Quos equitātus apertissimis campis cōsectātus, ex milium L. numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōstābat, vix quartā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Most of the Aquitanian Tribes Surrender to Crassus.

27. Hāc auditā pūgnā māxima pars Aquitāniæ sēsē
25 Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō misit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbelli, Bigerriōnes, Ptiānii, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Ausci, Garumni, Sibusātes, Cocosātes; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfisae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

Cf. ¹ pollicitatiōnibus, p. 87, l. 6. — ² redintegrātō, 67, 13. — ³ plērumque, 70, 20.

In the North Cæsar Advances against the Morini and Menapii, Who Take Refuge in Forests and Marshes.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Cæsar, etsi prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen quod omni Galliā pācātā Morini Menapiique supererant qui in armis essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōfici posse, eō exercitum dūxit; qui longē aliā 5
ratione ac reliqui Galli bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentisque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Cæsar pervēnisset castraque 10
mūnīre instituisset neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās repulērunt, et complūribus interfectis longius impeditiōribus locis secūti 15
paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

He Ravages their Territory, and then Goes into Winter Quarters.

29. Reliquis deinceps diēbus Cæsar silvās caedere instituit et, nē quis inermibus¹ imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam mātēriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad 20
utrumque latus exstruēbat.² Incrēdibili celeritāte māgnō spatiō paucis diēbus cōfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostris tenērentur, ipsi dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī sunt tempestātēs cōsecūtae uti opus necēssariō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius 25
sub pellibus milites continēri nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agris, vicis aedificiisque incēnsis, Cæsar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercis Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitātibus quae proximē bellum fēcērant, in hibernis conlocāvit.

30

Cf. ¹ inermēs, p. 68, l. 6. — ² exstrūctō, 70, 16.



FIG. 55. — PACK-WAGONS AND CARTS.

BOOK IV.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE GERMANS. — FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN. B.C. 55.

German Tribes, Pressed by the Suevi, Cross the Rhine.

EÃ quae secũta est hieme, quĩ fuit annus Cn. Pompẽiõ,
M. Crassõ cõsulibus, Usipetẽs Germãni et item Tenc-
terĩ mãgnã [cum] multitudĩne hominũ flũmen Rhẽnum
trãnsiẽrunt, nũn longẽ ã marĩ quõ Rhẽnus influit. Causa
5 trãnseundĩ fuit quod ab Suẽvis complũris annõs exagitãti
bellõ premẽbantur et agrĩ cultũrã prohibẽbantur.

Customs of the Suevi.

Suẽvõrum gẽns est longẽ maxima et bellicõsissima Ger-
mãnõrum omnium. Hĩ centum pãgõs habẽre dicuntur, ex
quibus quotannis singula milia armãtõrum bellandĩ causã
10 ex finibus ẽducunt. Reliquĩ, quĩ domĩ mãsẽrunt, sẽ atque
illõs alunt.¹ Hĩ rũsus in vicem annõ post in armĩs sunt,
illi domĩ remanent. Sic neque agrĩ cultũra nec ratiõ atque
ũsus belli intermittitur. Sed privãti ac sẽparãti agrĩ apud
eõs nihil est, neque longius annõ remanẽre ùnõ in locõ co-
15 lendĩ causã licet. Neque multum frũmentõ, sed maximam
partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in vẽnã-
tiõnibus ; quae rẽs et cibĩ genere et cotidiãnã exercitãtiõne

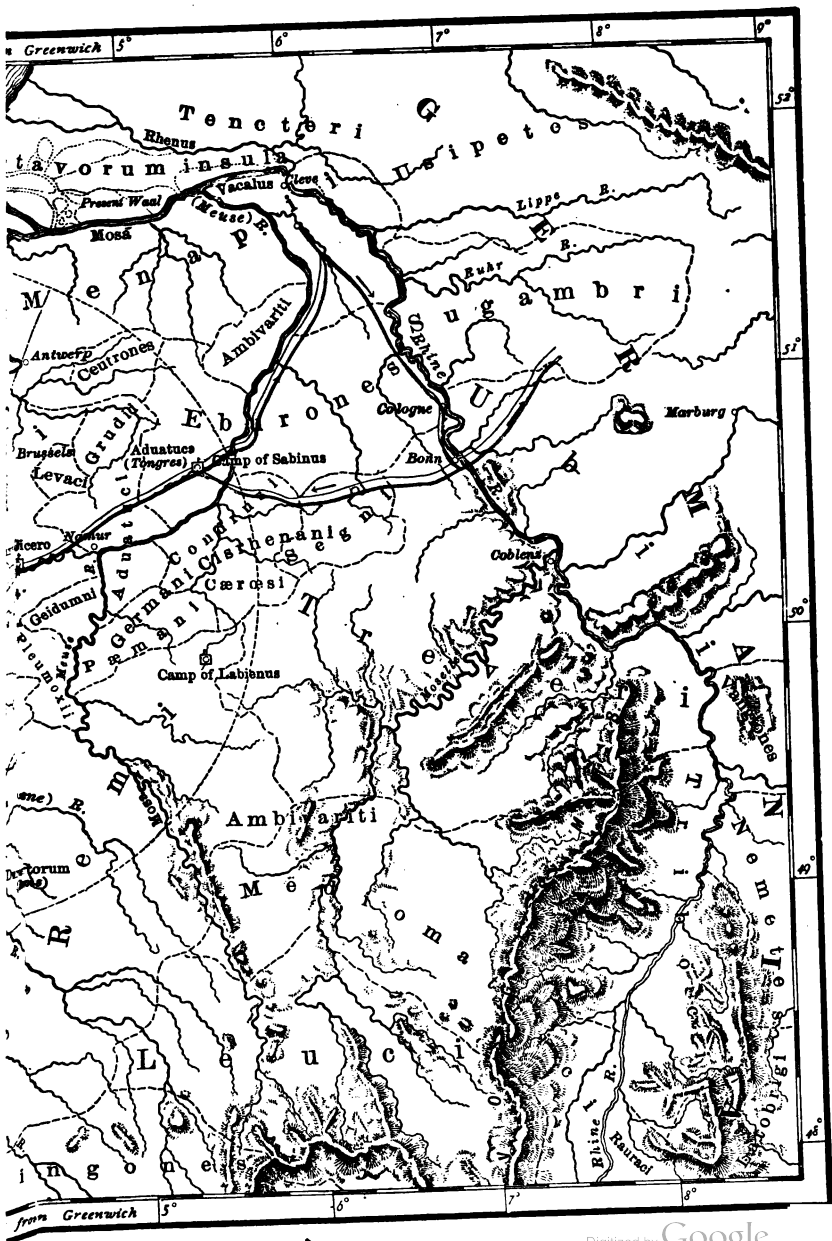
Cf. ¹ alere, p. 16, l. 5.



ION 08

mpēiā
Tenc
hēnum
Causa
agitāti

Ger-
ur, ex
causā
atque
sunt,
utque
apud
ō co-
nam
ēnā-
iōne



2

ail
iri
ele
orti
atqu
abon

Ec
roel
ant,
eōrum
ephi
equit
impo
mollē

3.

ā sui
meru
inā
racā
rum

Ct.

et libertāte vitæ, quod ā pueris nullō officiō¹ aut disciplinā adsuēfacti nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et viris alit et immānī corporum māgnitudine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitūs praeter pellis habērent quicquam, quārum 5 propter exiguitātem māgna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

Their Intercourse with Other Tribes.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō ut quæ bellō cēperint quibus vēdant² habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quin etiam iūmentis, quibus maximē Galli 10 dēlectantur quæque impēnsō parant pretiō, [Germānī] importātis nōn ūtuntur; sed quæ sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēformia, haec cotidiānā exercitiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt.

Their Cavalry Tactics.

Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis dēsiliunt ac pedibus 15 proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vestigiō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius³ quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiis ūti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvis pauci adire audent. Vinum omnīnō ad sē 20 importārī nōn sinunt, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

The Ubii, Tributaries of the Suevi.

3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significārī māgnū numerum civitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque 25 ūnā ex parte ā Suēvis circiter milia passuum sexcenta agri vacāre dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubii, quōrum fuit civitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānō-

Cf. ¹ officiō, p. 81, l. 25.—² vēdidit, 86, 11.—³ turpissimum, 30, 11.

rum ; eī paulō, quamquam sunt ēiusdem generis, sunt cēteris
hūmāniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque
ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem
[quod] Gallicis sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēvī
5 multis saepe bellis expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitā-
temque civitātis finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen
vectigālīs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiorēsque¹
redēgērunt.

The Usipetes and Tencteri, Expelled from Germany, Overcome the Menapii.

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs
10 suprā diximus, quī complūris annōs Suēvōrum vim sustinu-
ērunt ; ad extrēmum tamen agris expulsī et multis locīs
Germāniae triennium vagātī² ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt ; quās
regiōnēs Menapii incolēbant. Hī ad utramque ripam flūmi-



FIG. 57. — COINS OF CÆSAR.

nis agrōs aedificia vicōsque habēbant ; sed tantae multitu-
15 dinis aditū perterriti ex eis aedificiis quae trāns flūmen
habuerant dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dispositis praesi-
diis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. Illi omnia expertī,
cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque
clam trānsire propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, reverti
20 sē in suās sēdis regiōnēsque simulāvērunt³ et tridui viam
prōgressi rūsus revertērunt, atque omni hōc itinere unā
nocte equitatū cōfectō insciōs inopinantisque⁴ Menapiōs
oppressērunt ; quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs

Cf. ¹ infirmiorēs, p. 91, l. 4. — ² vagārī, 90, 19. — ³ simulātā, 40, 14.
— ⁴ inopinantis, 10, 10.

certiorēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. His interfectis nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātis reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis aluērunt. 5

Caesar Distrusts the Gauls on Account of their Fickle Character. He Fears their Alliance with Germans.

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendis mōbilēs et novis plērumque rēbus student, nihil his committendum existimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis uti et viātōrēs etiam invitōs¹ cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque 10 eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidis volgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. His rēbus atque auditiōnibus permōti dē summis saepe rēbus cōsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestigiō paenitēre 15 necesse est, cum incertis rūmōribus serviant et plērique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

He Resolves to Make War on the Germans.

6. Quā cōsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōri bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōsuērat ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta 20 cōgnōvit: missās lēgatiōnēs ab nōn nullis civitatibus ad Germānōs invitātōsque eōs uti ab Rhēnō discēderent, omnia quae [que] postulāssent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in finis Eburōnum et Cōndrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. 25 Principibus Galliae ēvocātis² Caesar ea quae cōgnōverat dissimulanda sibi existimāvit, eōrumque animis permulsis et cōfirmātis equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānis gerere cōstituit.

Cf. ¹ invitō, p. 12, l. 9. — ² ēvocātis, 88, 28.

They Send him a Defiant Message.

7. Rē frumentariā comparatā equitibusque dēlectis, iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locis esse Germānōs audiebat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgāti ab eis vērēunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō : ‘ Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, si lacessantur,¹ quin armis contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō [haec] sit ā māiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dicere, vēnisse invitōs, ēiectōs domō ; si suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse eis ūtilis esse amīcōs ; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armis possēderint : sēsē ūnis Suēvis concēdere, quibus nē dii quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint ; reliquum quidem in terris esse nēmīnem quem nōn superāre possint.’

He Orders them to Withdraw from Gaul.

15 8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum² est respondit ; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis : ‘ Sibi nūllam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Galliā remanērent ; neque vērū esse quī suōs finis tuērī nōn potuerint aliēnōs occupāre ; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī darī tantae praesertim multitudinī sine iniuriā possint ; sed licēre, si velint, in Ubiōrum finibus considere, quōrum sint lēgāti apud sē et dē Suēvōrum iniuriis querantur et ā sē auxilium petant ; hōc sē Ubiis imperātūrum.’

They Delay.

9. Lēgāti haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixērunt et rē dēlīb-
25 rātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs ; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dixit. Cōgnōverat enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab eis aliquot diēbus ante praedandi frūmen-

Cf. ¹ lacesseret, p. 31, l. 19. — ² vidēbantur, 63, 14.

is

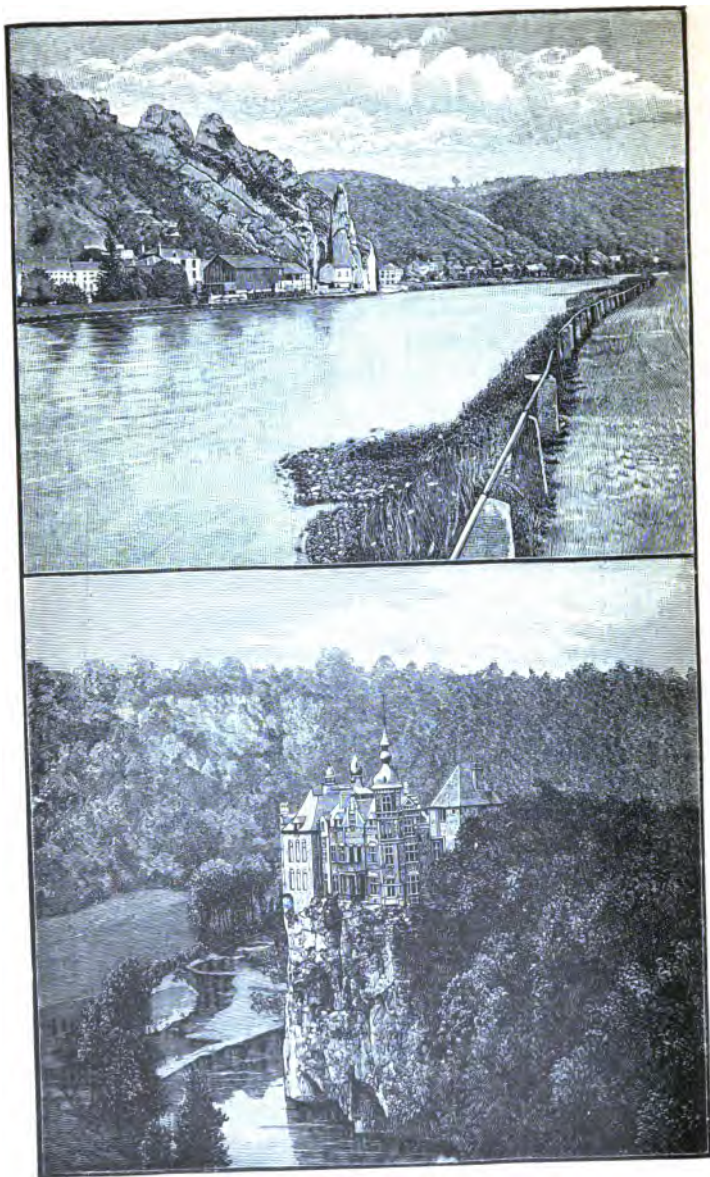


FIG. 58. — SCENERY ON THE MEUSE.

tandique causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam ; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque ēius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

The Meuse and the Rhine Described.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā quae appel- 5
lātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batavōrum [in Ōceanum in-
fluit] neque longius inde milibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum
influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontis, quī Alpīs inco-
lunt, et longō spatiō per finis Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum,
Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citā- 10
tus fertur ; et ubi Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in plūris dēfluit
partis multis ingentibusque¹ insulis effectis, quārum pars
māgna ā feris barbarisque nātiōibus incolitur, — ex quibus
sunt quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vivere existimantur, —
multisque capitibus in Ōceanum influit. 15

Cæsar Advances. More Parleying to Gain Time.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mili-
bus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur ;
quī in itinere congressī māgnopere nē longius prōgrederētur
ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs
equitēs quī agmen antecessissent² praemitteret, eōsque pūgnā 20
prohibēret, sibi ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs
mittendī ; quōrum sī principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō
fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsū-
rōs ostendēbant ; ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium
daret. Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābā- 25
tur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent
reverterentur ; tamen sēsē nōn longiūs milibus passuum IIII
aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dixit ; hūc posterō diē
quam frequentissimī convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātis
cōgnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs³ quī cum omnī equitātū 30

Cf. ¹ ingenti, p. 33, l. 21. — ² antecēdunt, 78, 22. — ³ praefectōs, 92, 6.

anteceſſerant mittit qui nūntiārent nē hostiſ proeliō laceſſerent; et, ſi ipſi laceſſerentur, ſuſtinērent quoad ipſe cum exercitū propius acceſſiſſet.

The German Cavalry Treacherouſly Attack and Rout the Roman.

12. At hoſtēs, ubi primum noſtrōs equitēs cōſpexērunt, quōrum erat v milium numerus, cum ipſi nōn amplius dccc equitēs habērent, quod ei qui frūmentandī cauſā ierant trāns Moſam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus noſtris, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caſare diſceſſerant atque iſ diēs indūtiis erat ab hiſ petitus, impetū factō
10 celeriter noſtrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrſus hiſ reſiſtentibus, cōſuētūdine ſuā ad pedēs dēſiluērunt,¹ ſubfōſſiſque equiſ complūribuſque noſtriſ dēiectiſ, reliquōs in fugam cōiēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn priuſ fugā dēſiſterent quam in cōſpectum agminiſ noſtri vēniſſent.

Gallant Conduct and Death of the Brothers Piſo.

15 In eō proeliō ex equitibus noſtriſ interficiuntur iiii et lxx; in hiſ vir fortiffimūſ, Piſō Aquitānuſ, ampliffimō genere nātūſ, cūiuſ avuſ in civitatē ſuā rēgnum obtinuerat amicuſ ab ſenātū noſtrō appellātūſ. Hic cum frātri interclūſō ab hoſtibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit,
20 ipſe equō volnerātō dēiectuſ quoad potuit fortiffimē reſtitit; cum circumventuſ multiſ volneribuſ acceptiſ cecidiſſet, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō exceſſerat, procul animadvertiſſet, incitatō equō ſē hoſtibuſ obtulit atque interfectuſ eſt.

Envoys Come to Cæſar, Whom he Detains. Vigorous Action Demanded.

25 13. Hōc factō proeliō Caſar neque iam ſibi lēgātōſ audiendōſ neque condiſiōnēſ accipiendāſ arbitrabātur ab eiſ qui per dolum atque inſidiāſ petitiā pāce ultrō bellum

Cf. ¹ dēſiliunt, p. 95, l. 15.

intulissent: exspectare vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augē-
 rentur¹ equitatusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse
 iudicābat; et cōgnitā Gallōrum infirmitate quantum iam
 apud eōs hostēs unō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōsecūti
 sentiēbat; quibus ad cōsilia capiēda nihil spati dandum
 existimābat. His cōstitutis rēbus et cōsiliō cum lēgātis
 et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pūgnae praeter-
 mitteret, opportunissima rēs accidit, quod postridiē eius
 diēi māne eādē et perfidiā et simulatiōne ūsi Germāni
 frequentēs, omnibus principibus māiōribusque nātū adhibi-
 tīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt: simul, ut dicēbātur, pūr-
 gandi² sui causā, quod (contrā atque esset dictum et ipsi
 petissent) proelium pridīē commisissent; simul ut, si quid
 possent, dē indūtiis fallendō³ impetrārent. Quōs sibi
 Caesar oblātōs gāvisus illōs retinēri iussit; ipse omnis
 cōpiās castris ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō
 perterritum esse existimābat, agmen subsequi iussit.

Caesar Surprises the German Camp.

14. Acie triplici institutā et celeriter viii milium itinere
 cōfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid
 agerētur Germāni sentire possent. Quī omnibus rēbus
 subitō perterriti et celeritate adventūs nostrī et discessū
 suōrum, neque cōsili habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō
 datō perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an
 castra dēfendere an fugā salutem petere praestāret.⁴ Quō-
 rum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, militēs
 nostrī pristini diēi perfidiā incitātī in castra inrūpērunt.
 Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt paulisper
 nostris restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaue proe-
 lium commisērunt; at reliqua multitudō puerōrum mulie-
 rumque — nam cum omnibus suis domō excesserant

Cf. ¹ angēri, p. 90, l. 22. — ² pūrgāti, 25, 6. — ³ fefellisse, 56, 14. —
⁴ praestāre, 71, 14.

Rhēnumque trānsierant—passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum misit.

The Germans are Defeated and Flee; Many are Slain or Perish in the River.

15. Germānī post tergum¹ clāmōre auditō cum suōs interfici vidērent, armīs abiectis signisque militāribus relictis sē
 5 ex castris ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, māgnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt; atque ibi timōre, lassitudīne,² vī flūminis oppressi periērunt. Nostri ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucis volnerātis ex tanti
 10 belli timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum cccxxx milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eis quōs in castris retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illi supplicia cruciātusque Gallōrum veriti, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixērunt. His Caesar libertātem
 15 concessit.

Cæsar's Reasons for Crossing the Rhine and for Building a Bridge.

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō multis dē causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum: quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impelli³ ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit,
 20 cum intellexerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvi praedandī frūmentandique causā Mosam trānsisse, neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in
 25 finis Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum eis coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs misisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaequē bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, responderunt: 'Populi Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finire; sī sē

Cf. ¹ *terga*, p. 89, l. 10. — ² *lassitudīne*, 64, 24. — ³ *impulsōs*, 59, 4.

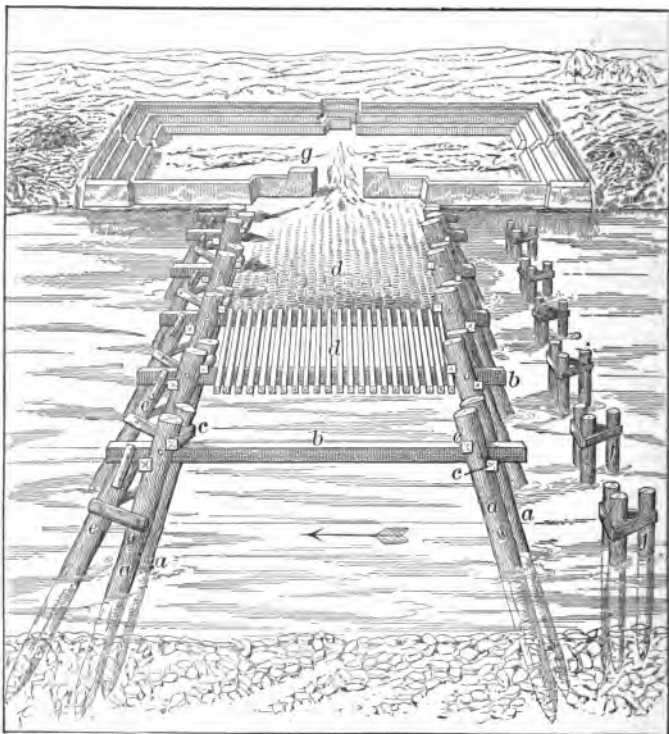


FIG. 59. — PONS A CAESARE IN RHENO FACTUS.

aa, tigna bina sesquipedalia; *bb*, trabes bipedales; *cc*, fibulae;
dd, directa materia longuriis cratibusque constrata;
ee, sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis pro ariete oblique actae;
ff, sublicae supra pontem immissae;
g, castellum ad caput pontis positum.

invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existi-
māret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns
Rhēnum postulāret?’ Ubī autem, quī unī ex Trānsrhē-
nānis ad Caesarem lēgātōs miserant, amicitiam fēcerant,
obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium 5
ferret, quod graviter ab Suēvis premerentur; vel, sī id
facere occupātiōnibus rei pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum
modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sibi *ad* auxilium spemque
reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque
opīniōnem ēius exercitūs Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō 10
proeliō factō etiam ad ultimās ¹ Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī
opīniōne et amicitīā populī Rōmānī tūti esse possent.
Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum
pollicēbantur.

Description of the Bridge.

17. Caesar hīs dē causis quās commemorāvi Rhēnum 15
trānsire dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsire neque sātis tūtum
esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī digni-
tātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendi
pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitudinem, rapiditatem, alti-
tūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut 20
aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat. Ratiōnem
pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālīa paulum ab
īmō praeacūta, dimēnsa ² ad altitudinem flūminis, inter-
vallō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchi-
nātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcisque adēgerat, 25
— nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē
ac fastigātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent,
— eis item contrāria duō ad eundem modum iūcta inter-
vallō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim
atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque 30
insuper bipedālībus trabibus ³ immissis, quantum eōrum

Cf. ¹ *ultimae*, p. 92, l. 28. — ² *dimēnsō*, 62, 18. — ³ *trabibus*, 83, 5.

tignōrum iūctūra distābat, binis utrimque fibulis ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur ;¹ quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō māior vis aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā² māteriā³ iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriis crātibusque cōsternēbantur ; ac nihilō sēcūs publica et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniūctae vim flūminis exciperent ; et
 10 aliae item suprā pontem mediocri⁴ spatiō, ut, sī arborum trunci sive nāvēs dēciendi operis essent ā barbaris immissae, his dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vis minuerētur, neu ponti nocērent.⁴

Cæsar Enters Germany.

18. Diēbus x quibus māteria coepta erat comportāri
 15 omni opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finis Sugambrorum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt ; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentibus liberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet.
 20 At Sugambri ex eō tempore quō pōns institui coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus eis quōs ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis excesserant suaeque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

He Learns that the Suevi are Preparing to Resist him, and after Eighteen Days Returns to Gaul.

25 19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vicis aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque succis, sē in finis Ubiōrum recēpit ; atque his auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ab Suēvis premerentur, haec ab eis cōgnōvit : ‘ Suēvōs,

Cf. ¹ *distinendam*, p. 82, l. 7. — ² *māteriam*, 93, 19. — ³ *mediocrem*, 88, 23. — ⁴ *nocēre*, 83, 16.

posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fieri comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūtiōs in omnis partis dimisisse,¹ uti dē oppidis dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in silvis dēpōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenirent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium 5 ferē regiōnum eārum quās Suēvi obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre, atque ibi dēcertāre cōstituisse.’

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eis rēbus cōfectis quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut Germānis metum iniceret,² ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur, ut 10 Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōsūmptis, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitatem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.³

Cæsar Determines to Invade Britain.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in his locis 15 (quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit: quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrāta⁴ auxilia intellegēbat; et, si tempus [annī] ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsui fore arbitrā- 20 bātur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnovisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque eis ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Gal- 25 liās nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset insulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum belli habērent aut quibus institūtis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad māiōrem nāvium multitudinem idōnei portūs reperire poterat. 30

Cf. ¹ dīmittere, p. 90, l. 8. — ² iniectum, 41, 21. — ³ rescindī, 6, 20. — ⁴ subministrandis, 91, 14.

He Sends Volusenus on a Reconnoissance, then Commius.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus, C. Volusēnum cum nāvi longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explorātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in
 5 Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvis undique ex finitimis regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenire. Interim cōnsiliō eius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō¹ ad Britannōs, ā complūribus in-
 10 sulae civitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus auditis liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eis unā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi cōn-
 15 stituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cūiusque auctōritās in his regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat civitātis, hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volu-
 20 sēnus perspectis regiōnibus quantum ei facultātis dari potuit, quī nāvi ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn audēret, quintō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

The Morini Submit. A Fleet is Prepared.

22. Dum in his locis Caesar nāvium parandārum causā
 25 morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērē-
 runt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperitī² bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāset fac-
 tūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē acci-

Cf. ¹ perlāta, p. 73, l. 4. — ² imperitum, 40, 9.

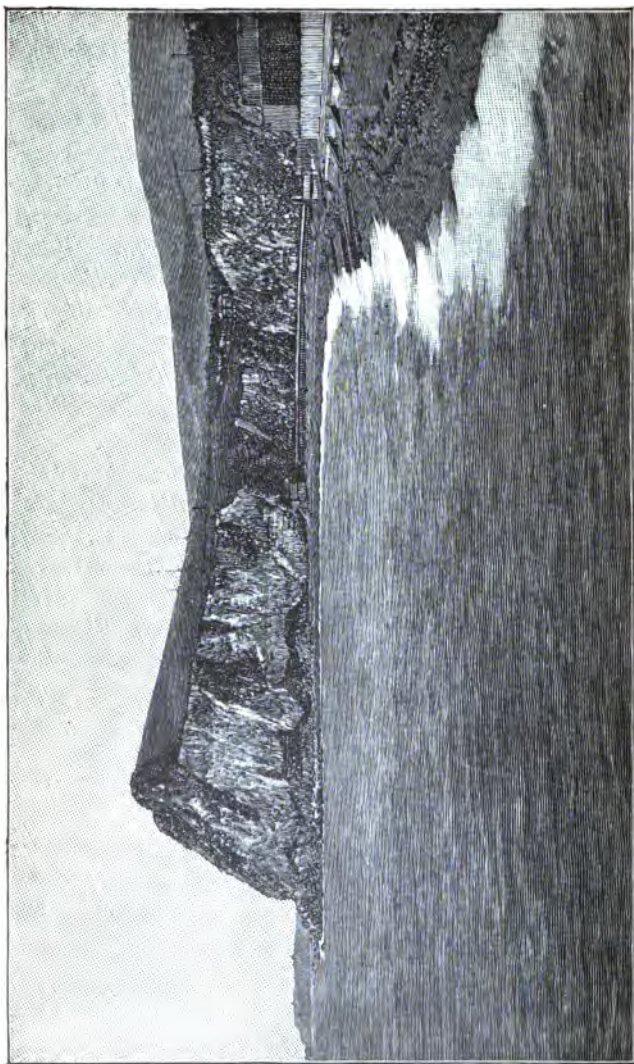


FIG. 60. — CLIFFS OF DOVER.

disse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque belli gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs¹ Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, māgnū eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eōs in fidem recipit. ; Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriis coāctis [contrāctisque], quot satis esse ad duās trāsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātis praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum VIII ventō tenē- 10 bantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent ; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātis in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit ; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō prae- 15 sidiō quod sātis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

The Fleet Crosses the Channel, Finds Difficulty in Landing, and Comes to Anchor.

23. Hīs cōstitūtis rēbus nactus² idōneam ad nāvigan- dum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvis cōscendere et sē sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset admini- 20 strātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quartā cum primis nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cūius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur utī ex locis superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigi³ posset. Hunc ad 25 ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent ad hōram nōnam in ancoris exspectāvit. Interim lēgātis tribūnisque militum convo- cātis et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset et quae fieri vellet

Cf. ¹ occupātiōnibus, p. 103, l. 7. — ² nactus, 48, 5. — ³ adigēbātur, 84, 1.

ostendit, monuitque, ut rei militaris ratio, maximē ut maritimae res postularent (ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent), ad nūtum¹ et ad tempus omnes res ab eis administrarentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum
 5 ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis ancoris, circiter milia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvis cōstituit.

The Britons Resist the Landing of the Romans.

24. At barbari cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliis ūtī
 10 cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiis subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās quod nāvēs propter māgnitudinem nisi in altō cōstitui nōn poterant; militibus autem, ignōtis locis, impeditis manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressis, simul et dē nāvibus
 15 dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum; cum illi aut ex aridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi omnibus membris expeditis, nōtissimis locis, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitarent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti atque hūius omninō
 20 generis pūgnae imperitī nōn eādē alacritātē ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliis cōsuērāt nitēbantur.

Cæsar Manœuvres for an Advantage. Valor of a Roman Centurion.

25. Quod ubi Cæsar animadvertit, nāvis longās, quarum et speciēs² erat barbaris inūsitiōr et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior, paulum removēri ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmīs³
 25 incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostis prōpelli ac submovēri iussit; quae res māgnō ūsuī nostris fuit. Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiōtō genere tormentōrum permōti barbari cōstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem ret-

Cf. ¹ ad nūtum, p. 28, l. 26. — ² speciēs, 71, 4. — ³ rēmōrum, 83, 13.

tulērunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus,¹ maximē propter altitudinem maris, qui x legiōnis aquilam ferēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōni fēliciter ēvenīret, “Dēsilite,” inquit, “commilitōnēs, nisi voltis aquilam hostibus prōdere;

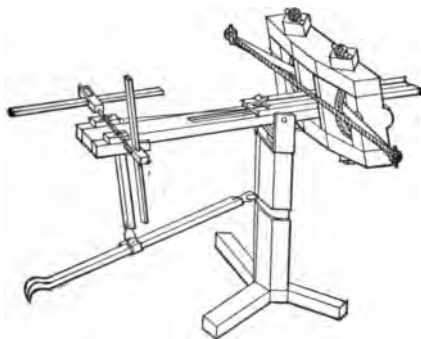


FIG. 61. — CATAPULTA.

ego certē meum rei pūblicae atque imperātōri officium praes- 5
titerō.” Hōc cum vōce māgnā dixisset, sē ex nāvi prōiēcit
atque in hostis aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortāti
inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvi
dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs [prīmīs] nāvibus cum
cōspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvērunt. 10

**The Romans Effect a Landing, but, Having no Cavalry, Cannot Pursue
the Fleeing Britons.**

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrisque ācriter. Nostrī tamen,
quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque
signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvi quibuscum-
que signīs occurrerat sē adgregābat, māgnopere perturbā-
bantur; hostēs vērō nōtis omnibus vadīs, ubi ex litore 15
aliquōs singulārīs ex nāvi ēgredientis cōspexerant, inci-
tātīs equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circum-

Cf. ¹ cunctandum, p. 90, l. 22.

sistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārū nāvium item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complēri iussit, et quōs labōrantis¹ cōspexerat hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostri
 5 simul in ārīdō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtis in hostis impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequi potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesari dēfuit.

Conference with British Envoys, Who Sue for Peace.

- 10 27. Hostēs proeliō superāti, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs esse polliciti sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātis Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemisum.
- 15 Hunc illi ē nāvi ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcērant: tum proeliō factō remisērunt; et in petendā pāce eiūs rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerēt² petivērunt. Caesar ques-
 20 tus³ quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātis missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis arcesitā paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixerunt. Intereā suōs re-
 25 migrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē civitātisque suās Caesari commendāre coepērunt.

The Cavalry Transports Driven Back by a Storm.

28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xviii dē quibus suprā

Cf. ¹ labōrantibus, p. 46, l. 26. — ² ignōvisset, 41, 3. — ³ questum, 32, 20.

dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēni ventō solvērunt.¹ Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset ; sed aliae

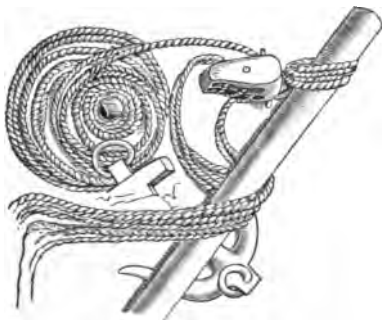


FIG. 62. — ANCHOR AND TACKLE.

eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem 5 partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur ; quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

The Fleet almost Wrecked by Storms and High Tides.

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, qui diēs 10 maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Oceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita unō tempore et longās nāvis, [quibus Caesar exercitum trāsportandum cūrāverat] quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēverat ; et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflīc- 15 tābat,² neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandi dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctis³ reliquae

Cf. ¹ solvit, p. 107, l. 18. — ² adflīctārentur, 82, 16. — ³ frāctōs, 27, 25.

cum essent — fūnibus, ancoris reliquisque armāmentis āmissis — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent; et omnia
 5 deērant quae ad reficiendās nāvis erant ūsuī; et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in his locīs in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

The Britons Seize the Opportunity and Plan to Renew Hostilities.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis principēs Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum
 10 et equitēs et nāvis et frūmentum Rōmānis deesse intellegerent, et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitāte¹ cōgnōscerent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustiora quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, — optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebellione factā, frūmentō commeātūque
 15 nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere; quod his superātis aut reditū interclūsis nēminem postea belli inferendi causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castris discēdere et suōs clam ex agris dēducere coepērunt.

Cæsar Suspects their Design.

20 31. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur.² Itaque ad omnis cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agris cotīdiē in castra cōferēbat et quae gra-
 25 vissimē adflictae erant nāvēs, eārum mātēriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eas rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comportārī iubēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissis, reliquis ut nāvigārī *satis* commodē posset effēcit.

Cf. ¹ *exiguitātem*, p. 90, l. 18. — ² *suspiciātus*, 97, 20.

He Takes Measures to Thwart them. They Attack a Foraging Party.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuetūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur VII, neque ūllā ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, — cum pars hominum in agris remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, — ei qui prō portis castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nūtiāverunt pulverem māiōrem quam cōnsuetūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod



FIG. 63. — SOLDIERS FORAGING.

erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbaris initum cōnsili, cohortis quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequi iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castris prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā¹ legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquis partibus dēmesso frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicāti

Cf. ¹ cōnfertōs, p. 66, l. 7.

hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositis armis in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedis circumdederant.

Mode of Fighting with War Chariots.

5 33. Genus hōc est ex essedis pūgnae. Primō per omnis partis perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū¹ rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedis dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulātim
10 ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant utī, sī illi ā multitudīne hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditem in proeliis praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in dēclivī² ac praecipitī locō
15 incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōsuērint.

The Foragers Rescued. Large Numbers of Britons Assemble.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs nōvītate pūgnae tempore opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius
20 adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacesendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum³ esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātis, quī erant in agris
25 reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs⁴ complūris diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castris continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnis partis dimisērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum

Cf. ¹ strepitū, p. 56, l. 26. — ² dēclivis, 61, 9. — ³ aliēnō, 13, 6. — ⁴ continuōs, 42, 27.

suīs praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castris expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. His rēbus celeriter magnā multitudine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.

5

They Give Battle and are Defeated.

35. Caesar, etsi idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, — ut, si essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum effugerent, — tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōstituit. 10 Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuērunt, complūris ex eis occidērunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis sē in castra recēpērunt.

15

Caesar Returns to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum quem antea imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūci iussit; quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī, infirmis nāvibus hiemi nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam 20 tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvis solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eis onerariae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infā dēlātae sunt.

Attack of the Morini on Caesar's Troops.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī militēs circiter 25 ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adductī primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumsteterunt ac, si sēsē interfici nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt.

Cum illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter milia vi convēnerunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suis auxiliō misit. Interim nostrī milītēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque
 5 amplius hōris iii fortissimē pūgnāverunt, et paucis volneribus acceptis complūrēs ex his occidērunt. Postea vērō quam equitātus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectis armis terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occisus.

The Rebellious Morini Subdued. Thanksgiving at Rome.

- 10 **38.** Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eīs legiōnibus quās ex Britanniā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebellīōnem fēcerant, misit. Quī cum propter siccitātis palū-
 dum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent (quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsi), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēni pervēnē-
 15 runt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum finis legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agris vāstātis, frū-
 mentis succisis, aedificiis incēnsis, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpē-
 runt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit.
 20 Eō duae omninō civitatēs ex Britanniā obsidēs misērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestis ex litteris Caesaris diērum xx supplicatiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

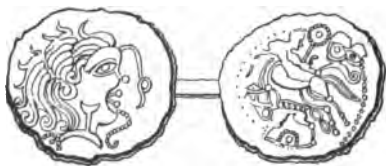


FIG. 64. — GALLIC COIN.

NOTES.



FIG. 65.—THE LEGIONARY.

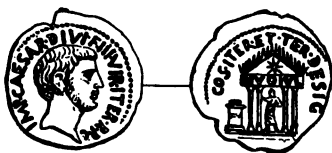


FIG. 66. — COIN OF CÆSAR.

BOOK FIRST. — B.C. 58.

THE HELVETIAN WAR.—Early in the year 58 B.C. the whole population of Helvetia (northern Switzerland), amounting to about 360,000, attempted to pass by an armed emigration through the heart of Gaul, in order to settle somewhere near the shore of the Bay of Biscay, possibly with the hope of becoming masters of the whole country. They were hemmed in by the great natural barriers of the Alps, the Lake of Geneva, and the Jura Mountains on the south and west, and pressed on the north by great hordes of Germans, who kept up a continual border war. Their fields were scant, their harvests insufficient, their people hardy and fearless. Their ambitious chief, Orgetorix, had prepared them so well for this enterprise that his flight and death—when he was charged with guilty conspiracy and put on trial for his life—caused no delay. The attempt was held in check by Cæsar, during a fortnight's parley, till sufficient earthworks had been thrown up along the Rhone to withstand their advance across the river; the advance was then made in force along the narrow pass between that river and the Jura. But the Helvetians did not succeed in getting more than fifty miles beyond the frontier when they were overtaken by Cæsar, who, by a few light skirmishes and two bloody battles, forced them back to their own territories with the loss of more than 200,000 lives. This brief campaign, lasting only from March to June, is called the Helvetian War.

READING REFERENCES ON THE HELVETIAN WAR.

- Dodge's Cæsar, pp. 50-81.
- Froude's Cæsar, pp. 214-231.
- Trollope's Cæsar, pp. 35-38.
- Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 8.
- Guizot's Hist. of France, Vol. I. pp. 47-51.
- Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, pp. 26-36.
- Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 237-254.
- Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 289-295.
- Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 3.
- Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.

N.B. The grammars cited are those of Allen and Greenough (G.), Bennett (B.), Gildersleeve (G.), Harkness (H.), and Hale and Buck (H-B.). References in parentheses are to the old editions. Cf. (*confer*) = compare; sc. (*scilicet*) = supply; ff. = and following; subjv. = subjunctive; inv. = imperative; ftn. = footnote.

PAGE 1. LINE 1. Gallia: that is, Transalpine Gaul, excluding the Roman province (*Provincia*) in the southeast, as well as *Gallia Cisalpina*, now northern Italy. It occupied the territory of France, including the country to the Rhine boundary, with most of the Netherlands and Switzerland (see map, Fig. 2).—*omnis* (predicate), *as a whole*.—*est divisa, is divided*: the adjective use of the participle, not the perfect passive; § 495 (291. *b*); B. 337. 2; G. 250. R.²; H. 640. 3 (550. N.²); H-B. 320. iii.—*unam*: sc. *partem*.

1 2 incolunt: in translation (not in reading the Latin to make out the sense) change the voice to the passive in order to preserve the emphasis in the English idiom. It is well to acquire the habit of making such changes. The natural English form would be: *of which one is inhabited by the Belgians*, etc., but the Latin uses the active voice. The moment you find an accusative beginning a sentence, if it seems from its meaning to be a direct object, you can at once think of it as a subject in the nominative (*at the same time noticing that the Latin does not make it such*). The verb can then be instantly thought of as a passive and the subject as agent. This inversion is so common in Latin for purposes of rhetoric that such a device is a very helpful one, and if properly used from the start need not obscure the Latin construction. The Latin plays upon the position of words to produce all sorts of shades of rhetorical expression, and it is never too early to observe these shades and try to render them in our own idiom.—**Belgae:** probably of the Cymric branch of the Celtic race, allied to the Britons and the modern Welsh; they inhabited the modern Belgium and northern France, and were considerably mixed with Germans (see Bk. ii. ch. 1).—**Aquitani:** of the Spanish Iberians (the modern Basques) inhabiting the districts of the southwest (see Bk. iii. ch. 20).—**aliam**: here *alteram* would be more usual as meaning the second in the list.—**qui . . . appellantur**: notice that in Latin any relative may suggest its own antecedent, as with the indefinite relative (*whoever*) in English. In English we have to supply a demonstrative (*those*) *who*. So here *tertiam qui = tertiam partem ei incolunt qui*; see § 307. *c* (200. *c*); B. 251. 1; G. 619; H. 399. 4 (445. 6); H-B. 284. 1.—**ipsorum**, etc.: notice that the position of words is so significant in Latin, through its indicated emphasis, that it may allow words to be omitted which must be supplied in the thought. In this case the English idiom is the same: in *their own* tongue . . . in *ours*.

1 3 Celtae: probably of the Gælic branch, represented by the Irish and the Highland Scotch.—**lingua**: abl. of specification; § 418 (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441.

1 4 differunt: the language of the Aquitani was Basque; of the Gauls proper, Celtic; of the Belgians, another dialect of Celtic mixed with German.

1 4 *inter se*, *from one another*: the preposition *inter* may be used to show any *reciprocal* relation; § 301. *f* (196. *f*); B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. 1 (448. N.); H-B. 266. — *Gallos*: see note on *incolunt*, 1. 2.

1 5 *dividit*: the verb is singular, because the two rivers make one boundary; § 317. *b* (205. *b*); B. 255. 3; G. 211. R.¹; H. 392. 4 (463. ii. 3); H-B. 331. 3.

1 6 *horum*: part. gen. with *fortissimi*; § 346. *a*. 2 (216. *a*); B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346. — *propterea quod*, *because*; lit. *because of this*, *that*, etc. The difference between this and the simple *quod* is only one of greater emphasis — almost as strong as *and the reason is* or *and it is because*.

1 7 *cultu*, *civilization*, as shown by outward signs, dress, and habits of life. — *humanitate*, *refinement*, of mind or feeling. — *provinciae*: the province of *Gallia Narbonensis*, organized about B.C. 120. Its chief cities were *Massilia* (*Marseilles*), an old Greek free city, and the capital, *Narbo* (*Narbonne*), a Roman colony. The name *Provincia* has come down to us in the modern *Provence*.

1 8 *mercatores*: these were traders or peddlers, mostly from the seaport of *Massilia*; they travelled with pack-horses, mules, and wagons. A very common article of traffic, as with our Indian traders, was intoxicating drinks, — wines from the southern coast, which, especially, as *Cæsar* says, “tend to debauch the character.” These people, it is said, would give the traders a boy for a jar of wine. — *commeant*: this verb means, especially, *to go back and forth* in the way of traffic. The main line of trade lay across the country, by the river *Liger* (*Loire*). — *ea*: object of *important*.

1 9 *effeminandos*: § 506 (300); B. 339. 2; G. 427; H. 628 (544); H-B. 612. iii. — *proximi*: notice how the three superlatives, *longissime*, *minime*, and *proximi* are arranged. After the emphatic idea of *cultu*, etc., is completed, the superlatives begin each its own phrase.

1 10 *Germanis*: dat. with an adjective of nearness; § 384 (234. *a*); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. 1); H-B. 362. iii. — *trans Rhenum*: the Rhine was, in general, the boundary between the Gauls and the Germans, and has so remained till modern times. — *continenter* (adverb from the participle of *contineo*, *hold together*), *incessantly*; strictly, *without any interruption*. The pupil should begin at once to notice the way in which words develop into groups expressing the same idea in the forms of the various parts of speech. See p. 260.

1 11 *qua de causa*, *and for this reason*: § 308. *f* (180. *f*); B. 251. 6; G. 610; H. 510 (453); H-B. 284. 8; referring back to *proximi*, etc., and further explained by *quod . . . contendunt*. — *Helvetii*: here, it will be noticed, reckoned as Gauls. — *quoque*: i.e. just as the Belgians.

1 12 reliquos, *the rest of*: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 291. R.²; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. N.^{1. 2}); H-B. 346. c; notice the emphasis of position; the *others* as opposed to the Helvetii.—**virtute**, not *virtue*, but *courage*; for construction, see note on *lingua*, l. 3.—**præcedunt**, *excel*; lit. *go ahead of*.

1 13 proeliis: abl. of means; **finibus**: abl. of separation.—**cum prohibent**, *while they keep them off* (*pro-habeo*).

1 14 ipsi (emphatic), *themselves*, the Helvetians; **eos** and **eorum** refer to the Germans.

2 1 eorum una pars, *one division of them* (the Gauls or Celts), the people being identified with the country.—**quam . . . dictum est**, *which, it has been* (already) *said, the Gauls hold*. Notice that in direct discourse it would be *Galli obtinent*: the subject nom. is changed to acc. and the indic. to the infin. after the verb of *saying*, **dictum est**; § 561. a (272. R.); B. 330; G. 527; H. 613. 2 (535. 1); H-B. 534. 1, 590. 1. Here **quam** is the object and **Gallos** the subject of **obtinere**, while the clause is the subject of **dictum est**; § 560, 561, 566. b (329, 330. a. 2); B. 330; G. 528; H. 615 (538); H-B. 238, 590. 1. a.—**obtinere** (*ob-teneo*), not *obtain*, but *occupy*; strictly, *hold against* all claimants. *Ob* in composition almost always has the sense of *opposing* or *coming in the way of* something. This is one of the many words which have entirely changed their meaning in their descent from the Latin. Always be on your guard against rendering Latin words by the English one corresponding. *Obtineo* does *not* mean *obtain*, nor *occupo*, *occupy*. The corresponding word is often suggestive as a guide to the meaning, but must not be used without careful examination.

2 3 ab Sequanis, *on the side of*, etc., regarded from the point of view of the Province; a very common use of **ab**; § 429. b (260. b); G. 390. 2. N.⁶; H. 490 (434. 1); H-B. 406. 2.

2 4 vergit, etc., *slopes to the north*; the highlands (Cévennes) are along the southern boundary, and the rivers in that quarter flow in their

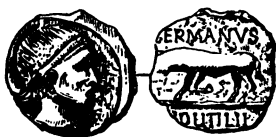


FIG. 67. — GALLIC COIN.

main course northerly.—**septentriones** (*septem triones*, "the seven plough-oxen"): i.e. the constellations of the Great and Little Bears. The word is used both in the singular, as below, and in the plural, as here.

2 5 Galliae: i.e. Celtic Gaul, the country just described, not *Gallia omnis*.

2 6 spectant: i.e. considered from the Province, it lies in that direction.

2 8 ad Hispaniam, *next to Spain*, i.e. the Bay of Biscay: § 428. d (259. f); H. 420. 1 (433. 1).

2 9 *spectat*: cf. *spectant* above. — *inter occasum*, etc., *northwest*, i.e. from the Province.

2 11 CHAP. 2. *nobilissimus*, of *highest birth*. Popular revolutions had, among the Gauls as among the Greeks and Romans, mostly dispossessed the old chiefs, or kings; and they had established an annual magistrate called *Vergobret* (ch. 16). But the heads of the ruling families would naturally be ambitious to recover what they could of the old class power, and Orgetorix is represented as aspiring to create a monarchy in Gaul.

2 12 *M.* = *Marco*. Always read and translate these names without abbreviation. — *Messala*, etc.: this was B.C. 61, three years before Cæsar's first campaign in Gaul. This construction of *consulibus* was the usual way of denoting the year; not so formal in English as *while Messala and Piso were consuls*, but merely *in the consulship of*; abl. abs., § 419. *a* (255. *a*); B. 227. 1; G. 409, 410; H. 489 and 1 (431 and 2); H-B. 421. 1.

2 13 *cupiditate*: abl. of means; § 409 (248. *c*); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423. — *coniurationem*, a *league* sworn to fidelity by oath (*iuro*). — *nobilitatis*: from the account given in ch. 4, we see how immense was the class power still held by the nobles, and why they would naturally join in such a combination.

2 13 *civitati persuasit*: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. ii); H-B. 362. ftm.³ and 1; the direct object of *persuasit* is the clause *ut . . . exirent*; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 564. i (498); H-B. 502. 3. *a*; translate the latter by the infinitive according to the English idiom. Votes were easily "persuaded" by such means as Orgetorix possessed. For the sequence of tenses in *exirent*, see § 484 (286. *r.*); B. 267; G. 510; H. 545. ii. 1 (493. 1); H-B. 476; and for the plur., see § 280. *a* (182. *a*); B. 254. 4; G. 211. *r.*¹; H. 389 (636. iv. 4); H-B. 325.

2 15 *perfacile*: predicate with *esse*, while its subject is the infin. clause with *potiri*; § 289. *d* (189. *d'*); G. 422. 3; H. 394. 4 (438. 3); cf. H-B. 325. *b*; showing that it was quite easy, since they exceeded all men in valor, to win the empire of all Gaul. — *esse*: indir. disc., depending on some word implied in *persuasit*; § 580. *a* (336. 2. *N.*²); B. 314. 2; G. 546. *r.*¹, 649. *r.*²; H. 642. 1 (523. i. *N.*); cf. H-B. 534. 1. *a*. Notice that the Latin has the power of putting various dependent clauses after a single verb. Here the idea of persuading takes the thing that was to be done in an *ut*-clause. The facts of which they were persuaded take the indir. disc. Careful attention to this usage will make many difficult passages easy. It is not the verb used, but the meaning, that decides the construction. — *cum præstarent*: subjv. after *cum* meaning *since*; § 549 (326); B. 286. 2; G. 586; H. 598 (517); H-B. 526.

2 16 *imperio*: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429

2 17 *hoc facilius*, all the easier: originally degree of difference, as in all ablatives with comparative; but hardly different in sense from the abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 424. a. — *id*: object of *persuasit*; § 369 (227. f); B. 176. 2. a; G. 345; H. 426. 6 (384. 2); H-B. 364. 4: we should say, *persuaded them of it*. Usually with *persuadere* the dat. and acc. are both used only when the latter is a pronoun. — *loci natura*, by the nature of the country.

2 18 *una ex parte*, on one side: cf. *ab Sequanis* above, so *undique*, on (lit. from) all sides; *hinc*, on this side, etc. The effect on the senses is supposed to come from the direction referred to. — *latissimo*, very broad.

2 19 *qui* takes its gender not from *flumine*, but from *Rheno*; § 306 (199); B. 250. 3; G. 614. 3. b; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326.

2 23 *his rebus*, etc.: lit. from these things it was coming about that they roamed about less widely and could less easily make war, etc. But this is obviously not an English mode of thought, nor a form which any English-speaking person would ever naturally use. So here, as always, you must see from this clumsy expression what is meant and then express it in the natural vernacular, something like, from all this they were getting less free to wander and having less opportunity to make war, etc. Several other ways of expressing this may be imagined. One of the greatest advantages of classical study is to set the mind free from forms, and bring into prominence the possibility of saying the same thing in fundamentally different ways. — *fiebat*: the imperfect expresses the continued effect of the causes; § 470 (277); B. 260. 1; G. 231; H. 534 (468, 469); H-B. 468. 2; the subject of *fiebat* is the clause *ut . . . possent*; § 569 (332. a); B. 297. 2, cf. 284. 1; G. 553. 3, 4; H. 571. 1 (501. i); H-B. 521. 3. a.

2 24 *qua ex parte*: here in which respect hardly differs from from which cause. — *homines* (a sort of apposition) = being (as they were) men eager for war.

3 1 *bellandi*: § 349. a (218. a); B. 338. 1. b; G. 374. 5; H. 626, 451. 1 (542. 1, 399. i. 1); H-B. 612. 1. — *adficiebantur* = *afficiebantur*: for the assimilation of consonants, see § 16 (11); B. 8. 4; G. 9; H. 374. 2 (344. 5); H-B. 51. 2. In this edition the unchanged form of the preposition is usually preferred. — *pro*, in proportion to; cf. our force of for.

3 2 *multitudine*: their numbers, including some small dependent populations, were 368,000 (see ch. 29).

3 3 *angustos finis*, too narrow limits. So in English such words often suggest a negative idea; cf. a "scant pattern."

3 4 *milia passuum*, miles (1000 paces), the regular way of stating this measure, *milia* being acc. of extent of space, and *passuum* part. gen. The *passus* was the stretch from heel to heel, i.e. from where one heel is raised

to where it is set down again, and is reckoned at five Roman feet. A Roman mile (*mille passuum*) was about 400 feet less than ours; it measures the distance which a soldier would march in a thousand double paces. — **CCXL** = *ducenta quadraginta*. Always give the Latin words for numerals in reading the text.

3 5 patebant: throughout the latter part of this chapter notice the use of the imperfect of *description* or *general statement*, compared with the perfect of

simple narrative in **persuasit** above and **constituerunt**, etc., below. This distinction is very marked in Latin, and must always be noticed, though not always translated. Our progressive imperfect is much more limited in its use than the Latin imperfect. But the latter always describes a situation and never advances the narrative of occurrences.

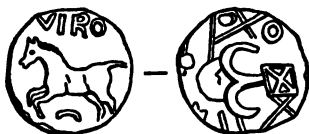


FIG. 68. — GALLIC COIN.

3 7 CHAP. 3. quae . . . pertinerent: dependent clause in indir. disc.; § 592. 3 (341. d); B. 323; G. 628; H. 649. i (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1 and a. The mood shows that its clause expresses not the writer's statement, but that of the speaker or actor or some other person concerned. Always bear in mind that Cæsar uses the subjunctive to express something different from the indicative, whether you can find the technical rule for it or not. — **comparare . . . confirmare**: these infinitives correspond exactly with our idiom *to prepare*, etc., but the same meaning is oftener expressed by a subjunctive clause with *ut*; § 457 (271. a); B. 328. 1; G. 423; H. 607. 1 (533. i. 1); H-B. 586. e.

3 8 iumentorum, *beasts of burden*; properly, *yoke-animals* (kindred with *iungo*, *join*, and *iugum*, *yoke*); **carrorum**, a Celtic word, *two-wheeled carts*. See Fig. 55, p. 94. — **quam maximum**, *as great as possible*: § 291. c, 321 (93. b, 207); B. 240. 3, 177. 3; G. 303; H. 159. 2 (170. 2); H-B. 241. 4.

3 9 coëmere . . . facere . . . confirmare: notice that the Latin more easily dispenses with connectives than we do.

3 11 conficiendas, *completing*: **con** in composition may mean *together*; or, as here, may be simply intensive (cf. *do a thing up*). This word is shown to be a gerundive by having a noun with which it agrees. Cf. **proficiscendum**, 3 7, where there is no noun; § 503 (296); B. 339. 2; G. 427; H. 623 (544. 1); H-B. 613. 1.

3 13 lege: probably a resolution passed in a public assembly.

3 12 in tertium annum confirmant, *fix for the third year*.

3 14 sibi . . . suscepit, *took on himself*: for construction, see § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376. Observe the force of **sub**, as if he put his shoulders *under* the load.

3 15 *civitatia*, *clans*, such as the Hædui, Sequani, etc., each constituting a commonwealth (*civitas*),—about 60 in all. Their territory had no local name, but was known only by that of the clan, which was sovereign and wholly independent, except for voluntary alliances (see ch. 30). The name Gallia itself—as was said of Italy a few years ago—was only “a geographical expression,” implying no united political sovereignty.—*persuadet*, *prevails on*: *suadet* would be simply *urges*.

3 16 *filio*, *Sequano*: appositives with *Casticus*.

3 17 *obtinerat*, *had held*: see note on *obtinere*, 2 1. The pluperfect implies that he had held it formerly, but had been ousted by some popular movement.

3 18 *amicus*: an honorary title given by the Roman Senate to friendly powers; § 283, 284, 393. *a* (185, 239. 1. N.²); B. 168. 2. *b*; G. 206; H. 393. 8 (362. 2. 2); H-B. 319. ii, 392. *b*.—*ut . . . occuparet*, *to lay hands on*: this clause is the object of *persuadet*; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 565 (408. ii); H-B. 502. 3. *a*; for the sequence of tenses, see § 485. *e* (287. *c*); B. 268. 3; G. 511. R.¹; H. 546 (495. ii); H-B. 491. 2; in English it would be expressed by the infin.—*regnum*: here, not hereditary authority, but personal rule,—what the Greeks called *tyranny*.

3 19 *quod*: the relative.—*ante*: i.e. before the popular movement.—*Dumnorigi* (dat. after *persuadet*): Dumnorix, a younger brother, restless, ambitious, and strongly attached to the old aristocracy of the clan; therefore a bitter enemy of the Roman supremacy. He afterwards headed a desertion of Cæsar's cavalry just before the second invasion of Britain, but was pursued and killed (Bk. v. ch. 6). It is implied that in the popular movement Dumnorix had come into prominence. It must be borne in mind that the personal rule of a chief (*regnum*) was an entirely different thing from the prominence (*principatum*) which one man or another might have in the national councils; as the latter had no constitutional or official power.

3 20 *Diviciaci*: this Hæduan chief was of the order of Druids (see Bk. vi. ch. 13 ff.); he had been in Rome where he made the acquaintance of Cicero and other eminent Romans. He was thoroughly impressed with the power and superiority of the Romans, and was a faithful friend and ally of Cæsar. The party of Druids, represented by Diviciacus and Liscus (ch. 16), was in a manner the *popular* party, strong especially in the large towns; it was opposed to the old clan feeling kept up for ambitious purposes by military or tribal chiefs (*principes*) such as Orgetorix and Dumnorix. The former, or popular party, was headed by the Hædui; the latter, or aristocratic, by the Sequani and Arverni. The Druids were a religious or priestly order, jealous of the aristocracy (*equites*) of the tribe or clan, which latter

represented what may be called the patriotic or "native-Celtic" party (see Bk. vi. chs. 12-17). A knowledge of this division helps to clear up many of the events of Cæsar's campaigns. In fact, Gaul was conquered by the strategy underlying the maxim "*divide et impera*." — **qui**: i.e. Dumnorix. The regular rule is that the relative should refer to the last person named. But this in all languages is often overborne by the prominence of some preceding person. — **principatum**, *highest rank*, as distinct from political power (see above).

3 21 plebi acceptus, *a favorite with the people* (acceptable to the people). — **ut idem conaretur**: i.e. put down the constitutional authority, and establish a rule of military chiefs. The expression here is a striking example of the tendency of the Latin to say things by verbs which we say by nouns; Lat. *attempt the same thing*, Eng. *make the same attempt*.

3 23 perfacile factu: § 510. N.² (303. R.); B. 340. 2; G. 436. N.¹; H. 635 (547); H-B. 619. 1; in predicate agreement with **conata perficere**, which is subject of **esse**, depending on **probat**. — **illis probat**, *undertakes to show them*, i.e. Casticus and Dumnorix: conative present; § 467 (276. b); B. 259. 2; G. 227. N.²; H. 530 (467. 6); H-B. 484. — **propterea quod**: see note on 1 6.

3 24 ipse, etc., i.e. and so they could count on him for a powerful ally. — **non esse dubium quin**, *there was no doubt (he said) that*: here **esse** is infin. of indir. disc.; for the construction of **quin**, see § 558. a (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. b. For purposes of analysis we may consider the **quin** clause a subject of **esse**, and **dubium** as a predicate adjective in the neuter to agree with the subject.

3 25 Galliae: part. gen. with **plurimum**; § 346. a. 2 (216. a. 2); B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.

3 26 se suis: begin as soon as possible to master the use of the reflexive in Latin, to which we have nothing that exactly corresponds in English. Our forms with *self* are emphatic and not ordinarily reflexive. The forms of *se* and *suis* refer (without emphasis) to the subject of their clauses, and in indir. disc. to the speaker. They take the place of an *I* or *mine* of the direct. Where no ambiguity would arise in English translate them by *he* and *his*. In case of ambiguity some device must be used to avoid it. Here there is an emphasis on *se*, but it comes from position. — **regna**: translate by the singular. To a Roman each man's power would be a separate *regnum*, hence the plural here. — **conciliaturum**: sc. *esse*, which is often omitted with the fut. infin.

4 1 oratione, *plea*, or *argument* (abl. of means). — **fidem et iusiurandum**: i.e. *assurance confirmed by oath*; hendiadys; § 640 (385); B. 374. 41 G. 698; H. 751. 3. N.¹ (636. iii. 2); H-B. 631. 5.

4 2 regno occupato: abl. abs., expressing *condition*; § 419. 4, 521. a (255. 4, 310. a); B. 227. 2. *b*; G. 409, 593. 2; H. 489. 1, 638. 2 (431. 2, 549. 2); H-B. 421. 6, 578. 6; *in case they should get in their hands the royal power* = *si occupaverimus* in the direct. — **per tres . . . populos:** i.e. Helvetii, Hædui, and Sequani; a league between these, they hope, will secure their power over all Gaul. — **firmissimos, most stable.**

4 3 Galliae: governed by **potiri**; § 410. a (249. a); B. 212. 2; G. 407. d; H. 458. 3 (410. v. 3); H-B. 353. — **posse:** equivalent to a fut. infin.; § 584. *b*; B. 270. 3; G. 248. R.; H. 618. 1 (537. N. 1); H-B. 472. d.



FIG. 69. — GALLIC COIN.

4 4 CHAP. 4. ea res, this (i.e. the conspiracy). The word *res* is constantly used in Latin where we use some more specific word in English, as *action, fact, event, estate*, etc., according to the passage. The conduct of Orgetorix was treated as criminal because, though the Helvetians were prepared to emigrate in a body and subdue the rest

of Gaul, they would not give to Orgetorix the power thus acquired. — **moribus suis, according to their custom:** abl. of spec.; § 418. a and N. (253. N.); B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 475. 3 (416); H-B. 441, cf. 414 and a.

4 5 ex vinculis, out of chains, i.e. (standing) in chains; a Latin idiom; cf. *ex equo, on horseback*. — **causam dicere:** a technical expression for being brought to trial. — **damnatum** (sc. *eum*, object of *sequi*), *if condemned* = *si damnatus esset*. The Latin may almost always omit a pronoun of reference, if there is a participle or adjective to show what its form would be if expressed. In this sentence the subject of **oportebat** is the clause **damnatum . . . sequi**; the subject of **sequi** is **poenam**; and **ut . . . cremaretur** is in apposition with **poenam**, defining the punishment: § 562. 1, 571. c (329. 2, 332. f); B. 294, cf. 297. 3; G. 557; H. 571. 4 (501. iii); H-B. 502. 3. a. N. Translate, *he was doomed, if condemned, to be burned by fire* (lit. *it must needs be that the penalty should overtake him, condemned, of being burned with fire*). For the abl. in *i*, see § 76. b. 1 (57. b. 1); B. 38; G. 57. 2; H. 102. 4 (62. iv); H-B. 88. 2. c.

4 7 die constituta, on the day appointed: § 423 (256); B. 230; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439. For the gender of *die*, see § 97 (30. a, 73); B. 53; G. 64; H. 135 (123); H-B. 101. — **causae dictionis, for the trial** (it would be more usual to say *dicendae*); *dictionis* depends on *die*, and *causae* is the objective gen. after *dictionis*.

4 8 familiam, clansmen: ordinarily this word means *slaves*; but it is more probable that it here means all who bore his name or regarded him as their chief. — **ad** (adv.) . . . **milìa decem** (in apposition with *familiam*), *to* (the number of) *ten thousand*.

4 9 *clientis, retainers*: volunteer or adopted followers.—*obseratos, debtors*: the only class of slaves that seems to have been known in Gaul; see Bk. vi. ch. 13.

4 10 *eodem*: an adverb.—*per eos, by their means*: § 405. *b* (246. *b*); G. 401; H. 468. 3 (415. i. 1. N.¹); H-B. 380. *d*.—*ne . . . diceret*: a purpose clause.

4 12 *cum . . . conaretur, when the state attempted*. The force of the subjv. here cannot easily be made apparent in translation, and may be disregarded as too subtle for this stage of the pupil's advancement. It is perfectly manifest, however, and can be learned later; § 546 (323); B. 288. 1. B; G. 585; H. 600, ii. 1 (521. ii. 2); H-B. 524.

4 15 *quin . . . consciverit (conscisco), that he decreed death to himself (his own death), i.e. committed suicide*. The construction of the clause is analogous to that with *non dubito*, etc.; § 558 (319. *d*); B. 284. 3; G. 555. 2; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. *b*. Observe that *ipse, self*, agrees in Latin rather with the subject; not, as in English, with the object.

4 16 *CHAP. 5. nihilo minus (often written in one word, as in English), nevertheless.—constituerant, had resolved*: observe the pluperfect, as following not a real but a historical present.

4 17 *ut . . . exeant, in apposition with id: as we should say, "namely, to go forth."* Clauses thus used in apposition with a noun or pronoun take the form required by the verb on which the appositional word depends. Here *facere* would take a result clause with *ut*, and so this clause has that form.—*ubi . . . arbitrati sunt, when they judged*: observe the regular use of the perfect indic. with *ubi, postquam*, etc., and cf. *cum . . . conaretur* above; § 543 (324); B. 287. 1; G. 561; H. 602 (518. N.¹); H-B. 557.

4 18 *rem, enterprise*; cf. note on *ea res*, l. 4.—*oppida, towns*, fortified and capable of defence.

4 19 *vicos, villages, i.e. groups of houses about a single spot*. The villages and houses were burned; partly to cut off hope of return, partly to prevent their being occupied by the Germans.—*ad*: cf. l. 8 above.—*reliqua, etc.*: i.e. isolated farmhouses not collected in villages.

4 21 *portaturi erant, intended to carry*: § 194. *a* (129); B. 115; G. 247; H. 236 (233); H-B. 162.—*domum*: following the verbal noun *reditionis*; § 427. 2 (258. *b*); B. 182. 1. *b*; G. 337; H. 419. 1 (380. 2, 1); H-B. 450. *b*.

4 23 *molita cibaria, meal*. Food for 368,000 people (cf. 26 11) for three months required five or six thousand wagons and about twenty-five thousand draught animals. This would make a line of march of over thirty miles.—*domo*: § 427. 1 (258. *a*); B. 229. 1. *b*; G. 390. 2; H. 462. 4 (412. ii. 1); H-B. 451. *a*.

5 1 **Rauracis**, etc.: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385, ii); H-B. 362 and 1: German tribes from the banks of the Rhine.

5 2 **uti**: the older form for *ut*, common in Cæsar. — **eodem usi consilio**, *adopting the same plan*: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407. N.³; H. 477 (421. 1); H-B. 429. — **una cum eis**, *along with them*. The use of *eis* avoids ambiguity, though *secum* would be more regular, referring to the subject of the main clause; cf. note on **se**, 3 26. — **oppidis . . . exustis**, *having burned*, etc.: § 493. 2 (113. c. N.); B. 356. 2. b; G. 410. R.¹; H. 640. 4 (550. N.⁴); H-B. 602. 1.

5 3 **Boios** (from whom the name *Bohemia* is derived): a Celtic tribe, whom the great German advance had cut off from their kinspeople towards the west, and who were now wandering homeless, some of them within the limits of Gaul.

5 4 **Noricum**, etc.: now eastern Bavaria and upper Austria. — **oppugnant** = *oppugnaverant*: § 181. a (128. a); B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163.

5 5 **receptos . . . adsciscunt**: in English, in a sentence like this, we should use a separate verb instead of the participle; § 496. N.² (292. R.); B. 337. 2; G. 664. R.¹; H. 639 (549. 5); H-B. 604. 1. Translate, *they receive the Boii into their own number (ad se), and vote them in as their allies*. They do not merely unite with them, but incorporate them into their own body as a homeless people.

5 6 CHAP. 6. **erant omnino**, *there were in all*, i.e. *only*. — **itineras . . . itineribus**: observe the form of this relative sentence, common in Cæsar, which gives the antecedent noun in both clauses. It is usually omitted in one or the other; in English, almost always in the relative clause; in Latin, quite as often in the other; § 307 (200); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399. 5 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4.

5 7 **possent**: subjv. in a relative clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 1 (503. 1); cf. H-B. 521. 1; i.e. not merely *by which they could*, but *of the sort by which they could*. In such clauses, which describe something by its qualities, the subjv. is regular in Latin. — **Sequanos**: i.e. the region now called *Franche-Comté*, north of the Rhone.

5 8 **inter . . . Rhodanum**: the pass now guarded by the Fort l'Ecluse, about nineteen Roman (seventeen and a half English) miles below Geneva (see note on 7 13). The Rhone at this part was the boundary of the Roman province. The choice was either to cross the river and go through the country held by the Romans, or to proceed along its northern bank through the friendly Sequani. — **vix qua**, etc., *where carts could scarcely be hauled in single file*: § 137. a (95. a); B. 81. 4. a; G. 97; H. 164. 1 (174. 2, 1); H-B. 133. See Fig. 55. p. 94.

5 9 *ducerentur*: the same "characteristic subjv." as in *possent*. The distinction is one that we rarely express in English; but a little study will make it appear in most cases. — *autem*, then again.

6 1 *possent*: § 537 (319); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 570 (500. ii); H-B. 521. 2.

6 2 *multo facilius* (cf. *nihilo minus*, 4 16), *much easier* in itself; but it required them to crush the Roman legion at Geneva, and force their way through about fifty miles of territory occupied by the Roman arms. — *propterea quod*: see note on 1 6.

6 3 *nuper pacati erant*: a rebellion "of despair" (B.C. 61) had been subdued by C. Pomptinus.

6 4 *locis*: loc. abl.; § 429. 2 (258. f); B. 228. 1. b; G. 385. N.¹; H. 485. 1 (425. ii. 2); H-B. 436. — *vado*: *by ford* (*wading, vadendo*). The bed of the Rhone must have changed somewhat since Cæsar's time. There is now but one ford between Geneva and the Pas-de-l'Ecluse.

6 8 *sese persuasuros* [*esse*]: notice that in the fut. infin., used in indir. disc., *esse* is usually omitted (cf. *conciliaturum*, 3 26; in dir. disc. we should have *persuadebimus*), *they thought they should persuade*; its object is *Allobrogibus* (cf. *Rauracis*, etc., 5 1). — *bono animo*, *well disposed*; § 415 (251); B. 224. 1; G. 400; H. 473. 2 (419. ii); H-B. 443. Five years before, their envoys in Rome had intrigued with Catiline's agents, whom they at length betrayed (see Cicero, Cat. iii. ch. 9).



FIG. 70. — GALLIC COIN.

6 9 *viderentur*: § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 650; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 2.

6 10 *eos*: again the demonstrative to avoid ambiguity; see note on *eis*, 5 2. — *paterentur*: the subjv. with *ut* is the regular form of object clause after all verbs of commanding, inducing, and the like; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 564. 1 (498. ii); H-B. 502. 3. a.

6 11 *diem . . . die*: cf. *itinerā . . . itineribus*, 5 6 and note.

6 12 *convenient*: the subjv. is used because *diem dicunt* has the force of a command. The indic. would mean "on which they *do* assemble"; this means "on which they *should*." Technically, the clause is a purpose clause; § 529 (317); B. 282. 2; G. 544. ii; H. 590 (497. 1); H-B. 502. 2. — *a. d. v. Kal. Apr.* (*ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis*): nominally March 28; § 631, 424. g (376, 259. e); B. 371 and 6, 372; G. App.; H. 754, 755 (642–644); H-B. 664, 667. But the calendar was in a state of great confusion at this time, and till Cæsar's reform twelve years later. — *L. Pisone*, etc.: notice again the regular Roman method of giving dates; see note on *Messala*, 2 12. Piso was Cæsar's father-in-law.

6 14 **CHAP. 7. Caesari:** the tendency is so strong in Latin to put the most emphatic word first that it is so placed even when the first clause is a dependent one, as here. We should say: *Cæsar, when it was reported, etc., hastened*; the Latin says: *to Cæsar, when it was reported, etc., [he]* (which in such cases is unnecessary, having already been expressed in a different form) *hastened*. He was at this time at Rome, having laid down his consulship, preparing to set out for his province. Every consul was entitled to the governorship of a province for one year after his term of office, and, by a special law, Cæsar's government (consisting of the three provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum) had been conferred for a term of five years. The news of the emigration hastened his movements. — **nuntiatum esset:** the same idiomatic use of the subjv. with **cum** as in **4 12**. The relation here, however, is more apparent. The clause gives not the *time* merely, but the *circumstances*, "upon this being," etc. — **id** in apposition with **eos . . . conari** (the real subject of **nuntiatum esset**), *that they were attempting*.

6 15 maturat: travelling, his biographers say, one hundred miles in a day, and reaching the Rhone in a week, according to Plutarch. — **ab urbe:** this word, unless some other place is indicated, always means Rome, **THE CITY**. Cæsar was *near*, but not *in* the city, not being permitted to enter it while holding the military authority (*imperium*) of proconsul. Hence he says **ab**, not **ex**. — **proficisci:** the so-called complementary infin., used like our own with verbs which require another action to complete their sense.

6 16 quam maximis potest itineribus: § 291. c (93. b); B. 240. 3; G. 303; H. 159. 2 (170. 2); H-B. 241. 4; **potest** is usual with Cæsar in this phrase, which is elliptical. In full it would be *tam magnis quam maximis, as great as the greatest, i.e. the greatest possible*. — **ulteriorem:** i.e. beyond the Alps. The northern part of modern Italy was still called *Gallia Cisalpina*, and was a part of Cæsar's province.

6 17 ad, near to, as far as. — **provinciae:** dat.; § 369 (227. f); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. i); H-B. 364. 4. — **imperat:** i.e. Transalpine Gaul. Here *impero* is used in what seems to have been its original meaning, *make requisition upon*; see Vocab.

6 18 erat omnino: cf. **erant omnino**, **5 6** and note.

6 19 legio: the tenth legion, which afterwards became so famous. With reference to the Roman legions, see chapter on military affairs, I. 1.

6 20 rescindi: notice that *iubeo* and *veto*, unlike other verbs of commanding and forbidding, take the acc. and the infin.

6 21 certiores facti sunt, were informed (made more certain): a technical expression for official communication or certain information.

6 23 *qui dicerent*, *who were* (instructed) *to say*: the same construction as *qua die convenient* above, I. 11, see note. Notice the difference between *obtinebant*, *who did*, etc., and *dicerent*, *who should*, etc. Treat your subjunctives according to the sense, and use the rules only to formulate the usages; § 531 (317); B. 282. 2; G. 544; H. 590 (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

6 24 *sibi . . . liceat*: observe carefully the construction of the indir. disc.; § 584, 585 (336. A. B.); B. 317, 318; G. 650; H. 642-653 (523-531); H-B. 534. 1. 2; in dir. disc. it would be: *Nobis est in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habemus nullum; rogamus, ut tua voluntate id nobis facere liceat*. Careful attention to this construction in the beginning will be amply repaid later. — *sibi*: dat. of possession; § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374; the subject of *esse* is the clause *iter . . . facere*, while the whole passage, *sibi . . . liceat*, is the object of *dicerent*. Render, *that they had* (it was to them) *in mind to march*, etc.

6 26 *rogare*: of this verb the subject is *se*, understood (often omitted by Cæsar, contrary to the rule), and the object is the object clause *ut . . . liceat*; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546 and N.¹; H. 565 (498. 1); H-B. 530. 2. — *voluntate*: abl. in accordance with which; § 418. *a* (253. N.); cf. B. 220. 3; G. 397; cf. H. 475. 3 (416); cf. H-B. 414. *a*.

7 1 *L. Cassium . . . occisum [esse]*: object of *memoria tenebat*, as a phrase of *knowing*; § 459 (272); B. 330; G. 527. 2; H. 613 (535. i. 1); H-B. 589. This defeat happened B.C. 107, in the terrible invasion of the Cimbri or Teutons, to whom the Helvetians were joined as allies. "The army of Cassius was one of six swept away by these barbarians."



FIG. 71.—GALLIC COIN.

7 2 *sub iugum*, *under the yoke* (hence the word *subjugate*). The *iugum* was made by sticking two spears in the ground and laying another across them above. To pass under this was equivalent to *laying down arms* by a modern army.

7 3 *concedendum [esse]*: impersonal depending on *putabat*, *thought that no concession should be made* (lit. *that it must not be yielded*). — *homines*: subject of *temperaturos [esse]*, depending on *existimabat*.

7 4 *inimico animo*: abl. of quality; cf. *bono animo*, 6 8. — *data facultate*: abl. abs., expressing a condition; § 496, 521. *a* (292, 310. *a*); B. 227. 2. *b*; G. 593. 2; H. 575. 9 (507. 3. N.⁷); H-B. 421. 6; cf. 4 2. — *faciundi*: gerundive; § 504 (297, 298); B. 339. 1; G. 428; H. 626 (544. 1); H-B. 612. 1.

7 5 *iniuria*: not "injury" in our sense, but *wrong*, *outrage*.

7 6 dum . . . convenirent: notice again the purpose expressed in this clause, *until the men should*, etc. Cf. *qua die convenient*, **6 11**, and *qui dicerent*, **6 23**; § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); cf. H-B. 507. 5.

7 9 reverterentur: subjv. for imv.; § 588 (339); B. 316; G. 652; H. 642 (523. iii); H-B. 538. In dir. disc.: diem (=time) ad deliberandum sumam; si quid *vultis*, ad. Id. Apr. *revertimini*. Note the changes made, and the reasons for them.

7 10 CHAP. 8. ea legione, *with that legion* (abl. of instrum.). In this sentence observe how all the qualifying clauses come first and the direct objects, *murum*, *fossam*, come next before the leading verb *perducit*, § 596 and *a* (343); B. 348, 349; G. 674; H. 664 (560); cf. H-B. 623; while each relative belongs to *the verb which comes next after it* unless another relative intervenes, — a very convenient rule in analyzing a long and difficult sentence.

7 13 milia: acc. of extent of space; cf. **3 4**; § 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387. — **decem novem**, *nineteen*: following the windings of the river (see note on **5 8**). — **murum**: this rampart, or earth-work, was on the south side of the river, leaving the passage undisputed along the northern bank.

The banks of the Rhone in this part are generally rugged and steep, with sharp ravines; there are only five short reaches — a little over three miles in all — requiring defences. The current is in general quite rapid. Some remains of Cæsar's works can still be traced, according to the French engineers who surveyed the ground under the orders of Napoleon III. According to Cæsar's statement the work was continuous (this is the meaning of *perducit*). This undoubtedly means that, after the five accessible points were strengthened by artificial defences, the entire left bank of the Rhone, from Geneva to Pas-de-l'Ecluse (17½ English miles), formed a continuous barrier against the Helvetians. The construction of any one of the fortifications may be described as follows: Along the crest of the ridge facing the river the slope was cut so as to be vertical, or nearly so, and then a trench was hollowed. The earth dug out was partly thrown up to increase the height of the wall, and quite likely in part thrown down the hill. At all events, it seems probable that the measure of 16 feet is the distance from the bottom of the ditch to the top of the wall. Thus the work formed really little more than a trench with scarp higher than the counter-scarp. Then the crest was fortified with a breastwork of palisades, behind which the soldiers were protected while hurling their missiles at the enemy. This entire series of works, with the force at Cæsar's command, could not have occupied more than two or three days. See Map, p. 5.

7 14 *pedum*: § 345. *b* (215. *b*); B. 203. 2; G. 365; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355.

7 15 *castella* (lit. *little fortifications*), *redoubts*. See treatise on military affairs, v. In them were stationed guards (*praesidia*). The redoubts were sufficiently numerous so that the guard from one or another could quickly reach any point in the lines that might be threatened.—*quo facilius . . . posset*, *that he may the more easily*: the usual construction where a comparative is to be used; without the comparative it would be *ut . . . posset*; § 531. *a* (317. *b*); B. 282. 1. *a*; G. 545. 2; H. 568. 7 (497. ii. 2; H-B. 502. 2 and *b*).

7 16 *se invito* (abl. abs.), *against his will*: *se* is used because this is a part of what Cæsar had in his mind; § 300. 2 (196. *a*. 2); B. 244. ii. *a*; G. 521; H. 504 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2.—*conarentur . . . posset*: note the sequence of tenses after the historical presents *disponit* and *communit*.

7 17 *ubi . . . vēnit*: notice the difference between this clause and those above noted with *cum* and the subjv. This one expresses a real time and not circumstance like the others. You cannot render it by "upon the coming" or any similar phrase.

7 18 *negat se . . . posse*, *says he cannot*, etc. His words would be: *More et exemplo populi Romani non possum iter ulli per provinciam dare; si vim facere conabimini, prohibebo*.—*more et exemplo*, *according to the custom and precedents*: always constituting the rule of conduct with the conservative Romans.

7 19 *si . . . conentur*: future condition in indir. disc.; see the direct as given in note to l. 18.

7 20 *prohibiturum [esse]*: sc. *se* subject and *eos*, object.—*deiecti*, *cast down*: *de* in composition generally has the meaning *down*.

7 22 *non numquam*, *sometimes*: § 326 and *a* (150 and *a*); B. 347. 2; G. 449 and R.⁴; H. 656. 1 (553. 1); H-B. 298. 2.

7 23 *si . . . possent*: practically an indir. quest. depending on *conati*, *trying if* (whether) *they could break through*; § 576. *a* (334. *f*); B. 300. 3; G. 601, 460. 1. (*b*); H. 649. ii. 3 (529. ii. 1. N.¹); H-B. 582. 2 and *a*.

7 24 *conatu*: abl. of separation, following *destiterunt*; § 400 (243); B. 214; G. 390. 2; H. 462 (414); H-B. 408. 2.

§ 1 *CHAP. 9. una*: emphatic.—*via*, *only the way*.—*qua*: abl. of the way by which; § 429. *a* (258. *g*); B. 218. 9; G. 389; H. 476 (420. 1. 3); H-B. 426.—*Sequanis invitis* (abl. abs. expressing a condition), *in case the*, etc.

§ 2 *sua sponte*, *by their own influence*; a rare meaning of this phrase, which is generally of *their own accord*.

§ 3 *possent*: cf. note on *nuntiatum esset*, 6 14.

§ 4 eo deprecatore (abl. abs. denoting means), *by his means as advocate*. — *impetrarent, they might obtain* (it): a purpose clause; § 531 (317); B. 282; G. 545; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2.

§ 5 gratia, personal influence. — *largitione, lavish gifts and hospitalities*: like those of old chiefs of the clan. These words are ablatives of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 444.

§ 7 duxerat: this word is used only of the man who marries a wife, i.e. he *leads* her to his own house.

§ 8 novis rebus: *revolution*, change in government, dat.; § 368. 3 (227. a. 3); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346, R.²; H. 426. I (385. I); H-B. 362. ii.

§ 9 habere obstrictas, *to keep close bound*: § 497. b (292. c); B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. I. N.); H-B. 605. 5.

§ 10 impetrat has for object *ut . . . patiantur*, and *perficit* has *uti . . . dent*, — clauses of result; § 568 (332); B. 297. I; G. 553; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. I); H-B. 521. 3. a.

§ 11 obsides: these were persons of prominence given by one state to another as security for fidelity. If the compact were broken, the hostages, usually children of prominent persons, would be held responsible and punished.

§ 12 ne . . . prohibeant; ut transeant: object clauses of purpose, depending on the idea of agreement implied in *obsides . . . dent*. — *itinere*: abl. of separation; cf. *conatu*, 7 24.

§ 14 CHAP. 10. renuntiatur, *word is brought back*: i.e. by messengers sent to ascertain, as the prefix *re* implies; the subject is the clause *Helvetiis esse*, etc.; see note on 6 24.

§ 15 Santonum: a people north of the Garonne, on the Bay of Biscay. This is so far from the borders of the province as to show that Cæsar was only searching for a pretext. But the conquest of Gaul was already determined upon, and the warlike Helvetii were too dangerous a people to be allowed to add their strength to that of the present inhabitants.

§ 16 Tolosatium: the people of Tolosa, the modern Toulouse.

§ 17 Id refers to the Helvetii marching into the territory of the Santones. — *fieret*: the subjv. of indir. disc. after *intellegebat*.

§ 18 futurum [esse] ut . . . haberet, etc., *it would be to the great peril of the province that it should have*, etc.: § 561. N.¹ (329. N.); B. 294; G. 506; H. 571 (540); H-B. 238. — *ut . . . haberet*: a substantive clause of result used as the subject of *futurum [esse]*; § 537, 569 (319, 332. a); B. 284. I, 297. 2; G. 553. 4. R.³; H. 571. I (501. i. I); H-B. 521. 3. a. Cæsar's thought would be: "Id si fiet, magno . . . futurum est ut populus Romanus . . . habeat."

§ 19 locis (loc. abl.) *patentibus, in an open country*: the southwest part of Gaul is a broad river valley, giving easy access to the province.

8 20 finitimos: predicate, *have as neighbors*, etc.

8 21 munitioni . . . **præficit**, *he put in command of the fortification*. —

Labienum: this was Cæsar's best officer, a prominent and influential politician of strongly democratic sympathies. He served Cæsar faithfully through the Gallic wars, but when the Civil War broke out he joined what he conceived to be the party of the republic, went over to Pompey, and was killed at Munda, B.C. 45.

8 22 legatum, aide, lieutenant: no English word exactly translates this word. — **magnis itineribus**: cf. **quam maximis potest itineribus**, 6 16. It is the usual phrase for *forced marches* of an army. The ordinary day's march of the Romans was about 15 miles; a *magnum iter* was from 20 to 25 miles. — **Italiam**: probably only into his province of Cisalpine Gaul, but this was already regarded as a part of Italy.

9 1 Aquileiam: an important Roman colony at the head of the Adriatic. It continued to be the chief port of trade for this region till outgrown by Venice. — **qua proximum iter**: i.e. by way of Turin and Susa, by Mt. Genève. Ocelum has been variously identified with Briançon and probably Grenoble.

9 5 compluribus . . . **pulsis**: the order is interlocked, *his agreeing with pulsis*; § 59g. *h* (344. *h*); B. 350. 11. *d*.

9 7 Vocontiorum: this people extended from the Durance to the Isère.

9 8 Allobrogum: these extended as far south as the Isère, and had possessions north of the Rhone in the sharp angle at St. Didier.

9 9 Segusiavos: these were west of the Rhone in the region of Lyons and opposite Vienne. They probably extended across the Saône above Lyons, so that Cæsar only crossed the Rhone above its junction with the Saône and did not cross the Saône also. He evidently had his camp in the heights above Lyons in the angle of the two rivers. His army amounted to six legions of nearly 25,000 men and an uncertain number of Gallic cavalry. He had doubtless been joined by Labienus with his legion from



FIG. 72. — SIGNIFER.

Geneva, though that fact is not mentioned. *Cæsar* evidently went beyond his province without the order of the Senate, hence his explanatory tone.

9 11 **CHAP. II.** *iam, by this time.* — **angustias**: i.e. the Pas-de-l'Ecluse before described; see Figs. 5, 6. The entire train of the Helvetii has been reckoned at 8500 four-horse wagons, extending some fifty miles (cf. note on 4 23). The passage must have been extremely slow. They probably followed in the line of the modern railroad as far as Culoz, then to Amberieu and across the plateau des Dombes to the Saône between Lyons and Macon, a distance of nearly a hundred miles. It is calculated that *Cæsar* must have been absent two months in Italy, and the march of the Helvetians probably took about the same time. This would make the time of these events about the latter part of June.

9 12 **Haeduorum**: it does not appear that these occupied the left bank of the Saône. But predatory excursions may have been made across the river, and in ch. 12 the Helvetians were engaged in crossing.

9 13 **cum . . . possent, not being able, etc.**

9 15 **rogatum**: supine; § 509 (302); B. 340; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618. — **ita se, etc.**: in English supply *saying* or some such word. In Latin, after the idea of speech or thought is suggested, as here by **legatos** and **rogatum**, no further expression of saying is necessary. In dir. disc. this would be, "*Ita [nos] . . . meriti sumus, ut paene in conspectu exercitus vestri, . . . liberi nostri . . . non debuerint*"; i.e. our services have been such, etc., that we did not deserve to have this happen (as it has). Probably the account is somewhat exaggerated.

9 16 **meritos**: "Alone among the Gauls," says Tacitus, "the Hædui claim the name of brotherhood with the Roman people" (Ann. xi. 25). So, also, Cicero calls them *fratres nostri*.

9 17 [**eorum**]: words thus inclosed in brackets are of doubtful authenticity.

9 18 **debuerint**: if this were stated not as a result but independently, the form would be perf. indic., implying that the thing had happened contrary to what ought to be. According to the Latin idiom, the same tense is retained in such cases, contrary to the sequence of tenses; see § 485. c. N.² (287. c. N.); B. 268. 6; G. 513; H. 550 (495. vi); H-B. 478. The English idiom is *that our lands, etc., ought not to have been, etc.*, putting the past idea into the infin.; § 486. a (288. a); B. 270. 2; H. 618. 2 (537. 1); H-B. 582. 3. a. ftn.². — **Haedui Ambarri**, the Hædui near the Arar (or Saône), occupying the angle between that river and the Rhone. They were evidently closely akin to the Hædui and were their allies.

9 19 **necessarii**, bound by *necessitudo*, or community of interests of any kind. — **consanguinei**, *akin by blood*.

9 20 depopulatis agris . . . prohibere: i.e. their lands were already wasted, and it was with difficulty that they could keep off, etc.; see § 496. N.¹ (292. R.); B. 337. 2; G. 664. R.¹; H. 639 (549. 5); H-B. 421. 4; **depopulatis** is pass., though from a dep. verb; see § 190. *b* (135. *b*); B. 112. *b*; G. 167. N.²; H. 222. 2 (231. 2); H-B. 291. *d*.

9 21 Allobroges: from Culoz the Rhone flows almost south and then makes a very sharp turn to the northwest. It was probably in this angle that the Allobroges overlapped the river.

9 23 sibi: § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374. — **solum** is a noun. — **nihil esse reliqui:** part. gen., a common usage with neut. adjectives; § 346. *a*. 1 (216. *a*. 1); B. 201. 2; G. 369; H. 440. 5. N. (397. 1); H-B. 346; i.e. they had nothing left, etc.; the land was completely stripped.

9 24 non expectandum [esse]: impers., as this construction is always passive. Translate by the act., *He must not*, etc.; see § 374 (232); B. 189. 1; G. 355, 251. 1; H. 302. 7, 431 (301. 2, 388); H-B. 373. 1.

9 25 sociorum: the Helvetians would be sure to levy upon the allies of the Romans wherever they found them.

9 26 Santonos: cf. **8 15.** — **pervenirent:** § 553 (328); B. 292. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5. The subjv. is used because of the idea, *they should come*, technically called purpose.

10 1 CHAP. 12. flumen, etc., *the Arar (Saône) is a river which flows through*, etc.; not *between*, which would be expressed by *dividit*. The Saône joins the Rhone about seventy-five miles southwest of Lake Geneva.

10 2 lenitate, *sluggish current*, abl. of description.

10 3 in . . . fluat: indir. quest., subject of *iudicari possit*: see § 574. N. (334. N.); B. 300; G. 467; H. 649. ii (529. i); H-B. 537.

10 4 ratibus, *rafts* of logs; *lintribus,* *canoes* of hollowed logs, joined to make a kind of bridge. — **transibant:** notice the imperf.; they were in the act of crossing.

10 5 partis: object of *duxisse*; *flumen*, governed by *trans* in composition; § 395 (239. *b*); B. 179. 1; G. 331. R.¹; H. 413 (376); H-B. 386.

10 7 citra: i.e. on the east side. — **Ararim:** for the acc. in *im*, see § 74. *d*, 75. *a*. 1 (55. *d*, 56. *a*. 1); B. 38. 1; G. 57. 1; H. 102. 2 (62. iii. 1); H-B. 88. 1. It is to be noticed that Gallic names were felt by the Romans as Greek, and were treated accordingly. — **reliquam** = *relictam*: in fact, this adjective is, from its meaning, a kind of participle. — **de tertia vigilia:** the night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four equal watches, the third beginning at midnight. This movement took place soon after (*de*) the watch began.

10 10 eos impeditos, etc.: the emphasis gives a force like "while these were hampered and not expecting, he engaged them," etc. In Latin the two sentences are made into one; such telescoping of two coördinate ideas is almost regular in Latin.

10 11 concidit: see Vocab. — **mandarunt** = *mandaverunt*: § 181. *a* (128. *a*); B. 116. 1; G. 131; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163.

10 12 pagus: this "district" (*Tigurinus*) was about the modern Zurich. The inhabitants of the *pagus* probably composed a clan, and formed a division of the force.

10 15 L. Cassium: see 7 1, 2.

10 17 deorum: this reference to a special providence is noticeable in so stern a realist as Cæsar, and was possibly for political effect. Yet he often speaks of fortune as powerful in human affairs (cf. Bk. vi. ch. 42), and mentions divine omens which accompanied his victory over Pompey (Bell. Civ. III. 105). A disbeliever in the superstitions of his day, he yet seems to acknowledge the presence of a controlling power. — **quae pars . . . intulerat . . . ea . . . persolvit**, render *that part which*, etc.: see § 307. *b*. N. (200. *b*. N.); cf. B. 251. 4; G. 620; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6.

10 19 princeps poenas persolvit, *was the first to pay the penalty*: § 290 (191); B. 239; H. 497. 3 (442. N.); H-B. 243; referring to the complete overthrow of the rest later. Punishment was regarded among the ancients, not as *suffering* to be *inflicted*, but as of the nature of a *fine* or *penalty* to be *paid*; hence *sumere*, *capere*, to *inflict*, and *dare* or *solvere*, to *suffer*.

In 1862 numerous remains buried in two trenches were discovered near this spot, possibly of those slain in this battle.

11 1 iniurias, *wrongs*, not simply *damage*, as the word came to mean afterwards. From Cæsar's point of view, an offensive war against Rome is necessarily wrong.

11 2 soceri: L. Calpurnius Piso, father of Cæsar's wife, Calpurnia (Shakespeare's *Calpurnia*), and consul of the present year (see end of ch. 6). — **legatum**: notice how carefully titles are given, a matter of military and social etiquette; cf. **consulem**, 10 15.

11 4 CHAP. 13. reliquas: the emphasis on this word displaces the connective *ut*, which would naturally stand first in its clause.

11 5 consequi, *overtake* (hence the frequent meaning *acquire*). — **pontem . . . faciendum curat**, *has a bridge made*: § 500. 4 (294. *d*); B. 337. 7. *b*. 2; G. 430; H. 622 (544. 2. N.²); H-B. 612. iii. — **pontem**: see chapter on military affairs, VI.

11 7 cum . . . intellegent: § 546 (323, 325); B. 288. 1. B; G. 585; H. 600. ii. 1 (521. ii. 2); H-B. 525; cf. notes on 4 12, 6 14, 7 17. Here **cum** may be translated *when*, but the clause gives the state of mind of the

Helvetii as the main feature of the situation, and really expresses no time at all, but circumstance only, hence the subjunctive.—*id*: object of *fecisse*.

11 8 *diebus XX, in the course of twenty days*: § 423 (256); B. 231; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439.—*ut . . . transirent*: this clause is in app. with *id*, but, as it is through that app. the object of *fecisse*, it takes the result construction just as if it depended immediately on the verb of effecting; cf. note on 4 17; and see § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a. N.

11 9 *legatos*: a participle of *lego* (*depute*), used as a noun; hence, diplomatically *envoy* or *ambassador*, and in military affairs *lieutenant*.

11 10 *Divico*: now an old man, since the battle in which he was commander took place forty-nine years before. It was, of course, a piece of arrogance to send him.

11 12 *si pacem, etc.*: Direct, —

Si pacem p. R. cum Helvetiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvetii, ubi eos tu, Caesar, constitueris atque esse volueris (or *Caesar constituerit . . . voluerit*); *sin bello . . . perseverabit, reminiscere et veteris incommodi p. R. et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improvise unum pagum adortus es, cum ei qui flumen transierant suis auxilium ferre non possent, noli ob eam rem aut tuas magnopere virtuti tribuere, aut nos despicere; nos ita a patribus maioribusque nostris didicimus ut magis virtute contenderemus (contendamus) quam dolo aut insidiis niteremur (nitamur).* *Qua re noli committere ut is locus ubi constitimus ex calamitate . . . nomen capiat aut memoriam prodant.*

This discourse, as well as Cæsar's answer, is confused by a partial identification of Cæsar and the Roman people. Hence, many of the forms might be either third person as referring to the Roman people, or second or first as addressed to Cæsar, or spoken by him.

*The indirect discourse is found in almost all languages, and each one has its own methods of change from the direct. In English it is regularly introduced by *that*. This word, however, is often omitted, in which case only the *persons* and the *tenses* are changed to fit the new relations. Dependent clauses keep their connectives, but change, like others, their *persons* and *tenses*. In long passages, if *that* is omitted, parenthetical phrases are frequently introduced to keep the connection of the thought, like "he said," "he asked," "he urged," "he begged." The passage here may be translated: "If the Roman people would make peace, etc., [that] the Helvetii would go . . . and remain where Cæsar should settle them and desire them to be; but if they (the Roman people) should persist in pursuing them, etc., let him remember [he said] (or he begged him to remember), etc. As to the fact that (because) he had attacked, etc., he should

not ascribe it, etc., or despise them (the Helvetians). [That] they had [he said] been taught rather to contend, etc. Let him therefore not allow that place . . . to be," etc. So in 12 8, num . . . *posse*, "could they, he asked."

11 13 in *eam partem* . . . *ubi*, to whatever part, i.e. of Gaul. They were not, however, to be turned back from their migration.

11 15 *bello*: note the emphatic position as opposed to emphatic *pacem*, l. 12. — *reminisceretur*, subjv. for inv. of the dir.: *he should remember*, or *let him remember*.

11 16 *incommodi*, *disaster* (lit. *inconvenience*), a euphemism: cf. "the late unpleasantness" for our Civil War. For the government of the gen., see § 350. c (219); B. 206. 2; G. 376; H. 454 (406. ii); H-B. 350.

11 17 *quod*: conj., *as to the fact that*; § 572. a (333. a); B. 299. 2; G. 525. 2; H. 588. 3. N. (516. ii. 2, N.); H-B. 552. 2. — *pagum*: the Tigurini.

11 18 *suis*, to their people: § 302. d (190. a); B. 236. 1; G. 204. N.¹; H. 494. 1 (441. 1); H-B. 250. 2. a.

11 19 *ne tribueret*, *he should not ascribe it*: cf. *reminisceretur*, l. 15.

11 21 *contenderent*, *niterentur*: subjv. of result. — *dolo*, *craft*; *insidiis*, *ambuscade*. For these ablatives, see § 431 (254. b); B. 218. 3; G. 401. N.⁶; H. 476. 3 (425. ii. 1, N.); H-B. 438. 1.

11 22 *ne committeret ut*, etc.: § 568. N.¹ (332. e); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 566. 1 (498. ii. N.²). — *ubi constitissent*, *where they had taken their stand*.

12 1 CHAP. 14. *eo sibi*, etc.: Direct, —

Eo mihi minus dubitationis *datur*, quod eas res quas legati Helvetii *commemoraverunt* (or *vos commemorastis*) *memoria teneo*, atque *eo* gravius *fero*, quo minus merito populi Romani *acciderunt*; qui si . . . *sibi* conscius fuisset, non *fuit* difficile cavere; sed *eo deceptus est*, quod neque commissum a se *intellegebat* qua re timeret, neque sine causa timendum *putabat*. Quod si . . . *oblivisci velit (velim)*, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod *me* invito iter . . . *temptastis*, quod Haeduos, . . . *vexastis*, *memoriam deponere potest (possum)?* Quod *vestra* victoria . . . *gloriamini*, quodque tam diu *vos* impune iniurias tulisse *admiramini*, eodem *pertinet*. *Consuerunt enim di immortales* quo gravius homines . . . *doleant*, quos pro scelere eorum *ulcisci volunt* . . . *his* . . . *impunitatem concedere*. Cum ea ita sint, tamen si *obsides a vobis mihi dabuntur*, uti ea quae *pollicemini* [vos] *facturos intellegam*, et si Haeduis de iniuriis quas . . . *intulistis* . . . *satisfacietis* [ego], *vobiscum pacem faciam*.

12 1 *eo* (cf. note on *quo minus*, l. 3) *minus* . . . *dari*, *he had all the less hesitation*. — *dubitationis*: § 346. a. 2 (216. a. 2); B. 201. 2; G. 369; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.

12 3 *eo gravius . . . quo minus, he was the more incensed . . . in that . . . not, etc.*: § 414. *a* (106. *c*, 250. *R.*); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); cf. H-B. 424 and *a*.

12 4 *qui si . . . fuisset, now if they (the Roman people) had been.*

12 5 *non fuisset* (for *fuit* of *dir. disc.*): translate as if *futurum fuisset*, *it would not have been*; and see § 437. *a* (264. *b*, 308 *d. N.*); B. 271. 1. *b*, 322. *b*; G. 597. 3 (*a*); H. 525. 2, 583 (476. 5, 511. 1. *N.*⁸); H-B. 582. 3. *a. N.*²—*eo deceptum [esse], they had been deceived by this.*



FIG. 73.

1. FUNDITOR.

2, 2. MILITES LEVIS ARMATURAE.

3, 3. LEGIONARIII.

12 6 *quare timeret* = *propter quod*, with *quicquam* for its understood antecedent. The clause stands as subject of *commissum [esse]*, which in turn depends on *intellegeret*: *because they (the Roman people) did not know they had done anything to cause them to fear.*

12 7 *quod si . . . vellet, but if they (or he) should consent to forget, etc.*: § 397. *a* (240. *b*); B. 185. 2; G. 333. 1, 610. *R.*¹; H. 510. 9 (453. 6); H-B. 388. *a*.—*contumeliae*: for construction, cf. *incommodi*, 11 16.

12 8 *num . . . posse, could they (or he), he asked, etc.*: § 586 (338); B. 315. 2; G. 651. *R.*¹; H. 642. 2 (523. ii. 2); H-B. 591. *a*. The *infin.* is used because the question is not a real one expecting an answer, but a rhetorical one asked for effect, and implying its own answer. Such questions are treated in *indir. disc.* as declarative sentences.—*iniuriarum* depends on *memoriam* below.

12 9 *eo invito, against his will*; we should expect *se*, referring to the subject of *posse*, but Cæsar's mind wavers between himself and the Roman people, so that the pronoun does not exactly refer to the subject.

12 10 *quod . . . vexassent* is a clause of *fact*, properly indic.: § 572 (333); B. 286; G. 525; H. 588 (516); H-B. 555; it is subjv. by indir. disc.

12 11 *quod*: cf. note on *quod*, **11 17**. — *sua*: i.e. the Helvetians; so *se tulisse, that they had committed*. — *quod . . . admirarentur*: the two *quod* clauses are used as the subject of *pertinere, as for their boasting, etc., and as for their wondering, etc., it tended in the same direction*; i.e. it all belonged together in the divine purpose of exalting them expressly to make the fall more marked. "Divico had not said anything in the way of direct boasting. This eloquent passage was perhaps an answer to his manner, or to the fact that he was the same Divico who had slain Lucius Cassius."

12 13 *consuesse*: present in force; § 205. N.² (143. c. N.); B. 262. a; G. 175. 5; H. 299. 2 (297. i. 2); H-B. 487.

12 14 *quo*: cf. note on **7 15**.

12 15 *quos . . . his, to grant an interval of prosperity and longer impunity to those whom they wish to punish for their guilt*; the relative clause, as usual, preceding: § 683. 2. N. (201. c); G. 620; H. 683. 2. N. (572. ii. N.); H-B. 284. 5. Observe the change to primary tenses, when the language of Cæsar expresses a general truth.

12 18 *cum, though*: § 549 (326); B. 309; G. 587; H. 598 (515. iii); H-B. 526. — *sibi, to him*, Cæsar.

12 19 *facturos [esse]*: sc. *eos*. — *Haeduis*: dat. after *satisfaciant* supplied from the next clause, *pay damages*.

12 20 *ipsis* (the Hædui): dat. after *intulerint*.

12 22 Write Divico's reply in dir. disc.

12 24 *testem*: another allusion to the victory over Cassius.

13 2 CHAP. 15. *equitatum*. Who made up the cavalry? See chapter on military affairs, I. 2.

13 4 *coactum habebat*, lit. *had collected*, more strictly *held* (had in hand) *after being collected*: § 497. b (292. c); B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. i. N.); H-B. 605. 5. — *videant*: subjv. of purpose.

13 5 *faciant*: subjv. of indir. quest., *quas* being interrog. — *cupidius, too eagerly*: § 291. a (93. a); B. 240. 1; G. 297. 2; H. 498 (444. 1); H-B. 241. 2. — *novissimum agmen, the rear*; *agmen* is the army in line of march (*ago*), and its *newest* part is that which comes along last. See chapter on military affairs, VI.

13 6 *alieno loco, on unfavorable ground*; so *suo* would be *favorable* (cf. "one's own ground"). For construction, see § 429. I (258. f. 1); B. 228. I. b; G. 385. N.¹; H. 485. I (425. ii. 2); H-B. 436.

13 8 *equitibus*: abl. of means.

13 10 *novissimo agmine* (loc. abl.), *at their rear*. — *proelio*: abl. of manner or means.

13 12 *satis habebat*, *held it sufficient*. — *hostem . . . prohibere*: in a kind of pred. agreement with *satis*, as object of *habebat*. — *rapinis*: § 400 (243); B. 214. 2; G. 390. 2; H. 462 (414. 1); H-B. 408. 2.

13 13 *ita . . . uti*, *in such a way that* (correlative). — *dies*: cf. with *diebus*, 11 8, and note the difference between the acc. and the abl. of time.

13 15 *quinis aut senis*: distributives, implying that this was the *constant* or *average* daily distance between the two armies. They apparently marched along the Saône, in the direction of Châlon. Their exact route from the Saône towards Autun is uncertain. The country here is very irregular and broken; so that it was impossible for Cæsar to get any advantage by a rapid march or by an attack on the Helvetian rear. He consequently followed them, watching his chance. — *milibus*: § 406 (247); B. 217; G. 296; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416. d.

13 17 CHAP. 16. *Haeduos frumentum*, *demanded corn of the Hædvi*: § 396 (239. c); B. 178. 1. a; G. 339; H. 411 (374); H-B. 393.

13 18 *essent polliciti*: subjv. because of the implied indir. disc., *which* (he said) *they had promised*. — *flagitare*: histor. infin.; § 463 (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610 (536. 1); H-B. 595. Notice that this construction, like the imperfect tense, only describes a situation, and never advances the narrative. The word expresses an earnest and repeated demand accompanied with reproaches. — *frigora*, *the cold seasons*, or *spells of cold*; not *the cold* in general. The climate of Gaul in Cæsar's day was much colder than that of France now. The change has come from clearing away the forests and draining the marshes, which then covered much of the country.

13 20 *frumenta*: the plur. is regularly used of *standing grain*. The crops of grain were not ripe because it was too early in the season (about the last of June); the green fodder (*pabuli*) was scarce because Cæsar was following in the path of the Helvetians, whose thousands of cattle had almost swept the country bare. — *ne . . . quidem*, *not even*: § 322. f. (151. e); B. 347. 1; G. 448. 2; H. 569. iii. 2.

13 22 *frumento*: abl. after *uti*. — *flumine*: § 429. a (258. g); B. 218. 9; but G. 389; H. 476 (420. 1. 3); H-B. 426. — *navibus*: § 409 (248. c. 1); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423. — *propterea . . . quod*: see 1 6.

13 23 *ab Arari*: i.e. towards the valley of the Loire, westerly, but by what road is unknown.

13 24 *diem*: acc. expressing duration of time. — *ducere*: histor. infin.

13 25 *conferri*, etc. [*frumentum*]: a climax. *They said it was being gathered, it was on the way, it was already at hand*.

14 1 *quo die*: note the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause, but do not translate it; see § 307. *a* (200. *a*); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4.

14 2 *metiri, serve*; see chapter on military affairs, IV. *f*.

14 4 *Diviciaco et Lisco*: abl. in apposition with *principibus*. — *summo magistratui praeerat*, held the chief office, of which the Celtic title was *guerg breth*, "executor of judgment," represented in Latin by *vergobretus*.

14 6 *in suos*, over his people.

14 7 *posset*: sc. *frumentum*. For the subjv., see § 593 (342); B. 324; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.

14 8 *propinquis*, with the enemy so near: not attribute, but predicate; an abl. abs.

15 1 *sublevetur*: cf. *essent polliciti*, 13 18, and note; also *sit destitutus* just below; § 592. 3 (341. *d*); B. 323; G. 508. 3; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 2. *a*.

15 4 CHAP. 17. *quod*: sc. *id*, object of *proponit*.

15 5 *esse non nullos*, etc.: Direct, —

Sunt non nulli quorum auctoritas . . . valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hi . . . multitudinem deterrent ne frumentum conferant quod debent: praestat, si iam principatum . . . obtinere non possunt, Gallorum . . . imperia . . . perferre; neque dubitant quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, . . . libertatem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem vestra (or Romanorum) consilia quaeque in castris gerantur (geruntur) hostibus enuntiantur; hi a me coerceri non possunt. Quin etiam, quod necessario . . . coactus Caesari (tibi) enuntiavi, intellego . . . quanto id cum periculo fecerim, et ob eam causam quam diu potui tacui.

15 6 *privatim plus possint*, have more power in private station: see note on 3 20.

15 7 *improba oratione*, reckless talk.

15 8 *ne . . . conferant*, from bringing: § 558. *b* (331. *e*. 2); B. 295. 3; G. 548; H. 596. 2 (505. ii); H-B. 502. 3. *b*.

15 11 *neque dubitare quin*: § 537. *a* (319. *a*); B. 284. 3; G. 555. 2; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. *b*. — *superaverint*: perf. subjv. — *una*: an adv.

15 12 *Haeduis*: dat.; § 558 (229); B. 188. 2. *d*; G. 347; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371. — *sint erepturi*: the first periphrastic conjugation. It almost equals *eripiant*, but emphasizes the future intention of the Romans.

15 14 *a se*: i.e. by Liscus, as chief magistrate. — *quod . . . enuntiarit*: cf. 11 17, 12 11, and notes.

15 15 *coactus*, on compulsion (lit. being forced).

15 16 quanto . . . fecerit: cf. quas . . . faciant, **13 5** and note. — **id:** i.e. quod . . . enuntiarit.

15 19 **CHAP. 18.** pluribus praesentibus, *in the presence of many*; observe that the abl. abs. will rarely bear a literal translation, but its force must be brought out in various ways.

15 20 iactari, *bandied about* (frequentative of iacio).

15 21 Liscum retinet, [but] *keeps Liscus*. The omission of the conj. (asyndeton) is very common in Cæsar's rapid narrative. — **ex solo**, *from him in private*.

15 22 secreto (from *secerno*), *each by himself*.

15 23 esse vera (sc. *haec*), *that the facts are these*. — ipsum esse Dumnorigem, etc.: Direct, —

Ipse est Dumnorix . . . cupidus rerum novarum. Compluris annos portoria . . . redempta habet, . . . quod illo licente contra liceri audet nemo. His rebus et suam rem . . . auxit et facultatis . . . comparavit; magnum numerum equitatus . . . alit et circum se habet, neque solum domi sed etiam apud . . . civitatis largiter potest; atque . . . matrem . . . collocavit, ipse . . . uxorem habet, sororem . . . collocavit. Favet et cupit Helvetiis . . . odit . . . Caesarem . . . quod . . . frater . . . est restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem . . . venit; imperio populi Romani . . . de ea quam habet gratia, desperat.

15 24 summa audacia, [a man] *of the utmost boldness*. The general word is rarely, as here, omitted after a proper name with an abl. of quality.

15 25 rerum novarum: the regular expression for a change of government, revolution, or *coup d'état*. Such overturnings seem to have been frequent in Gaul. — portoria, *customs dues* or *tolls*, levied at the frontier; collected, apparently, as by the Romans, through *publicani*, who bid for the contract at public auction and made what they could above the contract price. The Hædui controlled at least a part of the Saône, which was a water-way into the centre of Gaul. It was customary among the ancients to levy tolls or blackmail on goods passing through their territories.

16 1 redempta: agreeing with vectigalia, and taken with habere, *had bought in* (cf. **8 9**, **13 4**).

16 2 illo licente, *when he bid*: see note on **15 19**.

16 4 ad largiendum, *for bribery*, to buy political support: § 506 (300); B. 338. 3; G. 432; H. 628 (541. iii. N.²); H-B. 612. iii.

16 7 causa, *for the sake*: as always when thus following a gen. — potentiae, *power*, as an attribute of the person; potestas is power to do anything; facultas, opportunity; imperium, military authority.

16 8 Biturigibus: near the modern *Bourges*, west of the Hædui.

16 9 *uxorem*: the daughter of Orgetorix; see **3 22**. — *ex matre*, *on the mother's side* (a half-sister).

16 10 *nuptum*: supine; § 509 (302); B. 340. 1; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618; see Vocab. under *conlocare*.

16 11 *Helvetiis*: dat.; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. 1); H-B. 362. ii.

16 12 *suo nomine*, *on his own account*: a mercantile phrase applying to business debts, etc.

16 14 *si quid accidat*: a mild phrase, *in case of any disaster*; future less vivid protasis with *venire* as apodosis; § 589 (337); B. 319. B; G. 658; H. 646 (527. ii); cf. H-B. 580.

16 15 *obtinendi*: gerund or gerundive? See **3 11** and note.

16 16 *imperio* (abl. of time and cause), *under the rule*.

16 18 *quod . . . factum*, *in regard to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish fought the other day*. The idea expressed in English by *whereas*, *as to the fact that*, and the like is regularly expressed in Latin by a *quod*-clause with the indic., almost independent of the rest of the sentence; cf. **11 17**, **12 11**, **15 14**, and notes.

16 19 *initium fugae*: it is implied that this action was treacherous.

16 21 *auxilio Caesari*: § 382. 1 (233. *a*); B. 191. 2. *b*; G. 356; H. 433 (390. ii); H-B. 360 and *b*.

16 24 CHAP. 19. *res*, *facts*; see note on **4 4**. — *accederent*: § 546 (325); B. 288. 1. B; G. 585; H. 600. ii. 1 (521. ii. 2); H-B. 525. This word is used as a kind of pass. of *addo*. — *quod . . . traduxisset*, *the fact that* (as he learned) *he had led*, etc. The verbs in these *quod*-clauses are in the subjv. on the principle of implied or informal indir. disc.; cf. **13 18**, **15 1**, and notes.

16 25 *inter eos*: i.e. the Helvetii and Sequani. — *dandos*: cf. *pontem faciendum curat*, **11 5** and note.

16 26 *iniussu suo*, etc., *without his authority or that of the state*. For form, see § 94. *c* (71. *b*); B. 57. 1; G. 70. A; H. 143. 1 (134); H-B. 106. 1; here *suo* is equivalent to a genitive.

16 27 *ipsis*: himself and the Hædui. — *magistratu*: see **14 4**.

16 28 *causae*: gen. depending on *satis*, which is used as a noun. — *in eum . . . animadverteret*, *should proceed against or punish him* (see Vocab.): a clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283. 1; G. 631. 1; H. 591 (503); cf. H-B. 521. 1.

17 3 *quod . . . cognoverat*, *that he well knew*, etc. (the present inceptive, *cognosco*, having the meaning *to learn*). This clause, in apposition with *unum* (*only one thing*), might in English be introduced by some such word as *namely*.

17 4 *studium*, *attachment*, as a partisan.

17 5 *voluntatem*, *good will*, as a friend. Note the absence of connectives in vivid narration.

17 6 *eius*: i.e. of Dumnorix. — *supplicio*, *punishment* or *execution*. This word is derived from the adj. *supplex*, *down-bent*, signifying *on the bended knee*; i.e. either as a suppliant for mercy, or, as here, to receive the blow of the executioner.

17 7 *prius quam conaretur*, *before he should attempt*: § 556. b (327); B. 292. 1. a; G. 577; H. 605. ii (520. ii); H-B. 507. 4. a.

17 10 *cui*, etc.: an easier construction would be *cuius fidei omnes res credebat*. — *summam . . . fidem*, *full confidence*.

17 11 *eo*: i.e. Diviciacus. — *commonefacit*, *reminds* or *notifies* (see Vocab.).

17 12 *ipso*: i.e. Diviciacus.

17 13 *apud se*, *in his* (Cæsar's) *presence*.

17 14 *ut . . . statuatur*: cf. note on 6 10. — *offensione animi*, *displeasure* (of Diviciacus); *ipse*, which follows, refers to Cæsar: the gist of the request is in *sine eius offensione*. Cæsar hopes, in what steps he takes or orders to be taken against Dumnorix, not to incur the resentment of his brother.

17 17 CHAP. 20. *complexus*: i.e. he embraces Cæsar's knees or falls at his feet.

17 18 *ne quid gravius* (a common euphemistic phrase), *no severe measures*. Notice that *gravius* is an adj., modifying *quid* (*anything*), a subst. — *scire se*, etc.: Direct, —

Scio hæc esse vera, nec quisquam ex eo plus quam ego doloris capio, propterea quod, cum ego gratia plurimum [possem] . . . ille minimum . . . posset, per me crevit; quibus opibus . . . paene ad perniciem meam utitur. Ego tamen et amore . . . commoveor. Quod si quid ei a te acciderit, cum ego hunc locum . . . apud te teneam (teneo), nemo existimabit non mea voluntate factum; qua ex re . . . totius Galliae animi a me avertentur.

17 19 *plus doloris*: except as an adv., this comparative is mostly used, as here, with the part. gen.

17 20 *ipse, se, suam, sese*: all refer to Diviciacus; *ille* to Dumnorix, which is also the subject of *crevisset* and *uteretur*.

17 22 *opibus ac nervis*, *sinews of power*, after *uteretur*: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. 1); H-B. 429.

17 23 *gratiam*, as well as *perniciem*, takes *suam*.

17 24 *amore fraterno*, *love to his brother*: § 348. a (217. a); B. 353. 5. b; H. 439. 3 (395. N.²); H-B. 354. d.

17 25 *si quid accidisset* (a euphemism; cf. *incommodi*, 11 16 and note): pluperf. representing fut. perf. indic. (*acciderit*) of the direct by sequence

of tenses; a future condition; § 516. *f* (307. *f*); B. 319. B; G. 656, 657; H. 644. 2 (525. 2); H-B. 580. *b* and N. — *ei*: i.e. Dumnorix.

18 1 *futurum* [*esse*] *uti* . . . *avertentur*, *the hearts of all the Gauls would be turned from him*: periphrastic fut. infin.; § 569. *a* (147. *c*. 3, 288. *f*); B. 115, 270. 3; G. 248; H. 619. 2 (537. 3); H-B. 472. *c*. Cf. **8** 18.

18 4 *rogat* [*ut*] . . . *faciat*: § 565. *a* (331. *f*. R.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R.²; H. 565. 4 (499. 2).

18 5 *tanti*, *of so great account*: § 417 (252. *a*); B. 203. 3; G. 380. 1; H. 448. 4 (405); H-B. 356. 1.

18 6 *eius* . . . *precibus*, *in deference to his wish and prayers*. — *condonet* (subjv. of result): this word means to give up a right to some one; here the just resentment of Cæsar was given up to Diviciacus.

18 8 *reprehendat*: why subjv.? cf. **15** 16. Note the same construction in the next clause.

18 10 *praeterita*, *things bygone, the past*.

18 11 *custodes*: i.e. *spies*.

18 15 CHAP. 21. *qualis esset*, etc.: indir. quest. after *cognoscerent*. — *natura*, *character*. — *qualis* . . . *ascensus*: i.e. what kind of an ascent there was at various points of its circuit. — *qui cognoscerent*: § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. 1); H-B. 502. 2; the antecedent of *qui* is *eos*, *quosdam*, or some such word, to be supplied as object of *misit*, *he sent men to ascertain*. Such a relative may in Latin always imply its own antecedent, as in English the relatives *whoever* and *what*; cf. *qui* . . . *appellantur*, **1** 2 and note.

18 16 *facilem*: sc. *ascensum*. — *de tertia vigilia*: cf. **10** 7 and note.

18 17 *pro praetore*, *with powers of prætor*. The prætor, like the consul, held the *imperium* or power to command; a *legatus*, not possessing this in his own right, might be temporarily invested with it by his commander. Labienus, and perhaps others of Cæsar's lieutenants, had the *imperium* in their own right, by special grant.

18 18 *ducibus*: a kind of predicate apposition, *as guides*; § 284 (185. *a*); B. 168; G. 325; H-B. 319. 1. — *qui* . . . *cognoverant*: i.e. who had been of the reconnoitering party.

18 19 *consili*: a predicate gen. after *quid sit*; § 343. *b* (214. *c*); B. 198. 3; G. 366; H. 447 (402); H-B. 340. Such genitives are not rare in Cæsar, but are probably more or less colloquial. — *sit*: cf. *reprehendat*, **1** 8, above.

18 20 *de quarta vigilia*: about 2 A.M., the sun at this season rising here about four o'clock.

18 22 *rei*: § 349. *a* (218. *a*); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1 (399. 1. 2); H-B. 354.

18 23 Sullae, Crassi: Sulla, the dictator, had conducted the war against Mithridates about thirty years before (B.C. 88-84), and Crassus that against Spartacus some years later (B.C. 71). — in: sc. *exercitu*.

19 1 CHAP. 22. teneretur: subjv. after *cum*, describing the situation; cf. 4 12, 6 14, 7 17, and notes.

19 2 ipse: Cæsar.

19 3 passibus: abl. of degree of difference after *abesset*; § 425. *b* (257. *b*); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); cf. H-B. 424; not after *longius*; § 407. *c* (247. *c*); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R.⁴; H. 471. 4 (417. 1. N.²); cf. H-B. 416. *d*.

19 4 aut Labieni: after *adventus* and coördinate with *ipsius*. — *equo admisso*, at full speed (with reins thrown loose).

19 6 armis: the shields and helmets of the Gauls were distinctly different from those of the Romans; see Figs. 11, 28, 65, 75, 95, etc.

19 7 insignibus: i.e. *devices* on shields and helmets, — stags' horns, eagles' plumes, etc.; see Fig. 11. The inference from this report would be that Labienus and his force had been cut to pieces, and Cæsar must expect an attack at once. This accounts for his next movement, which was to fall back and wait in line of battle, while Labienus was vainly expecting him.

19 8 ut, as.

19 9 ne . . . committeret . . . essent: subject of *erat praeceptum*; § 566 (331. *h*); B. 295. 1.

19 10 ut . . . fieret, in order that the attack might be made on all sides at once: a purpose clause.

19 11 monte occupato, etc., having seized the height, continued to look out for our men. Observe how the imperfects *expectabat* and *abstinebat* describe the situation; see note on 3 5.

19 12 multo die: abl. of time, late in the day. — *denique*, not till: see Vocab.

20 2 quod non vidisset, what he had not seen; sc. *id*, object of *renuntiasset*. — *pro viso*, as if seen; *viso* is used here as a noun. — *quo*, sc. *eodem*, at the same interval as usual, i.e. five or six miles; see 13 15.

20 3 milia: acc. of extent; § 425. *b* (257. *b*); B. 223; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387.

20 5 CHAP. 23. diei: § 359. *b* (214. *g*); B. 201. 3. *a*; G. 360; H. 446. 5 (398. 5); H-B. 380. *c*; making *postridie* more formal and precise. — *omnino*, in all (i.e. only).

20 6 cum, within which, a common Latin idiom. — *metiri*: cf. 14 2 and note. — *Bibracte*, the modern Mont Beuvray, a considerable hill, about ten miles west of Autun (Augustodunum). The place afterwards became a Roman colony, and contains numerous Roman remains.

20 8 milibus: cf. 19 3 and note. — *rei frumentariae* (dat.), *the supply of corn.*

20 9 prospiciendum: *impers.*; *sc. esse.* — *itaque:* words in italics are conjectural readings. — *avertit:* towards the north, as the Helvetii were travelling westward to reach the Loire.

20 10 fugitivos, runaways, i.e. fugitive slaves.

20 11 decurionis: see chapter on military affairs, I. 2.

20 12 existimarent: the subjv. is here used idiomatically because Cæsar was not sure of the real reason; § 540 (321); B. 286. 1; G. 541; H. 588. ii (516. ii); H-B. 535. 2. a.

20 13 eo magis, all the more: cf. note on 2 17. — *superioribus,* etc.: concessive, i.e. though they had gained an advantageous position, still they did not attack the Helvetii.

20 14 commisissent: see note on *existimarent* above, l. 12. — *eo quod,* etc., *for this reason, because they felt sure that they* (the Romans) *could be cut off from their supplies;* *eo* is abl. of cause, not different in sense from *eo* (*magis*) above, though its origin is different. — *re:* abl. of separation.

20 15 itinere converso: i.e. instead of continuing on their way, by which they might have reached the coast, their vain confidence led them to return and give Cæsar the chance that he had been waiting for.

20 18 CHAP. 24. id: governed by *animum advertit* treated as an active compound verb. The tense of the verb is perfect, as usual after *postquam*; cf. note on *arbitrati sunt*, 4 17.

20 19 sustineret: subjv. of purpose; § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

20 20 ipse: Cæsar himself as opposed to the cavalry, which he had sent elsewhere. — *medio:* see Vocab. and cf. § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 291. R.²; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. N.¹); H-B. 244. — *triplicem aciem:* see chapter on military affairs, VII.

20 21 legionum: gen. of material; § 344 (214. c); B. 197; H-B. 349. The four veteran legions stood side by side, each in three lines; see plan, Fig. 16.

20 22 summo: cf. note on *medio*, l. 20. — *proxime:* these new legions last raised (cf. 8 23) were not as yet sufficiently steady to bear the brunt of a battle, and so they were set to guard the camp.

20 23 auxilia: see chapter on military affairs, I. 3. — [*ac totum,* etc.]: this clause may well be read in this connection, though many editors omit it; cf. note on *eorum*, 9 17. The force of *ac* is *and thus*; see Vocab.

20 24 sarcinas: see chapter on military affairs, I. 6 and IV. c, and Fig. 14. In a regular battle these were left behind in camp. So here, they were deposited in one spot, which was to be the site of the camp when made

(muniri, 21 2) by the less trustworthy troops. Nothing is said of the baggage train (*impedimenta*), but it probably was sent on towards Bibracte.

21 1 eum: i.e. the spot chosen (*locum*, 20 24). — his: i.e. the soldiers last mentioned. — *superiore*: i.e. those who were at the top of the hill. —

constiterant, were stationed; cf. § 476 (279. e); B. 262. a; G. 241. 3. R.; H. 538. 4 (471. 3); H-B. 487.

21 2 cum omnibus suis carris, etc.: i.e. not sending a force of fighting men, but following with their whole train. It seems to have been the habit of these peoples to go to battle with their families and their carts for encouragement as well as for defence.

21 3 confertissima acie . . . phalange facta: see introductory chapter on Gaul and the Gauls.

21 4 reiecto, etc.: the ancient cavalry were no match for any considerable number of foot-soldiers, and hence were not depended upon for the main engagement. They opened the fight, but were expected

to flee as soon as the foot advanced.

22 1 CHAP. 25. suo [*equo remoto*], etc.: i.e. his own and those of the officers and staff. This was often done before an engagement (cf. Sall. Cat. 59). Cæsar is reported to have said to his men, "I will mount again when the enemy run." — *omnium*: notice that the poss. gen. and the poss. adj. have the same sense, and so may be coördinated; cf. 19 4 and note.

22 4 pilis: see chapter on military affairs, IV. d and Fig. 15.

22 6 Gallis . . . impedimento: dat. of service and of person affected; § 382. I. N.¹ (233. a); B. 191. 2. b; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360 and b.

22 7 pluribus, several.

22 8 inflexisset: subjv. with cum causal; cf. *præstarent*, 2 15. — *sinistra impedita*, since the left hand was hampered, which carried the shield.

22 9 multi ut, so that in the case of many, multi being placed first for emphasis.

22 12 mons: see battle plan, Fig. 16. — eo: an adv. — mille: acc. of distance.

22 13 capto monte, etc.: i.e. after the Helvetii had gained the mountain and the Romans were going up to attack them.

22 14 agmen claudabant, brought up their rear. The Boii or Tulingi, with about 15,000 men, had been in front of the Helvetian line of march,



FIG. 74. — SCUTUM.



FIG. 75. — SCUTUM.

and were consequently in the rear when they faced round to attack Cæsar. They now struck at his exposed right flank (*latere aperto*) as they came on the field from the road (hence *ex itinere*).

22 15 *novissimis praesidio*: cf. *Gallis . . . impedimento*, l. 6.

22 16 *circumvenire*: sc. *coeperunt*.

22 18 *conversa signa . . . intulerunt*, *faced about* (lit. *bore their reversed ensigns upon the enemy*), and *charged in two divisions*. The divisions stood not back to back, but at an angle, facing outward, — the two front lines facing forward, while the third met the flank attack of the new-comers (*venientis*), i.e. the Boii and Tulingi. The phrase *conversa signa* refers only to the movement of the third line, while *intulerunt* denotes the action of the entire army. The exact position of this battle is uncertain. It is usually placed at a point between Chides and Luzy, near the river Alène, and about ten miles south of Mont Beuvray.

23 1 *CHAP. 26. ancipiti*: i.e. facing in both directions. — *pugnatum est*: *impers. expressions should not be translated literally; here, a contest went on, the fighting continued*, or something of the kind.

23 3 *alteri*: the Helvetians; *alteri*: the Boii, etc.

23 4 *nam*: in reference to the previous sentence; i.e. they did not flee, but retired in good order, *for*, etc.

23 5 *proelio*: abl. of time. — *ab hora septima*: i.e. from a little past 1 P.M.; sunset was about eight, so that each of the twelve daylight hours was about an hour and a quarter of our time. In the Roman reckoning an hour was one-twelfth of the time, whether long or short, between sunrise and sunset, and varied from about forty-five minutes to an hour and a quarter. — *pugnatum sit*: cf. note on l. 1. For mood, cf. *sint*, 12 18.

24 1 *aversum hostem, a fleeing enemy*. — *ad multam noctem, till late in the night*.

24 2 *pro vallo, as a barricade*.

24 3 *e loco superiore, from vantage-ground*, i.e. the height of the carts, etc.

24 4 *coniciebant, subiciebant, hurled* (from above), *thrust* (from below). For the form of these words, see § 6. *d* (11. *b*. 2); B. 9. 3; H. 58. 6 (36. 4); H-B. 30. 1. — *carros redasque*: the former a two-wheeled cart, the latter a four-wheeled wagon. See Fig. 55.

24 5 *mataras ac tragulas*: these were peculiar forms of pike or lance used by the western nations of Europe, not yet certainly identified.

24 6 *impedimentis castrisque*: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.

24 7 *potiti sunt*: notice the use of tenses in the above passage. The narrative proceeds as far as *pugnatum est* (histor. perfect), then, as if

answering a question why the fight continued thus, Cæsar gives a *description* of the situation with pluperfect and imperfects. "The Gauls *had made* a rampart of their carts and from this they *kept discharging* missiles and using other means of defence." Then the *narrative* is resumed in the clause with **potiti sunt**: cf. note on 3 5. — **captus est**: observe that the agreement is with the nearer subject; § 317. c (205. d); B. 255. 2; G. 285. 1; H. 392 (463. 1); H-B. 329. 2.

24 10 Lingonum: i.e. the southern part of Champagne, towards the north; see map of Gaul, Fig. 1. The chief town of that region, now Langres, is about ninety miles from Mont Beuvray. It is very likely, however, that they reached the Lingones farther west. Napoleon III puts the end of their flight at Tonnerre, sixty miles west of Langres.

24 11 propter, etc.: gives the reason of **morati**. — **cum . . . potuissent**: here the description of the situation (see notes on 6 14, 7 17, 11 7) is so clearly the cause of the main action that we may translate **cum** *since* and refer the subjv. to **cum** causal (cf. **cum praestarent**, 2 15; **cum inflexisset**, 22 8).

24 13 Lingonas: Greek form of the acc. common in these names of tribes; § 81, 82 (63. f, 64); B. 47. 3; G. 66. 4; H. 109. 5 (68); cf. H-B. 95.

24 14 qui si iuvisset, *for if they should*, etc.; the direct would be *si iuveritis*. — **se**, etc. = *se (Lingonas) eodem loco habiturum (esse) quo Helvetios (haberet)*.

24 20 CHAP. 27. eos: i.e. *Helvetios*.

24 21 essent: subjv. of integral part or attraction; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539. — **iussisset**: i.e. Cæsar; this change of subject, though unusual in Latin, is justified by the mention of **eum** in l. 18.

24 22 qui . . . perfugissent: i.e. fugitive slaves. Cæsar in his demand would say *qui perfugerunt*, but the subjv. is used in the indir. form; § 592. 2 (341. c); B. 323; G. 663. 2; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1. a.

24 24 conquiruntur, conferuntur: to express the pass. it is often better in English to use the act. form, *while they were hunting these up*, etc.; the present tense is regular with **dum**; § 556 (276. c); B. 293. 1; G. 229. R.; H. 533. 4 (467. 4); H-B. 559.

24 25 Verbigenus: from the parts between Berne and Lucerne.

24 26 perterriti: agreeing with the persons referred to in **milia**. — **ne armis**, etc.: i.e. either in sheer desperation or in the hope of escape. Note that after verbs of fearing **ne** is translated by *that* or *lest*.

25 2 occultari, *be hid* from Cæsar; **ignorari**, *unknown* to anybody.

25 3 existimarent: the supposed reason of the Helvetii, hence the subjv.; § 540 (321); B. 286. 1; G. 541; H. 588. ii (516. ii); H-B. 535. 2. a; cf. 20 12 and note.

25 4 contenderunt ad, *made (rapidly) for*.

25 5 CHAP. 28. **quod**: accustom yourself to the common use of the relative, where our idiom expects a demonstrative or personal. — **quorum**: the antecedent is **his** (dat.) following **imperavit**, the dir. object of which is **uti . . . reducerent**.

25 6 **sibi**: dat. of reference; § 378 (235. *b*); B. 188. 1. N.; G. 352; H. 425. 4 (384. 4. N.⁸); H-B. 370. — **purgati**: perfect participle used as an adj.; § 495 (291. *b*); B. 337. 2; G. 250. R.²; H. 640. 3 (550. N.²); H-B. 320. iii.

25 7 **reductos . . . habuit**: i.e. he massacred them all.

25 8 **in deditionem accepit**: by this act they became formally the subjects of the Republic, and were entitled to its protection, as well as required to obey its requisitions and pay tribute.

25 11 **reverti**, *turn back* (from a march or journey; *redire*, *go back*, from a place of rest). — **frugibus**: grain and other field produce.

25 12 **tolerarent**: best regarded as a purpose clause like, "nothing [for] to eat," — § 531. 2 (317), — but referred by many grammarians to the "characteristic" use of the relative; B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 1 (503. i); H-B. 517. 2 and *a*. The two constructions, having grown up side by side in Latin, were very often confounded.

25 13 **ipsos**: the Helvetians and their allies as opposed to the others who were to provide food.

25 14 **ea ratione**, *with this view*.

25 18 **Allobrogibus**: these were within the Province, but the Latin often adds an explanatory word by means of *que*. The Helvetii were thus in the Roman manner stationed as a kind of colony on the frontier towards Germany. The wisdom of the Romans in the defence of their Empire is not less remarkable than their prowess in war.

25 19 **petentibus Hæduis**, *to the Hædui, at their request*: dat. after **concessit**, of which the object is **ut Boios conlocarent**. The Hædui were anxious for this accession to their strength because they were oppressed by the Sequani (cf. 27 21 ff.). It will be remembered that the Boii were emigrating when they joined the Helvetians and had no proper home to return to. The Hædui gave them land between the Elaver and the Liger rivers, and they appear later in several parts of Gaul. Their prowess in war made them valuable allies.

26 1 **parem . . . atque ipsi erant**, *equal with themselves*: § 324. *c* (156. *a*. 4); B. 341. 1. *c*; G. 643; H. 508. 5 (451. 5); H-B. 307. 2. *a*.

26 3 CHAP. 29. **tabulae**, *tablets*, of the shape of a folding slate, with wax spread inside, written on with a pointed instrument called *stilus*. See Fig. 27. — **litteris Graecis**: not in the Greek *language*, but in Greek *letters*. These were probably learned from colonists at Marseilles, as the

Gauls had no alphabet of their own. The Druids made use of Greek letters (Bk. vi. ch. 14), but the Gauls in general seem to have been ignorant of them (Bk. v. ch. 48). Specimens of Gallic names on coins appear in the names DUBNOREX, ΔIVICIIACOS, VERCINGETORIXS. See Fig. 29, Fig. 68.

26 5 ratio, an account: followed by the indir. quest. *qui . . . exisset*.

26 6 possent: not the subjv. of indir. quest., but of characteristic; § 535. *a* (320. *a*); B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 1 (503. 1); H-B. 521. 1. *a*.

26 10 ad milia XCII, about 92,000. — summa, the sum; *fuertunt* agreeing with the plur. predicate. Deducting the Boii, who were adopted by the Hædui, this reckoning would show an actual loss, in slain or captives (to be sold as slaves), in this short campaign, of nearly 250,000, including probably about 150,000 women and children or other non-combatants. The carnage seems extraordinary even under the conditions of ancient warfare. But, as in all battles, many more must have escaped than the record showed.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS. — The latter half of this Book is taken up with the expulsion of a military settlement of Germans, which had been made a few years before under Ariovistus, a chief of the Suevi.

The occasion of this new campaign was the following: The Hædui, jealous of the Sequani, who lived a little to the north, had laid excessive tolls on their trade, which consisted chiefly in the export of salted meats for the southern market. This led to a war, in which the Sequani had invited the aid of the Germans under Ariovistus, about three years before the campaign of Cæsar. The Germans, once in Gaul, had exacted a large share of territory and proved to be grasping and oppressive masters. Meanwhile the Helvetian war began to threaten. The Roman Senate, to make safe, passed the decrees before mentioned, promising favor and friendship to the Hædui (ch. 11); and at the same time sent messengers to Ariovistus, saluting him as king and friend (ch. 35), recognizing his claims on Gaul, and, it was said, inviting him to Rome. This was the year before, in Cæsar's consulship. Now, however, that the fear of the Helvetians was passed, Cæsar found himself obliged to take sides in the old quarrel.

READING REFERENCES ON THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS.

- Abbott's Cæsar, pp. 86-93.
- Dodge's Cæsar, pp. 82-99.
- Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 9.
- Froude's Cæsar, pp. 231-238.
- Guizot's Hist. of France, Vol. I, pp. 51-53.
- Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, pp. 36-46.
- Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I, pp. 254-262.
- Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV, pp. 295-300.
- Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II, chap. 4.
- Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
- Trollope's Cæsar, pp. 38-44.

26 15 CHAP. 30. *gratulum* : § 509 (302) ; B. 340. 1 ; G. 435 ; H. 633 (546) ; H-B. 618.

26 16 *intelligere*, etc. : Direct, —

Intelligimus nos, tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani ab his poenas bello *repetisti* (*repetieris*), tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse ; propterea quod ea consilio florentissimis rebus domos suas Helvetii *reliquerunt*, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque domicilio ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum . . . iudicassent, reliquasque civitatis stipendiaras haberent.

26 17 *populi Romani*, *against*, etc. (obj. gen. after *iniuriis*). — *ab his repetisset*, *had inflicted on them* ; see Vocab., and cf. 10 14–18.

26 19 *eo consilio*, *with this design* : explained by the purpose clause *uti . . . haberent* ; § 531. 1. N.¹ (317. a) ; G. 546. N.² ; H. 564. iii (499. 3) ; H-B. 502. 2. a. — *florentissimis rebus* : i.e. with no plea of necessity. Translate by a concessive clause.

26 21 *domicilio*, *for habitation* : dat. of service.

26 25 *concilium totius Galliae* : of course Cæsar had no authority either to allow or to prohibit a congress of independent Gaul. But, considering his power and ambition, the Gauls thought it best to secure his countenance (*voluntate*, not *auctoritate*) beforehand. They also had business that specially concerned him.

27 2 *iure iurando . . . sanxerunt*, *ordained under oath* [of secrecy] ; the object is *ne quis*, etc.

27 3 *enuntiaret* : subjv. with *ne*, after *sanxerunt*, used as a verb of commanding ; § 563. d (331. d) ; B. 295. 4 ; G. 546. 2 ; H. 565 (498. 1) ; H-B. 502. 3. a ; cf. also 6 10 and note. — *nisi quibus*, etc., *except* (to those) *to whom some commission should be assigned* (pluperf. for fut. perf. in dir. disc.). For omission of the antecedent of *quibus*, cf. note on *qui . . . appellantur*, 1 2.

27 5 CHAP. 31. *eo concilio dimisso*, *when this assembly had been* (held and) *dissolved* : i.e. after providing for the business now to be described. — *idem* (*eidem*) : nom. plur.

27 7 *secreto, apart*. — *in occulto*, *in a secret place*. These words are probably genuine.

27 8 *Caesari ad pedes*, *at Cæsar's feet*. *Caesari* is dat. of reference ; § 377 (235. a) ; B. 188. 1 ; G. 350. 1 ; H. 425. 4. N. (384. 4. N.²) ; H-B. 368.

27 9 *non minus*, etc. : sc. *dixerunt* : Direct, —

Non minus id contendimus et laboramus, *ne ea quae dixerimus enuntiatum*, *quam uti ea quae volumus impetremus* ; *propterea quod, si enuntiatum erit, summum in cruciatum nos venturos videmus*.

27 9 id: in app. with ne . . . enuntiarentur.

27 13 Galliae, etc.: Direct, —

Galliae totius factiones sunt duae; harum alterius principatum tenent Haedui, alterius Arverni. Hi cum . . . multos annos contenderent, factum est uti . . . Germani . . . arcesserentur. Horum primo . . . milia . . . transierunt; posteaquam agros . . . homines . . . adamarunt, traducti sunt plures; nunc sunt in Gallia ad cxx milium numerum (more probably ad . . . milia numero). Cum his Haedui . . . armis contenderunt; magnam calamitatem pulsati acceperunt, omnem nobilitatem . . . amiserunt. Quibus proeliis . . . fracti, qui . . . plurimum ante . . . potuerant, coacti sunt . . . obsolescere, etc. Unus ego sum ex omni civitate . . . qui adduci non poterim ut iurarem aut liberos meos obsides darem. Ob eam rem . . . profugi et Romam ad senatum veni . . . quod solus neque iure iurando neque obsidibus tenebar.

Sed peius victoribus Sequanis accidit, . . . quod Ariovistus . . . consedit tertiamque partem agri . . . qui est optimus . . . occupavit, et nunc . . . decedere iubet, propterea quod . . . milia hominum xxiiii . . . venerunt, quibus locus ac sedes parentur (possibly pararentur). . . . Paucis annis . . . omnes . . . pelluntur atque omnes Germani Rhenum transibunt; . . . neque enim conferendus est Gallicus cum Germanorum agro, neque haec consuetudo vicis cum illa comparanda.

Ariovistus . . . ut semel . . . copias . . . vicit, quod proelium factum est ad Magetobrigam, superbe . . . imperat, obsides . . . poscit, et . . . exempla cruciatusque edicit, si qua res non ad nutum . . . eius facta est. Homo est barbarus, iracundus, temerarius; non possunt eius imperia diutius sustineri. Nisi quid in Caesare . . . erit auxilii, omnibus . . . idem est faciendum quod Helvetii fecerunt, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium . . . petant fortunamque, quaecumque accadat, experiantur. Haec, si enuntiata Ariovisto sint, non dubito quin de omnibus . . . qui apud eum sunt (sunt), . . . supplicium sumat. Caesar . . . deterrere potest ne maior multitudo . . . traducatur Galliamque . . . potest defendere.

27 13 Galliae totius: not to be taken literally, but referring to the eastern part of Celtic Gaul.

27 14 factiones duas: see note on 3 20. — alterius: notice that this word may mean the one as well as the other. It depends on which one you look at first. — principatum, the head.

27 15 Arvernos: these inhabited the mountainous country southwest of the Haedui, the modern Auvergne. They had been conquered in B.C. 121, but not reduced to a province. Before their conquest they had been one of the most powerful tribes. Apparently in the earlier wars the Haedui had befriended the Roman people from antagonism to these rivals.

27 16 *contenderent*: translate as if *pluperf*; § 471. *b* (277. *b*); B. 260. 4; G. 234; H. 535 (469. 2); H-B. 485. — *factum esse uti*, *it came to pass that*, etc.

27 17 *Sequanis*: these were the rivals of the Hædui on the north. — *mercede*: § 416 (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478 (422); H-B. 427. 1.

27 19 *copias* (= *opes*), *resources*. — *feri ac barbari*: as to the condition of the Germans, see Introduction.

27 20 *adamassent* (= *adamavissent*): § 181. *a* (128. *a*); B. 116. 1; G. 131; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163. — *traductos pluris* = *pluris* (*Germanos*) *traductos* (*esse*).

27 22 *clientis*: the subject states of the Ambarri, Segusiavi, etc.

27 23 *omnem . . . equitatum*: of course an exaggeration; Diviciacus was himself a noble, probably a senator; while his brother Dumnorix was a commander of the Hæduan cavalry.

27 25 *qui . . . potuissent, coactos esse*, (they) *who had once*, etc., *were compelled*.

28 4 *quo minus*: following a verb of refusing; § 558. *b* (317. *b. N.*¹); B. 295. 3; G. 547; H. 568. 8 (497. ii. 2); H-B. 502. 3. *b*; see also note on 7 15.

28 5 *dicione*: i.e. to do the bidding of the Sequani.

28 6 *potuerit*: the same in dir. disc.; § 535. *b* (320. *b*); B. 283. 2; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 5 (503. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 1. *a* and ftn. The tense has been retained, as is usual in result clauses; see note on 9 18.

28 8 *Romam . . . venisse*: see note on 3 20. His application was not successful. See Bk. vi. ch. 12. — *postulatum*: cf. *gratulatum*, 26 15.

28 11 *peius . . . accidisse*, *a worse fate had befallen*. Observe that a misfortune is usually said *accidere*, as if it fell on one, while a good thing is said *evenire*. — *victoribus*: here used as an adj., as often.

28 12 *Ariovistus*: supposed to be the German word *Heerfürst*, "prince of the host."

28 13 *tertiam partem*: i.e. upper Alsace, a part of the German conquest of 1870. This was the same proportion of conquered land taken by the German invaders (Burgundians) in this very territory in the fifth century of the Christian era. Such "annexation" seems to have been the ancient common law of conquest (Liv. II. 41).

28 14 *optimus*: this district (Franche-Comté) is one of the most beautiful in France. — *nunc . . . iuberet*: the same thing was afterwards done by the Burgundians. — *altera*, *a second*.

28 17 *quibus . . . pararentur* = *to be provided with a place for habitation* (subjv. of purpose). — *futurum esse uti* (periphrastic fut.; cf. note on 18 1), *the result would be that*.

28 19 *neque enim* introduces an explanation admitting no doubt: *for you see, for you know, for of course.*

28 20 *Gallicum*: sc. *agrum*. — *hanc* = *nostram*: § 297. *a* (102. *a*); B. 87; G. 305; H. 505 (450); H-B. 271. ii. *a. n.*; said with some feeling of superiority or contempt. The Gauls looked upon the Germans as savages.

28 22 *ut . . . vicerit*: for mood and tense, see dir. disc.; cf. tense of *potuerit*, l. 6, above.

28 23 *Magetobrigam*: somewhere a little northwest of Vesontio (Besançon).

28 25 *exempla cruciatusque*: a so-called hendiadys. The Latin likes to dwell on an idea by giving its parts separately; *edere exempla* means to use every known form of (something) on the victims; *cruciatus edere* would mean to employ tortures. The whole combines the two ideas.

28 27 *barbarum*, etc., *rude, passionate, and hasty.*

29 1 *nisi*, etc., *unless they find some aid.*

29 2 *idem*: in apposition with *ut . . . experiantur*; cf. 4 17, 11 *a.*

29 3 *ut domo emigrent*: i.e. *to forsake their home.*

29 5 *haec*: notice the emphasis, as if he said: "Why! if this very colloquy should be reported," etc. — *dubitare*: sc. *se*, i.e. *Diviciacum*. — *quin . . . sumat*: § 558. *a* (332. *g. R.*); B. 284. 3; G. 555. 2; H. 594. ii (501. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 2. *b*; cf. note on *poenas persolvit*, 10 19.

29 7 *auctoritate*: i.e. his reputation and the fear it inspires.

29 9 *Rhenum*: acc. after *trans* in *traducatur*; § 395. *N.²* (239. 2. *b.* *N.²*; B. 179. 3; G. 331. *R.¹*; H. 406 (372); H-B. 386. *a.*

29 13 *CHAP. 32. unus, alone*: § 134. *a* (94. *a*); cf. B. 66; G. 95. *R.¹*. H. 175. *N.¹*. This whole scene is illustrative of the Gallic character.

29 15 *quae esset*: indir. quest. after *miratus*; cf. 13 5, 15 16, 18 15.

29 16 *respondere*: histor. infin.; cf. *flagitare*, 13 18 and note.

29 19 *hoc*: we may translate, *in this respect*, but for the real construction compare *hoc facilius*, 2 17. — *hoc esse*, etc.: Direct, —

Hoc est . . . gravior fortuna Sequanorum . . . quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri . . . audent; absentsque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram *adsit, horrent*, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas *datur*, Sequanis vero, qui . . . Ariovistum *receperunt*, quorum oppida . . . in potestate eius *sunt*, omnes *cruciatus sunt* ferendi.

29 20 *ne . . . quidem*: notice the position of these words before and after the emphatic word or phrase.

29 21 *absentis* (predicate), *even when absent.*

29 22 *crudelitatem*: object of *horrent*; § 274. *b.* (177. *c*); B. 175. 2. *b*; G. 330. *R.*; H. 405. 1 (371. iii. *N.¹*); H-B. 391. 1. — *adesset*: § 524 (312); B. 307. 1. 2; G. 602; H. 584 (513. ii); H-B. 504. 3 and *a.*

29 23 *tamen, after all*, whatever they might have to suffer. — *facultas*: on the force of this word, cf. note on *potentiae*, 16 7.

29 24 *Sequanis*: dat. of apparent agent with *perferendi*; § 374 (232); B. 189. 1; G. 355; H. 431 (388); H-B. 373. 1; *the Sequani must endure* (changing the voice).

30 2 CHAP. 33. *sibi curae*: dat. of service; § 382. 1 and N.¹ (233. a); B. 191. 2. a; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360 and b; cf. 22 6, 22 15.

30 3 *et . . . et*: construe after *adductum, induced by both . . . and*. — *beneficio . . . auctoritate*: the first refers to services which would inspire gratitude, the second to the prestige which would inspire fear in Ariovistus.

30 5 *secundum, in accordance with* (lit. *following*).

30 7 *putaret*: subjv. after *qua re*, which may be considered equal to *propter quas* = *ut propter eas*. — *quod, because, or that*. — *Haeduos*, subject of *teneri* below.

30 8 *appellatos* (pred.), *who had been often called*.

30 11 *quod*: relative; the antecedent is the preceding clause *Haeduos . . . Sequanos*.

30 14 *periculosum*: pred., agreeing with *Germanos consuescere*, etc., *he saw it was dangerous to the Roman people for the Germans, little by little, to get in the way of crossing the Rhine*, etc.

30 15 *sibi . . . temperaturos . . . quin . . . exirent, would refrain* (check themselves) *from going forth*. — *sibi*: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346. 2; H. 426. 4 (385. i); H-B. 362.

30 16 *ut, as*; *fecissent* being subjv. as dependent on *exirent*; § 593 (342); B. 324; G. 663. 1; H. 652. 1 (529. ii. N.¹. 1); H-B. 539. — *Cimbri Teutonique*: these German tribes had been crushed by Marius (B.C. 102, 101), after having been for several years a terror upon the Italian frontier.

30 17 *exirent*: § 558 (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); H-B. 502. 3. b.

30 18 [*praesertim, etc.*]: this clause makes good sense and may be translated.

30 19 *Rhodanus* = *only the Rhone*. — *rebus*: dat. following *occurrentum* [*sibi*]; § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376; *possibilities which he thought must be met at once*. In this clause two things are to be noticed: first, that the Latin regularly puts an antecedent which is in apposition with something preceding in the relative clause, e.g. "which kind," not "a kind which"; and, second, that a verb which governs the dat. cannot be used in the pass. with a personal subject. In both these respects the form must be altered in translating to suit the English idiom.

30 21 *ferendus*, etc.: in Latin the negative has an attraction for the main verb. We should say, "seemed unendurable," connecting the negative with the adjective idea.

30 23 CHAP. 34. *ut . . . mitteret*: a purpose clause, subject of *placuit*.

30 24 *medium utriusque*, *between the two*.

30 25 *conloquio* (dat.), *for a conference*. — *velle*, etc., depends on the idea of saying in *postularent*. Give the direct words of Cæsar.

30 27 *si quid*, etc.: Direct, —

Si quid mihi a Caesare opus esset, ego ad eum venissem; si quid ille me vult, illum ad me venire oportet. [The first condition is contrary to fact; § 589. *b* (337. *b*); B. 321. B; G. 597. R.⁴; H. 647 (527. iii); H-B. 581 and *b*. 1; cf. 12 4: the second is a simple present condition; § 589. *a*. 1 (337. *a*. 1); B. 319. B; G. 595. R.¹; H. 646 (527. i); cf. H-B. 536.] *Praeterea ego neque . . . in eas partis . . . venire audeo quas Caesar possidet, neque exercitum . . . in unum locum contrahere possum. Mihi autem mirum videtur quid in mea Gallia, quam bello vici (vicerim), aut Caesari aut omnino populo Romano negoti sit.*

30 27 *opus*: § 411. *b* (243. *e*. R.); B. 218. 2. *a*; G. 406; H. 477. iii. N. (414. iv. N.⁴); H-B. 430. 2. *a*. — *ipsi*: dat. of poss.; § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374. Observe in this sentence that the reflexives *ipse* and *se* refer to Ariovistus; § 298. *e* (195. *k*); B. 249. 3; G. 521. N.⁸; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); H-B. 263. 1; and that the demonstratives *is* and *ille* refer to Cæsar; cf. also note on 3 26.

31 1 *quid . . . se velit*, *wants anything of him* (lit. *wants him for anything*): a colloquial construction; § 390. *d* (238. *b*); B. 176. 2; G. 333. R.²; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); H-B. 397. 1.

31 5 *mirum . . . quid . . . esset*: a sort of indir. quest.; *it seemed strange to him*, i.e. he wondered, *what business*, etc. — *in sua Gallia*, *in his* (part of) *Gaul*. Notice the emphasis of *sua*.

31 7 *negoti*: part. gen. with *quid*; § 346. *a*. 3 (216. *a*. 3); B. 201. 2; G. 369; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.

31 9 CHAP. 35. *quoniam*, etc.: Direct, —

Quoniam tanto meo populi que Romani beneficio adfectus, cum in consulatu meo rex . . . appellatus sit, hanc mihi . . . gratiam refert, ut in conloquium venire . . . gravetur neque de communi re dicendum sibi . . . putet, haec sunt quae ab eo postulo: primum, ne quam multitudinem . . . in Galliam traducat; deinde obsides quos habet ab Haeduis reddat, Sequanisque permittat ut quos illi habent (habeant) voluntate eius reddere . . . liceat; neve Haeduos . . . lacessat, neve his . . . bellum inferat. Si id ita fecerit, mihi . . . perpetua gratia . . . cum eo erit; si non impetrabo, ego, — quoniam

... senatus *consuit* uti quicumque Galliam provinciam obtineret ... Haeduos ... defenderet, — (*ego*) Haeduorum iniurias non *neglegam*.

31 9 tanto ... *adfectus*: see introductory note to this campaign, p. 157.

31 10 *beneficio* is explained by *cum* ... *esset*, and *gratiam referret* by *ut* ... *putaret*; the first *sibi* refers to Cæsar and the second to Ariovistus. In this sentence the causal clause is *quoniam* ... *putaret*, and the leading verb is *esse*: *Since, though so greatly favored by the Romans, he made such an (ill) return (hanc gratiam referret) as to grudge coming to a conference when invited, and did not consider that he ought to speak or hear about their common business, (therefore) these were the demands he made (the things he required) of him, etc.* Observe that in Latin the significant word, the *verb* (*postularet*), becomes in English the *noun* (*demands*).

31 15 *ne quam*, not any.

31 18 *eius*: Ariovistus; *illis*: the Sequani.

31 21 *si non impetraret*: i.e. this pledge or assurance.

31 22 *M. Messala*, etc.: cf. note on 2 12. This was in B.C. 61.

31 24 *obtineret*, *should hold* (as governor), not *obtain*. Avoid the kindred word in translation. Words are liable to change their meanings in 2000 years. See note on *obtinere*, 2 1. For construction, cf. note on 6 10. — *quod*, *so far as*. — *commodo* (abl. of specification) *rei publicae*, *to the advantage of the state*.

31 25 *defenderet*: see the reasons in the note on the campaign against Ariovistus, p. 157. — *se*: a repetition of *sese* above on account of the long parenthesis.

31 27 CHAP. 36. *ius esse*, etc.: Direct, —

Ius est belli ut qui vicerunt eis quos vicerunt quem ad modum velint imperent; item *populus Romanus* victis non ad alterius *praescriptum* ... *imperare consuevit*. *Si ego populo Romano non praescribo quem ad modum suo iure utatur, non oportet me ... in meo iure impediri. Haedui mihi, quoniam belli fortunam temptaverunt et ... superati sunt, stipendiarii sunt facti. Magnam Caesar iniuriam facit qui suo adventu vectigalia mihi deteriora faciat. Haeduis (ego) obsides non reddam, neque his ... bellum inferam, si in eo manebunt quod convenit stipendiumque ... pendunt*; si id non *fecerint*, longe eis *fraternum nomen populi Romani aberit*. *Quod mihi Caesar denuntiat se Haeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, nemo mecum sine sua pernicie contendit. Cum volet, congregiatur; intellegat quid invicti Germani ... qui inter annos XIV tectum non subierunt (subierint), virtute possint*.

32 1 *eis*: governed by *imperarent*. The verbs are in the past by sequence of tenses: § 482, 485 (285, 287. *d*); B. 267; G. 518; H. 548 (495. iv); H-B. 476, 482. i.

32 2 *victis*: governed by *imperare*. — *alterius*, any one else's.

32 5 *suo*: i.e. the Roman people. — *uteretur*: subjv. in an indir. quest.

32 6 *suo*: i.e. Ariovistus. — *sibi . . . stipendiarios*, tributary to him.

32 8 *qui faceret*, in making: subjv. also in dir. disc.; § 535. *e* (320. *e*); B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 598 (517); H-B. 523.

32 10 *non . . . neque*, (on the one hand) *he would not restore*, etc., but (on the other) *he would not wrongfully*, etc.

32 11 *iniuria*, abl. of manner, § 412. *b* (248. *R.*); B. 220. 2; G. 399. *N.¹*; H. 473. 3 (419. iii. *N.²*); H-B. 445. 1.

32 13 *longe . . . afuturum*, the name of brothers would be a great way off from them, i.e. too far to help them.

32 14 *quod*, etc.: the whole clause is construed as an adv. acc.: as to *Cæsar's threat*, etc.; cf. note on 16 18, and § 572. *a* (333. *a*); B. 299. 2; G. 525. 2; H. 588. iii. *N.* (516. ii. 2. *N.*); H-B. 552. 2.

32 15 *secum, sua*: observe that these refer, one to Ariovistus, the other to his antagonist; § 300 (196. *a*); B. 244; G. 520; H. 504. 2 (449. 6); H-B. 262.

32 16 *cum vellet, congredieretur*, *he might come on when he would*.

32 17 *inter* refers to something coming between two extremes. Hence, when applied to time, it means the entire interval between the beginning and the end of a given period, and may be rendered *during*.

32 19 CHAP. 37. *eodem tempore*, etc.: in Latin the two actions are made coördinate, but in English we should be more likely to make one subordinate, *at the same time that*, etc.

32 20 *Treveris*: from the region of Treves in the valley of the Moselle. — *questum*: supine (after *veniebant*, supplied from the one preceding); see 26 15, 28 8, and notes.

32 21 *qui . . . essent*: § 592. 3 (341. *d'*); B. 323; G. 650; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 1. *a*. The following passage is a good example of what is called informal indir. disc. The formal indir. disc. introduced by a verb of saying has the main clause in the infin. and dependent clauses in the subjv. But often the verb of saying and the thing said are expressed together in some one word or phrase, as here *questum*. In such cases the dependent clauses have the subjv. just as in formal indir. disc.; cf. 13 17, 15 2, 16 24 for similar examples.

32 22 *ne . . . quidem*: cf. note on 29 20.

32 24 *pagos* (see note on 10 12): these divisions were those known as *hundreds*, meaning not only the people but the district they occupied. — *Suevorum*: this is a general name, embracing a number of tribes that lived in the interior of Germany. Their habits and customs are described in the opening chapters of Book iv.

32 27 *maturandum sibi* (sc. *esse*): impers.; § 208. *d* (146. *d*); B. 138. iv; G. 208. 2; H. 518. 1 (465. 1); H-B. 600. 3. *a*; cf. *expectandum*, 9 24 and note.

32 29 *minus facile, not very easily*: i.e. it would be *impossible*; but this is avoided as a word of ill omen. — *resisti*: impers.; § 372 (230); B. 187. ii. *b*; G. 217; H. 426. 3 (384. 5); H-B. 364. 2; cf. note on *rebus*, 30 19.

33 1 *magnis itineribus*: see chapter on military affairs, vi.

33 2 *contendit*: the place from which Cæsar started is uncertain. After the destruction of the Helvetian force he appears in the country of the Lingones, sixty to eighty miles north of Bibracte. In that vicinity he held a council of the Gallic chiefs (ch. 30), but whether he remained there is not stated. He probably came towards the north in the direction of Langres.

33 3 CHAP. 38. *tridui*: gen. of measure. — *viam*: § 390 (238); B. 176. 4. *a*; G. 333. 2; H. 409. 2 (371. ii. N.); H-B. 396. 1.

33 4 *occupandum*: gerundive agreeing with *Vesontionem*. — *Vesontionem*: the modern Besançon, about ninety miles E.N.E. of the former battle ground. There are many Roman remains here.

33 5 *quod* relates to *Vesontionem*, but agrees in gender with *oppidum*: § 306 (199); B. 250. 3; G. 614. 3. *b*; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326. 1.

33 6 *finibus*: the country which he had taken from the Sequani (Upper Alsace). — *processisse, had advanced*. The bracketed words are probably authentic, and at any rate may be translated. — *ne*, following *praecavendum*: § 558. *b* (331. *e*. 2); B. 295. 3; G. 548; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 3. *b*.

33 10 *ducendum*: cf. *occupandum* above, and note.

33 11 *Dubis*: the modern Doubs. This name is said to mean "black river." — *ut, as it were*.

33 12 *spatium*: object of *continet*.

33 13 *pedum*: pred. gen. after *est*; for construction with *amplius*, see § 407. *c* (247. *c*); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R.⁴; H. 471. 4 (417. N.²); H-B. 416. *d*. — *sexcentorum*: the real distance is about 1600 feet, but in other respects the present site exactly corresponds to Cæsar's words. See view, Fig. 18. — *qua, where*.

33 14 *altitudine*: abl. of quality or description. — *radices*: object, and *ripae*, subject of *contingant*.

33 15 *hunc [montem]*, etc., *this an encompassing wall makes into a fortress*.

33 17 *oppido*: the town must be regarded as having occupied the lower ground towards the bend in the river.

33 20 CHAP. 39. *moratur*: cf. **24 24** and note. — *percontatione*, *questions*. — *nostrorum*: i.e. the soldiers who inquired in regard to the enemy.

33 21 *vocibus*, *talk*. — *Gallorum*: these, it would seem, volunteered reports. The whole indicates a great deal of talk on the subject, and to this Cæsar attributes the panic. — *mercatorum*: see note on **1 8**. — *magnitudine*: cf. *altitudine*, l. 14. Roman writers frequently speak of the huge size of the barbarians of the north as compared with themselves.

33 24 *congressos*, *having met them*.

33 27 *hic*: i.e. *timor*.

34 1 *reliquis*: i.e. aids or *attachés* (*contubernales*, *comites*), who attended the governor or commander of a province for the sake of military practice. These were often appointed from mere personal or political motives, and were of small use in the service, as it proved here. See chapter on military affairs, I. 7.

34 2 *quorum . . . inlata*, *these on various pretexts*: § 315. c (203. c); B. 253. 2; G. 319; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 279. 3.

34 3 *quam . . . diceret*, *which, they said*: § 592. 3. N. (341. d. r.); B. 323; G. 626. r.; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 2. a. N.⁸. See also note on *qui . . . essent*, **32 21**. The verb is singular in Latin on account of *alius*.

34 6 *vultum fingere*, *put on a brave face* (*vultum* refers to the *expression* of the face).

34 7 *tabernaculis*: see Fig. 92.

34 9 *totis castris*: § 429. 2 (258. f. 2); B. 228. 1. b; G. 388; H. 485. 1 (425. ii. 2); H-B. 436. a. — *testamenta obsignabantur*: indicating utter despair.

34 11 *in castris*, *in service*.

34 15 *rem frumentariam . . . timere*, *feared (for) the supply of corn, lest it might not be conveniently brought in*: § 564 (331. f); B. 296. 2; G. 550; H. 567 (498. iii); H-B. 502. 4. Observe the force of *ut* after *vereri*.

34 17 *nuntiabant*: what did they say in dir. disc.? — *cum . . . iussisset*, for *cum iusseris* (fut. perf.) of dir. disc. — *castra moveri*, *to break camp*; the regular expression.

34 19 *signa laturos*: i.e. advance. This is the technical term, as the standards were planted in the ground during a halt.

34 20 CHAP. 40. *omnium ordinum*, *of all ranks*. Was this usual? See chapter on military affairs, I. 7.

34 22 *quam . . . ducerentur*: indir. quest.; cf. **10 3**.

34 23 *sibi quaerendum*, etc., *that they had a right to inquire* (lit. *it ought to be inquired*) or *consider* (lit. *it ought to be thought*).

34 24 *putarent*: see note on **32 21**. — *Ariovistum*, etc.: Direct,—

Ariovistus me consule . . . populi Romani amicitiam *adpetiit*; cur hunc . . . quisquam ab officio discessurum *iudicet*? *Mihi* quidem *persuadetur*, cognitis *meis* postulatis . . . eum neque *meam* neque populi Romani gratiam repudiatum. Quod si furore . . . impulsus bellum *intulerit*, quid tandem *vereamini*? aut cur de *vestra* virtute aut de *mea* diligentia *desperetis*? Factum (*est*) eius hostis periculum . . .; factum (*est*) etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina quam a nobis *acceperant* sublevabant. Ex quo iudicari *potest* quantum *habeat* in se boni constantia, propterea quod, quos . . . inermis sine causa *timuistis* (*timueritis*), hos postea armatis *superavistis*.

Denique *hi sunt idem Germani* quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi, non solum in suis sed etiam in illorum finibus, plerumque *superaverunt*; qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non *potuerunt*. Si quos adversum proelium . . . *commovet*, *hi*, si *quaerent* (*quaerant*), reperire *possunt* . . . Ariovistum . . . dispersos subito adortum, magis ratione . . . quam virtute vicisse. Cui rationi contra homines barbaros . . . locus *fuit*, hac ne *ipse* quidem *sperat* nostros exercitus capi posse.

Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem . . . *conferunt*, *faciunt* adroganter, cum . . . de officio imperatoris desperare . . . *videantur* (*videntur*). Haec *mihi sunt* curae; frumentum *Sequani*, . . . *subministrunt*, iamque *sunt* . . . frumenta matura; de itinere (*vos*) *ipsi* . . . *iudicabitis*.

Quod non fore dicto audientes . . . *dicimini* (more probably *dicuntur milites*), nihil (*ego*) ea re *commoveor*; scio enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, . . . avaritiam esse convictam; *mea innocentia* perpetua vita, *felicitas* . . . bello *est perspecta*.

Itaque (*ego*) quod . . . conlaturus *fui repraesentabo*, et . . . castra *movebo*, ut . . . intelligere *possim* utrum apud *vos* pudor . . . an timor plus *valeat*. Quod si praeterea nemo *sequetur*, tamen (*ego*) cum sola decima legione *ibo*, de qua non *dubito*, *mihiq; ea praetoria cohors erit*.

This speech, one of the most remarkable, if not of the most famous, of antiquity, stamps Cæsar as a consummate orator as well as an able general. His whole fortunes may be said to have depended on this campaign, at the outset of which he is confronted with a mutiny. By this skilfully contrived address, in which he glosses over the difficulties of the undertaking, which he must have known well, he contrives to inspire in his soldiers the Roman spirit, which was invincible whenever it was really roused. Cæsar's marvellous conquest of Gaul depended quite as much on the devotion of his soldiers as on his unequalled ability as a general.

34 25 *cur quisquam iudicaret*, why should any one think? For the form of question, see § 586 (338); B. 315. 3; G. 651. R.²; H. 642. 3 (523. ii. N.); cf. H-B. 513. 1 (dir., *iudicet*, dubit. subjv.). For the use of

quisquam, implying a negative, see § 311 (105. *h*); B. 252. 4; G. 317; H. 513 (457); H-B. 276. 7.

34 26 *sibi persuaderi*: see note on 30 19; the subject of *persuaderi* is *eum . . . repudiaturum*.

35 1 *quod . . . si intulisset*, *but if he should*, etc.

35 2 *quid tandem*, etc., *what, pray, should they be afraid of?*

35 3 *sua*, *their* OWN; *ipsius*, *his*; *ipse*, used in this way to avoid the repetition of *sua*, is an *indirect reflexive*; § 300. *b* (196. *a*. 2. N.); B. 249. 3; G. 660. 5; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); H-B. 263. 2.

35 4 *periculum* (root in *experior*), *a trial*.—*Cimbris*, etc.: this was in B.C. 102 and 101, a little more than forty years before, and was the worst danger that had threatened the Romans since the destruction of the city by the Gauls three centuries before. See Roman histories.—*cum . . . videbatur*: although this clause was a part of Cæsar's speech to his officers, yet the indic. is used to emphasize to the reader the *reality* of the fact it asserts; § 583. *a* (336. *d*); B. 314. 3; H. 652. 1 (529. N.^{1,2}); H-B. 535. 1. *d*.

35 6 *meritus*: sc. *esse*.

35 7 *servili tumultu* (abl. of time): the insurrection of the slaves and gladiators under Spartacus, B.C. 73-71. These consisted, in part, at any rate, of Germans captured by Marius. A war at home, i.e. in Italy or on its borders, was called *tumultus*.—*quos* (referring to *servos* implied in *servili*) . . . *sublevarent* (change to pass. in translation, so as to keep the emphasis), *who yet were considerably helped by the training and discipline which they had got from us*.—*aliquid*: adv. acc.

35 9 *quantum . . . boni*, etc., *how much advantage firmness has*: § 289. *a* (189. *a*); B. 237. 2. *a*; G. 204. N.²; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 249. 1; for the tense of *haberet*, see § 485. *d* (287. *d*); H. 549 (495. *v*); H-B. 482. 1.

35 10 *quos . . . hos*: notice the antecedent following the relative.—*inermis*: i.e. the slaves of Spartacus's force.

35 12 *hos esse*: the Germans with Ariovistus.—*quibuscum . . . congressi*, etc. (changing the relative clause), *whom the Helvetii had often met and beaten not only on their own ground, but even*, etc.

35 14 *qui*: i.e. the Helvetii.—*tamen*: i.e. though they were strong enough to beat the Germans, *after all*, etc.

35 15 *potuerint*: § 485. *c*. N.¹ (287. *c*. R.); B. 268. 6; G. 513; H. 550 (495. *vi* and ftn.²); cf. H-B. 491; cf. also 9 18 and 28 6.—*adversum proelium*: see 27 21 ff.—*si quos . . . commoveret*, *if any were alarmed by* (lit., *if the disastrous battle disturbed any*).

35 17 *Ariovistum*: subject of *vicisse*.

35 18 *neque . . . fecisset*, *and had given them no chance at him*.

36 2 *adortum* agrees with *Ariovistum* and governs *desperantis*, with which a pronoun (*eos*) must be supplied in English. This may always be omitted in Latin if any word appears to show its case.

36 3 *cui rationi . . . hac* = *hac rationi cui*: the noun being attracted to the relative clause; *by this stratagem, for which there had been room against unskilled barbarians, not even Ariovistus himself hoped that our armies could be taken in*; § 307. *b* (200. *b*); B. 251. 4. *a*; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6; cf. note on 30 19.

36 6 *qui . . . conferrent*, (those) *who laid their own cowardice to the pretended difficulty about provisions*, etc.

36 8 *desperare*, etc., *to be discouraged about the commander's doing his duty*. Such words as *officium* have a wider range of meaning in Latin than similar words in English, as *duty, a duty, sense of duty, discharge of duty*. — *praescribere*: sc. *officium*; i.e. that they were dictating to him *what his duty was*.

36 9 *sibi . . . curae*: cf. 22 6, 22 15.

36 10 *subministrare*, *were* (now) *furnishing*. — *esse*, *were beginning to be*. — *frumenta, crops*; note the plur. and cf. with meaning of the sing.

36 12 *quod . . . dicantur*, *as to its being said that they would not*, etc.; cf. 12 11, 15 14, 32 14. — *dicto audientes*, etc.: cf. 34 18.

36 13 *nihil, no way*. — *re*: see note on 4 4. — *quibuscumque*: dat. after *audiens dicto*; i.e. no one has ever had a mutinous army who has not either been unsuccessful through his own fault, so that his men had no confidence in his ability, or else has been convicted of avarice by some overt act, so that they had no confidence in his integrity.

36 16 *suam, his own*: emphatic by position; equivalent to *in his case*. — *innocentiam*: the technical word, meaning freedom from the charge of plunder and extortion. In fact, Cæsar's fault lay just the other way, — a lavish and reckless generosity at the expense of subjects or allies. In this sentence, in opposite (chiastic) order, *innocentiam* is opposed to *avaritiam*, and *felicitatem* to *male re gesta*; a peculiarly Latin turn.

36 18 *quod . . . fuisset, what he had intended to defer*. — *repraesentaturum, he would do at once*. This is a legal term, meaning *to do a thing before the time*.

36 21 *officium*: cf. note on 36 8.

36 22 *decima legione*: this was the legion which had been stationed in the province of Gallia Transalpina (cf. 6 19); it was distinguished for discipline and courage.

36 23 *praetoriam cohortem, body-guard*, made up of the bravest men.

36 28 CHAP. 41. *innata est*: agreeing with the last noun; cf. *cap-tus est*, 24 7.

37 1 *optimum iudicium fecisset*, had expressed the very highest opinion (a technical phrase).

37 3 *cum tribunis . . . egerunt*, etc., urged upon the tribunes . . . to apologise.

37 4 *primorum*: see chapter on military affairs, I. 7.

37 6 *summa belli*, the policy of the campaign. — *suum . . . sed imperatoris*: predicates after *esse*; § 343. *b* (214. *c*); B. 198. 3; G. 366; H. 447 (402); H-B. 340.

37 7 *satisfactione*, apology; cf. *satisfacerent*, above.

37 8 *ei*, in him; after the phrase *fidem habere* = *fidere*, which takes the dat. or abl.

37 9 *ut . . . duceret* (result): depends upon *itinere exquisito*; *duceret* refers to *itinere*. The sense is, such (a route) that it led, etc., a road which led. Cæsar might have said *quod duceret* but for the *quod* in the previous line. The valley of the Doubs above Besançon is very narrow and the mountains are precipitous; but, turning first to the north by the railroad coming from Vesoul and then up the valley of the Oignon River, the country becomes tolerably open to Villersexel and to Belfort, which lies in the gap between the Vosges and the Jura. This pass is interesting as having been for ages one of the great avenues from Germany into Gaul. See view, Fig. 20 and map, Fig. 22. — *milium* [*passuum*] *limits circuitu*, by a circuit of more than fifty miles. This must be reckoned as the distance to be traversed before coming to the main road again at about Belfort.

37 11 *septimo die*, etc.: at this time Cæsar must have been somewhere near Mühlhausen (Mulhouse), about seventy-five miles from Besançon (see maps, Figs. 3, 22); at any rate, at some point beyond Belfort on the route from Besançon to Strasburg (120 miles), having passed beyond the gap into the valley of the Rhine. Ariovistus was then some twenty-four miles farther on.

37 12 *a nostris*: i.e. forces.

37 15 CHAP. 42. *quod*: a relative; antecedent is *id*. — *per se*, so far as he was concerned (a common expression with *licet*).

37 16 *accessisset*: the subject is Cæsar.

37 17 *non respuisset*, etc.: notice the emphasis. Cæsar did not reject the offer (as one might have supposed he would do).

37 18 *iam . . . reverti*, that he was beginning to return. — *arbitrabatur*: the imperfect indicating the beginning of an action.

37 19 *petenti* [*Cæsari*], when he asked it. — *ultro*: opposed to *petenti*.

37 21 *fore uti . . . desisteret*: periphrastic future (cf. 18 1, 28 17) following *spem*; that he would cease from his stubbornness.

37 23 conloquio: dat. of purpose; § 382. 2 (233. *b*); B. 191; G. 356. N.¹; H. 433 (390. ii); H-B. 361.

37 26 vereri: sc. verb. of saying from *postulavit*. Note the force of *ne* after *vereri* and cf. *ut*, 34 16.

37 27 veniret: for *veniat* (hortatory) of dir. disc. — *alia ratione*, on any other terms.

37 28 interposita causa (abl. abs.), by putting in an excuse.

37 29 Gallorum equitatus: he had no other; see chapter on military affairs, I. 2. They numbered about 4000, about the same as a legion.

38 1 commodissimum: pred. adj. after *esse*, whose subject is the infin. clause *eo* . . . *imponere*.

38 2 Gallis equitibus, dat. following *detractis*: § 381 (229); B. 188. 2. *d*; G. 345. R.¹; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371. — *eo* (= *in eos*), upon them.

38 4 si quid, etc., if there should be need of any active measures; *quid* is adv. acc.; § 390. *c. d* and N.² (240. *a*); B. 176. 3; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378); cf. H-B. 387. iii.

38 5 facto: § 243. *e. N.*; B. 218. 2. *c*; G. 406; H. 477. iii (414. N.³); H-B. 430. 2. *b*. — *quod cum fieret*, while this was going on. On the use of the rel., see note on 58 9.

38 7 pollicitum: see 36 23.

38 8 ad equum rescribere, he enrolled them among the knights. The word *equites* means not only the cavalry service in war but a special privileged class in Roman society.

38 9 CHAP. 43. tumulus terrenus, a smooth (i.e. not rocky) hill.

38 10 spatio: abl. of degree of difference.

38 12 equis, on horseback, abl. of means. — *passibus ducentis* (abl. of distance, or degree of difference) = 320 yards.

38 15 se: plural. — *denos*, ten on each side.

38 18 appellatus esset: see note on 32 21. — *amicus:* sc. *appellatus esset*. — *munera:* according to Livy (xxx. 15), the gifts sent to Masinissa, king of Numidia, were "a golden crown and bowl, a curule chair, an ivory staff, an embroidered toga, and a tunic with palm-leaf figures," such as were worn in triumphal processions.

38 19 quam rem, a tribute which; see note on 30 19.

38 20 docebat, showed him. — *illum:* emphatic as opposed to other beneficiaries implied in the preceding.

38 21 aditum: i.e. right to approach the Senate.

38 23 ea præmia consecutum, had attained these prizes, as if he had eagerly sought them (cf. introductory note to campaign against Ariovistus, p. 287).

38 24 *ipsis* (instead of *sibi*, which might refer to Cæsar alone): the Romans.—*intercederent*, *existed between*, indir. quest.

38 27 *adpetissent*: § 592. 1 (341. *b*); B. 323; G. 633; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 535. 1. *a*. In the dir. this might be either perf. indic. or the same as here. If only priority of time is meant, it would be indic.; if there is any internal relation between the main clause and the time clause, it would require the subjv. In this case the latter seems more probable.

38 28 *populi*, etc.: Direct,—

Populi Romani haec est consuetudo ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed gratia . . . auctiores velit esse; quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani adtulerunt, id eis eripi quis pati possit?

38 29 *sui nihil*, *nothing of their own* (dignity, etc.); *sui* is used substantively, and is a part. gen.

39 1 *quod . . . adtulissent*, *what they had brought to the alliance*; i.e. the independence and dignity which they had possessed.

39 2 *posset*: § 587 (338. *a*); B. 300. 2; G. 651. R.²; H. 642. 3 (523. ii. 1. N.); cf. H-B. 503.—*postulavit eadem*, *he made the same demands*.

39 3 *ne*, etc.: these clauses are in apposition with *eadem*, and are indirectly quoted from imperative forms of the dir. disc.

39 8 CHAP. 44. *transisse*, etc.: Direct,—

Transii Rhenum (ego) non mea sponte, sed rogatus et arcessitus a Gallis; non sine magna spe . . . domum . . . reliqui; sedis habeo in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capio iure belli quod victores victis imponere consuerunt. Non ego Gallis, sed Galli mihi bellum intulerunt; omnes Galliae civitates ad me oppugnandum venerunt ac contra me castra habuerunt; eae omnes copiae a me uno proelio pulsae ac superatae sunt. Si iterum experiri volunt, (ego) iterum paratus sum decertare; si pace uti volunt, iniquum est de stipendio recusare quod sua voluntate ad hoc tempus pependerunt.

Amicitiam populi Romani *mihi* ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse oportet, idque . . . hac spe petii. Si per populum Romanum stipendium remittetur et dediticii subtrahentur, non minus libenter . . . recusabo populi Romani amicitiam quam adpetii.

Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam *traduco*, id *mei* muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causa *facio*: eius rei testimonium *est* quod nisi rogatus non *veni*, et quod bellum non *intuli*, sed *defendi*. *Ego* prius in Galliam *veni* quam *populus Romanus*. Numquam ante hoc tempus *exercitus* populi Romani . . . provinciae finibus egressus (*est*). Quid *tibi vis*? Cur in *meas* possessiones *venis*? *Provincia mea haec est Gallia*, sicut *illa vestra*. Ut *mihi* concedi non oportet, si in *vestros finis* impetum *faciam*, sic item *vos estis iniqui* quod in *meo iure me interpellitis*.

Quod fratres a senatu Haeduos appellatos *dicis*, non (*ego*) tam *barbarus* . . . *sum* . . . ut non *sciam* neque bello Allobrogum proximo Haeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos, in his contentionibus quas Haedui *mecum* . . . *habuerunt* (*habuerint*), auxilio populi Romani usos esse.

Debo suspicari simulata *te* amicitia quem exercitum in Gallia *habes* mei opprimendi causa habere. *Tu* nisi *decedes* atque exercitum *deduces* . . . *ego* te non pro amico, sed pro hoste *habebo*. Quod si *te interfecero*, multis (*ego*) nobilibus . . . *gratum* . . . *faciam*; id (*ego*) ab ipsis . . . compertum *habeo* quorum omnium gratiam . . . *tua* morte redimere *possum*. Quod si *discesseris* et . . . possessionem Galliae *mihi tradideris*, magno *ego* te praemio *remunerabo*, et quaecumque bella geri *voles* sine ullo *tuo* labore . . . *conficiam*.

39 9 *rogatum* et *arcessitum*: participles expressing cause.

39 10 *sine magna spe magnisque praemiis* = *sine magna spe magnorum praemiorum*; hendiadys, cf. 28 25 and note.

39 11 *obsides*: object of *habere*. Translate the participles *concessas* and *datos* by relative clauses.

39 14 *sibi*, *on him*, referring to the main subject, Ariovistus. — *ad se oppugnandum*: gerundive expressing purpose; cf. 33 4, 33 10.

39 21 *oportere*: impers.; its subject is *amicitiam* . . . *esse*. — *id*, not *eam*, because it refers to the idea, *ut amicus populi Romani esset*. — *si remittatur*: fut. cond.; § 516, 589 (307, 337); B. 268. 7; G. 656; H. 573. 1, 646 (507. i, 527. i); H-B. 536, 579. a; the pres. for imperf., contrary to regular sequence, for greater vividness.

39 22 *per*, *through the action of*.

39 23 *subtrahantur*, *are got away* (by underhand means).

39 25 *quod* . . . *traducat*, *as for his bringing over*; made subjv. by indir. disc.

39 26 *impugnandae*: observe the gerundive.

40 4 *provinciam*: emphatic; i.e. he had a right to govern it as the Romans did their provinces. — *hanc Galliam*, *this part of Gaul*.

40 5 *ut* . . . *sic*, *as* . . . *so*. — *ipsi*: i.e. Ariovistus (used as an *indirect reflexive*); see note on 35 3.

40 8 *quod*, *in that*.

40 9 *imperitum rerum*: i.e. unsophisticated; for construction, cf. 18 22.

40 10 *bello proximo*: i.e. B.C. 62.

40 14 *debere se suspicari*, etc., *he had ground to suspect that Cæsar, in keeping an army in Gaul, kept it under the pretence of friendship, [but really] for the purpose of crushing him* (Ariovistus).

40 15 *sui opprimendi causa*: gerund; § 504. c (298. a); B. 339. 5; G. 428. R.; H. 626. 3 (542. i. N.¹); H-B. 614.

40 18 *nobilibus . . . gratum*: Cæsar was the recognized head of the party opposed to the Senate and nobility. Many of the aristocracy would have been glad of any safe way to be rid of him.

40 20 *compertum habere* has almost the force of *comperisse*; § 497. *b* (292. *c*); B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. I. N.); H-B. 605. 5.

The three relatives *qui* (l. 16), *quod* (l. 17), and *quod* (l. 21) illustrate the principle that the relative, serving to connect with the previous proposition, may represent various conjunctions: *if then he should not withdraw* (*qui* = *is igitur*); *and if he should kill him* (*quod*, adv. acc.); *but if he should withdraw* (*quod* = *sed*, etc.).

40 25 CHAP. 45. *in eam sententiam qua re, to this effect* (to show) *why*.

40 26 *negotio*: abl. of separation. — *posset*: indir. quest.; cf. **18 15**, **29 15**, **38 23**. — *neque suam*, etc.: Direct, —

Neque mea neque populi Romani consuetudo patitur uti optime meritos socios deseram, neque ego iudico Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Romani. Bello superati sunt Arverni et Ruteni ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus populus Romanus ignovit neque in provinciam redegit neque stipendium imposuit. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oportet, populi Romani iustissimum est in Gallia imperium; si iudicium senatus observari oportet, libera debet esse Gallia, quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluerit.

40 28 *neque se iudicare*, and *HE did not CONSIDER*; notice the emphasis.

41 1 *bello superatos*: B.C. 121, when the Allobroges also were subdued, and the Province probably organized; notice the emphasis. These peoples had been *conquered*, a fact which gave special rights to the Romans.

41 3 *ignovisset*: but, in fact, their country lay beyond the naturally strong frontier of the Cévennes, and so could not then be conveniently occupied by the Romans.

41 4 *antiquissimum quodque*: § 313. *b* (93. *c*); cf. B. 252. 5. *c*; G. 318. 2; H. 515. 2 (458. 1); H-B. 278. 2. *b*; Cæsar, referring to the statement of Ariovistus in **39 28**, claims priority of conquest for the Romans.

41 7 *suis, its own*, referring through *quam* to *Galliam*.

41 8 *voluisset*: the subject is *senatus* understood.

41 9 CHAP. 46. *geruntur*: for tense after *dum*, cf. **24 24**, **33 19**.

41 10 *tumulum*: governed by *propius*, which sometimes has the force of a prep.; § 432. *a* (261. *a*); B. 141. 3; G. 416. 22; H. 420. 5 (437. 1); H-B. 380. *b*.

41 14 *periculo legionis, danger to the legion*; notice that in Latin the gen. is the regular form of one noun dependent on another, whatever prep. we may use to express the relation.

41 15 *committendum non putabat, ut dici posset*, *he thought that no ground should be given for saying*. The subject of *committendum* is the *ut*-clause: § 568. N.¹ (332. *e*); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1).

41 16 *per fidem*, *through* (misplaced) *trust*.

41 17 *elatum est*, *it was reported*. Observe the regular mood and tense after *posteaquam*; cf. **4 17** and note.

41 18 *omni Gallia*: abl. of separation with *interdixisset*; § 400 (243); B. 214; G. 390; H. 462 (413); H-B. 408. 3.

41 20 *ut*, *how*, with indir. quest.

42 2 CHAP. 47. *coeptae*: this verb is regularly pass. when used, as here, with a pass. infin. (*agi*).

42 3 *uti constitueret*: following *velle*; § 563. *b* (331. *b*); B. 296. 1; G. 546; H. 565 (498. i); H-B. 587. *a*.

42 4 *suis*: refers to *Cæsar*; *se* (l. 5) to *Ariovistus*.

42 6 *eo magis*: cf. *hoc facilius*, **2 17** and note. — *retineri quin*, *be kept from*: § 558 (319. *d*); B. 284. 3; G. 554; H. 595. 2 (504. 4); H-B. 502. 3. *b*.

42 7 *legatum [e suis]* = *one of his own* (officers) *as an envoy*.

42 8 [*e suis*]: this may either be translated or omitted. The meaning is essentially the same. — *magno . . . missurum*, *it would be at great risk that*, etc. This meaning is given by the emphatic position of *magno*, etc. The Latin often puts into one sentence ideas which we are inclined to express (for emphasis) in two.

42 11 *humanitate*: not *humanity* (cf. note on *obtinere*, **2 1**); the word refers to his education.

42 12 *Flacco*: governor of Gaul B.C. 83. It was customary for slaves or aliens to become clients of the person from whom they received freedom or citizenship and to take his *gentile* name: § 108 (80. *a*); G. p. 493; H. 354 (649); H-B. 678. 1. Thus, here Procillus takes the name (C. Valerius) of his patron Flaccus, retaining his own as *cognomen*. — *civitate donatus erat*: § 364 (225. *d*); B. 187. i. *a*; G. 348; H. 426. 6 (384. ii. 2); H-B. 365. *b*.

42 13 *qua multa . . . utebatur*, *which Ariovistus spoke freely*.

42 14 *in eo*, *in him*.

42 15 *peccandi causa*, *ground of offence*: i.e. the Germans had no reason to commit any outrage on him, as they might on a Roman.

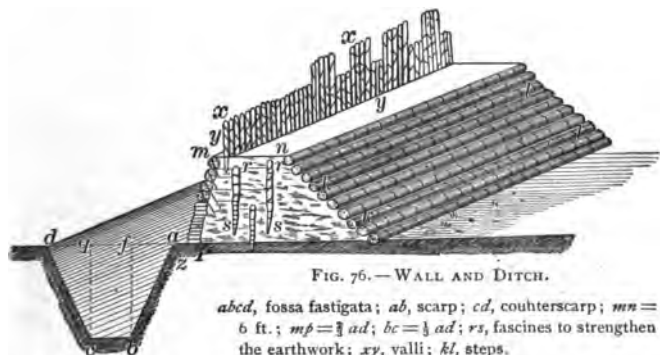
42 16 *hospitio*: the relation of *hospes*, existing between two persons of different cities or nations, made a sacred bond far closer than that of simple *hospitality*; see *Vocab*.

42 18 *quos*: cf. note on **25 5**. — *conspexisset*: note the subjv. and cf. **4 12**, **6 14**, **7 17**, and notes.

42 20 *venirent*: indir. disc. for *venitis*. — *conantis*, etc.: this proceeding was evidently for effect upon the army which was in attendance. Ariovistus cried out aloud and did not allow the messengers to be heard.

42 22 *CHAP. 48. a Caesaris castris*: this camp is placed by Napoleon III at the southern foot of the Vosges Mountains near Cernay (Sennheim), a few miles northwest of Mühlhausen, and thirty miles beyond Belfort (Fig. 20), the fortress which now defends this pass on the frontier between France and Germany. The march of Ariovistus placed him nearer the passage, so as to cut off Cæsar's supplies.

42 25 Whether this camp was between Cæsar and the Vosges Mountains or merely beyond him in the open is uncertain.



42 26 *supportaretur*: § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539; and cf. **14 7**, **24 21**.

42 28 *instructam habuit*: cf. **40 20** and note.

43 1 *vellet*: for construction, cf. *supportaretur*, **42 26**.

43 3 *castris*: the *place where* may omit the prep. when the idea of means is prominent; § 429 (258. *f*); B. 228. 1; G. 389; H. 485. 2. (425. ii. 1. 1); cf. H-B. 446. 1.

43 4 *hoc*: pointing to the description which follows. — *se exercuerant*, *were trained*: § 476 (279. *c*); B. 262. A; G. 241. 3. R.; H. 299. 2 (297. i. 2); H-B. 487.

44 1 *singuli* [*equites*] *singulos* [*pedites*]: i.e. one apiece.

44 5 *si quo . . . prodeundum*, *if there was occasion for advancing to any place*.

44 7 *cursum adaequant*: Tacitus (Ger. 6) says: "They fight in combination [infantry and cavalry], and the foot soldiers, picked out of

the entire body of young men and placed in front of the line, are able to keep up with the cavalry in speed." This method of fighting, peculiar to the Germans, seemed so advantageous to Cæsar that he employed it himself on occasion, notably at the battle of Pharsalia.

44 10 CHAP. 49. *consederant*: cf. *exercuerant*, above.

44 11 *acie triplici*: see chapter on military affairs, VII.

44 13 *castra munire*: the spade and pickaxe were as familiar to the Roman soldier as the sword or javelin. See chapter on military affairs, v, also Figs. 23, 54, 76, 77, 85. In this case Cæsar had one larger camp about two miles east of the Germans, and a smaller one rather more than half a mile to the south of them.

45 8 CHAP. 50. *instituto suo*, according to his previous practice: § 418. *a* (253. N.); B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 475. 3 (416); H-B. 414.

45 11 *tum*: note the emphasis.

45 13 *quae . . . oppugnaret*: a purpose clause; cf. l. 3 above.

45 14 *pugnatum est*: how translated? Cf. note on 23 1.

45 19 *matres familiae*: according to Tacitus (Ger. 8), it was not matrons only, but women as a class, or most of them, to whom this prophetic power was ascribed.

45 20 *sortibus*: lots of leaves or twigs marked with certain signs and drawn by chance.—*vaticinationibus*: perhaps omens interpreted from the noise of waters, river eddies, etc., or possibly the mere prophetic impressions analogous to "second sight."—*declararent*: § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 557; H. 571. 2 (501. i. 2); H-B. 521. 3. *a*.—*utrum . . . necne*: § 335 (211); B. 162. 4; G. 458; H. 380 (353); H-B. 234. *a*.

45 21 *non esse fas*, it was not fated.

45 22 *novam lunam*: a common superstition among semicivilized peoples (cf. Tacitus, Ger. 11); so the Spartans refused to advance to Marathon before the full moon.

45 25 CHAP. 51. *alarios*: the auxiliaries as distinguished from the legionary (Roman) troops. They were usually stationed on the wings of the line of battle; hence their name, from *ala*, a wing.

45 26 *pro*: note the force of the prep. here as distinguished from its meaning in 46 1; cf. also 3 1.

46 2 *ad speciem*, to make a show, as if the two legions were still there, while in fact they had joined the other force at the greater camp.—*acie*: of the legionaries alone. The six legions in battle array (*triplici acie*) presented a front of more than a mile in length.

46 3 *necessario*: the necessity seems to have come from the fact that the tactics of the Germans demanded more room than a crowded stronghold could give. Rarely in ancient warfare was a fortified camp

assailed. The usual way was to form two battle lines between the fortified camps.

46 5 *intervallis*: § 412 (248); B. 220. 1; G. 399; H. 473. 3 (419. iii); H-B. 445.

46 8 *eo, thereon*, i.e. the carts and wagons; cf. note on *eo*, **38 2**.

46 9 *proficiscentis*, (the men) *as they advanced* (object of *implorabant*).

46 11 CHAP. 52. See chapter on military affairs, VII, for description of a battle.—*singulos legatos*, etc.: i.e. *a legatus in command of each legion*. This was the beginning of a very important reform in the military organization. Cæsar felt so keenly the evil of the command being divided among six tribunes that he detailed one of his *legati* nominally to assist the tribunes. After this time we find the *legatus* as the regular commander of a legion, with the six tribunes under him. On this occasion, having only five *legati*, he also appointed his quartermaster (*quaestor*) to that one of the six legions which was intended to be under his own special command.

46 13 *eam partem*: that, of course, would be the enemy's left.

46 14 *ita acriter . . . ut, so fiercely that*.

46 17 *coniciendi*: observe the gerund with a dir. object (*pila*). Give the corresponding gerundive construction.

46 20 in *phalanga*, upon the *phalanx*. This was a compact body of men with shields close locked in front and above, lapping over one another like shingles on a roof. See Fig. 88, the Roman *testudo*.

46 21 *revellerent*, etc.: i.e. they leaped upon the roof of shields, pulled them up, and so thrust their swords down from above (*desuper*).

46 24 *P. Crassus*: son of Marcus Crassus the triumvir. He next appears at the head of an important expedition against the Aquitanians, pp. 88-92.

46 25 *adulescens*: like our *junior*, to distinguish him from his father.—*expeditior, more free*.

46 26 *tertiam aciem*: the line of reserves, kept for just such emergencies.

47 1 CHAP. 53. *restitutum est*: contrasted with *laborantibus*, above.

47 2 *prius . . . quam . . . pervenerunt*: see note on **38 27**.

48 1 *Rhenum*: the nearest point on this river was a little below Bâle, somewhat more than five miles distant from the supposed place of the engagement. But the Germans may have fled down the valley of the Ill, reaching the Rhine near Rheinau, some fifty miles from the battlefield.

48 2 *tranare contenderunt, by great effort swam across*.

48 5 *reliquos omnis*: said to be 80,000.

48 6 *duae uxores*: only chiefs among the Germans, says Tacitus (Ger. 18), had more than one wife; and this was for the sake of honor and alliances.

48 7 *Sueva*: for character and customs of the Suevi, see Bk. iv. chs. 1-3.

48 8 *duxerat*: cf. note on 8 7. Observe that *duxerat* in the line above has a different meaning.

48 10 *Procillus*: see 42 10.

48 11 *trinis catenis*, *three* (sets of) *manacles*.

48 16 *eius calamitate*, *by any harm to him*; *eius* is obj. gen., and refers to Procillus.

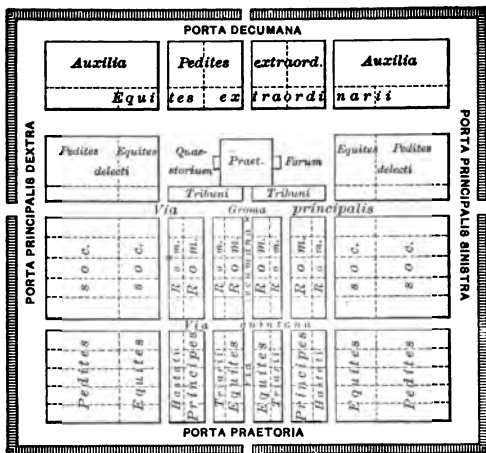


FIG. 77. — CASTRA ROMANA.

48 17 *quicquam*: adv. acc.; § 390. *d* and *N.²* (240. *a*); B. 176. 3; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 396. 2.

48 18 *se praesente*, *in his presence*. — *ter*: it was the regular usage of the Germans to consult the lot thrice (Tacitus, Ger. 10). This has come down to the present day in sundry games, etc. — *consultum*: impers., sc. *esse*.

48 19 *necaretur*: indir. quest.; the dir. was a dubit. subjv., *neccetur*. The site of this battle is still very uncertain. The account of Cæsar's march would seem to point to some place from thirty to fifty miles beyond Belfort, and accordingly it has been located by some near Cernay and by others near Gemar, twenty miles farther down the valley. Perhaps it may have been even nearer the gap than Cernay. The plan in the text, that of Col. Stoffel, must be taken, therefore, only as a supposable arrangement. The country is nearly the same in all that region, and a few miles can make no difference. The great point is that for the first time a Roman army ventured beyond one of the natural bounds of Gaul into the valley of the Rhine and defeated a German horde on its own ground, as it were. The campaign against

Ariovistus settled the question of sovereignty over Gaul for several centuries to come. The Germans did not gain possession of it until after the fall of the western Roman empire.

48 24 CHAP. 54. *Bii*: these lived near the modern Cologne, and were deadly enemies of the Suevi, and therefore generally in alliance with the Romans (Bk. iv. ch. 3).—*Rhenum*: governed by *proximi*; § 432. *a* (261. *a*); B. 141. 3; G. 359. N.¹; H. 420. 5 (391. ii. 2); H-B. 380. *b* and cf. *propius tumulum*, **41 10**.

48 26 *maturius, earlier*; the decisive battle with Ariovistus was fought somewhere about the 10th of September.

48 28 *in citeriorem Galliam*: south of the Alps.

48 29 *conventus*: the proconsular courts held for the administration of justice. A further reason for going was to be nearer Rome and to watch political movements there.

BOOK SECOND. — B.C. 57.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY.—The people of northern Gaul, including Flanders and the Netherlands, were far remote from any country hitherto occupied by the Roman arms. They lived amid forests and swamps hard to penetrate; they claimed kindred with the German tribes rather than with the more fickle and effeminate Celts; and they had a fierce and resolute spirit of independence, like that which their descendants, the Dutch, exhibited long after in the same regions against the armies of Spain. The Belgian tribes, and particularly the Nervii, appear to have offered to Cæsar a more formidable and desperate resistance than any he met elsewhere until the great rising of B.C. 52. When their spirit was once broken, the conquest of the whole country was simply a question of time.

READING REFERENCES ON THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY.

- Dodge's Cæsar, chaps. 7, 8.
- Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 10.
- Froude's Cæsar, chap. 14.
- Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 3.
- Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 267-281.
- Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 300-304.
- Motley's Rise of the Dutch Republic, Vol. I. pp. 11, 12.
- Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 5.
- Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
- Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 3.

49 1 CHAP. I. *cum esset*, etc., *while Cæsar was*: subjv. with *cum* temporal; § 546 (325); B. 288. I. B; G. 585; H. 600. ii (521. ii. 2); H-B. 524.

For discussion of the principle, see notes on 6 14, 7 17, 11 7. The verb comes in this emphatic place on account of the close connection of these words with the preceding book; something like *and being thus in*, etc. See translation of this chapter in "Directions for Reading," p. lvii. — **citeriore Gallia**: northern Italy. — **ita uti** (= *ut*), *as*: correlatives; the demonstrative word *so* is often omitted in English: § 323. *g* (107); G. 110. 3; H. 305; cf. H-B. 144. — **demonstravimus, dixeramus**: the perfect here implies an act done before the time of writing (see end of Bk. i); the pluperf., what took place before the time of **demonstravimus**.

49 2 adferebantur, certior fiebat: imperf. of *repeated action*; § 470 (277); B. 260. 2; G. 231; H. 534. 3 (469. ii); H-B. 484. Translate *kept coming in*; *he was informed from time to time*.

49 3 litteris, by despatches: abl. of means; § 409 (248. *c*); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423. — **Belgas . . . coniurare . . . dare**, *that the Belgians*, etc.: indir. disc., acc. and infin. following the verbal phrase **certior fiebat**; § 459 (272); B. 331. i; G. 527; H. 613 (535); H-B. 589; direct, — *Belgae coniurant*. Cæsar had not yet advanced farther north than the country of the Lingones, so that the Belgæ were as yet unattacked. — **quam** agrees with **partem**, though the proper antecedent is **Belgas**: § 306 (199); B. 250. 3; G. 614. R.⁸. *b*; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326. 1.

49 4 esse: indir. disc. (with subj. acc. **quam**), after **dixeramus**. — **dixeramus** is in the indic. because, though a relative clause, it is parenthetical merely, and not a part of the report of Labienus: § 583 (336. *b*); B. 314. 3; G. 628. R. *a*; H. 643. 3 (524. 2. 1); H-B. 535. 1. *d*.

49 5 coniurare: from the point of view of the Romans, any war against Rome is a "conspiracy"; a nation enslaved by Rome is "pacified." — **obsides**: see note on 8 11. — **inter se, to one another**: § 301. *f* (196. *f*); B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. 1 (448. N.); H-B. 266. — **coniurandi**: gerund; § 504 (298); B. 338. 1. *a*; G. 428; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 612. i.

49 6 has esse causas, that the reasons were as follows: the report of Labienus continued, indir. disc. — **quod vererentur, sollicitarentur**: subjv. because subord. clauses in indir. disc.; § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 541; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 2. The two clauses introduced by **primum** and **deinde** contain the two reasons for the conspiracy, and so the gist of the sentence. The rest, which makes the whole seem complicated, defines the classes of disaffected Gauls who, though conquered, hoped still to recover their liberty by means of their more warlike neighbors. These classes are two (**partim . . . partim**), but to these are added in Cæsar's words, but in a different construction (**ab non nullis**), some who had personal reasons for wishing to expel the Romans. — **ne . . . adduceretur**: subst. clause, object of **vererentur**; § 564 (331. *f*); B. 296. 2; G. 550; H. 567 (498.

iii); H-B. 502. 4. — **omni pacata Gallia**: translate the abl. abs. freely, often by an active construction, *having subdued*, etc., or by a temporal, conditional, or such other clause as will best bring out the thought.

49 7 Gallia: i.e. Celtic Gaul, within which the previous campaigns had been conducted; § 521. *a* (310. *a*); B. 305. 1; G. 667; H. 638. 2 (549. 2); H-B. 578. 6. — **exercitus noster**: i.e. to subdue them in their turn. — **ab non nullis Gallis**: § 405 (246); B. 216; G. 401; H. 468 (415. i); H-B. 406. 1.

49 8 partim qui, etc.: not part of Labienus's report, but explanatory remarks added by Cæsar; hence the indic. — **ut . . . ita**: correlatives; § 323. *g* (107); G. 110. 3; H. (305); H-B. 144, 563. — **Germanos . . . versari**: object of **noluerant**; § 457, 563. *b* (271. *a*, 330. 3); B. 295. N., 331. iv; G. 532; H. 614 (535. ii); H-B. 587 and *a*.

49 9 exercitum hiemare, etc., *they took it hard (moleste ferebant) that an army of the Roman people was wintering and getting a foothold (inveterascere, lit. grow old) in Gaul*. The infinitives, with their subj. acc. **exercitum**, are in indir. disc. after **moleste ferebant**: § 572. *b* (333. *b*); B. 331. v; G. 650; H. 642. ii (523. N.); H-B. 594.

49 11 mobilitate: abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 444. — **novis imperiis studebant** = *were eager for a change of government* (lit. *new ruling powers*): dat.; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426 (385); H-B. 362. Notice that **novis** is emphatic.

49 12 ab non nullis, *by some also* (sc. *sollicitabantur*); these were petty chiefs of clans. — **quod** (causal) . . . **occupabantur**, *because royal power was* (constantly) *usurped*. Notice the indic.; Cæsar explains the statement of Labienus (**quod . . . sollicitarentur**) by facts from his own knowledge; § 540 (321); B. 286. 1; G. 540; H. 588 (516); H-B. 555. A clause with the subjv. (*occuparentur*) would indicate that the reason assigned formed part of the letter of Labienus. — **potentioribus**: used substantively; *the more powerful*.

49 13 ad . . . facultatis, *the means to take men into their pay*. — **conducendos**: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338. 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544. N.²); H-B. 612. iii.

49 14 rem: cf. note on 4 4.

49 15 imperio nostro: strictly a loc. abl., implying time, place, or condition, *under our dominion*. — **consequi**, complementary infin.: § 456 and N. (271 and N.); B. 328. 1; G. 423; H. 607. 2 (533. i. 2); H-B. 586 and *a*.

50 1 CHAP. 2. nuntiis: abl. of cause; cf. **mobilitate**, 49 11. — **duas legiones . . . misit**: these were numbered XIII and XIV, making with the others (VII–XII) eight in all, amounting (with auxiliaries) to perhaps 60,000 men.

50 2 *inita aestate*: abl. abs., expressing time *when*; § 419 (255); B. 227. 2. *a*; G. 665; H. 489. 1 (431. 1); H-B. 421. 1; *aestas* is the period from the spring equinox to that of autumn.

50 3 *qui deduceret* (the antecedent is *Q. Pedium*): relative clause of purpose; § 531 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2. — *Pedium*: Pedius was Cæsar's nephew, son of his sister Julia. — *legatum*: see note on 8 22.

50 4 *cum primum*, etc.: i.e. when grass and young grain began to be abundant, so that the cavalry and baggage animals could subsist. — *inciperet*: cf. note on *esset*, 49 1. — *ad exercitum*: i.e. to Vesontio, in the country of the Sequani. See Map, Fig. 26.

50 5 *Senonibus*: these were north of the Hædui, on the upper course of the Seine; their name is preserved in *Sens*. — *reliquis Gallis*, *the rest of the Gauls*: § 293 (193); cf. B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.¹); H-B. 346. *c*.

50 6 *Belgis*: dat. with *finitimi*; § 384 (234. *a*); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362. — *uti . . . cognoscant*, *to find out*. This is a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with *negotium*; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 564. iii (499. iii); H-B. 502. 3. *a*. — *gerantur*: subjv. as depending on *cognoscant*; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.

50 7 *seque . . . faciant*, *and inform him* (Cæsar); *se* is here used as the indirect reflexive; § 300. 2 (196. *a*. 2); B. 244. ii. *a*; G. 521; H. 504 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2. — *constanter*, *consistently* (with one another); their accounts all agreed.

50 8 *manus* (acc. plur., subject of *cogi*): small *bands* or *companies*.

50 9 *tum vero*: see Vocab. and observe the emphatic position. — *dubitandum non [esset]*, *he must no longer hesitate*; the infin. of the second periphrastic conjugation, here used in indir. disc. after *existimavit*; § 158. *d*. N. (113. *d*. N.); B. 115; G. 251; H. 531 (466. N.); H-B. 162; *dubitandum* is impers.; § 208. *d* (146. *d*); B. 337. 7. *b*; G. 208. 2; H. 192. 1 (195. ii. 1); H-B. 600. 3. *a*. — *quin* can follow only a negative expression, as here *non existimavit*, etc. — *quin . . . profiscisceretur*, *to set out* (lit. *but that he should*, etc.): relative clause of result depending on *dubitandum [esse]*; § 558. *a* (319. *d*); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 596. 1 (505. i. 1); cf. H-B. 502. 3. *b*. In the sense of *hesitate*, *dubito* regularly takes the infin. and not *quin*, but exceptions occur, as here.

50 10 *re comparata*: on translation of the abl. abs., cf. note on 49 6.

50 11 *diebus*: abl. of time *within which*; § 423 (256); B. 231; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439. — *finis*: i.e. north of the Matrona (Marne), crossing somewhere between Bois le Duc and Châlons (sur Marne). The march

from Besançon would be about one hundred and forty miles, or ten miles a day. He would so be about thirty-five or forty miles southeast of Durocor-torum (Rheims), the capital of the Remi.

50 12 CHAP. 3. eo: adv. — *omnium opinione, than any one expected* (following the comparative *celerius*): § 406. a (247. b); B. 217. 4; G. 398. N. 1; H. 471. 7 (417. I. N. 5); H-B. 416. e.

50 13 Remi: these were friendly to the Romans, who by their victory over Ariovistus (see Bk. i) had made them the second power in Gaul; cf. Bk. vi. ch. 12. — *proximi Galliae, nearest to Gaul*; for the dat., see § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 444 (391. i); H-B. 346. e. — *ex Belgis, of the Belgæ*, for part. gen. *Belgarum*; see § 346. c (216. c); B. 201. 1. a; G. 372. R. 2; H. 434. 2 (397. 3. N. 3); H-B. 362; translate with *proximi*.

50 14 legatos, *as ambassadors*, predicate apposition.

50 15 qui dicerent: a relative clause of purpose; § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 595. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

The rest of the chapter consists of the speech of the ambassadors, as reported by Cæsar in indir. disc. Notice that the *principal clauses* are in the infin. with subj. acc., and all *dependent clauses* in the subjv.: § 580 ff. (336 ff.); B. 313 ff.; G. 650; H. 642-644 (522-524); H-B. 534. i, ii. In dir. disc. this speech would read as follows:

Nos nostraque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittimus; neque [nos] cum reliquis Belgis *consensimus* neque contra populum Romanum *coniuravimus*, *paratique sumus* et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare; *reliqui omnes Belgæ in armis sunt*, Germanique, qui cis Rhenum *incolunt*, sese cum his *coniunxerunt*, *tantusque est* eorum omnium *furor* ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque *nostros*, qui eodem iure et isdem legibus *utuntur* (utantur), unum imperium unumque magistratum *nobiscum habent* (habeant), detertere *potuerimus* quin cum his consentirent (*consentiant*).

50 15 *se in fidem permittere*, *put themselves under the protection* (good faith), etc.; more commonly with dat. — *se suaque omnia, themselves and all their* (possessions) ("their all"): object of *permittere*. The subj. acc. is regularly expressed in the indir. disc.; but here it is omitted to prevent the awkward repetition *se* (subject) *se* (object). In the next clause *se* is expressed.

50 16 *neque, and* (had) *not*: § 328. a (156. a); B. 341. I. d; G. 480; H. 657. 1 (554. I. 2); H-B. 307. 3. — *cum Belgis*: accompaniment; § 413 (248. a); B. 222; G. 392; H. 473. 1 (419. i); H-B. 419. I.

50 18 *paratos* (participial adj.), *ready*. — *dare, facere*, etc.: infinitives following *paratos*; § 460. b (273. b); B. 326. N.; G. 423; H. 608. 4 (533. 3); H-B. 586. f.

50 19 oppidis recipere, *receive* [the Romans] *into their strongholds*; **oppidis** is abl. of place without *in*: § 429 (258. *f*); B. 228. 1, cf. 218. 7; G. 389; H. 485. 2 (425. ii. 1); H-B. 436, cf. 446. 1.—**frumento**: abl. of means; cf. **litteris**, 49 3.—**ceterisque rebus**, *everything else* (necessary); see Vocab.—**recipere, iuvare**: sc. *eos* (i.e. the Romans) as object.

50 20 cis: i.e. the west or Gallic side.

50 21 sese . . . coniunxisse, *had united*; it often happens that a verb used as active in Latin and requiring a reflexive object may be best translated in English by an intransitive. The reverse of this must not be forgotten in writing Latin.—**tantum . . . ut**: correlatives; § 537. 2. N.² (319. R.); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 500. ii. N.¹; H-B. 521. 2. *a*.

50 22 furorem, *madness* (blind and unreasoning passion).—**ut . . . potuerint**: result clause; § 537 (319); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H.² 570 (500. ii); H-B. 521. 2; for tense, see § 485. *c*. N.¹ (287. *c*. R.); B. 268. 7; G. 513; H. 550 (495. vi); cf. H-B. 491; cf. also note on 28 6.—**ne . . . quidem**: § 322. *f* (151. *e*); B. 347. 1; G. 445; H. 656. 2 (553. 2, 569. iii. 2); cf. H-B. 302. 1.—**Suessiones** (obj. of **detertere**): they occupied territory west of the Remi, about the modern Soissons.

50 23 iure et legibus: *rights and laws*; for case, see § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.—**isdem**: for *eisdem*.

50 24 unum imperium, etc.: i.e. their close confederacy did not prevent the Suessiones from leaguings with the other party.—**cum ipsis**: i.e. the Remi; in the indir. disc. **se** is regularly used to refer to the speaker, but the oblique cases of *ipse* are occasionally used instead. Here *ipse* is used apparently for emphasis: § 298. *e* (195. *k*); B. 249. 3; G. 311. 2; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); H-B. 263.

50 25 quin . . . consentirent, *from leaguings with*: relative clause of result depending on **detertere**; § 558 (319. *d*); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); cf. H-B. 502. 3. *b*. (Notice that **detertere** is negated by **ne . . . quidem** above, which make the whole clause negative, though they are attached only to the emphatic word.)

50 26 CHAP. 4. **ab his**: i.e. of the envoys; § 396. *a* (239. *c*. N.¹); B. p. 126, top; G. 339. R.¹; H. 411. 4 (374. N.⁴); H-B. 393. *c*.—**quæ . . . essent**: indir. quest.; § 574 (334); B. 300. 1; G. 460; H. 649. ii (529); H-B. 537. *b*.

50 27 quid . . . possent, *what strength they had in war*; **quid** is cognate acc. with adv. force; § 390. *c* and *d*. N.² (240. *a*); B. 176. 3; G. 334; H. 409. 1, 416. 2 (371. ii (2), 378. 2); cf. H-B. 387. iii.—**sic**, *as follows*.—**reperiebat**: for force of the tense, cf. **adferebantur**, 49 2 and note. Observe that the rest of the chapter is in indir. disc., except the words **Remi dicebant**, 51 8.—**plerosque**, etc.: Direct,—

Plerique Belgae sunt orti ab Germanis, Rhenumque . . . traducti propter loci fertilitatem ibi *consederunt*, Gallosque qui ea loca *incolebant expulerunt*, *solique sunt* qui patrum nostrorum memoria, . . . Teutonos Cimbroque intra suos finis ingredi prohibuerint; qua ex re *fit* uti . . . magnam sibi auctoritatem . . . *sumant*. De numero eorum omnia (nos) *habemus* explorata . . . propterea quod propinquitatibus . . . coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem . . . ad id bellum pollicitus sit *cognovimus*. Plurimum inter eos *Bellovaci . . . valent*; *hi possunt* conficere armata milia centum, *polliciti* ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi *postulant*. *Suessiones nostri sunt finitimi*; finis latissimos feracissimosque agros *possident*. Apud eos *fuit rex* nostra etiam memoria *Diviciacus*, totius Galliae *potentissimus*, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium *obtenuit*; nunc *est rex Galba*; ad hunc . . . *summa* totius belli . . . *defertur*; oppida *habent* numero XII, *pollicentur* milia armata quinquaginta; totidem *Nervii*, qui maxime feri inter ipsos *habentur*, longissimeque *absunt*; quindecim milia *Atrebatas*, (likewise) *Ambiani*, *Morini*, etc. . . *Condrusos*, *Eburones*, etc. . . qui . . . Germani appellantur, *arbitramur* (*conficere posse* or *polliceri*) ad XL milia.

50 27 *plerosque*, most of: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.²); H-B. 244; see the end of the chapter, and compare, regarding the Nervii, Tacitus (Ger. 28). The Belgians were, no doubt, chiefly of Celtic blood; but possibly they considered the Germans a more proud and heroic ancestry.

51 1 *ab Germanis*: abl. of source; § 403. a. N.¹ (244. a. R.); B. 215. 2; G. 395; H. 469. 1 (415. ii. N.); H-B. 413. b. — *Rhenum*: acc. governed by *trans* in *traductos*; § 395 (239. 2. b); B. 179. 1; G. 331; H. 413 (376. N.); H-B. 386. a.

51 2 *traductos*: participle agreeing with *Belgas*. — *propter fertilitatem*: construe with *consedis*.

51 4 *qui . . . prohibuerint*: rel. clause of characteristic with *solos*; § 535. b (320. b); B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 5 (503. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 1. a and ftn.¹. Note the retention of the perfect tense contrary to tense sequence, and cf. *ut . . . potuerint*, 50 22 and note. — *memoria*: cf. *diebus*, 50 11. — *Teutonos*, etc.: cf. 35 5.

51 5 *ingredi*: the subjv. might have been used; § 457 (271. a); B. 295. 1; G. 532. R.¹; H. 596. 2 (505. ii. 1, 2); H-B. 587 and a. — *qua ex re, in consequence of which (fact)*; abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408. N.⁷; H. 475. 4 (416. i); H-B. 444. b.

51 6 *fieri uti*, it was coming to be the case that: the subject of *fieri* is the clause *uti . . . sumerent*; § 569 (332. a); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1); cf. H-B. 521. 3. a. — *memoria*: abl. of cause. — *sibi*: § 376 (235); B. 188. 1. N.); G. 352; H. 425. 2 (384. ii. 1, 2); H-B. 366.

51 7 *de numero*, etc.: the rest of the chapter depends on *Remi dicebant*.

51 8 *se habere explorata*, *had found out all about (de)*, etc.: *habere explorata* differs but little in sense from *explorasse*; § 497. *b* (292. *c*); B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. 1. N.); H-B. 605. 5 and *a*; in construction *explorata* agrees with *omnia*, which is obj. of *habere*. See note on *com-pertum habere*, 40 20.

51 9 *propinquitatibus*, *ties of blood*.—*adfinitatibus*, *alliances by marriage*.

51 10 *quantam quisque . . . pollicitus sit*: indir. quest., object of *cognoverint*; cf. 50 26.

51 11 *cognoverint*: the primary tense is used in violation of the *sequence of tenses*. The statement is made more vivid by putting it in the same tense that was used by the speakers. They said *cognovimus*, *we know* (lit. *have found out*). The perfect is very often retained in indir. discourse.

51 12 *virtute*, etc.: abl. of specification.

51 13 *armata milia centum* = *armatorum hominum milia centum*. As here expressed, *milia* is the noun with which the adj. *armata* agrees; § 134. *d* (94. *e*); B. 80. 5; G. 293; H. 168 (178); H-B. 131. 3.

51 14 *electa*, *choice troops*, *picked men*.

51 15 *sibi*: dat. of reference; cf. *sibi*, l. 6, above; it refers to the *Bellovacii*.—*suos*, *their own* (i.e. of the *Remi*); notice that the reflexive regularly refers to the speaker. See note on *cum ipsis*, 50 24.

51 16 *possidere*: sc. *eos*, i.e. the *Suessiones*.—*fuisse . . . esse*: notice the difference of time; *fuisse* (in the dir. disc. *fuit*) refers to time *past*, *esse* (dir. *est*) to time *present*, with respect to the verb of saying (*dicebant*, l. 8).—*regem*: showing that royal power had not yet been overthrown among the *Belgians*.

51 18 *cum . . . tum*, *not only . . . but also*.

51 19 *Britanniae*: the first mention of Britain by a Roman author.—*obtinerit*, *had held*; in the dir. *obtenuit*, *held*. For tense, cf. note on *cognoverint*, l. 11, above.

51 20 *summam*: subject of *deferri*.

51 21 *voluntate*: abl. of manner; § 412. *b* and N. (248. R.); B. 220. 2; G. 399; H. 474. 1 (419. iii. N.²); H-B. 445. 1.—*habere*: the subject must be supplied from *Suessiones*, above.—*numero*: abl. of specif.; cf. 51 12.

51 22 *Nervios*, etc. (see Map, Fig. 26): the names of several of these tribes are found in the modern towns, as: *Atrebatès*, *Arras*; *Ambiani*, *Amiens*; *Caleti*, *Calais*; *Viromandui*, *Vermandois*; *Condrusi*, *Condrex*.

52 1 *feri*: pred. after *habeantur*, *are regarded*.

52 5 *Condrusos*, etc.: subjects of *polliceri* or *conficere posse* understood.—*qui . . . appellantur*: the indic. shows that this is an explanatory note

added by Cæsar, and not a part of the indir. disc., while *qui . . . habean-tur* above, on the other hand, is a remark made by the Remi, as is shown by the subjunctive.

52 6 Germani: this name seems to belong especially to the four last named (*Condrusi, Eburones*, etc.).—*arbitrari*: in dir., *arbitramur*; in translation we may say *they thought*, parenthetically, as in the English usage in indir. disc.

52 7 CHAP. 5. cohortatus, prosecutus: for the tense of these participles, cf. § 491 (290. *b*); B. 336. 5; G. 282. N.; H. 640. 1 (550. N.¹); H-B. 601. 1.

52 9 obsides (pred. appos.), *as hostages*: if the chiefs should break their faith, these boys would probably be sold as slaves; cf. also note on 8 11.—*quæ omnia, and añ this*. Latin very frequently connects clauses by a relative where our idiom prefers a conj. with a demonstrative: § 308. *f* (201. *c*); B. 251. 6; G. 610. R.¹; H. 510 (453); H-B. 284. 8.

52 11 quanto opere . . . intersit, *how greatly it concerns both the republic and their common safety*. For the genitives, see § 355 (222); B. 211. 1; G. 381; H. 449. 1 (406. iii); H-B. 345.

52 12 intersit: indir. quest.; cf. 50 26, 51 10.—*manus* (acc. plur.) . . . *distineri*: infin. clause, subject of *intersit*.—*ne configendum sit, lest they should have to contend*: clause of purpose depending on *distineri*; § 530 (317); B. 282. 1; G. 545. 3; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2.—*configendum sit* is an impers. 2d periphrastic; § 193, 208. *c* (129, 146. *d*); B. 115, 138; G. 208, 251. 2; H. 237, 302. 7 (234, 301. 2); H-B. 162, 600. 3. *a*.

52 13 id fieri posse, etc., *this, he said, could be done*, etc. Notice that no new word of saying is necessary in Latin, but in English one is usually inserted parenthetically.

52 14 suas copias: the emphatic position opposes the forces of the Hædui to the Roman army.—*Bellovacorum*: these lay farthest west and most remote from Cæsar's field of operations; so that the manœuvre indicated would divide the enemy (cf. 56 21–25).—*introduxerint . . . coeperint*: fut. condition; in the dir. disc. these would be fut. perf.; § 516. *c* (307. *c*); B. 303; G. 596. 1; H. 574 (508); H-B. 579. *a*, 577. *a*.

52 15 eorum: i.e. *Bellovacorum*.—*datis*: words in the text thus printed in italics are conjectural readings not found in the MSS.

52 16 dimittit: the effect of his mission appears in 56 23, and he has returned to Cæsar in 59 2.—*postquam . . . vidit, as soon as he saw*: § 543 (324); B. 287; G. 561; H. 508 (518); H-B. 557.

52 17 neque: *-que* connects *vidit* and *cognovit*; *ne-* with *iam* = *no longer*.—[*vidit*]: see note on [*eorum*], 9 17.

52 18 ab eis: construed with *cognovit*.

52 19 Axonam (apposition), *the Aisne*; here flowing nearly due west, and joining the Seine below Paris, through the Oise. — **in extremis . . . finibus**, *in the remotest part of the territory of the Remi*: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. 2, notes 1 and 2); H-B. 244; the phrase is used in a general sense merely, for Bibrax, a town of the Remi, lay eight miles farther off.

52 20 exercitum is dir. object of **traducere**; **flumen** (l. 19) is secondary object, depending on **trans** (*tra-duco* = *trans-duco*); § 395 (239. 2. *δ*); B. 179. 1; G. 331. R.¹; H. 413 (376); H-B. 386. — **castra**: the site of this camp has been made out at Berry au Bac (Fig. 31), a little village about twelve miles north by west of Rheims and about twenty-five miles east of Soissons. Traces of Cæsar's works at this place were discovered in 1862, on a low hill called Mauchamp (see Map, Fig. 32).

52 21 quae res, *this movement* (or *manœuvre*), i.e. his having crossed the river and then pitched his camp where he did. Cæsar's camp was protected in the rear by the Axona, and in front by a small marshy stream. — **ripis**: cf. **frumento**, 50 19.

52 22 post eum quae erant, *the rear of his army* (lit. [*those things*] *which were behind him*). — **tuta**: pred. acc.; § 393. N. (239. a. N.¹); B. 177. 2; G. 340; H. 410. 3 (373. 1. N.²); H-B. 392. a; the dir. object is *ea*, the omitted antecedent of **quae**. — **commeatus**: subject of **possent**.

52 23 ut . . . possent: subst. clause of result, object of **efficiebat**; § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a; cf. this with the pure result clause, 50 22, and with the subject clause of result, 51 6.

52 24 efficiebat: the subject is still **quae res**; observe the imperfect tenses describing the situation, and cf. note on 3 5.

52 25 in altera parte, *on the other side*, i.e. on the left bank of the Aisne, towards the Remi. Cæsar had crossed the stream and encamped on the side towards the Suessiones.

52 27 pedum xii: gen. of measure, with **vallo**; § 345. *δ* (215. *δ*); B. 203. 2; G. 365. R.²; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355. When pronouncing the Latin, always give the Latin words for numerals. — **duodeviginti pedum**: i.e. a moat eighteen feet in width. See chapter on military affairs, v, and Fig. 76.

53 1 CHAP. 6. **nomine**: cf. the ablatives in 51 12. — **Bibrax**: this town has been variously identified as Vieux Laon, about the proper distance to the northwest, and Beaurieux to the west, more probably the latter.

53 2 milia passuum octo, *eight miles*: acc. of extent of space; § 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387. 1; **passuum** is part. gen.; § 346 (216); B. 201; G. 367; H. 440. 5 (397); H-B. 346; cf. note

on 34. — *ex itinere, on the march*, i.e. turning aside *from* their course to attack the town. — *magno impetu*: abl. of manner; cf. *voluntate*, 51 21.

53 3 *aegre sustentatum est* (impers.), *it was with difficulty that they held out*. In English we are often inclined to put into two clauses what the Latin crowds into one. — *Gallorum . . . haec, the attack* (mode of attacking) *of the Gauls, being the same as (atque) that of the Belgians, is this* (the following).

53 5 *circumiecta multitudo* (abl. abs.) . . . *moenibus, a host of men being thrown round all the walls*: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429. 2 (386. 2); H-B. 376. Here the English absolute construction is admissible, though usually to be avoided.

53 6 *iaci*: complem. infin.; cf. *consequi*, 49 15 and note. — *coepti sunt*: the pass. is used with the pass. infin. — *defensoribus*: abl. of separation; § 401 (243. a); B. 214; G. 405; H. 462 (414. i); H-B. 408. 3.

53 7 *testudine facta, making a testudo*. See chapter on military affairs, VII (last part), and Fig. 88.

53 8 *quod, this*, i.e. the movements just described. — *tum, in the present instance*. — *multitudo*, subject of *conicerent*: § 317. d (2) (205. c. 1); B. 254. 4 a; G. 211. Exc. (a); H. 389. 1 (461. 1); H-B. 331. 1. — *cum . . . conicerent*: *cum* describing the situation, but almost causal; see note on 49 1.

53 9 *consistendi*: gen. of gerund with *potestas*; § 504 (298); B. 338. 1. a; G. 428; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 612. i.

53 10 *nulli*: dat. of poss.; § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374: *nobody could keep a foothold on the wall* (lit. *power of standing on the wall was to nobody*). — *cum . . . fecisset*: again describing the situation. — *oppugnandi*: gerund; cf. *coniurandi*, 49 5.

53 11 *summa nobilitate et gratia*, [a man] *of the highest*, etc.; abl. of quality; § 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. 2 (419. ii); H-B. 443. — *inter suos, among his* [fellow-citizens]. — *oppido*: dat. with *praeerat*; § 370 (228); B. 187. 3; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

53 12 *unus ex eis, one of those*: after numerals *ex* with the ablative is preferred to the part. gen. — *legati, as ambassadors*: pred. appos.

53 13 *nisi . . . posse*: indir. disc. depending on the idea of *reporting* contained in *nuntium mittit*. Trans. *unless reinforcements, he said*, etc. — *sibi*: i.e. *Iccius*; the dat. is used instead of *ad se* with *subsidium submittatur*, because the idea of help (*for him*) is more prominent than that of motion (*towards him*). In the dir. disc. the message of *Iccius* was:

Nisi subsidium mihi submittetur, (ego) diutius sustinere non possum.

54 1 CHAP. 7. *eo, thither, to that place*, i.e. *Bibrax*. — *isdem ducibus usus, employing the same men* [as] *guides*: for the ablative, cf. *iure*, 50 22. Observe that *ducibus* is pred. appos.; cf. *legati*, 53 12.

54 2 Numidas et Cretas: both these (especially the Cretans) were famous bowmen. See Fig. 97.

54 3 Baleares (adj.): the inhabitants of the Balearic Islands, east of Spain, were famous slingers. See Fig. 30. These nations served as auxiliaries in the Roman armies. — **subsidio oppidanis:** dat. of service with dat. of person affected; § 382. 1 and N.¹ (233. a); B. 191. 2. b; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360. b.

54 4 et . . . et: see Vocab. — **studium . . . accessit,** *eagerness for a vigorous defence was inspired in the Remi.* — **propugnandi:** obj. gen. of the gerund; cf. **coniurandi**, 49 5.

54 5 hostibus, from the enemy: dat.; § 376 (235); B. 188. 1; G. 352; H. 425. 4 (384. 4. N.³); H-B. 366. — **potiundi oppidi:** gerundive; § 503. N.² (296. R.); B. 339. 4; G. 427. N.⁵; H. 623. 1 (544. 2. N.⁵); H-B. 613. N.

54 6 morati . . . depopulati . . . vicis . . . incensis: observe the change of construction. The Latin can use a perf. part. with active meaning only (as here) of *deponent verbs*. The corresponding construction with other verbs is the abl. abs. with the perf. pass. part.; as here, **vicis incensis**, which is to be translated accordingly. See last note on 49 6.

54 7 quo, to which (or the like).

54 8 omnibus copiis: cf. 50 16, and for the omission of *cum*, see § 413. a (248. a. N.); B. 222. 1; G. 392. R.¹; H. 474. 2 (419. iii. 1); H-B. 420.

54 9 a milibus passuum minus duobus, less than two miles off: a is used adverbially; § 433 (261. d); B. 144. 1; G. 335. N.; H. 417. 3 (379. 2. N.); cf. H-B. 303. c: **milibus** is abl. of degree of difference: § 414 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); H-B. 424: **minus** does not affect the construction: § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R.⁴; H. 471. 4 (417. 1. N.²); H-B. 416. d: **amplius** (l. 10) is acc. of extent of space: § 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387: and **milibus** (l. 10), abl. after the comparative: § 406 (247); B. 217. 1; G. 398; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416. We have here both of the two constructions allowable with these neuter comparatives; see reference under **minus**.

54 13 CHAP. 8. eximiam opinionem virtutis, their high reputation for valor: obj. gen.; § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. — **proelio supersedere, to defer the engagement:** for the abl., cf. **defensoribus**, 53 6, and see § 401 (243. a); B. 214. 1; G. 390; H. 462 (414. i); H-B. 408. 3.

54 14 quid . . . posset . . . quid . . . auderent, indir. questions. — **virtute:** abl. of specif. But the whole is best rendered, *tested the prowess of the enemy, and the daring of our own soldiers*. Notice that the form of thought is entirely different in Latin and in English.

54 15 *periclitabatur*: note the tense and cf. *adferebantur*, **49 2** and note.

54 16 *loco . . . idoneo*: abl. abs. expressing cause. — *ad . . . instruendam*: gerundive expression of purpose; cf. **49 13**.

54 18 *tantum*, etc., *spread over as much (tantum) ground as (quantum)*, etc. — *adversus*, *right in front*.

54 19 *in latitudinem*, *in breadth*, i.e. from the camp towards the confluence of the Aisne with a little stream, the Miette, which here makes a swamp. — *loci*: part. gen. with *quantum*, but more conveniently translated with the correlative *tantum*, with which it has to be supplied to complete the sense.

54 20 *lateris deiectus* (acc. plur.), *lateral slopes* (lit. *slopes of the side*).

54 21 *in fronte*, etc., *falling with an easy slope in front* (i.e. to the west), *sank gently to the plain* (see battle plan, Fig. 32).

54 22 *transversam*: i.e. at right angles to his line of battle.

54 23 *passuum quadringentorum*: gen. of measure; cf. *pedum*, **52 27**. — *extremas*, *the ends of*: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.²); H-B. 244.

54 24 *tormenta*: see chapter on military affairs, I. 5, and Figs. 61, 87, and 89.

54 25 *instruxisset*: subjv. by attraction for fut. perf. ind.; § 593, 547 (342, 325. c); B. 324. 1, 289; G. 662 at end, 580; H. 652, 600 (529. ii, 521. i); H-B. 539, cf. 524. d. — *tantum*: adv. acc.; cf. *quid*, **50 27**. — *poterant*: this clause is parenthetical, and hence is not (like *instruxisset*) attracted into the subjv.

54 26 *ab lateribus*, *on the flanks*: § 429. b (260. b); H. (434. i); H-B. 406. 2; modifying *circumvenire*. — *suos*: i.e. Cæsar's, referring back to the subject of *conlocavit*.

55 1 *si quo* (adv.): sc. *duci*, but translate freely *if they were needed anywhere*. — *esset*: protasis of a fut. condition (*si . . . erit*); here in the imperf. subjv. because depending on the final clause *ut . . . possent*; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539. — *subsidio*: dat. of purpose or end; cf. note on **54 3**.

55 2 *sex*: see note on **50 1**. — *suas*: notice the emphatic position, *THEIR forces too*.

55 3 *copias . . . eductas instruxerunt*, *had led out and drawn up*, etc.: the Latin is fond of using a participle for what is practically a coördinate clause, instead of an additional finite verb.

55 4 CHAP. 9. *nostrum*: poss. pron.; poss. gen. could not be used; § 302. a (197. a); B. 243; G. 362. R.¹; H. 440. I. N.² (396. ii. N.); H-B. 339. a.

55 5 *hanc*: i.e. *paludem*. — *si . . . transirent*, (*to see*) *if our men would cross*: § 576. a (334. f); B. 300. 3; G. 460; H. 649. 3 (529. ii. 1. N.¹); cf. H-B. 582. 2.

55 6 *si . . . fieret*, *in case they should begin the passage* (lit. *a beginning of crossing should be made by them*): fut. condition (*si . . . fiet*); here in the subjv. because part of the final clause *ut . . . adgrederentur*; cf. note on *esset*, 1. 1.

55 7 *adgrederentur*: purpose, depending on *parati*, etc.

55 8 *contendebatur*: impers.; cf. note on 23 1.

55 9 *nostris*: § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; II. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362.

55 11 *ad flumen*, etc.: evidently somewhat lower down, so that they were concealed by the hills beyond the marsh.

56 1 *eo consilio ut*, etc.: the final clauses are in apposition with *consilio*; § 531. 1. N.¹ (317. a); G. 545. 1; H. 564. iii (499. 3); H-B. 502. 2. a.

56 2 *castellum*, *the redoubt* beyond the river, held by Sabinus (52 25). — *cui*: cf. *oppido*, 53 11.

56 3 *pontem*: the bridge held at one end by a garrison, at the other by the redoubt (52 25). By destroying this, the Belgæ would cut off Cæsar's supplies and hinder his retreat; cf. 52 21-24. — *si possent* (1. 1), *si minus potuissent*: fut. conditions; *possent* represents the fut., *potuissent* the fut. perf. indic.; for change of mood and tense cf. note on 55 1. — *minus*, *not*.

56 4 *popularentur, prohiberent*: in same construction as *expugnarent*. — *magno nobis usui*: cf. note on *subsidio oppidanis*, 54 3. — *ad bellum gerendum* (gerundive), *for carrying on the war*; cf. 49 13.

56 5 *commeatu*: abl. of separation; cf. *defensoribus*, 53 6.

56 6 *CHAP. 10. ab Titurio*: abl. of voluntary agent.

56 7 *levis armaturæ* (gen. of description), *of light equipment* = *light-armed* (see chapter on military affairs, I. 3, and Figs. 73, 96). — *Numidas*, etc.: these light-armed troops were trained runners, and so could arrive at the ford in time to stop the passage of the Belgians.

56 8 *traducit*: with two accusatives; cf. 52 20 and note. — *pugnatum est*: cf. *contendebatur*, 55 8.

56 11 *conantis*: with *reliquos*.

56 12 *equitatu*: considered here as means or instrument; therefore, no prep. — *circumventos interfecerunt*: cf. note on *eductas*, 55 3.

56 13 *ubi . . . intellexerunt*: the regular mood and tense with *ubi*; cf. 53 4. — *de*, *with regard to*.

56 14 *neque*, *and . . . not*.

56 15 *pugnandi causa*: gerund construction, expressing purpose; § 404. *c*, 533. *b* (245. *c*, 318. *b*); B. 338. 1. *c*; G. 373; H. 626 (542. *i*); H-B. 444. *d*, 612. *i*.

56 16 *ipsos*: i.e. the enemy. The superiority of the Roman commissariat was a most important factor in winning their victories. The enemy could not carry on a long campaign with a large army for lack of provisions, and when they were compelled to disband, the Romans destroyed them piecemeal at their leisure.

56 17 *constituerunt* here has two objects: (1) *optimum esse*, etc. (indir. disc.), (2) [*ut*] *convenirent* (subst. clause of purpose); § 580. *d* (332. *h*); B. 295. 1 and N.; G. 546. R.¹; H. 565. 5 (498. *i*. N.); H-B. 589. *a*; cf. note on 2 15. The subject of *esse* is the infin. clause *quemque reverti*: § 452 (330); B. 330; G. 422; H. 615 (538); H-B. 585. Thus the confederacy dissolves into a mere defensive alliance, and all the members are cut to pieces in detail. — *domum*: § 427. 2 (258. *b*); B. 182. 1. *b*; G. 337; H. 419. 1 (380. 2. 1); H-B. 450. *b*.

56 18 *quorum*: the antecedent is *eos*.

56 19 *introduxissent* stands for the fut. perf., and is attracted into the pluperf. subjv. by being made part of the purpose clause; cf. *potuissent*,

56 3. — *convenirent*: sc. *ut*; § 565. *a* (331. *f*. R.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R.²; H. 565. 2 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. *a*. ftn.².

56 20 *suis, alienis, domesticis*: notice the emphatic position of the adjectives.

56 23 *quod . . . cognoverant*: indic. because Cæsar gives the reason on his own authority; cf. 49 12 and note. The clause is in apposition with *haec ratio*. — *Diviciacum . . . adpropinquare*: see 52 14. — *finibus*: dat. after *adpropinquare*.

56 24 *his persuaderi*, etc., *these could not be persuaded*, etc. (lit. *it could not be persuaded to these*). Verbs that take the dat. in the act. are used impers. in the pass. and retain the dat. — *ut*, etc.: subst. clause of purpose, depending for its construction on *persuaderi*, but (in the impers. construction) used as subject of *poterat*.

56 25 *neque . . . ferrent*, and so fail to carry (lit. *and not carry*). — *suis*: § 363 (225. *b*); B. 193; H-B. 365. ftn. par. 2.

56 26 CHAP. II. *strepitu, tumultu, ordine, imperio*: abl. of manner; cf. *impetu*, 53 2.

57 1 *cum*, *where*, describing the situation, but approaching in sense a causal clause: § 549. N.² (326. N.²); B. 288. B; G. 586; H. 598 (517); H-B. 525.

57 2 *fecerunt*: notice the emphatic position; cf. the English, "the result was." — *ut . . . videretur*: subst. clause of result, object of *fecerunt*;

§ 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. *a.* — *fugae*: § 384 (234. *a*); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362.

57 3 *per*: the agent, when considered as instrument or means, is generally expressed by *per* with the acc.; § 405. *b* (246. *b*); G. 401; H. 468. 3 (415. i. N.1); H-B. 380. *d.* — *speculatores*, *spies*: they obtained information by mingling in disguise with the enemy; while the *scouts*, *exploratores*, were squads of cavalry who ranged the country in the vicinity of the army.

57 4 *veritus*, *fearing*; cf. note on **52 7**. — *discederent*: indir. quest.; cf. **51 10**, **52 11**, **55 5**.

57 5 *castris*, *in camp*: § 429. *f* (258. *f*); B. 218. 7; G. 389; H. 485. 2 (425. ii. 1); cf. H-B. 446. 1.

57 6 *re*: i.e. the fact that the enemy were really retreating. — *ab exploratoribus*: abl. of agent; cf. above, *per speculatores*. — *qui moraretur*: rel. clause of purpose; cf. **50 15**.

57 7 *his*: dat. with *præfecit*; cf. construction of *oppido*, **53 11**.

57 10 *milia*: cf. **53 2**.

57 11 *cum*: causal; cf. **57 1** and note. — *ab extremo agmine*, *in the rear*.

57 12 *quos*: relates to the implied subject of *consisterent*. — *ventum erat*: § 208. *d* (146. *d*); B. 256. 3; G. 208. 2; H. 302. 6 (301. 1); H-B. 290. *a*. 1.

57 13 *priores*: sc. *and* in English. This refers to the van of the retreating enemy. — *quod . . . viderentur*, *because they seemed* (i.e. *they thought themselves*). This word and *continerentur* are subjunctives as being part of the subjv. clause *cum . . . ponerent*. For similar cases of attraction, see **55 1**, **55 6**, **56 1**, **56 19**.

57 15 *exaudito clamore*, *perturbatis ordinibus* (abl. abs., the first defining the time of the second), *breaking ranks on hearing the outcry* (of those engaged in the rear).

57 16 *sibi*: § 376 (235); B. 188. 1. N.; G. 345; H. 425. 4 (384. 4); H-B. 366. — *ponerent*: same construction as *consisterent* and *sustinerent*.

57 17 *tantum . . . spatium*, *killed as great a number of them as the time* (before night) *allowed* (lit. *as the day was long*); notice the correlatives *tantum . . . quantum*; § 152 (106); G. 642. 1; H. 189 (191); H-B. 144; cf. **54 18-20**.

57 20 CHAP. 12. *postridie eius diei*, *next day* (lit. *on the day after that day*): for the gen., see § 359. *b* (223. *e*); B. 201. 3. *a*; H. 446. 5 (398. 5); H-B. 380. *c.* — *priusquam . . . reciperent*, *before the enemy could recover themselves*: § 551. *b* (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. *b*.

57 21 *in finis . . . duxit*: i.e. following his plan of subduing the tribes one after the other.

57 22 Remis: cf. *Galliae*, 50 13. — *magno itinere*: see chapter on military affairs, VI.

57 23 Noviodunum (now Soissons): about twenty miles west of Bibrax. Celtic *dunum* = English *town*; hence Noviodunum = *Newton* or *Newburg*. *Soissons* is derived from *Suesiones*. — *ex itinere*: i.e. as soon as he arrived, by filling up the ditch and scaling the walls, without waiting to throw up works or form regular lines of approach; cf. 53 2.

57 24 esse: sc. *oppidum* for subject.

57 25 paucis defendentibus (abl. abs. denoting concession), *though there were few defenders*. — *oppugnare* means *to attack*; *expugnare*, *to take* (by storm). Unable to take the town by storm, Cæsar was obliged to begin a regular siege. See chapter on military affairs, VIII, and Figs. 43, 98, 99, 76, 78.

57 26 quaeque, etc.: i.e. wood, earth, stones, etc.; the antecedent of *quae*, if expressed, would be *ea*.

57 27 ad oppugnandum: § 506, 385. *a* (300, 234. *δ*); B. 338. 3, 192. 2. N.; G. 432, 359. R.⁸; H. 628, 435. 1 (542. iii, 391. ii); H-B. 612. iii, 364. 6.

58 2 magnitudine: i.e. by the extent of these offensive operations. — *quae, which* (i.e. *the like of which*).

58 3 ante: adv.

58 5 petentibus Remis, *at the request of the Remi*. — *ut conservarentur*: subst. clause of result, obj. of *impetrant*; § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 1 (501); H-B. 521. 3. *a*.

58 6 CHAP. 13. obsidibus acceptis primis, *after he had received as hostages the chief men*, etc.

58 7 Galbae: see 51 19-21.

58 9 Bellovacos: their territory lay thirty or forty miles due north of Paris, about Beauvais. — *qui cum*, *and when they*. A relative is often used to begin a new sentence where the English idiom would lead us to expect a demonstrative with a connective (here *hi autem*). The relative serves to bind the new sentence more closely to the preceding. — *se suaque omnia*: cf. 50 15 and note.

58 10 Bratuspantium: probably Breteuil, at the head of the Somme valley. Notice that *Bratuspantium* is in *apposition* with *oppidum*, not in the gen. according to the English usage.

58 11 circiter, etc., [only] *about five miles*. — *milia passuum*: cf. 53 2, 57 10.

58 12 maiores natu: § 131. *c* (91. *c*); B. 226. 1; G. 87. 9; H-B. 122; *natu* is abl. of specification.

58 13 voce significare, *show by the tones of their voice* (of course they could not talk Latin). — *in eius fidem . . . venire*: i.e. surrendered at

discretion; cf. the clause *se in fidem permittere*, 50 15. Notice that the reflexive *se* refers to the *speakers*, and represents the first person of the dir. disc.; *eius* refers to *Cæsar*, the person spoken to.

58 14 *neque*, and [that they would] *not*.

58 16 *pueri mulieresque*, *women and children*. — *ex muro*: English says *on the wall*, from another point of view.

58 17 *ab Romanis*: § 396. *a* (239. *c. N.*¹); B. 178. 1. *a*; G. 339. *N.*²; H. 411. 4 (374. *N.*⁴); H-B. 393. *c*.

59 1 CHAP. 14. *pro his*, *in behalf of these*, i.e. the Bellovaci.

59 2 *eum*: i.e. *Cæsar*.

59 3 *Bellovacos*, etc.: the rest of this chapter is in indir. disc., depending on *facit verba*. Direct,—

Bellovaci *omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Haeduae fuerunt; impulsus* ab suis principibus, qui *dicebant* Haeduos a Caesare in servitutem redactos omnis indignitatis . . . *perferre*, et ab Haeduis *defecerunt* et populo Romano bellum *intulerunt*. Qui eius consili principes *fuerant*, quod *intellegebant* quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam *profugerunt*. *Petunt* non solum *Bellovaci* sed etiam pro his *Haedui* ut tua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos *utaris*. Quod si *feceris*, Haedorum auctoritatem apud omnis Belgas *amplificabis*, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella *inciderunt*, sustentare *consuerunt*.

59 3 *omni tempore*, *always*. — *in fide atque amicitia*: i.e. they had been subject-allies of the Hædui.

59 4 *impulsos* (notice the emphatic position: *not* of their own accord, but *induced* by their chiefs): agreeing with the subject (*eos*) of *defecisse* and *intulisse*, which is to be supplied from *Bellovacos*.

59 5 *dicerent*: this word introduces another clause in the indir. disc., the statement of the chiefs, which is thus reported at second-hand by *Cæsar* as a part of the speech of Diviciacus. The subject is *Haeduos*; the verb, *perferre*. — *omnia*, *all* (kinds of).

59 7 *qui*, (those) *who*. — *eius consili*, *in this design*: § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. Notice that the gen. expresses nearly all the relations of one noun to another, and may be translated by *in*, *to*, and many other forms of speech in English.

59 8 *quantam* . . . *intulissent*: cf. 50 26 and note.

59 9 *civitati*: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376. — *Britanniam*: the support and sympathy which the Gauls received from Britain was *Cæsar's* excuse for his subsequent expedition there. — *profugisse*: the subject is the implied antecedent of *qui*.

59 10 *sua clementia*, *his* (characteristic or well-known) *clemency*: for the case, cf. 50 23, 54 1.

59 11 in eos: but for the interposition of **Haeduos**, this would be *in se*; § 300. *b* (196. 2); B. 244. ii; G. 520, 521; H. 504 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2; here, as often, the last word or thought governs the construction.—**utatur**: subst. clause of purpose, after **petere**; § 563. *d* (331. *d*); B. 295. 4; G. 546; H. 564. iii (499. 3); H-B. 530. 2. ftn.¹; cf. also 6 10 and note. Observe that from this point the present and perfect tenses of the subjv. are used; cf. **cognoverint**, 51 11 and note.—**quod si fecerit**: fut. condition (more vivid); **fecerit** is perf. subjv. for the fut. perf. indic. of the dir. disc. The apodosis is **amplificaturum**: § 516. *a* (307. *a*); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574. 2 (508. 2); H-B. 579. *a*; on the use of **quod**, see note on **qui cum**, 58 9.

59 13 quorum: the antecedent is **Belgas**.—**si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint**: general condition; see dir. disc. above. For the tenses used in general conditions, see § 518. *b* (309. *c*); G. 594. N.; H. 578. 1 (508. 5); cf. H-B. 579, 577. *a*.

59 14 consuerint: present in force; § 205. *b. N.*² (143. *c. N.*); B. 262. A; G. 175. 5, 236. R.; H. 299. 2 (297. i. 2); H-B. 487.

59 15 CHAP. 15. honoris Diviciaci . . . causa, out of respect for **Diviciacus** (lit. for the sake of honor).—**Diviciaci**: obj. gen.; § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354.—**causa**: abl. of cause; § 404. *c* (245. *c*); B. 198. 1; G. 373, 408; H. 475. 2 (416. ftn.²); H-B. 444. *d*, 339. *d*; used almost like a preposition with the gen., and always following its noun, as here **honoris**.

59 16 recepturum [esse]: the fut. act. infin. commonly omits *esse*, as here.—**quod erat**: the indic. implies that this was the real reason, not merely one given by Cæsar at the time (which would require *quod esset*); cf. 49 12.

59 17 magna . . . auctoritate: cf. 53 11.—**multitudine**: cf. 51 12.

59 20 Ambianorum: about Amiens, near the coast of the Channel.

59 21 eorum finis: notice the emphatic position. *Their territories reach to the Nervii*.—**natura**: i.e. what sort of people they were, like *quales essent*.

59 22 reperiebat: cf. note on 49 2.—**nullum aditum**, etc.: Direct,—

*Nullus aditus est ad eos mercatoribus; nihil patiuntur vini . . . inferri, quod his rebus relanguescere animos . . . existimant; sunt homines feri magnaeque virtutis; increpitant atque incusant reliquos Belgas, qui se populo Romano dediderint patriamque virtutem proiecerint; confirman-
t sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam condicionem pacis accepturos.*

59 23 mercatoribus (dat. of poss.; cf. **nulli**, 53 10), *traders have*.—**pati** (subj. *eos* understood): the subj. acc. of the infin. in indir. disc. should regularly be expressed, but occasionally it is omitted when the sense is clear. Cæsar is very free in this respect, because his work is

only brief notes of his campaigns (*commentarii*). — *nihil . . . vini*: § 346. *a*. 1 (216. *a*. 1); B. 201. 1; G. 369; H. 440. 5 (397. 1); H-B. 346.

59 25 relanguescere: an inceptive verb (ending, *-sco*); § 263. 1 (167. *a*); B. 155. 1; G. 133. v; H. 277 (280); H-B. 212. 2. — *esse*, *that they are*.

59 26 magnæ virtutis: § 345 (215); B. 203. 1; G. 365; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355. Note that the descriptive gen. has exactly the force of an adj., so that it is even connected with *feros* by a coördinate conj.: § 223. *a* (154. *a*); B. 341; G. 474; H. 657 (554); H-B. 305. i.

59 27 Belgas: object. — *qui . . . dedidissent . . . proiecissent*, *who* [they said] *had surrendered*, etc.: § 592. 3 (341. *d*); B. 323; G. 628; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1. *a*; cf. also note on 32 21.

60 1 patriam: an adjective.

60 2 missuros . . . accepturos: on the omission of *esse*, cf. note on 59 18. The subject of the infinitives is *sese*, which refers back to the omitted subject (*eos*) of *confirmare*.

60 3 CHAP. 16. *cum . . . fecisset*: for similar *cum*-clauses, cf. 49 1, 53 8, 53 10. — *eorum*: i.e. of the Nervii. — *triduum*: § 423 (256); B. 181; G. 336; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387.

60 4 Sabim flumen, etc.: Direct, —

Sabis flumen a castris . . . milia passuum x abest; *trans id flumen omnes Nervii consederunt adventumque Romanorum expectant una cum Atrebatibus . . . (nam his . . . persuaserunt uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur)*; *expectantur etiam ab eis Aduatucorum copiae atque sunt in itinere*; *mulieres quique . . . inutiles videbantur in eum locum coniecerunt*, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

60 4 Sabim: *the Sambre*, which flows northeasterly into the Meuse (Mosa); § 75. *a*. 1 (56. *a*. 1); B. 37; G. 57. R.¹; H. 102. 2 (62. ii. 2. (1)); H-B. 88. 1. The Nervii occupied the basin of this river and of the upper Scheldt. — *non amplius milia*, etc.: *milia* is acc. of extent, and is not affected in construction by *amplius*; cf. a similar construction, 54 9, and see § 407. *c* (247. *c*); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R.⁴; H. 471. 4 (417. i. N.²); H-B. 416. *d*.

60 7 Atrebatibus, etc.: small tribes to the south and west; modern Arras, Vermandois. — *his*: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385. ii); H-B. 362. i.

60 8 experirentur: subst. clause of purpose; cf. 59 10.

60 9 expectari: note throughout this indir. disc. the variation between pres. and perf. infin., according as the dir. disc. has the pres. or perf. indic.

60 10 quique, *and* (those) *who* (not to be confounded with the plur. of *quisque* with the same form); *qui*, as so often, implies its own antecedent *eos*, the obj. of *coniecisse*.

60 11 quo = *in quem*.

60 12 *esset*: already in dir. disc. a rel. clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283. 1; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 1 (503. i); cf. H-B. 521. 1; cf. 51 4. The emphasis is shown in "to which on account of the MARSHES an *army* could not get access."

60 14 CHAP. 17. *locum . . . idoneum*: see chapter on military affairs, v. — *deligant*: cf. construction of *dicerent*, 50 15. — *ex . . . Belgis*: for part. gen. following *complures*, cf. 50 13, 53 12.

60 15 *deditiis*: i.e. the three states just subdued.

60 16 *una*, *along* (with him).

60 17 *eorum dierum*, *during those days*: see note on *consili*, 59 7.

60 19 *inter singulas legiones*, *between each two legions*. — *impedimentorum magnum numerum*, *a great number of baggage-animals* (i.e. a very long baggage-train). See chapter on military affairs, 1. 6.

60 20 *neque*, *and that . . . not* (or *no*); notice that in Latin the connective has a strong attraction for the negative where our idiom separates them. — *negoti*: part. gen.; cf. *nihil vini*, 59 23.

60 21 *cum . . . venisset . . . abessent*: subjv. because subordinate clauses in the indir. disc.; the verbs refer to future time, and represent respectively the fut. perf. and the fut. indic. of the dir. disc.

60 22 *hanc*: i.e. the first legion. — *sarcinis*: see chapter on military affairs, IV. c, and Fig. 14. — *adoriri*: subject of *esse* (l. 20), *quicquam* being in the predicate. — *qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis* (abl. abs. = protasis of a future condition), *if this should be routed*, etc.

60 23 *futurum [esse]*: apodosis of the condition. — *ut . . . non audent*: subst. clause of result, subject of *futurum [esse]*; § 569 (332. a); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1 (501. i); H-B. 521. 3. a; the whole is little more than a roundabout way of expressing the fut. infin.; § 569. a (147. c. 3); B. 270. 3; G. 248. 2; H. 619. 2 (537. 3); H-B. 472. c. — *contra consistere*, *to withstand their attack*.

60 24 *adiuvabat*: the subject is the subst. clause *quod Nervii . . . effecerant*, *the advice of those who reported the matter was REINFORCED by the fact that the Nervii*, etc. Notice the emphatic position of *adiuvabat*, which may be expressed in English by using the pass. as above.

60 25 *antiquitus*: adv.; the use of the hedges described below was an immemorial custom, and they are still, it is said, common in this region. Traces of such about 400 years old still exist in England. — *cum*: causal.

60 26 *nihil* (adv. acc.) *possent*, *had no strength*. — *neque enim*, *and in fact . . . not*. — *ad hoc tempus*: opp. to *antiquitus*. — *rei*: cf. construction of *imperiis*, 49 11,

60 *et* quicquid (cf. nihil above) possunt, etc., all the strength they have is in infantry. — quo facilius . . . impedirent, in order to check the more

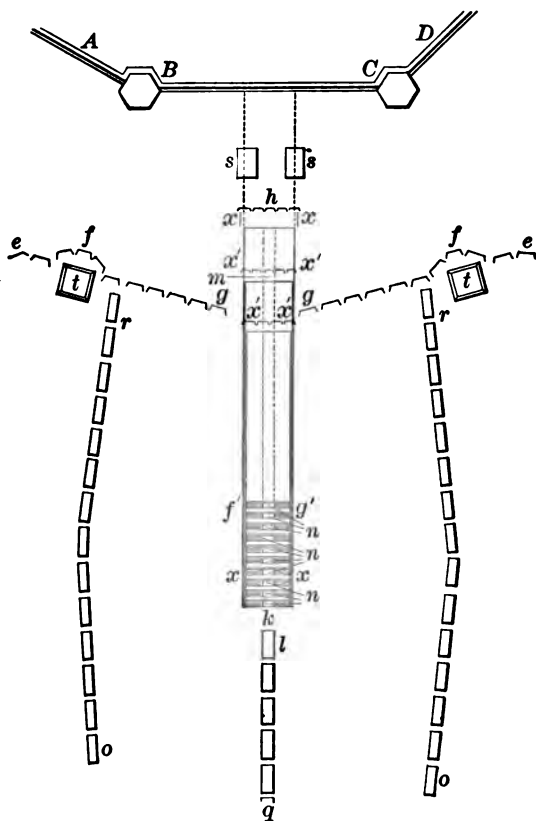


FIG. 78. — GENERAL VIEW OF SIEGE OPERATIONS.

ABCD, hostile wall; *ss*, *testudines aggestitiae*, protecting those levelling the ground; *hk*, *agger*; *xx*, *x'x'*, etc., *plutei*, protecting those working on the *agger*; *efg*, line of *plutei*, manned with archers and slingers; *tt*, *turres*, also manned with archers and slingers and provided with *tormenta*; *ro*, covered way of *vineae*, giving approach to archers and slingers; *lq*, covered way of *vineae* approaching the point of beginning the *agger*; *f'g'*, position of *plutei*, covering the beginning of the *agger*; *mn*, covered gallery through the *agger*; *nnn*, etc., steps and platforms of the several stories.

easily; *quo* is the regular conj. introducing a purpose clause which contains a comparative; § 531. *a.* (317. *b*); B. 282. 1. *a*; G. 545. 2; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2. *b*.

61 1 *praedandi causa*: cf. **56 15**. — *venissent*: attracted from the fut. perf.; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.

61 3 *in latitudinem*, etc.: i.e. when the tree was bent over, shoots sprang from its sides so as to make a thick mass of small branches. Among these were planted briars and thorns. These hedges were of course for the defence of individual farms to hinder cavalry from raiding across country.

61 4 *ut . . . praeberent*: object clause of result, depending on *effecerant*; cf. **57 2**. — *instar muri*: § 359. *b* (214. *g*); B. 198. 2; G. 373; H. 446. 4 (398. 4); H-B. 339. *d*.

61 5 *quo* (adv.): i.e. *into which*.

61 6 *posset*: result clause.

61 7 *sibi*: dat. of agent with *omittendum* [*esse*].

61 8 CHAP. 18. *loci . . . quem locum*: § 307. *a* (200. *a*); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4. — *castris*: the dat. of purpose of concrete nouns is used in prose in a few military expressions; § 382. 2 (233. *b*); B. 191. 1; G. 356; H. 425. 3 (384. ii. 1. 3); H-B. 361.

61 9 *aequaliter declivis*, with even downward slope.

61 10 *quod* agrees in gender with *flumen*. — *vergebat*: imperf. of description; cf. note on **3 5**. — *ab*: i.e. on the other side.

61 11 *pari acclivitate*: abl. of quality; cf. **53 11**, **59 17**. Notice the opposition to *declivis*, above. — *adversus . . . contrarius*, facing this, and on the other side (of the stream).

61 12 *passus*: cf. **53 2**, **57 10**. — *apertus*: i.e. cleared of woods. — *infimus*, at the foot: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 290. R.²; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. N.²); H-B. 244; opposed to *ab superiore parte*, along the upper portion: § 429. *b* (260. *b*); G. 390. 1; H. 434. 1; H-B. 406. 2.

62 1 *ut non*: observe that a negative result is expressed by *ut non*, while a negative purpose is expressed by *ne*.

62 3 *secundum*: preposition.

62 4 *pedum trium*: gen. of measure, here in the predicate; cf. **54 23**.

62 6 CHAP. 19. *copiis*: cf. **50 18**, **54 8**. — *ratio ordoque*: as these two words convey but a single thought, the verb is singular. — *aliter . . . ac*, etc. (see Vocab.), was different from what the Belgæ had reported (lit. had itself otherwise [than] as, etc.): § 324. *c* (156. *a*); B. 341. 1. *c*; G. 643; H. 516. 3 (459. 2); H-B. 307. 2. *a*.

62 7 *ad Nervios*: § 363 (225. *b*); B. 358. 2. *a*; G. 340. R.²; H. 429. 3 (386. 3).

62 8 *consuetudine sua*, in accordance with his custom.

62 9 *ducebat*: for the order of march, see chapter on military affairs, vi. — *conlocarat*, had put in place [of greatest safety]; this verb (*conloco*) is often confounded by beginners with *conligo*, collect.

62 10 *proxime conscriptae*, latest levied. These were legions XIII and XIV, mentioned in 50 1, 2, which were not yet sufficiently trained to bear the brunt of the fight.

62 11 *praesidio impedimentis*: cf. 54 3, 55 1, 56 4.

62 13 *cum*, etc.: this clause describes the situation, and is shown to be temporal by *interim*, which follows (cf. 53 8, 53 10, 60 3). This movement is important because it allowed time for the main body to arrive and begin the camp, contrary to the expectation of the Nervii.

62 14 *reciperent . . . facerent*, kept retiring, etc. (strengthened by *identidem*).

62 15 *quem ad finem*: the antecedent attracted into the relative clause, according to the Latin idiom. Translate as if it were *ad finem ad quem*, which, however, the Romans would rarely say.

62 16 *cedentis* agrees with *eos*, the understood object of *insequi*. Notice that the Romans can always omit a pronoun if its case is determined by some word in agreement.

62 17 *opere dimenso*, having staked out the works. See chapter on military affairs, v.

62 18 *ubi . . . visa sunt*: cf. 53 4, 56 13. Notice that this is purely temporal. *Cæsar* might have used *cum* with the subjv., but in that case it would describe the situation. A comparison of this with 62 13 shows the difference clearly.

62 20 *quod tempus*, the moment which. Notice the difference of the Latin and the English idiom; *tempus* is in apposition with the clause *ubi . . . visa sunt*. The attraction of the antecedent into the relative clause is regular when it is in apposition with something preceding (cf. 30 19, 38 19, and notes). — *committendi proeli*: depending on *tempus*. Notice that the gen. is the regular form to connect one noun with another, though we use various prepositions. — *ut (just as) . . . confirmaverant*: i.e. the movement was not a confused sally on the individual impulse of savages, but an organized attack with the united and settled determination to resist the invaders. He may have said this only to enhance the glory of his victory, but he more than once pays tribute to the prowess of the enemy, and he probably does so here.

62 24 *ut*, so that (result).

62 25 [*et iam in manibus nostris*]: i.e. within reach of our weapons. This makes sense, and may be so translated.

62 27 *adverso colle*, etc., *pushed straight up the hill*. The way by which is put in the abl. without a preposition. — *eos*: after *ad*. — *occupati*, *still at work on the fortifications (in opere)*; *occupatus* is regularly used as an adj.

63 1 CHAP. 20. *Caesari*: dat. of agent; cf. *sibi*, **61** 7. Notice the emphatic position of *omnia*. Cæsar had to do *everything at one time*. — *vexillum*: the large banner hoisted at headquarters to announce an engagement impending. See Fig. 121, and chapter on military affairs, II.

63 2 *proponendum* [*erat*]: second periphrastic, like *agenda erant* above; so also *dandum*, etc.

63 3 *tuba*: the signal to take their places in the ranks. See Fig. 37. — *ab opere*, etc.: those who were already detailed must have needed further orders before going into battle.

63 4 *qui* relates to the understood subject (*ei*) of *arcessendi* [*erant*]. — *aggeris*, *materials for a mound*, an unusual meaning. — *arcessendi*: soldiers who were out of hearing of the customary signals would need a messenger.



FIG. 79. — VEXILLUM.

63 5 *cohortandi*: pass., as always, though from a deponent verb; § 190. *d* (135. *d*); B. 112. *b*; G. 251; H. p. 114, ftm. at end; H-B. 291. — *signum dandum*: the last signal for immediate action; cf.

64 5. This list includes all the functions of the commander, ordinarily extended over a considerable time. In this emergency Cæsar says these needed to be done at once, and this was impossible (cf. *impediebat*). But the difficulty was partially remedied by the good sense and discipline of the soldiers who did what was proper without orders.

63 7 *difficultatibus* . . . *subsidio*: cf. **54** 3, **62** 11.

63 9 *quid* . . . *oporteret*: indir. quest., object of *praescribere*; cf. **50** 26.

63 10 *quam* connects similar constructions: § 323. *a* (208. *a*); H-B. 305. 1.

63 11 *quod*: i.e. the second of the *two things* mentioned. — *singulos*, etc., *had forbidden the several lieutenants to leave the work and their several legions*.

63 12 *nisi munitis castris*: abl. abs.; see note on **49** 6. The meaning here is *not until after*, etc.

63 13 *nihil*: adv. acc.; § 390. *d*. N.² (240. *a*); B. 176. 3. *a*; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 387. iii; it is stronger than *non*; *nihil iam*, *no longer*.

63 14 *quae videbantur*, *what seemed best*.

63 16 CHAP. 21. *necessariis*: i.e. such as were (absolutely) *necessary*; observe emphasis. — *ad cohortandos milites*: gerundive of purpose; cf. **49 13, 54 16**.

63 17 *quam in partem* = *in eam partem in quam*; cf. note on *quem ad finem*, **62 15**.

64 1 *decimam*: *Cæsar's favorite legion*; cf. **36 24**. — *non longiore . . . quam uti*, with no more words than that they should, etc.

64 2 *retinerent, perturbarentur, sustinerent*: object clauses of purpose with *ut*, etc., expressing indirectly the commands given in his address.

64 4 *quam quo . . . posset*: rel. clause of characteristic; § 535 (320. c); B. 283. 2. a; G. 298; H. 591. 6 (503. ii. 3); cf. H-B. 521. 1 and 2. c.

64 7 *pugnantibus*: sc. *eis*, and see note on *cedentis*, **62 16**. — *hostium* depends on *animus*.

64 8 *paratus* (adj.) *ad dimicandum*, ready for battle.

64 9 *ad insignia accommodanda*, for fitting on the decorations (of the helmets, etc.). Some of these indicated the rank of the wearer. Perhaps, too, the different legions were distinguished by the *insignia* of the helmets. At all events, these were considered important and were always put on before an engagement. See chapter on military affairs, VII.

64 10 *scutis*: abl. of separation; cf. **53 6, 56 5**. On the march helmets were slung upon the breast, shields covered with leather, and ornaments kept in some unexposed place. See Fig. 14. — *defuerit*, failed, i.e. there was not time enough to, etc.; for tense, cf. **50 25, 51 5**. — *quam in partem*, to whatever place.

64 11 *ab opere*: i.e. from his position in the work of fortifying. — *quaque*, etc., and whatever standards he saw first (*prima*, adj. with *signa*), he fell in (lit. took his stand) there. The Roman soldier was so well drilled that, to whatever part of the legion he found his way, he knew perfectly the duties belonging to it.

64 12 *haec (signa)*: antecedent to *quae*, but implying also the antecedent (*in hac parte*) of *quam* above, for which it is really substituted. — *in quaerendis suis [signis]*: gerundive. The standards distinguished the different cohorts, and hence they here refer to the place of each soldier in the ranks, as we might speak of a company or platoon. See chapter on military affairs, II; also Figs. 72, 84.

64 14 CHAP. 22. *ut . . . quam ut*: as . . . than as. The military science of the ancients was adapted to level, open ground, in which the troops could be drawn up and kept in regular lines.

64 16 *cum*: causal; cf. **57 1**. — *aliae alia in parte*, some in one position, some in another: § 315. c (203. c); B. 253. 2; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 265. For position of the various legions, see battle plan, Fig. 35.

64 17 *saepibus* . . . *interiectis*: cf. note on 60 25.

64 18 *ante*: i.e. in ch. 17. — *impediretur*: connected with *resisterent* by *-que* in l. 17.

64 19 *neque*: here begins the main clause, the verb of which is *poterant*.

64 20 *provideri*: complem. infin. with *poterat* supplied from *poterant*. The subject of this *poterat* is the indir. quest. *quid* . . . *opus esset*. — *ab uno* (emphatic), *by only one man*.

64 21 *fortunae*: emphatic, set off against *rerum*. The *circumstances* were diversified; the *fortune* that attended them consequently had various results.

64 22 *eventus* (nom. plur.): subject of *sequebantur*.

64 23 CHAP. 23. *ut, as*, i.e. in the position in which they were. The clause is nearly equivalent to an English participle, *having taken up their position*: cf. § 493. d. 2 (290. d.); B. 356. 2. c; H-B. 602. 1. Observe that in the sense of *as, ut* is not followed by the subjv. — *sinistra*: here Labienus was in command.

64 24 *acie*: gen.; § 98. N. (74. a); B. 52. 3; G. 63. N.¹; H. 134. 2 (120); H-B. 100. 2. — *pilis emissis*: see chapter on military affairs, VII, and Fig. 15, p. 22. — *exanimatos*: agrees with *Atrebates* (object of *compuerunt*).

64 26 *ex loco superiore*: i.e. from the higher ground up which the *Atrebates* had rushed after crossing the river.

65 1 *impeditam*, *embarrassed* (in their attempt to cross). — *ipsi*: referring to *milites*, 64 23.

65 2 *progressi*: i.e. continuing the charge up the wooded hill on the other side of the river. See description of the ground, ch. 18.

65 3 *rursus resistentis* (acc.), *when they again made a stand*.

65 6 *ex loco superiore*: i.e. starting from, etc. — *in ripis* modifies *proeliabantur* (*were continuing the fight*).

65 7 *totis*: emphatic position (cf. English “exposed *entirely* almost”).

65 8 *nudatis*, *being exposed*, i.e. by the absence of the other legions, which were pursuing the enemy. The only ones left near the camp were VII and XII, in *dextro cornu*.

65 9 *constitisset*: causal, showing why the enemy charged in that quarter; but it is often impossible to say when the description of a *situation* passes over into *cause*. — *magno intervallo, confertissimo agmine*: best regarded as ablatives of manner, though we must remember that the Romans did not trouble themselves about our classifications. The ablative was the proper form for all these ideas; and so they used it for all without distinction, as we should use *in, at, or by*.

65 10 *duce*: abl. abs.; translate *under the leadership of*.

65 12 *aperto latere*: i.e. the right, not protected by shields; for omission of prep., see § 429 (258. *f*); B. 228. 1. *b*; G. 338; H. 485. 2 (425. ii); H-B. 436. — *legiones*: the twelfth and the seventh. — *castrorum*: not part., but poss. gen. (i.e. the height on which the camp stood).

65 14 CHAP. 24. *levis armaturæ*: descriptive gen.; note how it is naturally translated in English by a descriptive adj., *light-armed*. See chapter on military affairs, I. 3, and Figs. 73, 96.

65 15 *una*: adverb.

65 16 *pulsos* [*esse*]: infin. of indir. disc., with subj. acc. *quos*. — *adversis hostibus*, etc., *met the enemy face to face*: § 370 (228); B. 187 iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

65 17 *occurrebant . . . ferebantur*: these *descriptive* imperfects belong to the side action; the main narrative, which is interrupted by them, is resumed in the perfects *contenderunt*, etc., at the end of the chapter. See note on 3 5.

65 18 *ab decumana porta*: i.e. the rear gate; see chapter on military affairs, v, and Fig. 77. The camp was partly on a slope, and the rear commanded a wide view of the surrounding country.

65 20 *cum respexissent*, *on looking back*. Notice that this descriptive *cum*-construction has a great variety of translations, but all indicate an inner connection; cf. *cum . . . vidissent*, l. 26, below.

65 21 *praecipites*: adj., agreeing with *calones*, but with the force of an adv., *pell-mell, in utter confusion*; § 290 (191); B. 239; G. 325. 6; H. 497 (443); H-B. 245.

65 22 *qui*, etc.: this refers to the baggage-train which was coming up with legions XIII and XIV as a rear guard; see 62 9–11.

65 23 *oriebatur*: observe the sing. number, and cf. 62 6 and note. — *alii aliam*: § 315. *c* (203. *c*); B. 253. 2; G. 323; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 265. — *perterriti*, *frantic with fear, panic-stricken* (thoroughly frightened). Observe the force of *per-* (see Vocab.).

65 25 *quorum* (poss.) *virtutis* (obj.) *opinio*, *whose reputation for valor*: § 348. *b* (217. *b*); B. 200; G. 363. R.²; H. 446. 2 (398. 2); H-B. 354.

65 26 *a civitate*: abl. of agent, the state being thought of as a body of citizens.

65 27 *compleri* (*was filling*) . . . *premi . . . teneri . . . fugere*: indir. disc. with *vidissent*. The present tenses indicate what they saw *going on* before their eyes (dir. *complentur . . . premuntur . . . tenentur . . . fugiunt*). The beginner should notice that difference of idiom requires a change of tense in translation.

66 2 *domum*: cf. 56 17 and note.

66 3 *pulsos superatosque* [*esse*]: indir. disc.; the subject is *Romanos*. — *castris*: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.

66 4 *hostis*: acc., subject of *potitos* [*esse*].

66 5 CHAP. 25. *Cæsar*: subject of *processit*, **67 9**. In this characteristic example of Latin style notice that the main verb of the sentence is not expressed until the attendant circumstances have been introduced in the form of modifying phrases, dependent clauses, etc. Thus the sense and construction are *suspended*. Such a sentence is called a *Period*: § 600, 601 (346); B. 351. 5; G. 684, 685. 2; H. 685 (573); H-B. 629, 630. An English writer would have used several short, independent sentences, each describing a single act or circumstance; and a really good translation should have that form, thus:—

Cæsar, after addressing the tenth legion, passed to the right wing. Here he saw his men were hard pressed. The standards were all huddled together and the soldiers of the twelfth, massed in a solid body, were in each other's way. All the centurions of the fourth cohort had fallen, the standard-bearer was killed, and the standard lost. In the other cohorts almost all the centurions were either killed or wounded. Among these the first centurion, P. Sextius Baculus, one of the bravest of soldiers, was disabled by many severe wounds so that he could no longer stand on his feet. The rest were showing no spirit, and some in the rear had abandoned the fight and were drawing back to get out of range of the missiles. The enemy meanwhile continued to come up in front from below without cessation, and to press them hard also on both flanks. The situation was desperate. Seeing this, and realizing that there were no reserves that could be sent in, *Cæsar* snatched a shield from a man in the rear rank—it happened that he had come there without a shield himself—and advanced to the front.

66 6 *ubi*: construe with *vidit*, l. 8. — *in unum locum*: i.e. the soldiers were so crowded together that they could not keep their alignment, and the standards were bunched in a confused mass in the crowd.

66 7 *sibi . . . impedimento*, *hindered one another in fighting* (lit. *were for a hindrance themselves to themselves*); cf. **56 4**, **62 11**.

66 8 *quartae cohortis*: this stood on the left of the front line and so bore the brunt of the attack. See chapter on military affairs, VI and VII. — *omnibus centurionibus occisis*: notice that seven different events are expressed in this sentence by ablatives absolute. See note on *omni pacata Gallia*, **49 6**.

66 9 *signo*: i.e. the standard of the cohort.

67 1 *in his, among these*. — *primipilo*: see chapter on military affairs, I. 7. — *Baculo*: this was one of *Cæsar's* best centurions. His further exploits are mentioned in Bk. iii. ch. 5 and Bk. vi. ch. 38.

67 3 iam . . . non, *no longer*. — **tardiores**, *rather slack* (discouraged): § 291. *a* (93. *a*); B. 240. 1; G. 297; H. 498 (444. 1); H-B. 241. 2.

67 4 ab novissimis, *in the rear*: so below, l. 8. — **deserto proelio**, *withdrawing from the fight* (abl. abs.).

67 5 neque: correl. to *et* = *both . . . not . . . and*.

67 7 vidit: repeated from **66 8** on account of the length of the sentence. — **neque ullum subsidium**: the rear guard, legions XIII and XIV, had not yet arrived.

67 8 posset: rel. clause of characteristic; cf. **51 4**, **64 5**. — **militi**: dat. after **detracto**; cf. construction of **hostibus**, **54 5** and note.

67 11 signa . . . laxare, *to charge and* [thus] *open out the ranks*, i.e. as they advanced, the space between the ranks would be increased, and so more room obtained for the use of the sword. — **quo . . . possent**: cf. **60 27**.

67 12 gladiis; cf. **castris**, **66 3**. — **militibus**: dat. with **inlata**.

67 14 etiam . . . rebus, *even in his own extreme peril*.

67 16 CHAP. 26. **constiterat** (from *consisto*): *NOT had stood*, but *had taken up a position*, and so *stood*; cf. **consuerint**, **59 14**; § 476 (279. *c*); B. 262. A; G. 241. R.; H. 538. 4 (471. 3); H-B. 487.

67 18 ut . . . coniungerent . . . inferrent: subst. clause, secondary obj. of **monuit**; cf. **6 10**, **59 10**, and notes. — **conversa**, etc., *should face about and charge the enemy in opposite directions* (lit. *bear turned standards against*). The two united thus formed a kind of hollow square. It is not necessary to suppose that the soldiers stood immediately back to back, though this is probable, inasmuch as the attack was on both flanks and in front.

67 19 alii: dat. after a verbal phrase of *helping*; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. i); H-B. 365. ftn.¹. 2d par.

67 20 ne . . . circumvenirentur: cf. **ne . . . adduceretur**, **49 6**. — **aversi**, *in the rear* (lit. *while their backs were turned*). — **ab hoste**: collectively, in which sense the plur. is more common.

67 22 legionum duarum: i.e. XIII and XIV; see plan, Fig. 35.

67 24 colle: i.e. the site of the Roman camp. — **Labienus**: he, with legions IX and X, had been pursuing the Atrebatas; see first lines of ch. 23.

67 26 gererentur: indir. quest.

67 27 qui: i.e. the soldiers of the tenth legion.

67 28 esset: indir. quest.

68 1 nihil . . . fecerunt, *left nothing undone in the way of speed* (i.e. *hastened as fast as they could*).

68 2 reliqui: a pred. gen. Various genitives of this sort are used with *facere*: § 343. *b* (214. *c*); B. 198. 3; G. 369. R.²; H. 447 (403); H-B. 340. *a*.

68 4 CHAP. 27. *etiam qui, even such as.* — *procubuissent*, subjv. of characteristic; cf. **67 8. — *scutis*: abl. with *innixi*; § 431 (254 *b*); B. 218. 3; G. 401. 6; H. 476. 3 (425. i. 1. N.); H-B. 438. 2. *a*.**

68 6 *inermes armatis*, etc., (though) *unarmed*, *threw themselves upon the armed* (enemy). — *occurrent*: result, like *redintegrarent*.

68 7 *deherent, praeferrent*: purpose clauses, but in slightly different relations, dependent on *pugnant*. The use of *quo* as a conj. to introduce a purpose clause when the clause contains no comparative is rare. It is used regularly in **60 27**, **67 11**. Here we should expect *ut*.

68 8 *at*: marks with emphasis the change of the narrative from the Romans to the enemy.

68 9 *tantam virtutem praestiterunt*: on this clause depend the following subjunctives of result, — *insisterent, pugnarent, conicerent, remitterent*.

68 10 *primi, foremost.* — *iacentibus* (sc. *eis*, dat. after *insisterent*), *stood upon them as they lay fallen* (lit. *them lying*).

68 12 *qui superessent*: characteristic clause. — *ut ex tumulo, as if from a mound*.

68 13 *ut . . . deberet, so that we may consider* (lit. *it must be judged*) *that not without good hope of success (nequiquam) did men*, etc.; *ut . . . deberet* is a result clause dependent on the whole of the preceding sentence. The subject of *deberet* is the infin. clause *homines ausos esse*.

68 16 *quae*: the antecedents are the preceding infin. clauses describing the acts of the enemy; translate *deeds which.* — *facilia*: pred. adj.; § 285. 2, 282. *b* (186); B. 233. 2; G. 211; H. 382. 2 (438. 2); H-B. 320. iii.

The battle with the Nervii and their allies was the most desperate of the Gallic War. Their surprise of the Romans was complete, their courage such as to evoke Cæsar's wonder and admiration. Had the Romans come up in the order of march expected, — a legion at a time with intervening baggage, — they could hardly have escaped defeat or even annihilation. As it was, only the steadiness and discipline of the troops and the inspiration of Cæsar's presence and example at a critical moment saved the day.

68 18 CHAP. 28. *prope ad internecionem*: the Nervii were not by any means exterminated. Three years later they revolted again (Bk. v. ch. 38), and two years after that they sent a force of 5000 men to Alesia to relieve Vercingetorix (Bk. vii. ch. 75).

68 20 *aestuaria*: the country lying to the north, the modern Zealand, is low and marshy, cut up with bays and tide-water inlets.

68 21 *dixeramus*: for tense, cf. note on the same word, **49 4. — *cum*: causal; cf. **57 1. — *impeditum [esse]*, etc., *there was no obstacle in the way of* (lit. *nothing hindered to*) *the conquerors*.****

68 24 in . . . calamitate: gerundive construction.

68 26 qui . . . possent: this would naturally be a characteristic subjv. in the dir.; cf. **26 10**. — quos: see note on **58 9**.

68 27 usus [esse]: § 582 (330. b); B. 332. b; G. 528. 1; H. 611. N.¹ (534. 1. N.¹); cf. H-B. 590. 2. — misericordia (abl.), *mercy*: it has been observed that Cæsar's dealings with the Gauls were comparatively merciful for a Roman dealing with barbarians, but his cruelty seems to us atrocious.

69 2 ut . . . prohiberent: subst. clause of purpose, obj. of imperavit; cf. this construction with that of uti iussit just before.

69 4 CHAP. 29. supra: see **60 9**. — cum . . . venirent, *while on the way*. — omnibus copiis: cf. **50 16**, **54 8**.

69 7 sua omnia: cf. **50 13** and note. — oppidum: often identified with the citadel of Namur, at the confluence of the Meuse and Sambre (see Fig. 41). For a striking description of the locality, see Motley's "Dutch Republic," iii. 224. Others place it more probably at Falhize, opposite Huy, on the Meuse below Namur, though neither place quite agrees with Cæsar's description.

69 8 quod cum: cf. qui cum, **58 9** and note.

70 1 pedum: cf. **52 27**.

70 3 conlocabant: notice the change of tense from the pluperf.

70 4 ex Cimbris Teutonisque: abl. of source; cf. **51 1**; see note on **7 1**.

70 6 impedimentis refers to cattle as well as portable baggage; hence the two verbs, agere and portare. Cf. *ferre et agere, to plunder*.

70 7 custodiam, *a guard*, whose duty it was to keep an eye on the booty, etc.; praesidium, *a garrison*, who were to hold the place. The words are in apposition with milia.

70 8 sex milia: this Teutonic military colony was probably merely adopted into the Celtic tribe of the Aduatuci, thus giving rise to the story that the whole tribe were of Teutonic descent. — una (adv.), *with it*, i.e. the *impedimenta* — hi: i.e. the six thousand. — eorum: i.e. the Cimbri and Teutons.

70 9 obitum, *destruction*: the Teutons were totally defeated by Gaius Marius at Aquæ Sextiæ (*Aix-les-Bains*), B.C. 102; the Cimbri, by Marius and Catulus, the next year, at Vercellæ. — alias: adv.

70 10 inferrent: the regular word for offensive war. — inlatum [*sibi bellum*] defenderent, *defended themselves when attacked*. — consensu eorum omnium, *by mutual agreement*, i.e. between themselves and all their neighbors.

70 11 sibi domicilio: cf. **54 3**. — hunc locum: the land between the Meuse and the Scheldt.

70 12 CHAP. 30. **adventu**: abl. of time.

70 13 **faciebant**: notice the tense, and cf. 49 2 and note. — **parvulis**: for the formation of the word, see § 243 (164. a); B. 153; G. 189. 6; H. 340 (332); H-B. 207. 1.

70 14 **pedum XII**: i.e. in height. — **XV milium**: fifteen miles (sc. *passuum*) seems large for so small a hill, but no satisfactory explanation has yet been given.

70 15 **oppido**: for the omission of *in*, cf. **castris**, 57 5 and note. For the siege operations, see chapter on military affairs, VIII, and Figs. 43, 78, 98, 99.

70 17 **viderunt**: note the regular mood and tense in the temporal clause with **ubi**; cf. 62 18 and note. — **inridere**: histor. infin.; see note on 13 18.

70 18 **quod . . . institueretur**: *because* (as they said), etc.: subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.; § 540, 592. 3 (321, 341. d); B. 286. 1, 323; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 555. a. — **ab tanto spatio**, *so far off* (lit. *away by so great a space*): abl. of degree of difference, **ab** having an adv. force. — **quibusnam**, etc.: the enclitic **nam** gives a sarcastic emphasis to this jeering question of the barbarians, *by what hands, pray, or what strength?*

71 2 **conlocare**: indir. disc.; we should have expected the fut. infin., *conlocaturos* [esse]. Apparently the Gauls thought the Romans meant to lift the tower and set it up on the wall (**in muro**); and such an idea, of course, seemed very amusing. But when the tower began to roll forward they saw their error.

71 3 CHAP. 31. **moveri**, *that it was actually moving*: for the omission of the subj. acc. *turrim*, see § 581. N.¹ (336. a. N.); B. 314. 5; G. 527. 4; H. 642 (p. 296, ftn.²); H-B. 592.

71 5 **locuti**, *speaking*: cf. 52 7.

71 6 **existimare** (sc. *se*, and cf. 59 23 and note), *that they thought*: depending on **locuti**.

71 8 **possent**: a rel. clause expressing cause; § 535. e (320. e); B. 283. 3. a; G. 633; H. 592 (517); H-B. 523. — **se** (obj.) . . . **permittere**, *that they surrendered themselves*, etc.: depending on **dixerunt**.

71 9 **unum**, *only one thing*; notice the emphatic position of the word. — **pro sua**, etc., *in accordance with his usual*, etc.; cf. 68 27.

71 10 **quam . . . audirent**, *which they were* [all the time] *hearing of*: repeated action.

71 11 **statuisset**: for the fut. perf. (*statueris*) of the dir. disc.; § 516. c (307. c); B. 264. a; G. 595; H. 540. 2 (473. 2); cf. H-B. 536, 470. ftn.¹. — **ne . . . despollaret**: subst. clause of purpose, in app. with **unum**, but really depending on **deprecari** for its form; see note on 4 17.

71 12 inimicos: cf. **70 10**.

71 13 virtuti: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385. ii); H-B. 362. — **traditis armis** (= *si arma tradita essent*): abl. abs., equivalent to a protasis; § 521. *a* (310. *a*); B. 227. 2. *b*; G. 593. 2; H. 489. 2 (431. 2); H-B. 578. 6. In the dir. disc. a vivid fut. condition, *si arma tradita erunt, non poterimus*.

71 14 sibi praestare, that it was better for them: impers.; the subject is the following infin. clause. — **si . . . deducerentur** (fut. condition), *if they should be reduced to such an extremity*.

71 15 quamvis: from *quivis*.

71 16 consuessent: for the form, see § 181. *a* (128. *a*); B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163. 1. Give the speech of the ambassadors of the Aduatuci in dir. disc., and also Cæsar's reply, ch. 32.

71 17 CHAP. 32. **consuetudine . . . merito:** cf. note on **65 9**. This is a good example of the free use of the ablative case in Latin. If **consuetudine** were alone we should call it *manner*, "that in accordance," etc.; if **merito** were alone we should call it *cause*. Cæsar in using them both did not think of either category; to him they were both ablatives and needed no classification. We may call them *cause* if we like.

71 19 aries: a long beam with an iron head (like a ram's), suspended from a framework, and swung with great force against a wall, crumbling the strongest masonry (see Fig. 93). — **attigisset . . . dedidissent** stand for **attigerit . . . dedideritis** (fut. perf.) of the dir.: § 551. *c* (327. *a*); B. 291. 1; G. 574; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. *b*.

71 20 nisi armis traditis: cf. **nisi munitis castris, 63 12**.

71 21 facturum: i.e. in case they came to terms. — **ne quam, lest any:** § 310. *a* (105. *d*); B. 91. 5; G. 315; H. 512. 1 (455. 1); H-B. 142.

71 22 re nuntiata ad suos: the idea of motion causes the use of **ad**; the dat. would refer simply to the utterance of the message, not to its being carried.

71 23 imperarentur: the subjv. shows that this subordinate clause is a part of the indir. disc.; § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 650; H. 643 (524); H-B. 534. 2. — **facere:** sc. *se* as subj. acc., which is very often omitted by Cæsar; cf. **59 23**. We should expect *facturos* [*esse*]. The pres. infin. standing for *facimus* of the dir. is somewhat colloquial; § 468 (276. *c*); G. 228; H. 533. 2 (467. 5); cf. H-B. 571. — **dixerunt:** i.e. the ambassadors on their return.

71 25 ut prope . . . adaequarent: i.e. the arms filled the ditch and the deep space between the wall and the end of the *agger* almost to the top. See Figs. 43, 76.

72 2 eo die: the day is thought of as fixing the time, not as marking its duration, hence the abl.; § 423 (256); B. 230; G. 393; H. 486 (429);

H-B. 439. — **pace . . . usi**: i.e. they enjoyed the cessation of war and were peaceable, opposed to their later conduct.

72 3 CHAP. 33. **ex oppido exire**: for the repetition of **ex**, see § 402 (243. *b*); B. 214. 2; G. 390; H. 462. 1 (413. N.⁸); H-B. 408. 1.

72 4 **ne quam**: see note on **71 21**.

72 5 **ante inito consilio**, *in accordance with a plan previously agreed upon*.

72 6 **quod crediderant**: a reason stated on the writer's own authority, hence the indic.; cf. **49 12**, **56 23**. — **praesidia**: i.e. those stationed in the *castella*.

72 8 **ex cortice**: abl. of material; § 403 (244); B. 224; G. 396; H. 470 (415. iii); H-B. 406. 4.

72 9 **viminibus intextis**: in the same construction as **cortice**.

72 10 **pellibus**: abl.; § 364 (225. *d*); B. 187. i. *a*; G. 348; H. 426. 6 (384. ii. 2); H-B. 376. *b*.

72 11 **qua**, *where*; an abl. or instrumental form, used adverbially.

72 13 **celeriter**: note the emphatic position. Cæsar had ordered them to give the signal, in case of any disturbance, and to do it *instantly*. — **ignibus**: this signal was given by stretching out a great flaming torch from the side of a watch-tower.

72 14 **eo**, *to that place*. — **concursum . . . pugnatum**: impers. use of pass.; § 208. *d* (146. *d*); B. 256. 3; G. 208. 2; H. 302. 6 (301. 1); H-B. 290. *a*. 1; see note on **23 1**.

72 15 **ita . . . ut**, *they fought as fiercely as brave men ought to fight*. — **in extrema spe**, *for their last chance* (lit. *in the last hope*).

72 16 **iniquo loco**: § 429. 1 (258. *f*); B. 228. i. *b*; G. 385. N.¹; H. 485. 2 (425. 2); H-B. 436. — **qui . . . iacerent**: subjv. of characteristic; cf. **51 4**, **68 12**, **68 26**.

72 17 **in una virtute**, *in valor alone*. — **cum . . . consisteret**, *at a time when*, etc.; see note on **62 18**.

72 18 **ad**, *about*.

72 19 **postridie eius diei**: cf. **20 5** and note.

72 21 **sectionem . . . universam**: i.e. the whole people, as slaves, with all their possessions.

72 22 **capitum**: cf. **26 7**. — **milium**: pred. gen., after *esse* understood.

72 25 CHAP. 34. **Venetos**, etc.: the name of the Veneti survives in the modern *Vannes*; that of the Redones, in *Rennes*.

72 26 **maritimae civitates**: inhabiting the modern Brittany and Normandy; they are spoken of at length in Bk. iii. chs. 7-16.

73 4 CHAP. 35. **perlata**: notice the force of **per**; the news travelled from tribe to tribe.

73 5 incolerent: subjv. of integral part; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663. 1; H. 652. 1 (529. ii. N.¹ 1); H-B. 539.

73 6 se . . . daturas: fem. because they were representatives sent by the tribes and spoke for them.

73 7 in Italiam: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul. Cæsar's province extended to the Rubicon. — **Illyricum**: this province formed part of Cæsar's government, but he went there only during the winter season; see **78 10**.

73 9 Carnutes: their country lay between the Seine and the Loire, comprising the modern Orléans, formerly their capital; their name is preserved in the modern *Chartres*. — **Andes** (whence *Anjou*): near the lower Loire. — **Turonos**: preserved in *Tours*. These camps made a cordon from Orléans through Angiers and Tours and probably Vannes along the Loire to the sea-coast. — **quæque civitates**: translate as if *et civitates quæ*.

73 12 supplicatio, a public thanksgiving: ten days was the longest time that had ever been granted before, except to Pompey, who was honored with twelve for his victory over Mithridates. But Cæsar's party was now all-powerful at Rome. — **quod**: for *id quod*; § 307. *d. N.* (200. *e. N.*); B. 247. 1. *b*; G. 614. R.²; H. 399. 6 (445. 7); H-B. 325. *a. N.*².

BOOK THIRD. — B.C. 56

ALPINE CAMPAIGN. — The higher valleys of the Alps were inhabited by tribes who got a scanty living by working in mines, and often waylaid and plundered expeditions on the march. The two legions sent by Cæsar under Q. Pedius (Bk. ii. ch. 2) had been attacked by these predatory people while passing into the valley of the Rhone above Lake Geneva; hence this expedition, sent in the fall of 57, which was intended to strike terror into the mountain tribes.

READING REFERENCES ON CÆSAR'S THIRD CAMPAIGN.

- Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 9.
- Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 11.
- Froude's Cæsar, chap. 16.
- Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 4.
- Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 289-297.
- Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 304-309.
- Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 6.
- Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 4.

74 1 cum in Italiam proficisceretur Cæsar: cf. this with the beginning of the second book, **cum esset Cæsar in**, etc. There the *verb* is made emphatic because the place where he was has been already named, and his

being absent is the most important idea. Here he is going to speak about a road to Italy across the Alps. Hence his *destination* becomes important and so takes the first place. If this were the first book, it would begin with **Caesar**, the principal personage in the narrative. If his going away were the main thing, it would begin with **proficisceretur**. But as it is, the route across, and so his destination, is here the main thing. Hence instantly the Latin order corresponds to the thought, and we have the form here presented. — **proficisceretur**: the familiar use of the subjv. with **cum** in descriptive clauses; cf. 11 7, 62 13. — **Galbam**: this officer was one of the assassins of Cæsar, his old general. The emperor Galba was his great-grandson.

74 3 **qui a finibus**, etc.: Geneva seems to have been at the northeast corner of the Allobroges' territory. Between that point and the entrance to the Rhone must have been the country of the Nantuates. On the other side of the Rhone were the Seduni and Veragri. See maps, Figs. 6, 46.

74 5 **iter per Alpis**: the pass of the Great St. Bernard, which reaches the Rhone valley at Martigny (the ancient Octodurus) at the great bend of the river. This was the shortest route across the Alps at this period. Hannibal is said to have crossed by the Little St. Bernard, and the pass by Mont Genève was also in use. — **magno cum periculo**, but only with great danger, referring probably rather to the savage tribes than to the dangers of the way.

74 6 **magnis portoriis**, heavy transit-duties: **portoriis** and **periculo** are ablatives of manner; for meaning, see note on 15 25. — **mercatores**: see note on 1 8.

74 7 **arbitraretur**: informal indir. disc. The form of the original would be *arbitraris* with an imv. in the conclusion, which is absorbed in **permisit** and the following *uti*-clause; see note on 32 21.

74 8 **hiemandi causa**: cf. 39 26, 56 15.

74 9 **secundis . . . factis**, etc.: see notes on 15 19, 49 6 (last note).

74 15 **hic, eius**: both refer to **vicus**. — **flumine**, the Dranse.

74 17 **concessit**, etc.: he seems to have deprived the natives of one-half of their village to accommodate his troops, and to have left the rest to them.

75 3 CHAP. 2. **concesserat**: indic. because not part of the indir. disc.; cf. **qui . . . appellantur**, 52 5 and note.

75 4 **montis**: not the higher ranges, but the lower heights directly upon the valley.

75 5 **id, this**, in apposition with **ut . . . caperent**; cf. note on 4 17.

75 8 **neque eam plenissimam**, etc., and that not entirely full. The twelfth legion had suffered severely in the battle on the Sambre (Bk. ii

ch. 25), and was probably already below the normal strength before the detachments were sent off. — *detractis*: see 74 11.

75 9 *commeatus* . . . *causa*: gerundive of purpose; cf. gerund, 74 8.

75 10 *despiciebant, existimabant*, etc.: notice the imperfects describing the situation; see note on 3 5.

75 11 *cum ipsi* . . . *decurrerent*, *when they should charge down from the hills upon the valley*. The imperf. subjv. of indir. disc. with *cum* is here equivalent to the fut. indic. of dir. disc.

75 13 *accedebat quod*, *and besides* (lit. *it was added that*). The subject of *accedebat* is the clause *quod* . . . *dolebant*; cf. 60 25.

76 2 *Romanos* . . . *adiungere*: indir. disc. after *persuasum habebant* = *they had persuaded themselves* (lit. *they had it persuaded to themselves*). With *persuasum habebant* cf. *coactum habebat*, 13 4, *compertum habere*, 40 20, *habere explorata*, 51 8, and notes.

76 6 CHAP. 3. *hibernorum*: see chapter on military affairs, v. In the present case, Galba saved labor by appropriating a part of the Gallic buildings without much ceremony; but he proceeded to lay out the usual fortifications (*munitiones*).

76 7 *perfectae*: referring both to *opus* and *munitiones*, but agreeing with the nearer; cf. 24 7.

76 10 *consilio*: i.e. of tribunes, cavalry officers, and first centurions.

76 11 *quo in consilio*: cf. 25 5, 58 9, and notes.

76 14 *subsidio venire*, *that any one should come to their aid*: *veniri* is impers., sc. *posset* implied in *possent*; *subsidio* is dat. of service or end for which.

76 15 *non nullae* . . . *sententiae*, *several opinions* (or votes) given by the officers in council.

76 18 *maiori* . . . *placuit*, *it was determined by the majority*. — *hoc* . . . *defendere*, *to reserve this course for the extremity, and meanwhile*, etc.

76 21 CHAP. 4. *rebus* . . . *administrandis*: dat. of the gerundive, expressing purpose; an unusual construction, the acc. with *ad* or *in* or the gen. with *causa* being much more common. Why is *constituissent* in the subjv.?

76 23 *decurrere, conicere, propugnare, mittere, occurrere, ferre, superrari*: histor. infinitives, describing the scene and implying incessant action; cf. 13 18, 70 17, and notes.

76 24 *gaesa*: Gallic javelins of unknown form. — *integris viribus* (abl. abs.), *as long as their strength was unimpaired*.

76 27 *eo*: adv. — *occurrere*, *ran to meet the danger*.

76 29 *alii*, *while others*. — *quarum rerum*, *things of which*; cf. 30 19, 38 19, 62 20, and notes. The gen. is partitive with *nihil*.

77 1 *non modo . . . sed ne . . . quidem*, *not only not, but not even*, etc.; we should expect another negative after *modo*, but the Latin regularly omits it where both parts have the same predicate. Note the emphasis on *saucio*.

77 3 *sui recipiendi*: cf. **40 15** and note.

77 5 *CHAP. 5. cum . . . pugnaretur*, *when the fight had been* (and was still) *going on*: § 471. *b* (277. *b*); B. 260. 4; G. 234; H. 535 (469. ii. 2); H-B. 485.

77 7 *languidioribus nostris*: abl. abs., expressing cause.

77 9 *Baculus*: see **67 1** and note.

77 13 *unam*: note the emphasis, *only one*.

77 14 *experirentur*: note that the histor. pres. *docent* has the effect of a secondary tense on the dependent verb.

77 15 *intermitterent*: a command in indir. disc., following *certiores facit* in the sense of *instructs*.

77 16 *tela . . . exciperent*: i.e. the Romans were to gather up the spent weapons to use them against the enemy, as their weapons were almost exhausted (l. 6).

77 19 *CHAP. 6. quod = id quod*: cf. **73 12**.

77 20 *cognoscendi facultatem*, *opportunity of finding out*. — *sui conligendi*, *of collecting their wits*: observe that *sui* is plural in meaning; cf. *sui recipiendi*, l. 3, above, and note.

77 23 *circumventos interficiunt*, *they surround and kill*. — *ex milibus*: for part. gen. after *parte*.

77 27 *armis*: abl. of separation.

77 28 *exutis*: agreeing with *copiis*; § 364 (225. *d*); B. 187. i. *a*; G. 348; H. 462 (414. 1); H-B. 408. 3. ftn.²; in their flight they threw their arms away. Of course the Romans did not catch them and strip off their arms.

77 29 *fortunam temptare*: cf. English "to tempt Providence." — *alio consilio . . . aliis rebus viderat*, *remembered that he had come with one design, and saw that he had met a different state of things*.

NAVAL CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI. — The Veneti inhabited the peninsula of Aremorica called *Bretagne*, Brittany, or Little Britain, since the emigration from Great Britain to escape the Saxon invasion. It has always been the home of the hardest, most independent, and most strongly characterized of all the Gallic populations. Its scenery is wild and secluded, the character of its coast being clearly given in Cæsar's narrative. Its language remains Celtic to this day. No one of Cæsar's campaigns shows more strikingly his boldness and fertility of resource than this.

78 8 *CHAP. 7. Germanis*: i.e. under Ariovistus. It will be noticed that the geographical order, and not the order of events, is followed in

this summary. Of the Alpine tribes the *Seduni* are mentioned as the most important. The passage in brackets makes sense, and may be translated.

78 10 *Illyricum*: part of Cæsar's province.

78 12 *Crassus*: see **46 24-27**, **72 24 ff.**; for force of *adulescens*, see note on **46 25**.

78 13 *mare*: following *proximus* with the construction of *prope*; § 432. *a* (261. *a*); B. 141. 3; G. 359. N.¹; H. 435. 2 (391. 2); H-B. 380. *b*.

78 14 *praefectos*: *officers* of cavalry and auxiliaries.

78 15 *compluris* goes with *civitatis*.

78 19 *CHAP. 8. huius civitatis*: i.e. the Veneti, on the southern coast of Brittany, the modern Morbihan.

78 20 *orae*: part. gen. — *regionum*: added to describe and limit *orae*.

78 21 *Britanniam*: at this time an important Celtic country, having close commercial and social relations with the mainland. Doubtless a large part of the shipping trade was in the hands of the Veneti and their allies, whose commerce extended from Ireland to Spain. — *consuerunt, are accustomed*: § 476 (279. *e*); B. 262. A; G. 236. R.; H. 299. 2 (297. 1. 2); H-B. 487. Cf. **59 14**.

78 23 *in magno . . . aperti*: i.e. on a sea exposed to great and violent storms.

78 24 *omnis . . . habent vectigalis*: i.e. levy tolls upon them all; *vectigalis* is in pred. app. with *omnis*.

78 28 *subita . . . consilia*: this national characteristic of the Gauls is often alluded to by Cæsar and other Roman historians.

79 5 *quam acceperint*: § 592 (341); B. 323; G. 628; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 1. *a*.

79 6 *quam perferre, than to endure*, following the comparative contained in *malint*.

79 9 *remittat*: subjv. expressing a command in indir. disc., depending on the message implied in *legationem mittunt*. The dir. disc. would be *si vis*, etc., *remitte*.

79 11 *CHAP. 9. aberat longius, was too far off*, i.e. to take command at once in person. — *navis longas, galleys*. See chapter on military affairs, IX, and Figs. 48, 51. The Gallic ships, it seems, used sails alone, without oars; see **84 25-28**.

79 12 *Ligeri*: the *Loire*, on the banks of which Crassus was wintering. — *institutui, to be organized*, i.e. in gangs for the several galleys.

80 1 *cum primum*: *the first moment when* (lit. *when first*). Cæsar had spent the winter as usual in Cisalpine Gaul. He reached his army perhaps in April or early in May.

80 3 [*certiores facti*]: omit in translation.

80 4 *admisissent*: indir. quest. — *legatos . . . coniectos* (the specific act): in app. with *facinus*, but the construction is determined by *intellegebant*; see note on **4 17**; *legatos*: they were hardly such in the sense of international law. They were only Cæsar's *legati* or lieutenants.

80 5 *quod nomen*: cf. *quarum rerum*, **76 29** and note.

80 9 *pedestria itinera*, etc., *approaches by land*.

80 10 *concisa, impeditam*: with *esse*. They depend upon *sciebant*.

80 11 *inscientiam*: i.e. the Romans' lack of acquaintance. — *neque . . . confidebant*, and they trusted that our armies could not, etc. Notice that connective and negative have an attraction for each other, though we separate them.

80 13 *ut . . . acciderent*, etc., *granting that*, etc.: *ut* here introduces a concessive clause. This is the only instance in the "Gallic War." Note that when so used the subjv. mood follows; § 440 (266. c); B. 278; G. 608; H. 586. ii (515. iii); H-B. 532. 2. b.

81 1 *posse* and the following infinitives depend upon *perspiciebant*, l. 5.

81 3 *gesturi essent*: subjv. of indir. disc. Observe the first periphrastic conj. referring to future time.

81 4 *longe aliam . . . atque*, *very different . . . from*; cf. *aliter ac*, **62 6**. — *concluso*: i.e. like the Mediterranean, where there is no tide, and which is quiet as compared with the Atlantic.

81 9 *socios*: pred. apposition; cf. *vectigalis*, **78 25**. — *Osismos*, etc.: the coast tribes as far as Flanders. The name *Lexovii* remains in *Lisieux*; *Namnetes* in *Nantes*; *Diablintes* in *Jablins*.

81 14 CHAP. 10. *iniuria retentorum equitum*, *the wrong done by detaining the knights*: § 497 (292. a); B. 337. 5; G. 664. R.²; H. 636. 4 (549. 5. N.²); H-B. 608. 2. — *rebellio*, *renewal of hostilities* (not *rebellion*).

81 16 *ne . . . arbitrarentur*: a new rising was threatened by the Belgians, while the maritime tribes, it is said, were already fearful of a Roman attempt upon Britain. (Observe that this purpose clause is under the same construction as the nominatives *iniuria*, *defectio*, etc., which express other reasons for Cæsar's action, and are all in apposition with *multa*.)

81 17 *idem*: subj. of *licere*.

81 19 *excitari*: the pres. infin. here corresponds to the pres. of a general truth; while *odisse* answers to *oderunt* taken as a pres., *all men naturally hate*.

81 20 *priusquam . . . conspirarent*: see note on **38 27**.

81 24 CHAP. 11. *flumini*: dat. with *proximi*, but cf. **78 13**.

81 25 *adeat*: after *mandat*, which expresses a command; cf. **6 10** and note; § 565. a (331. f. R.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R.²; H. 565. 4 (499. 2): H-B. 502. 3. a.

81 *auxilio*: dat. of service or end for which. — *arcessiti* [*esse*] *dicebantur*, were reported to have been invited.

82 *Crassum*: cf. **78** 12 and note.

82 *Aquitaniæ*: in southwest Gaul; see **2** 7-10. These peoples were of different race and language from the other Gauls, and took little interest in their affairs, not even joining in the great revolt described in Book vii.

82 *Venellos*, etc.: in Normandy.

82 *distinendam*: cf. *pontem faciendum curat*, **11** 5 and note. — *Brutum*: afterwards one of the conspirators against Cæsar, with the more celebrated Marcus Brutus.

82 *Pictonibus, Santonis*: on the coast south of the Loire (*Poitou* and *Saintonge*).

82 12 *CHAP. 12. eius modi . . . ut*, of such sort that.

82 13 *lingulis*: some of these narrow tongues of land run out to sea several miles.

82 14 *cum . . . incitavisset*: i.e. at high tide. — [*bis*]: apparently an error of the MSS. Some editors read XXIV instead of XII; others refer it to the general ignorance or carelessness of ancient writers.

82 15 *quod . . . afflicterentur*: subjv. as an integral part of the result clause.

82 16 *minuente*, at the ebb: intransitive.

82 17 *utraque re*, in either case.

82 18 *superati*, agreeing with the subject of *coeperant*.

82 19 *his* (aggere ac molibus) . . . *adaequatis*, when these were brought level with the walls.

General von Göler explains the Roman works as follows: "A dike was extended along each side of the isthmus in the direction of the town. While these were building, of course with each rise of the tide the space within would be overflowed. When the dikes were nearly completed, the Romans waited until the ebb had carried off the water, and then rapidly pushed their works to completion before the next turn of the tide. Thus the sea was shut out and the isthmus left dry. Meanwhile the dikes themselves, being raised to the height of the walls, each served the purpose of an *agger* for approach to the town."

82 23 *haec . . . faciebant*, this they continued to do: repeated action.

82 24 *partem*: duration of time.

82 25 *summa*: with *difficultas*; note the emphasis. — *vasto mari*, etc.: in each of these points the ocean is contrasted with the sheltered and tideless waters of the Mediterranean. The words are abl. abs., which in expressions of time is closely related to the locative; see § 419 (255) ftn.; cf. H-B. 421. 4.

82 28 CHAP. 13. **namque**; introduces the reason for the fewer troubles of the Veneti, "(but the Veneti had less trouble) for." — **ipsorum**, *their own*.

82 29 **aliquanto**: abl. of degree of difference.

83 1 **navium**: depending on *carinae* understood. — **quo . . . possent**: cf. **7 15**, **60 27**.

83 2 **atque item puppes**, and the sterns too: **accommodatae** (*being adapted*) standing as an additional predicate.

83 4 **quamvis**: from *quivis*.

83 5 **transtra**, etc., the cross benches (for the rowers) of timbers a foot thick, fastened with iron bolts the thickness of a [man's] thumb.

83 7 **pelles**: the Romans used sails made of flax, the Veneti of skins untanned (*pelles*) or tanned (*alutae*).

83 11 **tanta onera navium**, ships of so great weight. — **non satis commode**, not very well.

83 12 **nostrae classi**: dat. of possession, but translate, *the encounter of our fleet with*, etc.

83 13 **praestaret**, had the advantage (i.e. our fleet).

83 14 **reliqua**: here a neut. plur. substantive, *everything else*.

83 15 **eis**: dat. with *nocere*; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. I (385. i); H-B. 362.

83 16 **rostris**: see Figs. 48, 51.

84 2 **copulis**: the Romans were not very skilful in naval tactics, and they always aimed, by means of grappling hooks and boarding bridges, to get aboard the enemy's ship and reduce the conflict as soon as possible to a hand-to-hand combat, in which they excelled. — **accedeat ut**, *there was this additional advantage that*, followed by the result clauses, **ferrent**, **consisterent**, and **timerent**; cf. **41 15**, **51 6**.

84 3 **se vento dedissent**, ran before the wind. The phrase is a nautical one; hence **ventus** is repeated to give the complete expression.

84 4 **consisterent**, rode at anchor.

84 5 **ab aestu relictae**: trans. *if or when*, etc.; § 496 (292); B. 337. 2. a, b; G. 664 ff.; H. 638. 2 (549. 2); H-B. 604. 3. — **nihil**: cf. **63 13** and note.

84 8 CHAP. 14. **neque**: see note on **80 11**.

84 9 **eis noceri posse**, they could be harmed. Observe that the expression is *impers.*, and cf. **56 24** and note.

84 10 **quae ubi**: cf. note on *qui cum*, **58 9**.

84 11 **paratissimae**, fully equipped; **ornatissimae**, thoroughly furnished. The battle was probably fought in the bay of Quiberon, off the heights of St. Gildas, on which Cæsar was encamped. The fleet of Crassus issued from the Loire and took a northwesterly course. Meanwhile the fleet of

the Veneti came out of the Auray estuary, and passing through the Morbihan entrance to the bay, encountered the Romans directly opposite Cæsar's camp. See Fig. 49.

84 13 *neque satis Bruto . . . constabat*, and *Brutus could not make out*. *agerent* and *insisterent* refer to Brutus and his officers.

84 14 *tribunis militum*, etc. : in the ancient modes of fighting, the fleet was only a part of the army, and was commanded by the military officers, as here.

84 16 *nocerī*, etc. : cf. similar phrase above, l. 9.

84 17 *excitatis*, *raised*. The abl. abs. has a concessive force, as is shown by the following *tamen*.

84 18 *ex barbaris navibus*, on the enemy's ships ; for force of *ex*, cf. *una ex parte*, *ex itinere*, etc.

84 20 *magno usui*, of great service (cf. *auxilio*, **81 26**), in fact turning threatened disaster to victory ; but Cæsar will not use words that hint at possible defeat.

84 22 *muralium falcium*, wall-hooks, long poles with sickle-shaped hooks attached, like those used by hook-and-ladder companies for pulling down walls (see Fig. 93). The gen. limits *formae* understood, which would be dat., after *absimili*. — *cum* = *whenever*, *as often as*, and the sentence following is a general condition, the verbs *comprehensi adductique erant* being in the protasis, and *prærumpebantur* in the apodosis expressing repeated action, which is regularly expressed in Latin by the indic. ; cf. **59 13** and note.

84 24 *prærumpebantur*, etc., *they* [the halyards] *were torn away by driving the ship forward with the oars*.

84 26 *Gallicis navibus* : dat. of reference used for poss. gen.

85 1 *paulo fortius factum* : one of Cæsar's mild expressions for *an act of remarkable daring*.

85 4 *CHAP. 15. cum*, etc. : another general condition ; see note on **84 22**. — *singulas*, etc. : i.e. two or three ships surround each one of the enemy's.

85 6 *contendebant*, expressing repeated action ; cf. with *contenderunt* below, which describes a single act ; cf. **75 10**. — *quod postquam* : cf. *quae ubi*, **84 10** and note.

85 8 *cum . . . reperiretur* : a causal clause : cf. **2 15**, **57 1**.

85 9 *conversis . . . navibus* : i.e. steered so as to run before the wind.

The prevailing winds at present towards the end of summer in this quarter are from the east or northeast, — the precise winds needed for the two fleets to have met as indicated above. Further, when these winds have blown during the morning, it usually falls calm at noon. This is

just what happened on the day of the battle. The calm was probably just after midday.

85 14 *pervenerint*, *came to land*; for the tense, cf. **28 6**, **50 22**, the perf. subjv. being used, as usual, to express past time in a result clause, without regard to sequence of tense.

85 15 *hora IIII (quarta)*: about 10 A.M.

86 2 *CHAP. 16. cum . . . tum*, *while . . . at the same time*.

86 4 *convenerant*, *coegerant*: i.e. for this war. — *quod ubique*, *all that there were anywhere*, followed by the part. gen. *navium*.

86 5 *quo*, *whither*: i.e. any refuge.

86 8 *eo gravius . . . quo*, *the more severely*, etc., *in order that*. — *vindican-dum [esse]* (impers.), *punishment should be inflicted*.

86 10 *sub corona vendidit*, *sold [as slaves] at public auction*; lit. *under the wreath*, since the captives were crowned like animals to be sacrificed, as indeed they had been in earlier times. Thus the only naval power in Gallia that could be formidable to the Romans was totally destroyed, and neither the Veneti nor their allies gave the proconsul any more trouble.

86 13 *CHAP. 17. Venellorum*: along the Channel coast of Normandy.

86 14 *his*: cf. *classi*, **84 13**.

86 16 *magnas copias*: most likely meaning here irregular troops as opposed to *exercitum*. — *his paucis diebus*: i.e. about the same time.

86 17 *Eburovices*: this branch of the Auleri lived on the south side of the lower Seine.

86 18 *nolebant*: i.e. the Senate. — *clausurunt*: i.e. against the Romans.

86 20 *perditorum*, *desperate*: there might well be many such, as it was now the third year of constant war in Gaul.

86 23 *loco, castris*: locative ablatives without a prep.; cf. **13 6**, **57 5** and note.

86 24 *cum*: concessive.

87 1 *eo absente*: i.e. Cæsar. A *legatus* regularly had no *imperium*, or independent command, but served under that of his superior.

87 3 *dimicandum [esse]*: impers., with *legato* as dat. of apparent agent.

87 8 *CHAP. 18. pro perfuga*, *in the character of a deserter*.

87 10 *neque longius ab esse quin*: an idiomatic shorthand expression amounting to *that not later than the following night Sabinus would*, etc.

87 14 *iri*: depending on *oportere*.

87 15 *superiorum dierum*, *on the previous days*: see note on *belli*, below.

87 17 *spes . . . belli*: subj. gen. denoting the source; notice that the regular way to express the relation between two substantive ideas is by the genitive. One idea is conceived as belonging to the other in some sense. See note, **62 20**.

87 18 *fere . . . credunt*, most men are glad to believe, etc.

87 19 *non prius . . . quam*, not . . . until: cf. **81 20**.

87 21 *ut . . . victoria* (abl. abs.), as if victory were already assured.

87 22 *sarmentis*, cuttings, young growth trimmed off from trees. — *virgultia*, brushwood.

87 25 **CHAP. 19.** *mille*: an indecl. adj. in agreement with *passus*.

88 1 *quam . . . spati*, as little time as possible, subj. of *daretur*.

88 2 *que*, and (consequently), as often with *-que*.

88 7 Note the emphasis on *primum* and *statim*.

88 8 *quos*: the antecedent is *eorum*.

88 15 *animus*, etc.: cf. **78 28** and note.

SOUTHERN GAUL. — The campaign in Aquitania was made merely for strategic reasons, was not provoked by any attack or threat of war, and appears to have been quite unnecessary (see note on **82 8**) as well as difficult and dangerous. The Aquitani had no strong military league or combination, but consisted of small, isolated clans, and were besides of more industrious habits than the Gauls, being good miners and engineers. As a mere narrative, however, this is an interesting episode of the war.

88 17 **CHAP. 20.** *P. Crassus*, etc.: cf. **82 2-5**.

88 18 *ante dictum est*: i.e. in **2 7-10**. Omit bracketed words in lines 18-20.

88 19 *tertia pars*: these statements show extreme ignorance, as would be natural (cf. the account of Britain, Bk. v. chs. 12-14).

88 21 *Praeconinus*, *Manlius*: these defeats were twenty-two years before (B.C. 78), when the Aquitani united with Sertorius, the leader of the Marian party, who held Spain for six years against Rome. (See Plutarch's "Life of Sertorius.")

88 26 *Tolosa et Narbone*: Tolosa was an old Gallic town; Narbo, a Roman colony established by the policy of Gaius Gracchus, B.C. 118. It became the capital of the Roman province, to which it gave its name, *Narbonensis*.

88 27 *his regionibus*: dat. after *finitimae*, which agrees with *civitates*. Omit [ex].

88 28 *nominatim evocatis*: i.e. veterans who had served their term, but were willing to reënlist. See chapter on military affairs, IV. *a.* — *Sotiatium*: south of the Garonne, southeast of the modern Bordeaux; the name remains in the modern *Sôts*.

89 5 **CHAP. 21.** *superioribus victoriis*: i.e. those just related; § 431. *a* (254. *b*. 2); B. 218. 3; G. 401. N.⁶; H. 476. 3 (425. *ii*. 1. N.); H-B. 424.

89 7 *sine imperatore . . . adolescentulo duce*: an *imperator* is the chief commander of an army, holding the *imperium*, or power of military command conferred on him by regular formalities; *dux* is a general designation for any person holding a command, and might be given to a subordinate officer, like Crassus, who acted as an agent and under the *imperium* of his superiors.

89 9 *perspici*: the subject is the indir. quest. *quid . . . possent*.

89 12 *vineas turrisque egit*: see chapter on military affairs, VIII, and Figs. 33, 43, 78, 98, 99.

89 13 *cuniculia, mines* (lit. *rabbits*), so called from their likeness to rabbits' burrows. The mine was intended to run under the Roman *agger*. The roof was carefully propped up with wooden posts, and these being set on fire, when they were burned through, the entire mass of Roman works would fall into the pit.

89 15 *aerariae secturaeque*: this seems to mean *copper mines and quarries* (not entirely underground); but the meaning of the words is not perfectly clear. — *diligentia*: the Romans doubtless met the attack with countermines.

89 18 *faciunt, they do* (it).

89 21 CHAP. 22. *soldurios, paid retainers* (hence *soldiers*), a Gallic word. It is related that these *soldurii* were dressed in royal garments like their chief.

89 22 *condicio*: the same condition of service was found among the Germans (Bk. vi. ch. 23), and was the foundation of feudal vassalage. — *commodis*: abl. with *fruuntur*.

89 23 *quorum amicitiae, to whose friendship*. — *si quid . . . accidat*: a euphemism, cf. 16 14.

89 24 *sibi mortem, etc.*: cf. 4 15.

89 26 *qui . . . recusaret*: rel. clause of characteristic; cf. 5 6, 51 4.

89 27 *cum his* (repeated from *cum devotis*; cf. repetition of *vidit*, 67 7), *with these* (I say).

90 4 CHAP. 23. *Vocatium, etc.*: these were farther west.

90 7 *quibus, within which*.

90 8 *quoqueversus, in every direction* (*quoque*, the adverb of *place* formed from the distributive *quisque*; *versus*, the adverb of *direction* usually connected with prepositions, as *ad-versus*). It is often written *quoquoversum*.

90 10 *citerioris*: i.e. from the standpoint of Rome; now northern Spain. — *Hispaniae*: these Iberian populations were allied to the Aquitani (Bk. i. ch. 1). Spain had been subject to Rome for more than 150 years, but was always rather mutinous, and had made several attempts at

independence, especially under Sertorius, who defied Rome for ten years, B.C. 82-72; see note on 88 21. It was also the last stronghold of Pompey's party in the Civil War, till finally subdued at Munda, B.C. 45. — *finitimæ*: pred. adj. agreeing with *quæ*.

90 15 *consuetudine populi Romani*: a custom which they had learned in the service with Sertorius.

90 16 *loca capere*, etc.: i.e. to practise Roman tactics.

90 18 *suas . . . augeri*, etc.: these infin. clauses are in app. with *quod*. — *diduci*, be stationed in various places, to keep track of the enemy and prevent being surrounded.

90 22 *decertaret*: subjv. of result with *quin* after *cunctandum* [*esse*]; § 558 (319. d); B. 283. 4; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); cf. H-B. 502. 3. b; cf. 29 5, 50 9, 50 25.

90 25 CHAP. 24. *duplici*: i.e. two cohorts in depth. His numbers were too few to allow the usual formation of three (*triplex acies*).

90 26 *in mediam aciem*: i.e. where they would be kept steady by his legionaries. Their ordinary position was on the wings.

90 27 *expectabat*, waited (to see) what, etc.

91 1 *obsessis viis . . . potiri*, to block the roads, cut off supplies, and win the victory without a wound.

91 3 *sese recipere*: i.e. to withdraw from Aquitania.

91 4 *infirmiores animo*, dispirited: § 253; B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441. — *adoriri cogitabant*, had in mind to attack; sc. *eos* for obj., and see note on 62 18.

91 5 *productis copiis*: concessive (= *although*, etc.).

91 6 *sua*, their own.

91 7 *opinione timoris*, the notion (they had given) of their own cowardice.

91 9 *oportere*: depending on some word of *saying* implied in *voces*. — *iretur*: cf. note on *decertaret*, 90 22. Translate freely, *that they should go to the camp without further delay*.

91 10 *ad hostium castra*: this is the only instance in the Commentaries of an attack by Romans on a fortified Gallic camp. The fight usually took place on a level stretch between the hostile camps. The Romans always chose their battle-ground with great care.

91 11 CHAP. 25. *telis coniectis* (abl. abs.), by hurling weapons.

91 13 *quibus*: abl. with *confidebat*; § 431 (254. b); B. 219. 1. a; G. 401. 6; H. 476. 3 (425. i. 1. N.); H-B. 437.

91 14 *lapidibus . . . comportandis*: gerundive expression of means. — *aggerem*: i.e. Crassus was building a mound of turf to equal the height of the enemy's rampart, as in the siege of a city.

91 15 *opinionem pugnantium*: i.e. they made an impression as if actually engaged.

92 2 *ex loco*, etc.: i.e. as they stood on the rampart of the camp.

92 4 *ab decumana porta*: i.e. *in the rear*, where this gate was situated (see Fig. 77). The Gauls appear here to have adopted the Roman mode of constructing camps, probably under the instruction of the Sertorian officers.

92 9 CHAP. 26. *praesidio castris*: cf. 22 6, 54 3.

92 13 *prius . . . quam*: this is often used with the indic. to show that one actual fact precedes another, just as succession is denoted by *postquam*. Here the subjv. subordinates the temporal clause to the main idea, like the subjv. with *cum*; cf. also 57 20 and note.

92 14 *videri*: sc. *possent* from the following *posset*. — *rei*: part. gen.

92 18 *per*, *over*.

92 20 *apertissimis campis* (see note on 62 27): i.e. the broad, treeless plains which abound in this part of the country.

92 21 *quae*: acc. plur.; the antecedent is *milium*. — *Cantabris*: a very hardy people of the western Pyrenees.

92 26 CHAP. 27. *Tarbelli*, etc.: some of the names will be recognized in the modern *Tarbes*, *Bigorre*, *Garonne*.

92 28 *tempore*: cf. note on 91 13.

93 2 CHAP. 28. *omni Gallia pacata*, while all the rest of Gaul was subdued. — *Morini*, etc.: on the islands and low coast lands of Flanders and further north.

93 3 *qui . . . essent*: cf. 89 26 and note. — *neque*: cf. 80 11.

93 4 *arbitratus*, *thinking*: the perf. part. of dep. verbs often has a present force.

93 5 *alia . . . ac*: cf. 62 6.

93 8 *continentis*, *continuous*: i.e. far-stretching.

93 15 *longius*, *too far* (farther than was safe). — *locis*: loc. abl., as usual without a prep.

93 17 CHAP. 29. *deinceps*: i.e. in the days next following.

93 18 *inermibus . . . militibus*: abl. abs.

93 20 *conversam*, *fronting*, i.e. with the boughs turned towards the enemy. — *pro vallo*, *as a palisade*.

93 23 *tenerentur*, etc.: i.e. were just being seized.

93 24 *eius modi . . . uti . . . intermitteretur*, such that the work was constantly interrupted.

93 26 *sub pellibus*: the tents were of leather.

93 28 *Aulercis*, etc.: along the Seine, near Evreux and Lisieux.

BOOK FOURTH. — B.C. 55.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE GERMANS. — The year B.C. 55 appears to have been marked by a general movement in the migration of the German tribes. An advance, consisting of two tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, crowded forward by the more powerful Suevi, crossed the lower Rhine into northern Gaul. Cæsar assumed the defence of the country he had just conquered, drove them back across the Rhine, followed them up by an expedition into their own territories, and fully established the supremacy of the Roman arms. Another brief campaign in Germany two years later confirmed this success, and the Rhine became the military frontier, recognized for many centuries, between the Roman Empire and the barbarian world.

READING REFERENCES ON THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE GERMANS.

- Dodge's *Cæsar*, chap. 10.
 Fowler's *Julius Cæsar*, chap. 12.
 Froude's *Cæsar*, chap. 16.
 Holmes's *Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul*, chap. 5.
 Merivale's *Hist. of Rome*, Vol. I. pp. 365-375.
 Mommsen's *Hist. of Rome*, Vol. IV. pp. 309-312.
 Napoleon's *Cæsar*, Vol. II. chap. 7.
 Plutarch's *Lives*, *Cæsar*.
 Tacitus's *Germania*.
 Trollope's *Cæsar*, chap. 5.

94 1 *ea quæ*, etc.: mark the emphasis as shown by the order and compare the opening of Bk. iii and note. — **Pompeio, Crasso**: i.e. the year B.C. 55. Observe that the usual way of fixing a year is by naming the consuls for that year. The coalition between Cæsar, Pompey, and Crassus, sometimes called the First Triumvirate, had been formed five years before. In carrying out the scheme, Cæsar held the government of Gaul, while the others took into their own hands the whole control of affairs at home (see Introduction, "Life of Cæsar").

94 2 *Usipetes, Tencteri*: beyond the Rhine, a little below Cologne.

94 4 *quo*: adv. = *in quod*.

94 5 *quod . . . prohibebantur*: Cæsar states this reason as his own, therefore the indic. — *Suevis*: this people (the modern *Swabians*) occupied the greater part of central Germany, and was made up of several tribes.

94 6 *premebantur, prohibebantur*: the imperfects here express that which was still going on, *they were being hard pressed*, etc.

94 8 *centum pagos* (see 10 12): there is probably some confusion here with the ancient German institution of the *Hundred*, a division of the population giving its name to a district of territory. Each *hundred* seems

to have sent 1000 men (*singula milia*) to the army. The term early lost its numerical value, and became a mere local designation.

94 9 *bellandi causa*: gerund, expressing purpose with *causa*. Observe that *causa* in this use always follows its case; cf. above *causa transeundi*, with a totally different meaning.

94 11 *hi . . . illi, the latter . . . the former*.—*anno post, the following year*: § 424. *f* (259. *d*); B. 357. 1; G. 403. N.⁴; H. 488. 1 (430); cf. H-B. 424.

94 12 *ratio, theory* (theoretical knowledge); *usus, practice* (knowledge derived from experience).

94 13 *sed*: i.e. they attended to agriculture systematically, *but*, etc.—*privati . . . agri*: i.e. the land was held in tribal communities.

94 14 *longius anno*: i.e. the community had no fixed possessions, but was transferred yearly from one tract to another, its place being taken by another community. As is shown in Bk. vi. ch. 22, the community was composed of persons kindred by birth. The annual shifting of occupancy would prevent at once forming local attachments, building up large properties, and too rapidly exhausting the soil.

94 15 *frumento* (abl. of means), etc.: they were still in a half-nomadic state, though with some little advance in agriculture (cf. Bk. vi. ch. 22, and Tacitus, Ger. 27).—*maximam partem*: adv. acc.; it is worth while to learn the few words that commonly occur in this construction; § 390. *c*, 397. *a* (240. *a*, *b*); B. 185. 1; G. 334. R.²; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 388.

94 17 *quae res*: cf. note on 30 19.

95 1 *quod . . . faciunt*: this clause is a parenthesis; *because, having been trained from childhood to no service or discipline, they do nothing whatever against their will*,—a lively contrast of barbarous manners with the severity of Roman family and civil discipline.

95 3 *alit*: the subject is *quae res*.—*homines [eos] efficit, makes [them] men*, etc.

95 4 *eam*: correl. with *ut*, introducing a clause of result.—*locis* (abl. abs., concessive) *frigidissimis, even in their extreme climate*.

95 5 *vestitus*: part. gen. with *quicquam*.—*haberent, have; laverentur, bathe*: imperf. by sequence of tenses following *adduxerunt*; § 485. *a* (287. *a*); B. 268. 1; G. 511. R.³; H. 546 (495. *i*); H-B. 481.

95 8 CHAP. 2. *eo ut . . . habeant, so* (on this account) *that they may have* (some one) *to whom*, etc.

95 9 *quam quo . . . desiderent, than that they want*, etc. For the use of *quo* expressing cause with the implied negative, see § 502. N. (341. R.); B. 323; G. 541. N.²; H. 588. ii. 2 (516. 2); H-B. 535. 2. *h*.

95 11 *impenso pretio, at high cost*.—*importatis non utuntur, do not import for use* (lit. *do not use imported*).

95 13 *deformis*, *ill-shaped*. — *summi laboris*, (capable) of great labor (gen. of quality).

95 20 *quamvis pauci*, *however few*. — *vinum*: cf. the description of the Nervii, 59 22–26. They drank a kind of beer, however, and mead made of honey.

95 23 CHAP. 3. *publice*, *as a community*.

95 26 *una* . . . *Suevia*, extending from (the territory of) the *Suevi* in one direction. — *sexcenta*: probably exaggerated. — *agri*, *their lands*.

95 27 *Ubii*: along the Rhine, opposite Cologne.

96 1 *paulo* . . . *humaniores*, *somewhat more civilized than the others*, *although they are of the same race* (Germans).

96 4 *cum*: concessive, as shown by the following *tamen*.

96 5 *gravitatem*, *importance*, referring to the warlike character and extensive resources of the people; while *amplitudinem* refers to their great numbers.

96 7 *vectigalis*: sc. *eos* referring to the *Ubii*. — *humiliores* (pred.): in translating sc. *so as to be*.

96 9 CHAP. 4. *in eadem causa*, *in the same situation*.

96 12 *quas regiones*: North Brabant, with the north bank of the Rhine.

96 13 *ad utramque ripam*, *along both banks*.

96 14 *multitudinis*: see 102 10.

96 16 *cis Rhenum*: i.e. the west side.

96 18 *vi contendere*, *to force a passage*.

96 22 *confecto*: with *itinere*.

96 23 *oppresserunt*: not *oppressed*; see note on *obtinere*, 2 1.

97 2 *priusquam* . . . *fieret*: § 551. *b* (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. ii (520. ii); H-B. 507. 4. *b*; see also note on 38 27.

97 5 *partem*: acc. of time. — *eorum copiis*, *on their supplies* (cattle and grain).

97 6 CHAP. 5. *infirmatatem*, *weakness of purpose* = *fickleness*.

97 8 *nihil* . . . *committendum*, *no confidence should be placed in them*. Observe that *committendum* [*esse*] is impers. and *nihil* adv. acc.

97 9 *est* . . . *consuetudinis*, *it is* [a point] of *Gallic custom*: § 343. *c* (214. *d*); B. 198. 3; G. 366. R.¹; H. 439 (401); H-B. 340. — *uti* . . . *cogant*, etc.: we have here a number of clauses of result in app. with *hoc*.

97 14 *rebus atque auditionibus*, *facts and hearsays*.

97 15 *quorum eos* . . . *paenitere*: § 354. *b* (221. *b*); B. 209. 1; G. 377; H. 457 (409. iii); H-B. 352. — *in vestigio*, *on the spot*: cf. 95 16.

97 16 *serviant*, *are slaves to*. — *plerique*: i.e. the travellers and traders.

97 17 *eorum*: i.e. the questioners.

97 18 CHAP. 6. *graviori bello*, too serious a war (i.e. unmanageable): § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

97 19 *maturius*, earlier, i.e. in the season. — *ad exercitum*: the army was now in Normandy; see 93 28.

97 20 *facta*: sc. *esse*; so with *missas* below.

97 21 *missas legationes*, etc.: these infin. clauses explain *ea*.

97 22 *uti . . . discederent*: i.e. further into Gaul. The Belgæ, it will be remembered, claimed kindred with the Germans, and were no doubt ready to assist them against the Romans.

97 23 *postulassent*: for fut. perf. of dir. disc.; § 478, 519, 585 (281, 316, 336, B); B. 264, 312. 2, 318; G. 244, 516; H. 644. 2 (525. 2); H-B. 468. 6, 536, 470. ftn.¹ — *fore parata*, should be made ready (used for the fut. infin. pass.). It depends on some word of saying, like *promiserunt*, implied in *invitados*. Instead of *fore parata*, we might expect *fore ut pararentur*.

97 24 *Eburonum*, etc.: German tribes.

97 27 *permulsis*, calmed from their terror (lit. *soothed by stroking*, like a nervous horse).

98 1 CHAP. 7. *equitibus delectis*: each of the allied states furnished its quota of cavalry.

98 3 *a quibus*: refers to *locis*.

98 5 *priores*, first, or, as *aggressors* (cf. the language of Ariovistus, Bk. i. ch. 36). — *neque recusare*, they do not decline, followed by *quin* and subjv.; cf. 50 25.

98 7 [*haec*]: may be translated. — *quicumque*: the antecedent is *eis* (dat.) implied with *resistere*.

98 8 *neque deprecari*, and ask no quarter (lit. *and not beg off*). — *haec tamen dicere*, this however they did say; supply *se* for subj. of *dicere* and following infinitives. For similar instances, see 59 23, 71 6, 71 23.

98 10 *eis*: i.e. to the Romans. — *attribuant*, subjv. in indir. disc. for *imv.* of the direct.

98 11 *eos*: sc. *agros*.

98 12 *concedere*, yield, as inferior.

98 13 *reliquum . . . neminem*: the position gives a force like, BESIDES THESE there was no one ELSE on earth, etc.

98 15 CHAP. 8. *quae visum est*, what (it) seemed proper (to answer). He probably answered somewhat as in Bk. i. chs. 14 and 43.

98 20 *Ubiorum*: see ch. 3.

98 21 *quorum sint*, etc., whose envoys (he informs them) are now with him to (lit. and) complain, etc.

98 25 CHAP. 9. *post diem tertium* (= *tertio die*), i.e. the next day but one. The first and last days are usually counted in the Roman reckoning.

98 26 *propius se*: cf. 41 10. — *id*: i.e. the two days' delay (expressed by *ne . . . moyeret*).

99 1 *trans*: i.e. westwardly.

99 2 *expectari*: change the voice and translate as active, *they were waiting for*.

99 4 CHAP. 10. *Vosego*, the *Vosges*: in fact, the Meuse flows from the plateau of Langres.

99 5 *parte . . . recepta*: the Rhine branches in these low, marshy regions; one branch (*Vacalus*, the modern *Waal*) unites with the Meuse near Bois le Duc (see note, ch. 15).

99 6 Omit the words in brackets.

99 9 *Nantuatium*: cf. Bk. iii. ch. 1, where they are placed upon the Rhone, just above Lake Geneva; this was perhaps a branch or kindred tribe. The list of names here is incomplete.

99 12 *multis . . . effectis*: translate actively, *making many*, etc.

99 13 *feris . . . nationibus*: see the introduction to Motley's "Dutch Republic."

99 15 *capitibus*, *mouths* (more commonly, *sources*).

99 17 CHAP. 11. *ut erat constitutum*, as had been arranged (i.e. the return of the envoys). Either this is a careless expression, or Cæsar's consent is omitted in ch. 9. It is there stated merely that they said they would return.

99 19 *eos equites* (antecedent to *qui*), *the cavalry who*, etc.

99 20 *antecessissent*: attracted into the subjv. by the *ut*-clause; cf. 73 5. — *praemitteret*: used without an object; translate *send word*.

99 21 *sibi*: i.e. the Germans. — *potestatem*: see note on 16 7.

99 22 *quorum si*, and *if their*: cf. note on *qui cum*, 58 9.

99 23 *condicione . . . usuros*, *would accept the terms*: see ch. 8.

99 25 *daret*: sc. *petebant uti* from l. 19. — *eodem illo pertinere*, *tended the same way* (see ch. 9), i.e. to gain time till the German cavalry should arrive (*eodem* and *illo* are adverbs).

99 28 *aquationis causa*: a small stream (probably the Niers) lay between him and the German encampment.

100 3 *accessisset*: § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5.

100 5 CHAP. 12. *amplius DCCC*, *more than eight hundred*: § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R.⁴; H. 471. 4 (417. I. N.²); H-B. 416. d. Tacitus in his "Germania" (chap. 32) says that this tribe was distinguished for cavalry.

100 9 *indutiis*: dat. of the end for which.

100 10 *resistentibus*: sc. *nostris*.

100 11 *subfossia*, etc.: *after stabbing our horses underneath and dismounting several of our men*; observe again, as in **99 12**, that an abl. abs. with a pass. part. is often best translated actively.

100 14 *venissent*: cf. **97 2**.

100 17 *genere*: abl. of source; § 403. *a* (244. *a*); B. 215; G. 395; H. 469. 2 (415. ii); H-B. 413. — *regnum obtinuerat*, *had held supreme power*.

100 20 *quoad*: cf. this use and construction with that in l. 2.

100 25 CHAP. 13. *neque iam*, *no longer*: knowing how little his own cavalry (of Gauls) were to be trusted, and that the arrival of the main body of the Germans would put them at once to flight, Cæsar resolved to attack at the first opportunity, right or wrong.

100 26 *ab eis qui*, *from men who*, etc., followed by the subjv. of characteristic.

101 1 *exspectare*: subject of *esse*; note the emphasis of position.

101 2 *pementiae*: pred. gen.

101 3 *quantum . . . auctoritatis*, etc., *how great prestige the enemy had gained by one battle*.

101 5 *quibus*: i.e. the enemy (dat., indir. obj. of *dandum [esse]*); on the relative serving as a connective, see note, **40 20**.

101 7 *quaestore*: see Bk. i. ch. 52. — *ne quem*, etc.: cf. **71 21**.

101 8 *res*, in app. with *quod . . . venerunt*.

101 9 *eadem perfidia*: their perfidy Cæsar takes for granted, as the best apology for his own; but the presence of the chiefs and old men looks more as if they came, as they said, to offer amends for the attack of the day before.

101 11 *simul . . . simul*, *partly . . . partly*. — *purgandi sui*: cf. **77 3**, and see § 504. *c* (298. *a*); B. 339. 5; G. 428. R.¹; H. 626. 3 (542. I. N.¹); H-B. 614.

101 12 *contra atque*, *contrary to what*; see Vocab. Observe the subjunctives of implied indir. disc. in this passage.

101 13 *si quid . . . de indutiis*, *whatever* (lit. *if anything*) *they could in the way of truce*.

101 14 *fallendo*: i.e. by another trick. — *quos, illos*: both refer to the same subject. — *quos oblato [esse] gavisus*, *delighted that they were put in his power* (*gavisus*, from *gaudeo*). By detaining their chief men, he would at once perplex and disable them.

101 17 *subsequi*, *to follow in the rear*; they usually went in advance (cf. **99 20**), but now he could not trust them in the intended attack.

101 18 CHAP. 14. *acie triplici*: i.e. a march in line of battle; see chapter on military affairs, VI and VII.

101 19 *quid ageretur*, *what was going on*.

101 20 **possent**: cf. 97 2, 100 14.

101 21 **et . . . et, both . . . and.**

101 23 **ne . . . an . . . an**: § 335 (211); B. 162. 4; G. 458; H. 380 (353); H-B. 234; the three infinitives all belong to **præstaret**, *whether it was better*.

101 24 **quorum timor cum**: note the emphatic order.

101 29 **reliqua multitudo**: the presence of women and children shows that it was a migration for settlement, not a mere inroad for plunder.

102 1 **ad quos consecrandos** (freq. of *sequor*), *to hunt them down*. Referring to this massacre of helpless fugitives, Plutarch, in his "Life of Cæsar," writes that when the Senate was voting public thanksgiving and processions on account of the victory, Cato proposed that Cæsar should be given up to the barbarians to expiate that breach of faith, in order that the divine vengeance might fall upon its author rather than upon Rome. Cato was Cæsar's bitter political and personal enemy, but still Cæsar's cruelty and perfidy in this transaction can be justified only on the ground of absolute necessity. To secure the Roman power, he must destroy these Germans in order to establish the Rhine as the Gallic frontier and deter others from crossing.

102 3 **CHAP. 15. Germani**: i.e. those who were fighting.—**clamore**: i.e. of those who were being massacred.

102 4 **signis**: figures of animals carried on poles; see Figs. 11, 84, 91.

102 6 **reliqua fuga, further flight.**

This action is usually placed at the junction of the Rhine and the Meuse. There are many reasons against this, but no other location seems possible without doing violence to the text, and for this no sufficient case is made out.

102 9 **ex . . . timore**, (relieved) *from the apprehension of so great a war*.

102 12 **discedendi potestatem**, *permission to depart*. This was a practical acquittal of the charge of treachery.

102 13 **veriti**: regularly pres. act. in force, *fearing*.

102 17 **CHAP. 16. illa, the following.**

102 19 **suis**: note the emphasis on this word.

102 20 **cum intellegent**: here nearly equivalent to a participle.

102 21 **accessit quod, and besides**: see Vocab.

102 22 **quam . . . transisse, which, as I mentioned above, had crossed**: see 98 27 ff. (the conj. *that* of indir. disc. cannot be used in English to introduce a rel. clause). Observe that Cæsar the *writer* uses the first person (**commemoravi**); Cæsar the *actor* is always in the third.

102 25 **Sugambrorum**: living just north of the Ubii.

102 27 *intulissent*: cf. *antecessissent*, **99** 20. — *dederent*: observe the omission of *ut*; § 565. *a* (331. *f. R.*); B. 295. 8; G. 546. *R.*²; H. 565. 4 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. *a. ftn.*².

102 28 *finire*: see introductory note to Bk. iv.

103 1 *aequum*: pred. adj. agreeing with the infin. clause *Germanos . . . transire*.

103 2 *sui . . . imperi*: pred. gen. of possession after *esse*, *under his power*.

103 7 *occupationibus rei publicae*, *by the demands of state affairs*.

103 8 *transportaret*: same construction as *ferret*.

103 9 *futurum* [*esse*]: sc. verb of saying from *orabant*, l. 5; so, too, for the following sentence.

103 17 CHAP. 17. *dignitatis*: cf. **103** 2.

103 19 *latitudinem*, etc.: Cæsar's passage of the Rhine was most probably at Bonn, where the high and rocky banks begin; or at Neuwied, 20 or 25 miles further south, where there is a break in the chain of hills, though here, it is said, the bottom is rock, and not fit for driving piles. The width of the river at either place is about 1400 feet, and its depth is very variable. It is now crossed in these parts by bridges.

103 21 *rationem, plan.* The brief description which Cæsar gives of his rough-and-ready but very serviceable engineering may be made clearer by giving its different points as follows (see Fig. 59): —

1. A pair of unhewn logs, a foot and a half thick (*tigna bina sesquipedalia*), braced two feet apart and sharpened at the end, are set up by derricks and driven with pile drivers (*fistucis*) into the bottom, sloping a little with the stream.

2. A similar pair is driven in opposite, 40 feet below, sloping a little in the other direction against the stream; the upper ends of the two pairs would thus be some 25 or 30 feet apart, the width of the roadway. It is possible, as Rüstow thinks, that the 40 feet refer to the top and not to the bottom of the piles.

3. A beam of square timber, two feet thick (*trabs bipedalis*), and about 30 feet long, is made fast at the ends by ties (*fibulis*) between the logs of each pair, — which are thus kept at a proper distance apart, while they are strongly braced against the current.

4. A suitable number (probably about 60) of these trestles, or timber-arches, having been built and connected by cross-ties, — this part of the structure must be taken for granted, — planks are then laid lengthwise of the bridge (*directa materia*), resting on the heavy floor-timbers; and upon these, again, saplings and twigs (*longurii, crates*) are spread, to prevent the jar and wear of the carts and hoofs of the pack-animals on the flooring.

5. Piles (*sublicae*) are then driven in below, resting obliquely against the logs, to which they serve as shores or buttresses (*pro ariete*), and other heavier piles a little way above, to break the force of floating logs or boats sent down to destroy the bridge.

103 22 *tigna*, probably unhewn logs. — *bina*, *two and two*, i.e. in pairs.

103 24 *pedum duorum*: i.e. between the timbers of each pair. — *cum* . . . *defixerat*, etc.: *cum* here equals *whenever* or *as often as* and the clause is equivalent to the protasis of a general condition; hence the use of the pluperf. indic.; cf. 84 22 and note.

103 26 *sublicae modo*, *like a pile*.

103 27 *ut* . . . *procumbent, so as to lean forward in the direction of the current*.

103 29 *ab inferiore parte, downstream*. — *contra* . . . *conversa, slanting against*, agrees with *duo* [*tigna*].

103 30 *haec utraque* . . . *distinebantur, these two sets (or pairs) were held apart by two-foot timbers laid on above, equal [in thickness] to the interval left by the fastening of the piles (quantum . . . distabat), with a pair of ties at each end*. For number of *utraque*, see Vocab.

104 2 *quibus [tignis]* . . . *revinctis, after these were held apart and secured in opposite directions*: i.e. the horizontal beams held the piles (*tigna*) apart, which, sloping in opposite directions, had been secured by the clamps.

104 4 *rerum, structure*: see note on 4 4. — *quo maior . . . hoc artius*: *the greater . . . the more closely*, abl. of degree of difference. The only doubtful part of the description is in *fibulis*, of which the exact meaning is somewhat uncertain. They are thought by some to be cross-ties (as, in Fig. 86). But, as the word means properly a kind of clasp exactly like a modern safety-pin, it seems better to suppose they were clamps joining the two piles with perhaps an iron bolt put through, answering to the pin of the fibula.

104 5 *haec* . . . *contexebantur, these (the framework of timber) were covered with boards placed lengthwise*.

104 7 *sublicae* . . . *agebantur, piles also were driven on the lower side in a slanting direction, so as to prop the bridge against the current*.

104 8 *pro ariete, as a buttress*.

104 10 *aliae item*: other piles a little way above, to serve as a break-water. There is nothing in the text to show whether these were attached to the bridge or not. — *spatio*: abl. of degree of difference.

104 11 *deiciendi operis, to throw down the work*: pred. gen. expressing tendency or purpose; § 504. a. N.¹ (298. R.); B. 339. 6; G. 428. R.²; H. 626. 5 (544. N.²); H-B. 616, last example.

104 12 neu . . . nocerent, and that they [trunci, etc.] might not harm the bridge.

104 14 CHAP. 18. diebus X quibus, within ten days from the time when. — coepta erat: pass. because used with the pass. infin.; cf. 53 6; see also I. 20 below.

104 15 traducitur: the histor. pres., resumed from 102 21.

104 16 Sugambrorum: these were a little to the northeast of the bridge.

104 21 hortantibus eis, etc.: i.e. the few who had escaped the massacre of ch. 15, and had taken refuge across the Rhine.

104 23 in solitudinem: notice that the Latin construction is that following verbs of motion, on account of the meaning of *abdiderant*; we say *hid in*, etc.

104 27 CHAP. 19. pollicitus: this word implies a main clause in the infin., *se daturum*, on which the conditional clause would depend. This clause does not appear, but the dependent clause remains in the subjv. according to the rule.

104 28 premerentur: a good example of the subjv. in implied indir. disc.; see note on 32 21.

105 1 per exploratores: cf. note on 57 3.

105 3 uti . . . convenirent: object clauses of purpose, following the verbal phrase *nuntios . . . dimisisse*, which involves an idea of sending orders or advice. The rest of the sentence contains only statements and is therefore in the indir. disc. construction.

105 5 hunc, etc., *this had been selected about the middle*, etc.: *medium* is used as a pred. agreeing with *hunc* in preference to an adverbial phrase *in medio*; § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 325. R.⁶; H. 497. 4 (440. N.²); H-B. 244.

105 7 decertare: not merely *fight*, but *fight the decisive battle* or *decide the issue*. This force of *de* is very common.

105 10 ut . . . liberaret, etc.: these clauses are in app. with *rebus*, and their form as result clauses is determined by *confectis*; see note on 4 17. In English some change of construction is often necessary in such cases. Here, *having accomplished*, etc. (namely), *inspired*, . . . *chastised*, . . . *relieved*.

105 13 arbitratu: cf. 52 7 and note.

FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN.—What is called the First Invasion of Britain, though it marks an interesting date in history, gave fresh stimulus to Roman curiosity and ambition, and had a significant moral effect, was in itself an affair of small account. It was, in fact, only meant for a reconnaissance, or, perhaps, to open the way to further schemes. Towards the end of summer, Cæsar sailed across to the cliffs of Dover, coasted a few miles towards the west, and established a camp

on the British coast. His cavalry, meanwhile, had been weatherbound in their transports, and then, after crossing, were driven back by rough winds, so that they did not even come to land. After holding an uneasy and perilous position for about three weeks, he returned to Gaul without accomplishing anything beyond a barren display of daring. This expedition was, in fact, only intended for a "demonstration." Yet, as the beginning of the national history of England, the event assumes great interest and importance, so that it has given rise to volumes of comment and discussion both in France and England.

READING REFERENCES ON THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN.

- Abbott's *Julius Cæsar*, pp. 97-106.
 Dodge's *Cæsar*, chap. 11.
 Fowler's *Julius Cæsar*, chap. 12.
 Froude's *Cæsar*, chap. 16.
 Merivale's *Hist. of Rome*, Vol. I. pp. 375-383.
 Mommsen's *Hist. of Rome*, Vol. IV. pp. 312, 313.
 Napoleon's *Cæsar*, Vol. II. chap. 7.
 Scarth's *Roman Britain*, chap. 2.
 Tacitus's *Agricola*.

105 15 CHAP. 20. *exigua . . . reliqua* : abl. abs.; translate by a temporal clause.

105 16 *ad septentriones, towards the north* (see Vocab.): cf. **1 1 ff.**

105 18 *omnibus bellis* : abl. of time. — *hostibus* : dat. after *subministrata*.

105 19 *si . . . tamen, even if time should fail, still, etc.*

105 20 *fore* : the subject is practically the clause *si . . . cognovisset, he thought it would be of great advantage if, etc.* In all languages the proper subject is often absorbed in some different form of expression; here it is properly "that fact," "that result," implied in the conditional clause. The idiom is the same in English except that we supply "it."

105 21 *adisset, etc.* : the pluperf. represents the fut. perf. *adierit* of dir. disc. Observe in this sentence that while *Cæsar's action* is given in the perf. (*contendit*), his *reasons* are in the imperf. (*intellegebat, arbitrabatur*): cf. note on **3 5**. The conditional clauses *si deficeret, si adisset, etc.*, are strictly fut. conditions carried into the past by the indir. disc.

105 22 *quæ omnia, all of which* : § 346. *e* (216. *e*); B. 201. 1. *b*; G. 370. R.²; H. 442. 2 (397. 2. N.); H-B. 346. *c*. For the order, cf. **94 17, 30 19** and note.

105 23 *Gallis . . . incognita* : probably they were not so uninformed as they seemed; cf. the relations of Commius, **106 13-17**, and of the Veneti, **78 19**. — *neque enim* : neg. of *etenim*, to be rendered with *quisquam, for no one*; § 324. *h* (156. *d*); cf. B. 341. 2. *d*; G. 498. N.⁸; cf. H-B. 311. 6. *a* and *b*.

105 24 *illo*: adv.; see Vocab. — *neque . . . quicquam*, and *nothing*: observe that, as usual, the negative combines with the connective. — *eis*: dat. after *notum*; § 375 (232. *a*); B. 189. 2; G. 354; H. 431. 2 (388. 1); H-B. 373. 2.

105 25 *Gallias*: i.e. Celtic and Belgic Gaul.

105 26 *vocatis . . . mercatoribus*, etc.; *he called the traders, but could not*, etc.

105 27 *quanta . . . portus*: these indir. questions follow *reperire poterat*. Notice that the imperf. *poterat* is used rather than *potuit*, referring to his repeated questions to the different traders.

105 28 *quem usum, what degree of skill*. — *belli*: cf. note on 41 14.

106 1 CHAP. 21. *faceret*: the subjv. here indicates a purpose or calculation in Cæsar's mind. The perf. ind. would refer only to priority of time; § 551 (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. 2 (520. i. 2); cf. H-B. 507. 4. *a*; see also 38 27 and note. The English idiom expresses this by some such phrase as "before making the attempt."

106 2 *idoneum*: this remark seems to have reference to his actual want of success, as appears later. — *Volusenum*: one of Cæsar's tribunes; see 77 11. — *navi longa*: see chapter on military affairs, IX, and Figs. 48, 51.

106 5 *Morinos*, occupying the nearest point to Britain (Boulogne, Calais, Ostend, etc.): in clear weather the British coast is in sight from these shores.

106 7 *quam . . . classem*: § 307. *b* (200. *b*); B. 251. 4; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6. — *Veneticum bellum*: see Bk. iii. chs. 7-16.

106 9 *insulae*: Britain was supposed to be an island, but the fact was not established, so far as we know, until more than a century later, when the Romans sailed around it.

106 10 *qui polliceantur*: a purpose clause, but in English best expressed by the pres. part.

106 11 *dare*: complem. infin., instead of *se daturus [esse]*, a use not uncommon in Cæsar, and apparently somewhat colloquial; § 580. *c. n.* (330. *f. n.*); cf. B. 328. 1; G. 531. *N.⁴*; H. 618. 1 (537. *N.*); H-B. 593. *a.* — *imperio*: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385); H-B. 362.

106 14 *Atrebatibus* (see Bk. ii. chs. 4, 16, 23): the same people, it is said, had occupied Berkshire in England, whence the supposed influence of Commius. — *ibi*: i.e. among the Atrebates; § 321. *a* (207. *a*); G. 611. *R.¹*; H. 308. 2 (304. iii. 2).

106 16 *fidelem*, etc.: perhaps Cæsar says this in view of the fact that Commius afterwards turned against him; see Bk. vii. ch. 76.

106 17 magni: gen. of indefinite value; § 417 (252. a); B. 203. 3; G. 380; H. 448 (404); H-B. 356. 1. — **huic**: indir. obj. of *imperat*; the order he gave is the whole clause down to *nuntiet*.

106 18 fidem sequantur, i.e. *accept the protection of*.

106 19 se: i.e. Cæsar, the main subject, as usual in indir. disc.

106 20 quantum (sc. *tantum*) . . . *auderet, so far as opportunity could be given to one who did not venture, etc.*

106 22 auderet: subjv. of characteristic.

106 23 perspexisset: for tense, see § 485. c (287. c); B. 268. 3; G. 511. R.¹; H. 546 (495. ii); H-B. 491 and 2; the sequence of tenses does not depend upon the form of statement, but on the time as conceived in the writer's mind.

106 26 CHAP. 22. *superioris temporis, of the season before* (see Bk. iii. ch. 28).

106 27 homines barbari, *being* (as they were) *barbarians*. — *consuetudinis*: § 349. a (218. a); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1 (399. i. 2); H-B. 354.

106 28 fecissent: the statement of the ambassadors, hence subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.

106 29 pollicerentur: the same construction as *excusarent*, above.

107 1 arbitratu: translate as present, as often with the perf. part. of dep. verbs.

107 2 belli gerendi: obj. gen.; connect with *facultatem*.

107 3 has . . . *anteponendas, that occupation about these little matters should take precedence of* [the invasion of] *Britain*. For the number of *occupationes*, see § 100. c (75. c); B. 55. 4. c; G. 204. N.⁶; H. 138. 2 (130. 2); H-B. 240. 5. b.

107 4 iudicabat: note this and the preceding descriptive imperfects; cf. note on 3 5.

107 6 navibus: see chapter on military affairs, IX. — *coactis, gathered from various quarters*; [*contractis*] (which may well be translated), *brought together* into port. This must have been either at Boulogne or a few miles farther north, at Wissant. The port has never been satisfactorily determined, but it must have been between Boulogne and Calais, about twenty miles apart in a straight line, which is near enough to give a definite idea of the place (see map, Fig: 56). This whole coast has suffered enormous alterations since Cæsar's time, and everything is much changed.

107 7 duas legiones: the seventh and tenth.

107 8 quod . . . *habebat, what galleys he had besides*.

107 10 ex eo loco, etc.: this would be at Ambleteuse or at Calais, according to the location of the main port. — *tenebantur quo minus, were detained from*, the usual construction after verbs of hindering: § 558. b

(317. *b. N.*¹, 319. *c.*); B. 295. 3; G. 549; H. 568. 8 (499. 3. *N.*²); H-B. 502. 3. *b.*

107 12 *equitibus*: of these there were 450.

107 18 CHAP. 23. *tertia . . . vigilia, at midnight.* The date was very near August 26, when high water would be about half past seven P.M.; the ships, therefore, could go out at about half-tide. — *solvit, cast off* the ships: a technical phrase used like our *weighed anchor*. — *equites*: these were to embark at Ambleteuse, as stated above.

107 20 *paulo tardius*: they sailed after a delay of three days (ch. 28).

107 21 *hora . . . quarta*: this would be about ten A.M., an hour after high tide. The distance across is about thirty miles, and the landing was near Dover, where he lay at anchor till half past three.

107 24 *montibus anguste*, etc.: i.e. the cliffs came close to the shore.

107 26 *dum . . . convenirent, until the other ships should come up*: § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5. When is *dum* followed by the indic.? cf. **24 24**, **33 20**, **41 9**.

107 29 *Voluseno*: cf. **106 2** and 19.

108 1 *ut . . . postularent, as military science and especially seamanship require*: rel. clause following *monuit* [*ut*] . . . *administrarentur, enjoined that everything should be done promptly.* *Ut* is omitted after *monuit*, as is often the case after verbs of directing or urging. The rel. clause has the subjv. because an integral part of the command.

108 2 *ut quae . . . haberent, since they have*, etc.: the imperf. is used by sequence of tenses; § 535. *e* (320. *e*); B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592. 1 (517. 3. 1); H-B. 523 and *b.*

108 4 *his dimissis, when they were sent to their posts* (observe the distributive effect of *di*). — *aestum . . . secundum*: the tide in this place would not turn east and north until about half past six.

108 6 *progressus*: towards the north.

108 7 *aperto . . . litore*: thought to be somewhere near Deal and Walmer Castle.

108 9 CHAP. 24. *essedariis*: the *essedum* was a two-wheeled war chariot; see Figs. 81, 82. — *quo . . . genere*: i.e. including both cavalry and chariots, as described below, **114 5 ff.**

108 10 *consuerunt*: to be translated by what tense? cf. **59 14** and note. — *egredi*: infin. for the more usual *ne* or *quominus* with the subjv.; cf. **107 10** and note.

108 12 *alto*: here a noun; see Vocab.

108 13 *militibus* (dat. after *desiliendum*), *the men had to leap down*.

108 14 *oppressis* (taken with *militibus*), *weighted as they were*. Notice in this passage the free use of participles and phrases to modify the main

idea, first the abl. of place, then the abl. abs., then a participle agreeing directly with *militibus*.

108 16 *cum* . . . *conicerent*, while they (the Britons), etc.: a good example of *cum* and the subjv. describing the situation; cf. **11 7**, **62 13**.

108 18 *insuefactos*, trained to it, i.e. to charge to the water's edge.

108 20 *generis*: gen.; cf. **106 27**.

108 21 *pedestribus*, on land, where the main strength lay in infantry.

108 22 CHAP. 25. *navis*: subject of *removeri*; § 563. *a* (330. B. 2); B. 331. ii, 587. *b*; G. 423. N.⁶; H. 613. 2 (535. ii); H-B. 587. *b*.

108 23 *inusitator*, quite strange.

108 25 *latus apertum*: i.e. the right, unprotected by their shields. — *inde*: connect with *propelli ac submoveri*.



FIG. 80. — AQUILA.

108 26 *tormentis*: see chapter on military affairs, I. 5, and Figs. 61, 87, 89. — *ac*: notice that this word always adds something with emphasis.

108 27 *quæ res*, a manoeuvre which: cf. **94 17** and see note on **30 19**.

109 2 *qui* . . . *feribat*, the one who carried: the antecedent of *qui* is the understood subject of *inquit*. — **X legionis**: again the splendid tenth distinguishes itself; cf. **36 24**, **67 26**.

109 3 *obtestatus*, appealing to. Such prayers almost always preceded any formal address among the Romans, like "God save the Commonwealth of Massachusetts." The words would be *Quod vobis feliciter eveniat, desilite*, etc. — **legioni, imperatori**: dat. of reference.

109 4 *nisi voltis*: a present simple condition; § 515 and *a* (306 and *a*); B. 302 and 4; G. 595; II. 574, 580 (508 and 4); H-B. 579, 582. 1.

109 5 *ego certe* . . . *praestitero*, I at any rate shall have done, etc.: § 478. N. (281. R.); B. 264. *a*; G. 244; H. 540 (473); cf. H-B. 494.

109 8 *inter se*, one another: § 301. *f* (196. *f*); B. 245. 1; G. 221; H. 502. 1 (448. N.); H-B. 266. — *universi*, in a body.

109 9 *ex proximis navibus*, from the nearest ships. Omit [*primis*].

109 10 *adpropinquaverunt*: the subject is the soldiers, implied.

109 11 CHAP. 26. *ab utrisque*, on both sides: cf. *utraque*, **103 30**.

109 13 *poterant* . . . *submittebat*: notice the numerous imperfects in this description, implying repeated or continuous action. — *alius alia ex navi*, men from different ships: § 315. *c* (203. *c*); B. 253. 2; G. 319; H. 516. 1

(459. i); H-B. 265. — *quibuscumque signis*: dat. after *occurrerat*; the antecedent noun and pronoun (*eis signis*), if expressed, would be dat. after *adgregabat*.

109 15 *ubi . . . conspexerant . . . adoriebantur*, etc.: a general condition, *whenever they saw*, etc.; cf. 84 22, 103 24, and notes.

109 16 *singularis*, *scattered soldiers*.

109 17 *adoriebantur*, *would attack*: to express the repeated action. So, too, *circumsistebant* and *coniciebant*.

110 1 *ab latere aperto*: see 108 25. — *in universos*, *upon the whole body*. This word means not merely *all*, but *all at once*, or *all together*, and the like; cf. *universi*, 109 8.

110 3 *speculatoria navigia*: swift, light boats for reconnaissance. — *quos . . . conspexerat . . . submittebat*: another general condition, precisely like the one noted above (109 15), *quos* equalling *whomsoever*, or *if any*.

110 5 *simul* [*atque*], *as soon as*. — *suis omnibus consecutis*, *and all their comrades had joined them*.

110 7 *longius*, *very far*. — *quod equites*, etc.: they were wind-bound at the upper harbor, 107 9-12.

110 9 *fortunam*: this is not a mere casual remark, but an expression of his belief in "his star," always an important factor in the greatness of a commander; cf. 36 14 and note on 10 17.

110 12 CHAP. 27. *quae imperasset*, *what he should require* (in dir. disc. *quae imperaveris*).

110 13 *quem . . . praemissum* [*esse*]: cf. 106 13-19.

110 15 *hunc*, etc.: it is not unlikely that his imprisonment was a mere pretence. — *oratoris modo*, *in the character of envoy* (or *spokesman*).

110 19 *ut ignosceretur*, *that their act might be pardoned*: *ignosco* may take a dir. obj. of the thing, with an indir. obj. of the person; § 369 (227. f); B. 187. i. a; H-B. 364. 4; hence the word here may be either personal or impersonal.

110 20 *cum ultro*, etc.: cf. 106 10.

110 21 *bellum . . . intulissent*: these barbarous people might well be pardoned for mistaking Cæsar's expedition for an invasion. — *ignoscere*: for the omission of the subject, cf. note on 59 23.

110 23 *arcessitam*, *after they had been fetched*.

110 24 *remigrare*, *to move back*, i.e. from the strongholds to their farms.

110 27 CHAP. 28. *post diem quartum quam*, *three days after* (according to English reckoning): § 424. f (259. d); B. 357. 1; G. 403. N.⁴ a; H. 488. 1 (430); H-B. 550. c.

110 28 *naves*, etc.: see 107 9.

111 3 *Britanniae*: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376, cf. 362. — *tempestas*: from the northeast.

111 4 *aliae* . . . *aliae*, some . . . *others*.

111 6 *propius* . . . *occasum*: cf. 98 26.

111 7 *cum* . . . *complerentur*, *since they began to fill*: the imperf. shows that the action was not completed.

111 8 *adversa nocte*, *in spite of the darkness*.

111 10 CHAP. 29. *eadem nocte*: this was probably the night of Aug-ust 30; the moon was then full at 3 A.M.

111 11 *aestus maximos*, *very high tides*. The ocean tides, rising here between twenty and thirty feet, were a strange phenomenon to those who had known only the tideless waters of the Mediterranean. One is at a loss to understand why the Romans had not learned more about the tides in the war with the Veneti.

111 13 *navis*: obj. of *compleverat*. — [*quibus*, etc.]: an unnecessary explanation, and may be omitted.

111 15 *addictabat* (intensive), *dashed about*.

111 16 *facultas*, etc.: i.e. chance to manage their own ships or help their companions.

112 1 *funibus* . . . *amissis*, etc., *from the loss of*, etc.

112 2 *id quod*: § 307. *d* (200. *e*); B. 247. i. *b*; G. 614. R.²; H. 399. 6 (445. 7); H-B. 325. *a*. N.².

112 4 *quibus* = *ut eis*: result.

112 5 *quod* . . . *constabat*, *because it was understood*: the subject is *oportere*, of which the subject is *hiemari*, *that it was best to winter in Gaul*.

112 7 *provisum*: see note on 56 16.

112 8 CHAP. 30. *principes*: subject of *duxerunt* in l. 14.

112 12 *hoc*: abl. of cause, originally degree of difference; see note on 2 17.

112 13 *optimum*: in pred. agreement with *frumento* . . . *producere*.

112 14 *factu*: cf. 3 23. — *duxerunt*: see Vocab. — *frumento commeatuque*, *corn and other supplies*.

112 15 *rem*, *the campaign*. — *his* . . . *interclusis*, *if these should be overcome*, etc.: abl. abs. expressing condition.

112 18 *rursus*: not *a second time*, which would be *iterum*, but back again from negotiations to hostilities.

112 19 *deducere*: i.e. from their farms; cf. 110 24.

112 20 CHAP. 31. *at Caesar*: emphatic transition to Cæsar from what the soldiers feared and the Britons planned; cf. 68 8.



FIG. 81. — GALLIC COIN.

112 21 *ex eventu navium, from what had befallen the ships. — ex eo quod, from the fact that.*

112 22 *susplicabatur, began to suspect.*

112 24 *quae . . . naves, earum, etc., the timber and the bronze of those ships which, etc.: § 307. b (200. b); B. 251. 4; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6.*

112 25 *aere*: the Romans used the word *aes* both for copper and bronze. These metals were more common than iron in the Roman ships, as they do not rust. They were employed to sheathe the *rostrum*, or beak, and to make the spikes that held the timbers together.

112 26 *quae . . . usui*: the antecedent of *quae* is *ea*, the understood subject of *comportari*; see note on *qui . . . appellantur*, **1 2**.

112 29 *reliquis . . . effecit, he managed so that they could sail (navigari, impers.) tolerably with the rest.*

113 1 *CHAP. 32. geruntur*: § 556 (276. e); B. 293. i; G. 229. R.; H. 533. 4 (467. iii. 4); H-B. 559. Notice that this present is regular with *dum* when there is no contrast of time. Cf. the use of *dum*, **107 26**. — *frumentatum*: supine; cf. **26 15**.

113 3 *pars hominum, some of the people.*

113 4 *remaneret*: indicating peaceable intentions on the part of the enemy. — *ventitaret, returned from time to time*: freq. or iter.; § 263. 2 (167. b); B. 155. 2; G. 191. 1; H. 364 (336); H-B. 212. 1.

113 5 *statione*: such outposts or pickets were always on duty to guard the camp, usually a cohort at each gate.

113 6 *quam . . . ferret, than usual.*

113 7 *id quod erat, what was the fact.*

113 8 *aliquid . . . consili* (part. gen.), *that some new design was on foot*; infin. clause in app. with *id*.

113 11 *armari, to arm*: in verbs thus used reflexively, English prefers the active and Latin the passive form. — *paulo longius, some little distance.*

113 12 *premi . . . sustinere, were getting hard pushed, and hardly held their ground.*

113 13 *conferta legione* (abl. abs.), *the legion was closely crowded together, while weapons were hurled, etc.* Observe the tendency of Latin to convey a description, as here, by a participial phrase.

113 15 *una, only one. — suspicati, supposing*: cf. **107 1** and note.

114 2 *dispersos, occupatos*: agreeing with *nostros* understood from the preceding line.



FIG. 82. — GALLIC COIN.

114 3 *incertis ordinibus* (abl. abs.), *because the ranks were unsteady.*

114 5 CHAP. 33. *ex essedis*: these chariots held six men (*essedarii*) each besides the driver (*auriga*), and were drawn by two horses.

114 6 *terrore equorum*: obj. gen., *the terror that the horses arouse.*

114 8 *cum se . . . insinuaverunt*, *when they have worked their way between*: the protasis of a general condition, *ex essedis . . . proeliantur*, being the apodosis; cf. 103 24. The perf. indic. with *cum* is here used as a protasis because a repeated action is spoken of. — *equitum*, the cavalry of the Britons. When the *essedarii* had dismounted, the British line was composed of alternate bodies of horse and foot.

114 10 *illi*: i.e. the fighting men spoken of above.

114 11 *expeditum . . . receptum*, *a ready retreat.*

114 13 *praestant, exhibit.* Cæsar was much struck with the efficiency of the German and British horse (see ch. 12), and later made it the basis of important changes in the Roman army. The ordinary cavalry was never able to cope with infantry; cf. Cæsar's stratagem in 38 1.

114 14 *uti . . . consuerint*: clause of result following *efficiunt*. — *declivi ac praecipiti loco*, *a steep downward slope.*

114 15 *incitatos equos sustinere*, *to check their horses in full gallop* (complem. infin. after *consuerint*). — *brevi*, *within a short space.*

114 16 *iugo*: made of straight or curved wood, resting on the necks of the horses and holding up the pole of the chariot.

114 18 CHAP. 34. *quibus rebus*, *under these circumstances*: abl. of means. — *nostris*: dat. following *auxilium tulit*. — *novitate*: depends on *perturbatis*.

114 22 *alienum*: see note on 13 6.

114 26 *quae . . . continerent*: note the subjv.

115 1 *quanta . . . facultas daretur*: indir. quest. following *demonstraverunt*.

115 2 *sui liberandi*: cf. 40 15 and note.

115 7 CHAP. 35. *ut . . . effugerent*: a result clause in app. with *idem*, the subject of *fore*, *namely, that if*, etc.

115 8 *effugerent*, *would escape*: the future idea is given by *fore*. — *equites XXX*: these few cavalry would be of no service in an engagement, but only in pursuit. To chase and cut down the beaten army was considered an essential part of the battle.

115 9 *ante*: i.e. 106 13–19, 110 13–17.

115 12 *tanto spatio*, *over as much ground*: § 425. *b* (257. *b*); B. 223; G. 389; H. 417. 3 (379. 2); cf. H-B. 426. *c*.

115 19 CHAP. 36. *die aequinocti*, etc. (Sept. 24, always held to be a stormy season), *since the time of the equinox was near and his ships were*

unseaworthy. Napoleon III estimates that the return to Gaul occurred Sept. 11 or 12. This would make the stay about three weeks.

115 23 *eosdem portus, the same ports with the others.*

115 24 *pauló infra*: the west current sets in on the French coast, while the east current is still running in mid-channel.

115 28 CHAP. 37. *primo*: adv.; see Vocab.

116 1 *orbe*: the circle was formed by a small body of troops when entirely surrounded by the enemy. It was generally hollow, with officers and baggage in the centre. See chapter on military affairs, VII, last part.

116 5 *horis*: abl. of comparison with *amplius*; the more common construction would be *horas*; cf. note on **54 9**.

116 6 *postea vero quam, but as soon as.*

116 12 CHAP. 38. *siccitatis*:

see § 100. *c* (75. *c*); B. 55. 4. *c*; G. 204. 5; H. 138. 2 (130. 2); H-B. 240. 5. *b*; the *tempestates* of ch. 34 were apparently merely gusty weather without rain.

116 13 *reciperent*: a purpose clause. — *superiore anno*: see Bk. iii. ch. 28.

116 22 *supplicatio*: cf. end of Bk. ii. The crossing of the Rhine strongly impressed the minds of the Romans at home, and so, too, the passage into Britain, though the last was in fact a failure. But, though Cæsar had added nothing to Roman power, he had opened a new world to Roman ambition.



FIG. 83. — CALIGA.

GROUPS OF RELATED WORDS.

N.B. — These lists are not intended to be exhaustive, and pupils may do well to add to them as they increase their vocabularies.

1

acer, *sharp, violent.*
acriter, *violently.*
acerbus, *bitter, cruel.*
acerbe, *bitterly.*
acerbe ferre, *take hard.*
acerbitas, *bitterness, suffering.*
acervus, *heap.*
acies, *sharp edge, line.*
[**acus**, *needle.*]
acuo, *sharpen.*
acutus, *sharp.*

2

alacer, *lively.*
alacriter, *promptly.*
alacritas, *readiness.*

3

aedes, *fireplace, house.*
aedificium, *building.*
aedifico, *build.*
aestas, *heat.*
aestivus, *hot.*
aestus (boiling), *tide.*
aestuarium, *tideway.*

4

aequus, *even, level.*
iniquus, *uneven, unfavorable.*
iniquitas, *unfavorableness.*

aequitas, *fairness.*
aequalis, *equal.*
aequaliter, *evenly.*
aequinoctium, *equinox.*
aequo, *equalize.*
adaequo, *make equal.*

5

ago, *drive.*
actuarius, *fast sailing.*
agmen, *line of march.*
ager, *field.*
cogo, *compel.*
cogito, *think.*
adigo, *force.*
agito, *pursue.*
examino, *weigh.*

6

alo, *foster.*
altus, *grown high.*
altitudo, *height.*

7

alius, *other.*
alienus, *of another.*
alieno, *alienate.*
alias, *elsewhere.*
aliter, *otherwise.*
alio, *elsewhither.*

8

animus (breath), *soul, mind.*
anima, *breath.*
animal, *animal.*
exanimis, *out of breath.*

9

ante, *before.*
antea, *before.*
antiquus, *ancient.*
antiquitus, *anciently.*

10

ars, *art.*
articulus, *joint.*
arma, *arms.*
armo, *equip.*
armamentum, *rigging.*
armatura, *equipment.*

11

arx, *citadel.*
arceo, *keep off.*
co-erceo, *restrain.*
exerceo, *exercise.*
exercitus, *training, army.*
exercitatio, *exercise.*

12

augeo, *increase.*
auctor, *responsible party.*
auctoritas, *influence.*
autumnus, *harvest season.*
auxillum, *help.*
auxiliaris, *helping.*
auxilior, *assist.*

13

cado, *fall.*
casus, *fall, chance.*
cadaver, *body.*
caedo, *fell.*
caedes, *murder.*

accido, *be fall.*
accido, *cut into.*
concido, *fall down.*
concido, *cut down.*
incido, *happen.*
incido, *cut into.*
occido, *fall.*
occasio, *occasion.*

14

capio, *take.*
captus, *capacity.*
captivus, *captive.*
accipio, *receive.*
decipio, *deceive.*
excipio, *take up.*
excepto, *catch up.*

15

caput, *head.*
capillus, *hair.*
anceps, *double-headed.*
praeceps, *head-foremost.*

16

cerno, *separate, distinguish.*
certus, *fixed, certain.*
crimen, *charge.*
certe, *surely.*
[certo, decide by contest.]
certamen, *contest.*
concerto, *contend.*
decerno, *decide.*
decerto, *decide by contest.*
decretum, *decision, decree.*
discerno, *decide.*
discrimen, *decision.*

17

circum, *around.*
circa, *circiter, about.*
circinus, *compasses.*
circuitus, *circuit.*

18

colo, *till*.
 cultus, *cultivation*.
 cultura, *cultivation, culture*.
 [colonus, *husbandman*.]
 colonia, *colony*.
 incolo, *inhabit*.
 incola, *inhabitant*.

19

consciūs, *conscious*.
 [consciens, *being conscious*.]
 conscientia, *conscience*.
 conscisco, *resolve*.
 insciūs, *not knowing*.
 insciens, *unknowing*.

20

consto, *be established (stand firm)*.
 constans, *firm*.
 constanter, *firmly*.
 constantia, *firmness*.
 consisto, *take a stand*.
 constituo, *establish*.

21

consul, *consul*.
 consulatus, *consulship*.
 consulo, *consult*.
 consilium, *plan*.
 consultum, *decree*.
 consulto, *by determination, designedly*.
 consulto, *consult*.

22

cresco, *grow*.
 creber, *thick*.
 crebro, *frequently*.
 creo, *make to grow, create*.
 [Ceres, *goddess of growth*.]

23

curro, *run*.
 currus, *chariot*.

cursus, *course*.
 concurro, *run together*.
 concursus, *rush*.
 concursus, *rush together*.
 decurro, *run down*.
 excursio, *sally*.
 incurro, *rush upon*.
 incursio, *attack*.
 incursus, *rush*.
 percurro, *run along*.
 succurro, *run to help*.

24

de, *down from*.
 desuper, *from above*.
 deinde, *then*.
 demum, *at last (farthest down)*.
 denique, *at last*.
 deterior, *worse*.

25

defatiscor, *give out (cf. 'busted')*.
 defessus, *tired out*.
 defatigo, *wear out*.
 defatigatio, *exhaustion*.

26

dīco, *say*.
 indico, *ordain*.
 index, *informer*.
 indicium, *information*.
 indico, *give information*.
 iudex, *judge*.
 iudicium, *trial*.
 [vindex, *avenger*.]
 vindico, *avenge*.
 dictum, *thing said*.
 dictio, *pleading*.
 dīco, *adjudge*.
 dīcio, *sway ('say so')*.
 condicio, *terms*.

27

dies, *day*.
 diu, *long, all day*.
 interdiu, *by day*.
 diutinus, *long continued*.
 diurnus, *by day, daily*.
 diuturnus, *long*.
 diuturnitas, *length of time*.
 biduum, *two days*.
 triduum, *three days*.

28

dies, *day*.
 cotidie, *every day*.
 cotidianus, *daily*.
 hodie, *to-day*.
 pridie, *the day before*.
 postero die, *the next day*.
 postridie, *the day after*.
 [perendie, *day after to-morrow*.]
 perendinus (adjective).

29

do, *give*.
 dedo, *give over*.
 deditus, *devotion*.
 deditio, *surrender*.
 dediticius, *surrendered*.
 reddo, *give back*.
 trado, *hand over*.
 donum, *gift*.
 dono, *present*.

30

duo, *two*.
 bis, *twice*.
 bini, *two apiece*.
 bellum, *for duellum, war*.
 dubius, *doubtful*.
 dubium, *doubt*.
 dubito, *doubt*.
 dubitatio, *doubt*.

duplex, *double*.
 duplico, *double*.

31

emo (*take*), *buy*.
 eximius, *exceptional*.
 exemplum, *specimen*.

32

equus, *horse*.
 eques, *horseman*.
 equester, *of cavalry*.
 equitatus, *cavalry*.
 [equito], *ride*.
 adequito, *ride up*.
 perequito, *ride over*.

33

ex, *out*.
 exter, *outer*.
 extra, *outside*.
 extremus, *last*.

34

facio, *make, do*.
 beneficus, *well doing, beneficent*.
 facilis, *easy (to do)*.
 facultas, *facility*.
 difficilis, *difficult*.
 difficultas, *difficulty*.
 difficulter, *with difficulty*.
 factio, *employment, party*.
 facies, *face (the 'make')*.
 factum, *deed*.
 facinus, *deed (usually evil)*.
 artifex, *artist*.
 conficio, *make up*.
 perficio, *accomplish*.

35

fides, *faith*.
 fidelis, *faithful*.
 perfidus, *faithless*.
 perfidia, *perfidy*.

fiducia, confidence.

foedus, treaty.

infidelis, unfaithful.

confido, trust.

36

finis, bound, boundary.

fines, country.

finio, set bounds.

finitimus, neighboring.

adfinis, connection.

adfinitas, connection (by marriage).

confinis, adjacent.

confinium, neighborhood.

definio, set limits, fix.

37

fors, chance.

fortuito, accidentally.

fortuna, fortune.

fortunatus, fortunate.

38

fruo, enjoy.

fructus, enjoyment.

fructuosus, fruitful.

fruges, grain.

frumentum, grain.

frumentor, forage.

frumentatio, foraging.

frumentarius, of grain.

39

fugio, fly.

fuga, flight.

fugo, put to flight.

fugitivus, a runaway.

effugio, escape.

perfuga, refugee.

perfugio, escape to.

perfugium, refuge.

profugio, flee forth.

refugio, run away.

40

gero, carry, carry on.

res gestae, exploits.

[aggero, heap up.]

agger, earthworks.

congero, heap together.

suggestus, raised mound.

41

iacio, throw.

iaculum, javelin.

iaceo, lie.

iactura, loss.

iacto, toss about.

42

is, this.

item, likewise.

ita, so.

itaque, therefore.

iterum, again.

idem, the same.

ideo, therefore.

ipse, himself.

eo, thither.

ea, that way.

43

iubeo, order.

iussu, by order.

iniussu, without orders.

44

ius, right.

iudex, judge.

iudicium, judgment.

iudico, judge.

adiudico, assign.

deiudico, decide (between).

iniuria, wrong.

iustus, just.

iustitia, justice.

iuro, swear.

coniuro, *conspire*.
coniuratio, *conspiracy*.

45

[lego, *choose*.]
legio, *levy, legion*.
delectus, *levy*.
legionarius, *soldier*.
lex, *law*.
[lêgo, *assign by law*.]
legatus, *lieutenant*.
legatio, *embassy*.
deligo, *select*.
diligio, *love*.
intellego, *understand*.

46

[libet], *it pleases*.
libenter, *willingly*.
liber, *free*.
liberi, *children*.
libertas, *freedom*.
liberalis, *generous*.
liberaliter, *generously*.
liberalitas, *generosity*.
libero, *set free*.

47

mane, *in the morning*.
maturus, *early, ripe*.
mature, *early*.
maturo, *make haste*.
maturesco, *ripen*.

48

memini, *remember*.
mens, *mind*.
[demens], *mad*.
dementia, *madness*.
mentio, *mention*.
[memor], *mindful*.
memoria, *memory*.
moneo, *remind*.

reminiscor, *remember*.
commemoro, *mention*.

49

moveo, *move*.
motus, *motion*.
mobilis, *mobile*.
mobilitate, *easily*.
mobilitas, *mobility*.
momentum, *means of motion*.
commuto, *change*.

50

nascor, *be born*.
natus, *birth*.
natalis, *of birth*.
nativus, *native*.
natura, *nature*.
natio, *race*.

51

navis, *ship*.
navicula, *boat*.
navalis, *naval*.
nauta, *sailor*.
nauticus, *of a sailor*.
navigo, *sail*.
navigium, *vessel*.
navigatio, *voyage*.

52

nosco, *learn*.
novi, *be acquainted with*.
notus, *known*.
notitia, *acquaintance*.
ignotus, *unknown*.
nobilis, *famous*.
ignobilis, *ignoble*.
nobilitas, *nobility*.
nomen, *name*.
nomino, *name*.
nominatim, *by name*.
ignominia, *disgrace*.

cognosco, investigate.

ignosco, pardon.

53

nuntius, messenger, news.

nuntio, announce.

denuntio, warn.

enuntio, report.

renuntio, bring back word.

pronuntio, make known.

54

obses, hostage.

obsideo, blockade.

obsidio, blockade.

obsessio, blockade.

55

[Ops], goddess of abundance.

opes, resources.

copia, abundance.

copiae, resources.

copiosus, well supplied.

inops, poor.

inopia, want.

56

[paciscor, agree.]

pango, join.

pactum, agreement.

pax, peace.

paco, pacify.

pacatus, subject.

57

pario, acquire.

parens, parent.

parento, sacrifice to ancestors.

58

ex-prior, try.

peritus, experienced.

periculum, danger. (trial).

periculosus, dangerous.

periclitator, be in peril.

aperio, open.

reperio, find.

59

paro, prepare.

impero, order.

imperium, power.

pareo, be on hand, obey.

60

parum, too little.

parvus, small.

parvulus, very small.

paucus, few.

paucitas, small number.

paulus, small.

paulatim, little by little.

paulum, a little.

paululum, a very little.

paulo, a little.

paulisper, a little while.

61

[pasco, feed.]

pabulum, forage.

pabulor, forage.

pabulatio, foraging.

pabulator, forager.

pater, father.

patrius, belonging to a father.

patronus, patron, protector.

patruus, uncle (on the father's side)

62

pes, foot.

pedes, footman (man on foot).

peditatus, infantry.

pedester, of men on foot.

pedalis, a foot long, etc.

impedio, entangle.

impedimentum, hindrance.

impeditus, hampered.
expedio, disentangle.
expeditus, unincumbered.
expeditio, expedition.

63

pleo, fill.
compleo, fill up.
expleo, fill out.
plenus, full.
plene, fully.
plerique, most of.
plerumque, for the most part.
completus, filled up.
expletus, filled out.
plus, more.
plurimus, most.
complures, very many.

also

plebs, the populace.
populus, people.
publicus, of the people.
publice, publicly.
publico, confiscate.

64

porta, gate.
porto, carry.
adporto, bring in.
comporto, bring together.
deporto, carry away.
exporto, carry off.
reporto, bring back.
supporto, bring up.
transporto, carry over.
portus, harbor.
portorium, customs.

65

[*putus*], *clean.*
puto, clean up, reckon, think.
 [*purus*], *clean.*

purgo, clear, excuse.
computo, reckon.
disputo, discuss.
disputatio, discussion.

66

pro, before.
probus, good.
improbus, bad.
prope, near.
propinquus, neighboring.
propinquitas, nearness.
protinus, straight away, 'right away.'
propter, near by, on account of.
propterea, for this reason.

67

prae, in front.
praeustus, burnt at the end.
praeter, along side, beside.
praeterea, besides.
praeterita, by-gones.
prior, before.
primus, first.
pridie, the day before.

68

rego, direct, rule.
rectus, straight.
regio, direction.
regnum, kingdom.
regno, reign.
rex, king.
regius, royal.
 [*regula, rule.*]
dirigo, direct.
directus, straight.
directe, straight.
pergo, keep on.

69

sancio, bind.
sacer, sanctus, sacred.

sacerdos, *priest.*
 sacramentum, *oath.*
 sacrificium, *sacrifice.*

70

seco, *cut.*
 sectio, *a cutting, a lot.*
 sectura, *mine.*
 securis, *axe.*

71

sequor, *follow.*
 secundus, *second.*
 secus, *otherwise.*
 secius, *less.*
 sector, *pursue.*
 socius, *companion.*
 societas, *society.*

72

[sero, *bind.*]
 servus, *bondman.*
 servio, *be a slave.*
 servo, *guard.*
 conservo, *preserve.*
 servilis, *servile.*
 servitus, *slavery.*
 sermo, *speech (connected discourse).*
 praesertim, *especially (at the head
 of the row).*

73

similis, *like.*
 simul, *at the same time.*
 simultas, *quarrel.*
 simulo, *pretend.*
 dissimulo, *pretend not.*
 simulatio, *pretence.*
 similitudo, *likeness.*
 simulacrum, *image.*

74

species, *appearance.*
 conspicio, *behold.*
 conspectus, *sight.*

conspicor, *espy.*
 adspectus, *view.*
 spectro, *gaze at.*
 exspecto, *expect.*
 speculator, *watch.*
 speculator, *spy.*

75

sto, *stand.*
 statio, *station.*
 statim, *forthwith.*
 status, *position.*
 statuo, *set up.*
 constituo, *establish.*
 stabilis, *stable.*
 stabilitas, *steadiness.*
 stabilio, *make firm.*

76

sub, *under, up.*
 superus, *above.*
 super, *over.*
 superior, *superior.*
 supero, *overtop.*
 supra, *over.*
 summus, } *highest.*
 supremus, }
 summa, *total.*
 superbus, *proud.*
 superbe, *arrogantly.*

77

tam, *so.*
 tamen, *nevertheless.*
 tametsi, *although.*
 tandem, *at last.*
 tantus, *so great.*
 tantulus, *so little.*
 tantum, } *only (so much and*
 tantummodo, } *no more).*

78

tango, *touch.*
 contingo, *touch, happen.*

contagio, *contact*.
 contaminatio, *taint*.
 integer, *untouched, whole*.
 redintegratio, *renew*.

79

tempus, *time*.
 tempestas, *weather*.
 tempero, *control*.
 temperantia, *self-control*.

80

teneo, *hold*.
 tener, *tender*.
 tenuis, *thin*.
 tenuitas, *scantiness*.
 tenuiter, *scantily*.
 contineo, *hold together*.
 continens, *continuous (a continent)*.
 continenter, *without stopping*.
 continentia, *self-control*.
 continuus, *continuous*.
 continuo, *forthwith*.
 continuo, *continue*.
 continuatio, *continuance*.

also

tendo, *stretch*.
 tento, *try*.
 contendo, *contend*.
 contentio, *contest*.
 intendo, *strain*.
 ostendo, *show*.
 ostentatio, *ostentation*.

81

[tribus, *tribe*.]
 tribunus, *tribune*.
 tribuo, *assign*.
 tributum, *tribute*.
 distribuo, *distribute*.
 attribuo, *assign*.

82

utor, *use*.
 utilis, *useful*.
 utilitas, *advantage*.
 usus, *use*.
 usitor, *use*.
 usitatus, *customary*.

83

verto, *turn*.
 versus, *towards*.
 versus, *verse*.
 universus, *all together*.
 verso, *deal with*.
 versor, *engage in*.
 avertio, *turn aside*.
 adverto, *turn to*.
 adversus, *turned towards, opposed*.
 adversarius, *opponent*.
 animadvertio, *attend to*.
 converto, *turn about*.
 revertio, *turn back*.
 rursus, *back, again*.
 transversus, *across*.

84

vetus, *old*.
 veteranus, *veteran*.
 inveterasco, *grow old in*.

85

vir, *man*.
 virgo, *maiden*.
 virtus, *manliness*.
 viritim, *man by man*.

86

volo, *wish*.
 voluntas, *will*.
 voluntarius, *volunteer*.
 voltus, *countenance*.
 voluptas, *pleasure*.
 malo, *wish more*.
 nolo, *not wish, wish not*.

ADDITIONAL ILLUSTRATIONS.

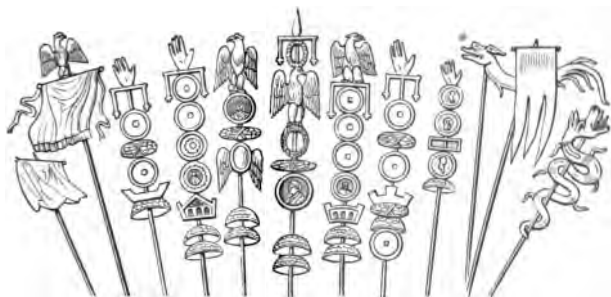


FIG. 84. — SIGNA MILITARIA.



FIG. 85.—SOLDIERS BUILDING CAMP, WITH GUARDS.

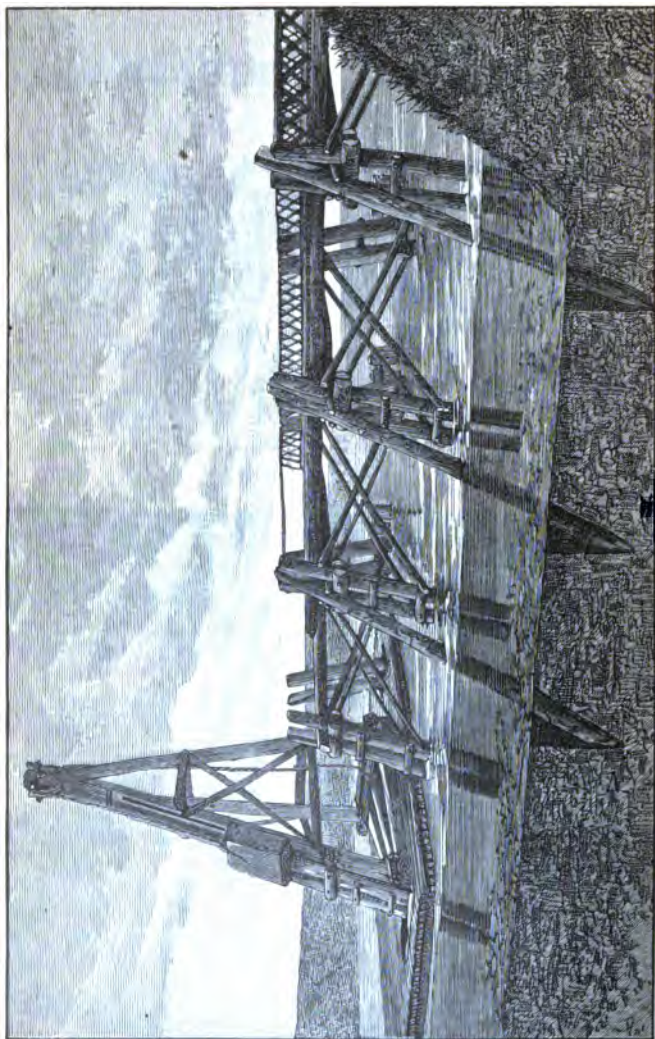


FIG. 86.—PONS A CAESARE IN RHENO FACTUS.

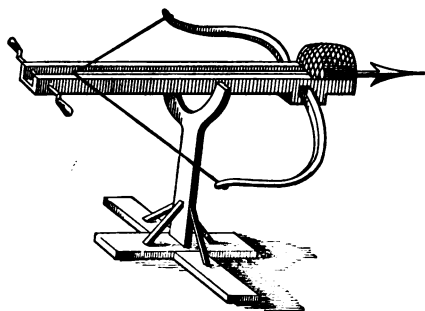


FIG. 87. — SCORPIO.



FIG. 88. — TESTUDO.

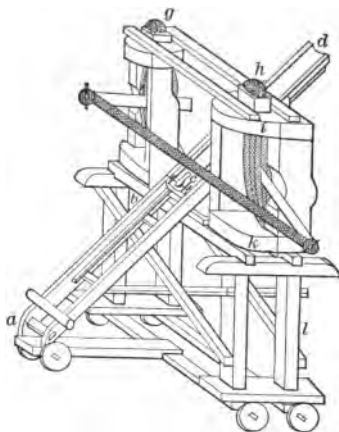


FIG. 89. — BALLISTA.

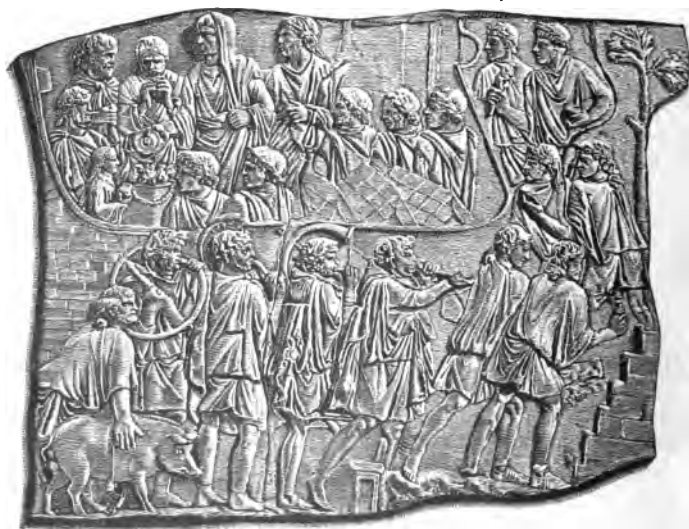


FIG. 90. — SACRIFICE IN CAMP. MILITARY BAND.



FIG. 91. — SIGNUM.



FIG. 92. — TABERNACULUM.

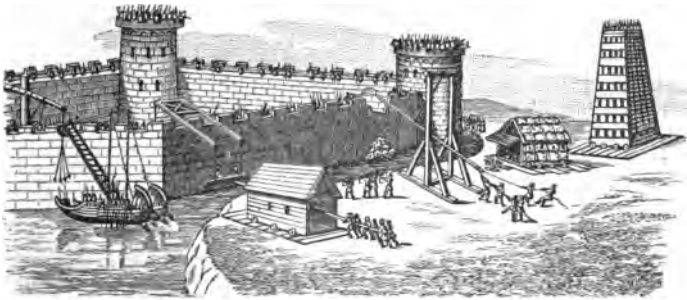


FIG. 93. — OPPUGNATIO.

NOTE. — This cut represents an attack both by land and water, in which no *agger* is employed. While in these respects unlike the attack on the Gallic towns, it shows very clearly some siege implements in active use.

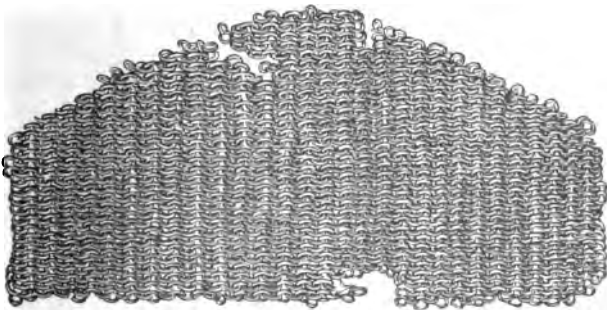


FIG. 94. — CHAIN MAIL (*lorica hamata*).



FIG. 95. — HELMETS (*galeae*).



FIG. 96. — LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIER.



FIG. 97. — ARCHER.

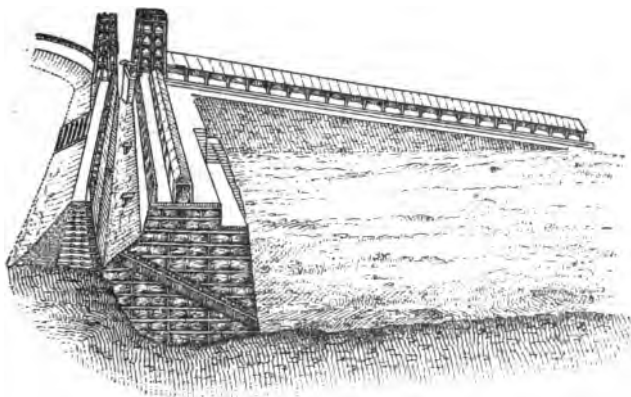


FIG. 98. — VIEW OF SIEGE WORKS.

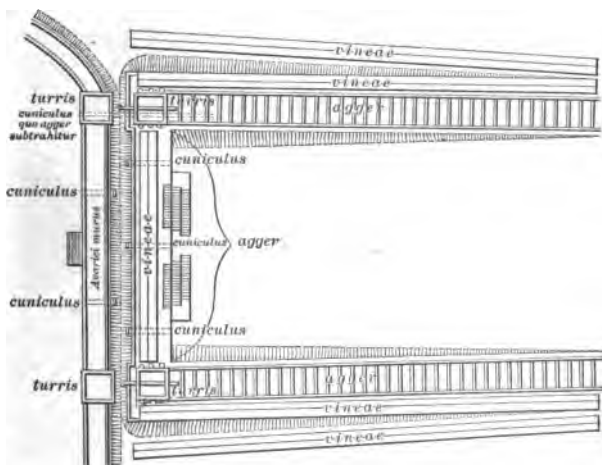


FIG. 99. — PLAN OF SIEGE WORKS.

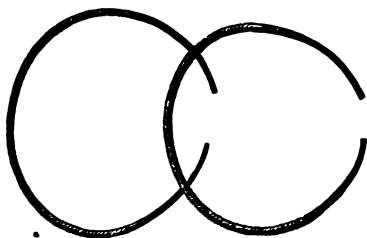
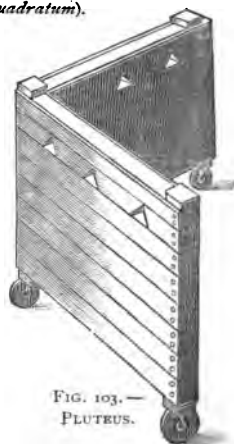
FIG. 100. — GALLIC *Torques*.FIG. 101. — HOLLOW SQUARE (*agmen quadratum*).

FIG. 102. — PLUTEUS.

FIG. 103. —
PLUTEUS.

VOCABULARY
TO
CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR.
COVERING SEVEN BOOKS.

SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

a.	<i>active.</i>	M., masc.	<i>masculine.</i>
abs.	<i>absolute(ly).</i>	neg.	<i>negative(ly).</i>
act.	<i>active.</i>	n.	<i>neuter (intransitive).</i>
borr.	<i>borrowed.</i>	N., neut.	<i>neuter.</i>
cf.	<i>compare.</i>	num.	<i>numeral.</i>
cog.	<i>cognate.</i>	opp.	<i>opposed.</i>
comp.	<i>composition.</i>	orig.	<i>originally.</i>
comp., compar.	<i>comparative.</i>	p.	<i>present participle.</i>
concr.	<i>concretely.</i>	pass.	<i>passive.</i>
conn.	<i>connection.</i>	perf.	<i>perfect.</i>
decl.	<i>declined.</i>	perh.	<i>perhaps.</i>
def.	<i>definite, defective.</i>	pl., plur.	<i>plural.</i>
dep.	<i>deponent.</i>	poss.	<i>possibly.</i>
dim., dimin.	<i>diminutive.</i>	p. p.	<i>perfect participle.</i>
distrib.	<i>distributive.</i>	prob.	<i>probably.</i>
emph.	<i>emphatic.</i>	pron.	<i>pronoun, pronominal.</i>
end.	<i>ending.</i>	reduced	indicates the loss of a syllable in derivation or composition.
Eng.	<i>English.</i>	reflex.	<i>reflexive(ly).</i>
esp.	<i>especially.</i>	rel.	<i>relative.</i>
F., fem.	<i>feminine.</i>	sc.	<i>supply.</i>
fig.	<i>figurative(ly).</i>	sing.	<i>singular.</i>
fr.	<i>from.</i>	Sk.	<i>Sanskrit.</i>
freq.	<i>frequentative.</i>	st.	<i>stem.</i>
Gr.	<i>Greek.</i>	subjv.	<i>subjunctive.</i>
imp., impers	<i>impersonal.</i>	subst.	<i>substantive(ly).</i>
imv.	<i>imperative.</i>	sup., superl.	<i>superlative.</i>
increased	indicates the addition of a letter or letters.	term.	<i>termination.</i>
ind., indecl.	<i>indeclinable.</i>	transf.	<i>transferred (i.e. fr. a proper to a forced meaning).</i>
indef.	<i>indefinite.</i>	unc.	<i>uncertain.</i>
insep.	<i>inseparable.</i>	v.	<i>verb.</i>
instr.	<i>instrumental.</i>	wh.	<i>which, whence.</i>
inter., interrog.	<i>interrogative.</i>	weakened	indicates a change of vowel.
intens.	<i>intensive.</i>		
irr.	<i>irregular.</i>		
lit.	<i>literal(ly).</i>		
loc.	<i>locative.</i>		

Other common abbreviations will be readily understood.

(-). A hyphen at the end of a word means that the word is a stem; between two words it means composition.

(+). A plus sign indicates derivation by means of a derivative suffix following the sign.

A root is generally given in SMALL CAPITALS.

(†). A dagger denotes a word not actually found, but assumed as having once existed.

(?). A query denotes a doubtful etymology or meaning.

Full-faced type in parentheses denotes other spellings or forms.

1, 2, 3, 4, refer to conjugations of verbs.

VOCABULARY.

A

A., Aulus (wh. see).

ā, see **ab**.

ab (**ā**, **abs**), [akin to Eng. *off*, *of*], adv. (in comp.). — Prep. with abl., *away from, from* (cf. **ex**, *out of*). — Of place, with idea of motion, *from*: **ab Arari iter convertere**. — Of time, **ab hora quarta**. — Fig., *from*, with more or less feeling of motion: **ab cohortatione profectus**; **temperare ab iniuriis**; **tutus ab**; **ab ramis** (*from the branches*, as far as where they begin). — With expressions of measure, *off, away, at a distance of*: **a milibus passuum duobus**, *two miles off*. — With different notion in Eng.: **ortum est ab**, *began with*; **vacuum ab**, *destitute of*; **capit initium a**, *begin at*; **ab tanto spatio**, *so far off*; **ab officio discedere** (*for-sake*, etc.); **a quibus decedere** (*abandon*, etc.); **gratiam inire ab**, *secure gratitude from, win favor with*; **postulare ab**, *ask of*. — Esp. with passives and similar notions, *by*: **accidere a Caesare** (*at the hands of*, showing the origin of this meaning). — Esp. also (prob. as the place whence the impression comes), *on the side of, on, at, on the part of*: **a fronte**; **a tergo**; **ab infimo**; **a dextro**

cornu; **a re frumentaria** (*in respect to*); **intritus ab labore** (*by*). — In comp. *off, away, apart*; *not, dis-, un-*.

abditus, p. p. of **abdo**.

abdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [**ab-do** (*put*)], 3. v. a., *put away, remove, hide*. — With reflex., *conceal one's self, hide*. — With in and acc., *hide in, withdraw to (take refuge among), withdraw and hide away*. — **abditus**, -a, -um, p. p., *hidden, remote, removed*: **abditus in tabernaculis** (*secluding themselves*, etc.).

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**ab-ducō**], 3. v. a., *lead away, draw away, take away, lead off, carry away* (of persons or things which move of themselves).

abeō, -ire -iī, -itūrus, [**ab-eo**], irr. v. n., *go away, go off, retire, go* (out of sight or away).

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [**ab-ia-cio**], 3. v. a., *throw away, throw down, throw* (away from one's self).

abiēs, -ietis, [?], F., *fir* or *spruce* (tree or wood).

abiectus, p. p. of **abicio**.

abiūctus, p. p. of **abiungo**.

abiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūctus, [**ab-iungo**], 3. v. a., *disjoin, detach*: **abiuncto Labieno**.

abripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus, [ab-rapio, *seize*], 3. v. a., *carry off* (with violence), *drag away*.

abs, see **ab**.

abscido, -cidere, -cidi, -ciscus, [ab-caedo], 3. v. a., *cut off, lop off, tear off, tear away*.

absciscus, p. p. of **abscido**.

absens, -entis, see **absum**.

absimilis, -e, [ab-similis, *like*], adj., *unlike*.

abstisto, -sistere, -stiti, no p. p., [ab-sisto], 3. v. n., *stand off, stand away, withdraw*.—Fig., *leave off, keep aloof*.

abstineo, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus, [ab-teneo], 2. v. n., *hold* (one's self) *off*.—Fig., *refrain, spare*: proelio (*refrain from giving*); mulieribus (*spare*).

abstractus, p. p. of **abstraho**.

abstraho, -trahere, -traxi, -tractus, [ab-traho], 3. v. a., *drag off, drag away*.

absum, -esse, -fui (āfui), -futurus, [ab-sum], irr. v. n., *be away, be absent, be off* (at a distance).—Fig., *suspicio* (*be wanting*); *nomen* (*be far from helping*); *ab eo quin* (*be far from being*); *multum quin* (*lack much of, etc.*); *longius quin* (*be farther off than that*); *a bello* (*keep aloof, take no part in*); *ab hoc consilio* (*not be concerned in*).—**absens**, p. as adj., *absent, in one's absence*.

abundō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, [† abundō, lost adj. st., *abounding*; cf. *abunde, abundantly*], 1. v. n., *overflow*.—Fig., *abound*.—Transf. (of the place, etc., containing the thing), *be strong in, be rich in, abound in*.

ac, see **atque**.

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus, [ad-cedo, *go or come*], 3. v. n., *move towards, draw near, approach, come up, come* (to), *advance to, advance*.—Fig., *come to*: Remis studium (*be inspired in, cf. discedo*).—Esp., *be added*, where often an explanatory word is necessary in Eng.: huc accedere, *be in addition to this*; huc accedebat ut, *there was also this* (disadvantage) *that*; so with *quod*, *there was also the fact that, there was also the reason that*, or simply *moreover, then again*.

accelerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad-celero, *hasten*; cf. *celer, swift*], 1. v. a. and n., *hasten*.

acceptus, p. p. of **accipio**.

accessus, p. p. of **accedo**.

accido, -cidere, -cidi, no p. p., [ad-cado], 3. v. n., *fall to, fall upon, fall. tela gravius* (*strike*).—Fig., *happen, befall, occur, present itself, turn out, arise*.—Often euphemistically for death, defeat, etc.: si quid Romanis; gravius a Caesare (*be done, severe measures be taken*).

accidō, -cidere, -cidi, -ciscus, [ad-caedo], 3. v. a., *cut into, partly cut*.

accipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [ad-capio] 3. v. a., *take, receive*: exercitum (*take command of*).—Less exactly, *volnus*; *incommodum* (*suffer, meet with*).—Fig., *accept, learn, hear, get, take*: excusationem; usus (*acquire*); aliquid fama (*hear of*).—**acceptus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *acceptable*.

acclivis, -e, [ad-clivus, *slope* (weakened)], adj., *sloping towards, rising, sloping, ascending*: collis; aditus.

acclivitas, -tātis, [acclivi- + tas], *F.*, *slope (upward), inclination, steepness.*

Aceō, -ōnis, [Celtic], *M.*, one of the Senones, who stirred up his people against the Romans.

accommodatus, *p. p.* of **accommodo**.

accommodō, (adc-) -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [accommodō- *fitting*, or *ad-commodo*], *I. v. a.*, *fit on, fit: insignia (put on, adjust).* — **accommodatus**, -a, -um, *p. p.*, *fitted, adapted.*

accūrātē, [old case-form of **accuratus**, *done with care*], *adv.*, *with care, carefully.*

accurrō, -currere, -currī (-cucurrī), *no p. p.* [ad-curro], *3. v. n.*, *run to, run up (on foot), rush up (on horseback), ride up.*

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad- + **causo**, *assign as a reason or charge*], *I. v. a.*, *accuse, blame, find fault with.*

ācer, -cris, -cre, [AC, *sharp* (cf. **acus**, *needle*), + **ris**], *adj.*, *sharp.* — *Fig.*, *keen, active, violent.* See **acriter**.

acerbē [acerbus], *adv.*, *bitterly.* — *Fig.* (of the mind), *ferre inopiam* (*suffer severely from*, etc.).

acerbitās, -tātis, [acerbō- + tas], *F.*, *bitterness.* — Concrete in plur., *sufferings* (with a change of point of view in Eng.).

acerbus, -a, -um, [acer (treated as *st.*) + **bus** (cf. **superbus**)], *adj.*, *bitter* (to the taste). — *Fig.* (to the mind), *bitter, hard to bear, cruel.*

ācerrimē, *superl.* of **ācriter**.

acervus, -ī, [acer (shortened as *st.*) + **vus**], *M.*, (*pointed?*), *a heap, a pile.*

aciēs, -ēī, [AC (*sharp*) + **ies** (cf. **materies**)], *F.*, *point, sharp edge, edge: oculorum* (*keen glance, glare*). — *Esp.*, *line, battle line, array, army* (in battle array, cf. **agmen**), *rank* (of an army in several ranks): *acie instructa depugnare*, *fight a pitched battle.*

acquirō, see **adquiro**.

ācriter [acri- + **ter**], *adv.*, *sharply.* — *Fig.*, *fiercely, violently, hotly* (of fighting), *with spirit: acriter pugnatum est*, *a fierce battle was fought, there was hot fighting.*

āctuārius, -a, -um, [actu-, *movement* (AG in ago) + **arius**], *adj.*, *fast sailing* (provided with both sails and oars).

āctus, *p. p.* of ago.

acuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, [acu-, *sharp* (in **acus**, *needle*)], *3. v. a.*, *sharpen.* — **acūtus**, -a, -um, *p. p.* as *adj.*, *sharpened, sharp.*

acūtus, *p. p.* of **acuō**.

ad [ʔ], *adv.* (in comp.). — *Prep.* with acc. With idea of motion, *to, towards, for, at, on, against, in, near, in regard to.* — Of time, *till, at, on*; *ad diem*, *on the day.* — With numerals, *about.* — *Esp.*, *deferre ad*, *lay before*; *recepti ad se* (*among*); *ad fortunam Caesari defuit* (*Cæsar lacked to complete*, etc.); *contendere ad occupandam* (*to, for*), and often with the gerund or gerundive expressing purpose; *ad certum pondus* (*up to, i.e. of*); *ad modum* (*in*); *commeare ad*, *visit*; *ad impedimenta* (*by*); *ad auxilium*

(to give assistance); ad arbitrium (according to); proficiisci ad (for); ad unum, to a man; ad celeritatem (for, in the way of); ad speciem, for show; ad extremum, at last, finally. — In comp., to, towards, up to, up against, in, by, in addition, and the like.

a. d., see ante.

adāctus, p. p. of adigo.

adaequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [adaequo-, make equal; cf. aequus], 1. v. a., make equal to: moles moenibus (make as high as). — More commonly with the verb neuter and the acc. or dat. depending on the combined idea, become equal to, equal: altitudinem muri (reach up to); cursum (keep up with).

adamō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [adamo, love], 1. v. a., take a fancy to, fall in love with, covet, become attached to.

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [ad-do (1 and 2)], 3. v. a., give to. — Also, place to, add (with acc. or absolutely).

adducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [ad-duco], 3. v. a., lead to, draw to, bring in (of persons), bring, draw in (towards one), drive, force. — Fig., induce, drive.

adductus, p. p. of adduco.

adēmpus, p. p. of adimo.

adeō, -ire, -iī (-ivī), -itus, [ad-eō], irr. v. a. and n., go to, visit, get at, come to, come up, go to (a place), get in (to a place), advance (somewhere), attack, approach (speak with), accost: with ad, come into the presence of.

adeō [ad-eō (thither)], adv., to that point. — Less exactly, to that degree,

so much so: diaccessisse adeo ut (so speedily that). — Still weaker, in fact, at all, exactly.

adeptus, p. p. of adipiscor.

adequitō, -āre, -āvi, no p. p., [adequito, ride, cf. eques], 1. v. a. and n., ride up, ride against, skirmish with (of cavalry).

adfectus, p. p. of adficio.

adferō (aff-), -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [ad-fero], irr. v. a., bring to, bring: litteras. — Fig., cause, bring forward, allege, report, announce: fortuna casus (bring about, give).

adfiō (aff-), -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [ad-facio], 3. v. a., do to, affect. — With acc. and abl., affect with, inflict upon, produce in, cause to, visit with, fill with. — In passive, suffer, receive, be in (a condition), be afflicted by, suffer from: beneficio adfectus, having received favors; magno dolore adfici, be greatly distressed.

adfigō (aff-), -figere, -fixī, -fixus, [ad-figo, fix, fasten], 3. v. a., fasten to (by insertion or the like).

adfiŋgō (aff-), -fiŋgere, -fiŋxī, -fiŋtus, [ad-fiŋgo], 3. v. a., make up in addition. — Of rumors, invent more, add.

adfinītās (aff-), -tātis, [adfini- (close to, fr. finis, boundary) + tas], F., nearness. — Esp. of relation by marriage, relationship, alliance, connection. — Concretely, a connection: adfinitatibus coniuncti (marriages).

adfirmātiō (aff-), -ōnis, [adfirmatio, cf. adfirmo, assert], F., assurance. — Concretely, an assertion.

adfixus (aff-), p. p. of adfigo.

adflīctō (aff-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad-

flecto, cf. **adfigo**], 1. v. a., *dash against, dash upon, dash to the ground*. Hence, *overthrow, overwhelm, wreck*.

adfectus (aff-), p. p. of **adfigo**.

adfigō (aff-), -figere, -fixi, -fictus, [ad-figo], 3. v. a., *dash upon*. Hence, *overthrow, wreck, overturn*: *navis* (*shatter, damage*); *arbores* (*throw down*).

adfore (aff-), see **adsum**.

agredior (agg-), -gredi, -gressus, [ad-gradior, *step, go*], 3. v. dep., *go towards, go to, march against, attack*.

adgregō (agg-), -äre, -ävi, -ätus, [ad-grego, *flock, cf. grex, flock*], 1. v. a., *unite in a flock, gather*: *se* (*gather around, flock to*); *se ad amicitiam* (*attach one's self to*).

adhaerēō, -haerēre, -haesi, -haesūrus, [ad-haereo], 2. v. n., *stick (to), cling (to), get caught (in)*.

adhaerēscō, -ere, [ad-haeresco], 3. v. n., same meaning as **adhaereo**.

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [ad-habeo], 2. v. a., *have in*. Hence, *call in, admit, bring with (one)*. — Fig., *employ, use*.

adhibitus, p. p. of **adhibeo**.

adhortor, -ārī, -ätus, [ad-hortor], 1. v. dep., *encourage, address, urge, rally* (soldiers).

adhūc [ad-huc, *hither*], adv., *hitherto* (of place). — Of time, *up to this time, till now, to this day*.

adiaceō, -iacēre, -iacuī, no p. p., [ad-laceo], 2. v. n., *lie near, border on, be adjacent*.

Adiatunnus, -ī, [Celtic], M., chief of the Sotiates.

adi-ciō (adiic-), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus,

[ad-lacio], 3. v. a., *throw to, hurl, fling*: *telum adici* (*be thrown to, i.e. reach*); *aggerem* (*throw up*). — Fig., *join to, add*: *adiecta planities* (*with the addition of*).

adigō, -igere, -ēgi, -actus, [ad-ago], 3. v. a., *drive to, drive up* (of cattle, etc.). — Less exactly, *drive in, drive home* (of piles), *move up* (of towers), *shoot* (of weapons). — Fig., *force, bind* (by oath).

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēemptus, [ad-emo, *take*], 3. v. a., *take away* (the action being looked upon as done to somebody, usually in the dat.). — Fig., *destroy, cut off, spem*; *prospectum* (*intercept, cut off*).

adipiscor, -ipisci, -eptus, [ad-apiscor, *lay hold of*], 3. v. dep., *obtain, secure*: *victoriam* (*win, gain*).

aditus, -ūs, [ad-itus, cf. *adeo, go to*], M., *approach, arrival, coming, access*: *defugere* (*contact, intercourse*). — Concretely, *an avenue* (of approach), *access* (excuse for approaching), *admission, means of approach, means of access, way of approach, approach* (in military sense); *sermonis* (*occasion for intercourse*); *ad uxorem* (*intercourse*).

adiectus, p. p. of **adicio**.

adiudicātus, p. p. of **adiudico**.

adiudicō, -äre, -ävi, -ätus, [ad-iudico, cf. *iudex, judge*], 1. v. a., *adjudge, assign* (by deliberation).

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūunctus, [ad-iungo], 3. v. a., *join to, unite to, attach, unite with*.

adiutor, -tōris, [ad-tutor, cf. *adiuvo, help*], M., *helper, assistant, abettor*.

adiūtus, p. p. of **adiuvo**.

adiuvō, -iuvare, -iūvi, -iūtus, [ad-iuvo, *help*], 1. v. a., *assist, help, help on, be of advantage, be an assistance to*; ad spem (*encourage*).

adlātus (all-), p. p. of **adfero**.

adliciō (all-), -licere, -lēxi, -lectus, [ad-lacio], 3. v. a., *allure to, invite, entice, attract*.

admātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad-maturo, fr. *maturus, early*], 1. v. a., *hasten: defectionem (bring to a head more quickly)*.

administer, -trī, [ad-minister, *servant*], M., *servant, minister: ad sacrificia (priest, celebrant)*.

administrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad-ministro, *serve*], 1. v. a., *carry into execution, perform, execute, carry out, carry on (war), attend to (duties): imperia (give, carry out the duties of a commander)*.

admīrātus, p. p. of **admiror**.

admiror, -ārī, -ātus, [ad-miror, *wonder*], 1. v. dep., *be surprised, wonder at, admire*. — **admirandus**, -a, -um, as adj., *surprising*. — **admīrātus**, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, *being surprised, wondering*.

admissus, p. p. of **admitto**.

admittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [ad-mitto], 3. v. a., (*let go to*), *let go: admissio equo, at full speed*. — **Fig.**, *allow* (cf. **com-** and **per-mitto**): *in se facinus (commit a crime); dedecus (permit to be incurred, incur)*. — Also pass. without *in se*, *be committed*.

admodum [ad-modum, *measure, limit*], adv., *to a degree*. Hence, *very, very much, greatly, exceedingly, so (very) much*.

admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [ad-moneo], 2. v. a., *warn, urge*.

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultus, [ad-olesco, *grow*], 3. v. n., *grow up (to maturity), mature*. See also **adulescens**.

adorior, -oriri, -ortus, [ad-orior], 4. v. dep., (*rise up against*), *attack, assail*.

adortus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adorior**.

adparō (app-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad-paro, *make ready*, cf. *pareo, be on hand*], 1. v. a. and n., *prepare, get ready, make preparations*.

adpellō (app-), -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [ad-pello, *drive*], 3. v. a. and n., *land (ships), bring to land*.

adpetō (app-), -petere, -petivī, -petitus, [ad-peto, *aim at*], 3. v. a. and n., *seek to gain, desire, aim at*. — Abs., *approach*.

adplicō (app-), -plicāre, -āvi (-uī), -plicātus (-plicitus), [ad-plico, *fold*], 1. v. a., (*bend towards*). With reflex., *lean against*.

adportō (app-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad-porto, *carry*], 1. v. a., *bring in, bring (to some place)*.

adprobō (app-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad-probo, *esteem good*, cf. *probus, good*], 1. v. a., *approve of, agree with* (an opinion or action).

adpropinquō (app-), -āre, -āvi, no p. p., [ad-propinquo, cf. *propinquus, near*], 1. v. n., *approach, come nearer, come near*.

adpulsus (app-), p. p. of **adpello**.

adquirō (acq-), -quirere, -quisivī, -quisītus, [ad-quaero, *seek*], 3. v. a. (*get in addition*), *acquire: aliquid (gain some advantage)*.

adripiō (arr-), -ripere, -ripui, -reptus, [ad-rapio], 3. v. a., *snatch up, seize*.

adroganter (arr-), [adrogant- (st. of p. of adrogo, *assume*) + ter], adv., *with presumption, presumingly, with insolence*.

adrogantia (arr-), -ae, [adrogant- (see preceding) + ia], F., *insolence, insolent conduct, presumption*.

adscendō, see *ascendo*.

adscēsus, see *ascensus*.

adsciscō (asc-), -sciscere, -scivī, -scitus, [ad-scisco, *approve*, fr. scio], 3. v. a., *attach* (by formal decree). — Less exactly, *attach to* (one's self), *unite with* (one's self).

adsiduus (ass-), -a, -um, [ad-†siduus (SED. in *sedeo*, *sit*) + uus], adj., (*sitting by*), *constant, continued, incessant*.

adsiſtō (ass-), -sistere, -stitī, no p. p., [ad-sisto, *place* (one's self)], 3. v. n., *stand by, attend, assist*: in conspectu patris (*appear*).

adspectus (asp-), -ūs, [ad-†spec-tus, cf. adspicio, *look at*], M., *a looking at*. — Transf., *an appearance, aspect*.

adsuēfaciō (ass-), -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [†adsuē- (cf. *suesco*, *become accustomed*) -facio, *make*], 3. v. a., *accustom, train*. — Pass., *be accustomed*.

adsuēfactus (ass-), -a, -um, p. p. of *adsuēfacio*.

adsuēscō (ass-), -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, [ad-suesco, *become accustomed*], 3. v. a. and n., *accustom, become accustomed, become wonted* (of animals).

adsuētus (ass-), -a, -um, p. p. of *adsuesco*.

adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, [ad-sum], irr. v. n., *be near, be by, be present, be at hand, be there, appear*.

Aduatuca, -ae [Celtic, *a fortress*?], F., *a fortress of the Eburones (prob. Tongres), near the Meuse*.

Aduatuci, -ōrum [Celtic], M., pl., *a tribe of the Belgæ (originally Germans) living on the west bank of the Meuse (later, Tongri)*.

adulēscēns (adol-), -entis [p. of *adulesco*, *grow up*], adj., *young*. — As noun, *a youth, young man*. — With proper names, *the younger* (Jr., to distinguish one from his father).

adulēscēntia (adol-), -ae, [adulescent- + ia], F., *youth*.

adulēscēntulus (adol-), -ī, [adulescent- + ulus, dim. end.], M. (often as adj.), *a mere boy, very young*.

adventus, -ūs, [ad-†ventus, cf. *advenio*, *come to*], M., *a coming, arrival, approach*.

adversārius, -a, -um, [adversō- (reduced) + arius], adj., (*turned towards*), *opposed*. — As noun, *opponent, adversary, foe, enemy*.

adversus, p. p. of *adverto*, in various uses.

adversus, prep. with acc., see *adverto*.

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [ad-verto], 3. v. a., *turn towards*: *animum* (*turn the attention, notice*, see *animadverto*), *turn against, turn* (to anything). — **adversus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *in front, opposed, opposite, in opposition, adverse, un-*

favorable, in the face of: proelium (*unsuccessful*); hostibus adversus occurrebant (*right against, in their front*); in adversum os, *right in the face*; flumine (*up*, cf. secundo); res adversae, *adversity, want of success*. — adversus [petrified as adv., cf. versus], prep. with acc., *against*.

advocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad-voco], I. v. a., *call (to one), summon*.

advolō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, [advolo], I. v. n., *fly to, fly at*. — Less exactly, of cavalry, *rush at, fly at, charge upon*.

aedificium, -i, [†aedific- (cf. aedifico) + ium], N., *building*. — Esp. buildings standing singly, opposed to villages, *farm houses*.

aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†aedific- (aedes, house, FAC in facio)], I. v. a., *build (of houses)*. — Less exactly, of ships.

aeger, -gra, -grum, [?], adj., *sick, disabled*.

aegerrimē, superl. of aeger.

aegrē [old case-form of aeger], adv., *feebly*. Hence, *with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely*.

Aemilius, -i, [?], M., (Lucius), a Gaul, a subaltern in Cæsar's Gallic cavalry. Probably named from some Roman Aemilius from whom he had received the citizenship.

aequāliter [aequali- (fr. aequus, even) + ter], adv., *evenly, uniformly*.

aequinoctium, -i, [as if aequinoct-, indirectly fr. aequo-, *equal*, nox (*night*) + ium], N., *the time of the equinox, the equinox*.

aequitās, -tātis, [aequō- (*even*,

equal) + tas], F., *evenness*. Hence (cf. aequus), *fairness, justice*. — Esp., aequitas animi, *evenness of mind, contentment, resignation*.

aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [aequō-, *equal*], I. v. a., *make equal, equalize*.

aequus, -a, -um, [?, perh. akin to unus, formed with -cus instead of -nus], adj., *even, level, equal*. Hence, *fair, just, equitable*. — Esp., aequus animus, *equanimity, contentment, resignation*; aequo animo aliquid facere (*be resigned to, be satisfied to, be content to*); contentio (*on equal terms*); aequo Marte, *on equal terms, with equal success*.

aerārius, -a, -um, [aer- (as st. of aes, copper) + arius], adj., (*having to do with copper*). — Fem. as noun, *a mine*.

aereus, -a, -um, [aer- (as st. of aes, copper) + eus], adj., *of copper, copper* (as adj.).

aes, aeris, [?], N., *copper* (as metal for ships, or as money). Hence, *money*. — Esp., alienum (*debt, another man's money*).

aestās, -tātis, [st. akin to aedes (*hearth*) + tas], F., (*heat*), *summer* (the season for military operations).

aestimātiō, -ōnis, [aestimā- (st. of aestimo, *value*) + tiō], F., *valuation, estimation, value*.

aestimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [aestimō-, *assayer*], I. v. a., *value, estimate*. — Less exactly, *regard*: gravius (*consider more serious, of calamities*).

aestivus, -ā, -um, [†aestu- (cf. aestus, *heat*) + ivus], adj., *hot*. Hence, *summer* (as adj.): tempus.

aestuārius, -a, -um, [aestu- (cf. aestus, *tide*) + arius], adj., (*relating to the tide*). — Only in neut., as noun, *creek, estuary, marsh*.

aestus, -tūs, [AID (in aedes, *hearth*) + tus], M., *heat* (plur. in same sense). Hence, *boiling, tide*.

aetās, -tātis, [for aevitas, fr. aevo- (st. of aevum, *age*) + tas], F., *age* (of old or young): *aetate confectus*, *oppressed with years*.

aeternus, -a, -um, [aevo- (st. of aevum, *age*) + ternus], adj., (*relating to age*), *eternal, lasting*.

aff-, see adf-.

Āfricus, -a, -um, [Afro- (st. of Afer, *African*) + cus], adj., *of Africa*. — Esp., sc. ventus, *the S.W. wind* (blowing from Africa to Italy).

āfuisse, āfutūrus, see absum.

Agēdincum, -ī, [Celtic], N., chief town of the Senones, on the Yonne; now *Sens*.

ager, agrī, [AG in ago (*drive*?) + rus, akin to Eng. *acre*], M., *land* (cultivated), *fields, country* (opposed to city), *territory* (country), *cultivated lands, fields* (as opposed to woods).

agger, -eris, [ad-ger (for GES in gero, as st.), M., (*that which is carried to a place*), *earth* (for a wall), *earth of a wall, a mound of earth, a wall, a rampart, a mole, a dike* (either the regular earthwork of the Romans for an entrenched camp or line of circumvallation, or the dike of approach, a long sloping mound leading up to the height of the walls): *cotidianus* (*daily addition to the dike or walls*)).

agg- (except agger), see adg-.

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [agitō- (freq. of ago, *put in motion*)], I. v. a., *drive, chase*. Hence, *vex, trouble*. — Fig., *turn over* (in mind), *propose, discuss, purpose*.

agmen, -minis, [AG (in ago, *put in motion*) + men], N., *a moving, a march*. — Concretely (of bodies in motion), *a body in motion, a column, an army, a line* (of troops in march), *a train, a fleet*. — Less exactly, *an army* (not in march). Phrases: *primum* (*the van*); *novissimum* (*the rear*); *claudere* (*bring up the rear*); *conferto agmine*, *in close order*; *agmine*, *on the march*; *agmen legionum* (*the main column*); *extremo agmine*, *in the rear*.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, [AG, *put in motion*], 3. v. a., *drive* (apparently from behind, cf. *duco*, *lead*): *sublicas* (*drive down*); *vineas, turres*, etc. (*set in motion, move on, advance*); *cuniculos* (*extend*); *ac portare* (of live stock as booty, *drive off*). — Loosely, *do* (cf. "carry on"), *act, treat, discuss, plead*. — Phrases: *conventum* (*hold*); *gratias* (*render, give, express*, cf. *habere* and *referre*); *quid agit*, *what is one about?*; *quid agitur*, *what is going on?*; *de obsessione agere* (*do anything about, engage in*).

agricultūra, see cultura.

alacer, -cris, -cre, [?], adj., *active, eager, spirited*.

alacritās, -tātis, [alacri- (*eager*) + tas], F., *eagerness, readiness, spirit, promptness*.

ālārius, -a, -um, [ālārī- (st. of

ala, wing, + ris) + ius], adj. (*belonging to the wings*). Hence, of the *allies* (who held the wings of the army). — M. plur. as noun, *allies, auxiliaries*.

albus, -a, -um, [?, cf. **Alpes**], adj., *white* (pale, opp. to **ater**, cf. **candidus**, *shining white*, opp. to **niger**): **plumbum album**, tin.

alcēs, -is, [Teutonic, cf. *elk*], F., the *elk* (a large beast of the deer kind, resembling the moose).

Alesia, -ae, [Gallic], F., a city of the Mandubii, west of Dijon; now *Alise Ste. Reine*.

aliās [unc. case-form of **alius**, but cf. **foras**], adv., *elsewhere*. — Of time, *at another time*: **alias . . . alias**, now . . . now (cf. **alius . . . alius**).

aliēnātus, p. p. of **alieno**.

aliēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**alienō**, *another's*], I. v. a., *make another's*. — Also, *make strange, alienate, estrange*: **alienata mente**, in a frenzy.

aliēnus, -a, -um, [unc. st. akin to **alius**, *other*, (prob. imitated from verb-stems of 2d conj.) + **nus**], adj., *another's, of others, other people's*: **finēs (others')**; **aes (debt)**. Hence, *strange, foreign, unfavorable* (cf. **suus**), *foreign to the purpose*. — Superl., M. plur. as noun, *perfect strangers*.

aliō [old case-form of **alius**], adv., *elsewhither, elsewhere* (of end of motion).

aliquamdiū [**aliquam-diu**, cf. **quam diu**], adv., *for some time, some time, a considerable time*.

aliquandō [**ali-** (in **alius**, *other*) -**quando**, *when*], *at some time*. —

Emphatically, *at last* (at some time, though not before).

aliquantō, see **aliquantus**.

aliquantus, -a, -um, [**ali-** (in **alius**, *other*) -**quantus**, *how great* (cf. **aliquis**)], adj., *considerable*. — Neut., as noun, *a good deal, a considerable part*. — **aliquantō** (as abl. of measure), *by considerable, considerably, a good deal*.

aliquis (-**quī**), -qua, -quid (-**quod**), [**ali-** (in **alius**, *other*) -**quis**, *any*], indef. pron. (more forcible than **quis**; not universal, like **quisquam**), *some, any*. — Emph., *some (considerable), any (important)*. — As noun, *some one, any one, something, anything*.

aliquot [**ali-** (in **alius**, *other*) -**quot**, *how many*], indecl. adj., *several, some* (more than one, but not conceived as many).

aliter [**ali-** (in **alius**, *other*) + **ter**], adv., *otherwise, differently*. — Often rendered by a noun or adjective implied in the context, **aliter se habere ac**, *be different from what*, etc.; **nec aliter sentire quā**, *have no other idea but that*.

alius, -a, -ud, [unc. root (cf. *else*) + **ius**], adj. pron., *another* (any one, not all), *other, different, else, another* (of the second of three or more). — Repeated (either in separate clauses or in same), *one . . . another, one another, one one (thing), another another*: **alius alia causa illata**, *alleging different reasons*; **alius ex alio** (*from different, etc., one from one, another from another*). — Esp. in a partitive use, **ex aliis** (with superl., *most of all others*, cf. "the

fairest of her daughters, Eve"); *alius atque* (see *atque*).

all-, see *adl-*.

Allobroges, -um, [Celtic], *m. plur.*, a Celtic people (of Gaul), living between the Rhone, the Isère, the Lake of Geneva, and the Alps (in *Dauphiny* and *Savoy*). They were conquered in B.C. 121 by Fabius Maximus.

alō, *alere*, *alui*, *altus*, [AL, *nourish*], 3. v. a., *cause to grow, feed, nurse, support* (supply with food), *foster, raise, keep* (of animals): *staturam* (*increase*). — Fig. *foster, foment, feed*.

Alpēs, -ium, [Celtic form, (cf. *albus*) + *is*], *F. pl.*, *the Alps*, more or less loosely used of the whole mass of mountains between Italy (Cisalpine Gaul), Gaul, and Germany.

alter, -era, -erum, [AL- (in *alius*, *other*) + *ter* (for -*terus*, compar. suffix)], *adj. pron.*, *the other* (of two). — In *plur.*, *the other party*. — Repeated (cf. *alius*), *one the other, one another* (of two), *one . . . the other*. — In *plur.*, *one party . . . the other*. — Also, *the second* (of more than two), *another* (the second of three): *dies* (*the second*). — Also (esp. with negatives), *another* (beside one's self, where all are conceived as two parties, one's self and all the rest).

alternus, -a, -um, [*alter-* (as *st.*) + *nus*], *adj.*, *alternate, reciprocal, mutual, alternating*.

altitūdō, -inis, [*altō-* (*high*) + *tudo*], *F.*, *height, depth* (cf. *altus*), *thickness* (of a timber).

altus, -a, -um, [*p. p.* of *alo* (*nour-*

ish), as *adj.*] (*grown high by nourishing*), *high*. — From opposite point of view, *deep*. — Neut., as noun, *the sea, the deep*: *in alto, in deep water*; *ex alto, from the sea*.

alūta, -ae, [? cf. *alumen, alum*], *F.*, *leather* (of a fine sort, like *morocco*?).

amb- [akin to *ambo*, *both*], *prep.* only in comp., *about, round about*.

ambactus, -i, [prob. German], *m.*, *a retainer, a vassal*.

Ambarri, -ōrum, [Celtic], *plur.* of *adj.*, a Belgian tribe, on the Saône. They seem to have been clients of the Hædui, and are called Hædui Ambarri.

Ambiānī, -ōrum, [Celtic], *m. plur.* of *adj.*, a Belgian tribe, whose chief town, Samarobriua, is now called from their name, *Amiens*.

Ambibariī, -ōrum, [Celtic], *m. plur.* of *adj.*, an Aremoric tribe living in a part of Normandy.

Ambiliātī, -ōrum, [Celtic], *m. plur.* of *adj.*, a tribe on the Somme (possibly part of the preceding).

Ambiorix, -igis, [Celtic], *m.*, an able prince of the Eburones. He caused a revolt of his nation against Cæsar, which was partially successful, and came near being entirely so. He caused Cæsar uneasiness for several years, and eluded every effort to capture him.

Ambivaretī (*Ambila-*), -ōrum, [Celtic], *m. plur.* of *adj.*, a Gallic tribe, dependents of the Hædui.

Ambivaritī, -ōrum, [Celtic], *m. plur.* of *adj.*, a Belgic tribe on the west bank of the Meuse.

ambō, -ae, -ō (-ōrum), [akin to **amb**, *round about*], num. adj., *both* (together, cf. *uterque*, *both separately*).

āmēns, -entis, [ab-mens], adj. (*having the mind away*), *mad, crazy*.

āmentia, -ae, [ament- (*mad*) + **ia**], F., *madness, frenzy*, (*mad*) *folly*.

āmentum, -i, [? unc. root + **mentum**], N., *a thong* (attached to a javelin, and wound around it to give it a twisting motion in throwing, as with rifle balls).

amīcitia, -ae, [amicō- (*friendly*) + **tia**], F., *friendship, friendly relations, alliance*. — Opp. to *hospitium*, *personal friendship*.

amicus, -a, -um, [unc. st. fr. **AM** (in **amo**, *love*) + **cus**], adj., *friendly, well disposed: praesidium (devoted)*. — As noun, M., *a friend, an ally*.

āmissus, p. p. of **amitto**.

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [ab-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go (away), let slip, let pass*. Hence, *lose* (esp. of military losses).

amor, -ōris, [**AM** (in **amo**, *love*) + **or** (for **os**)], M., *love, affection*.

amplē [old case-form of **amplus**], adv., *widely, largely*. — **amplius**, compar., *farther, more, longer: amplius quingenti, five hundred and more; ne quis, . . . amplius (any more); amplius obsidum* (see **amplus**); *munera amplissime missa (generous gifts)*.

amplificātus, p. p. of **amplifico**.

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [amplificō-, (amplō-) with **FAC**, *make*], 1. v. a., *increase, enlarge, extend, heighten*.

amplitūdō, -inis, [amplō- (*large*) + **tudo**], F., *size, extent, greatness: cornuum (spread)*.

amplus, -a, -um, [?, perh. **amb**- (*about*) + st. akin to **plus, plenus**], adj. Of size and extent, lit. and fig., *large, wide, great*. — Esp., *prominent, of consequence, splendid, noble, distinguished: munera (lavish, valuable); dimissis amplioribus copiis (the greater part of)*. — **amplius**, neut. comp. as noun (cf. **plus**), *more, a greater number: amplius obsidum*.

an, [?], conj. introducing the second member of a double question, *or, or rather*. — Often with the first member only implied, *or: quid venirent, an speculandi causa ((or) was it)*.

Anartēs, -ium, [?], M. plur., a people in Dacia (*Transylvania*), on the river Theiss, at the eastern end of the Hercynian forest.

Ancalites, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a nation of Britain.

anceps, -cipitis, [amb-, *about, caput, head*], adj., (*having a head on both sides*), *double-headed*. — Less exactly, *twofold, double: proelium (on both fronts, of an army facing in two ways)*.

ancora, -ae, [Gr.], F., *anchor: in ancoris, at anchor*.

Andēs, -ium, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul north of the Loire, in modern *Anjou*.

Andī, -ōrum, the same as the *Andes*.

Andocombogius, -ī, [Celtic], M., a chief man of the Remi.

ānfractus (āmf-), -ūs, [am(b)-,

[*fractus*, fr. *FRAG* (in *frango*, *break*)], *M.*, a bending round. Hence, a winding, a circuit, a deviation (from a straight line).

angulus, -ī, [prob. *ancō*- (st. of *ancus*, *bent*) + *lus*], *M.*, (a little hook), a corner.

angustē [old case-form of *angustus*], *adv.*, narrowly, in narrow quarters (closely). — *Fig.*, sparingly (cf. *ample*), in small quantity.

angustiae, -ārum, [*angustō*- (*narrow*) + *ia*], *F. plur.*, narrowness (prop. concrete, *narrows*); *itinerum* (a narrow pass); *propter angustias* (narrowness of the passage). — *Fig.*, straits (difficult position, etc.), hard straits, difficulties: *angustiis premi*, to be hard pushed.

angustus, -a, -um, [*angor* (*squeezing*) + *tus*], *adj.*, narrow, confined: *angustiora castra* (less extensive); *angustiore fastigio* (narrowing, sloping, drawing in). — *Fig.*, in *angusto res est*, the position is critical (cf. 'in a tight place').

anima, -ae, [*anī*- (treated as root, fr. *AN*, *blow*) + *ma* (*F. of mus*), cf. *animus*], *F.*, breath. Hence, soul. — *Plur.*, the soul (of man, abstractly).

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, (also *animum adverto*), [*animum adverto*], 3. v. a., turn the mind to, attend to: *in aliquem* (punish, cf. the domestic "attend to"). — Less exactly, observe, notice, learn.

animal, -ālis, [*anima*- + *lis*, *N.* of *adj.*], *N.*, (a creature endowed with life), an animal (including man), a living creature (opp. to *booty*).

animus, -ī, [*anī*- (st. as root, fr.

AN, *blow*) + *mus*], *M.*, breath, life, soul (vital). — Usually (the above meanings being appropriated to *anima*, wh. see), *mind*, feelings, feeling, intellect (but cf. *mens*), *spirit*: *effeminare*; *levitas animi* (disposition, nature, or together, want of constancy); *animus relinquit aliquem*, one faints, loses consciousness; *animi mollitia*, want of energy or endurance; *animo paratus*, resolute; *animus advertere* (see *animadverto*). — *Esp.* (in a good sense, often in plur.), *spirit*, constancy, courage, resolution: *confirmare* (encourage any one); *relanguescere*; *promptus*; *paratus ad aliquid*. — Also (as opp. to *mens*, wh. see), the moral powers, will, desires, affections, etc., the heart, the feelings, the disposition: *bono animo esse*, be well disposed, be of good cheer; *esse in animo alicui*, to have in mind, as a purpose; *offendere* or *avertere* (feelings); *magni animi*, of great ambition. — Also, *animus magnus*, courage, magnanimity, lofty spirit; *animi magnitudo*, lofty spirit; *permulcere* (angry spirit); *mentes animosque perturbare* (minds, as thinking, and hearts, as feeling, etc.); *animi virtus*, nobleness of soul; *animi causa*, for pleasure, for amusement, for fancy.

annōtinus, -a, -um, [some form of *annō*- (year) + *tinus* (cf. *diutinus*)], *adj.*, last year's, old (of ships made the year before).

annus, -ī, [²], *M.*, a year (as a point of time, as the course of the year, or as a period).

annuus, -a, -um, [annō- (*year*) + *us*], adj., *annual*: *magistratus creatur (annually)*.

anser, -eris, [for *hanser*, akin to *goose*], *M.*, a *goose*.

ante [old case-form], adv., *before* (of place and time), *in front*: *ante dictum (above, before, previously)*; *ante habuerat (formerly, once)*; *iam ante, already before, already*; *pau- cis ante diebus, a few days before*. — Prep. with acc., *before* (of place or time): *ante se mittit (in advance of)*. — In dates, *ante diem (a. d.) (on such a day before)*. — In comp., *be- fore* (of place, time, and succession).

antēa [ante *eā*, case-form of *is*], adv. (of time), *before, previously, once*.

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [ante-*cedo*], 3. v. n. and a. (fr. force of prep.), *go forward, advance, sur- pass (in size, etc.), exceed, precede, go in advance of*.

antecursor, -ōris, [ante-*cursor*, runner], *M.* (a *forerunner*). — Esp. of the army, a *scout, pioneer*.

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [ante-*fero*], irr. v. a., *place in advance, prefer*. — Pass., *be preferred, be the first, have the superiority*.

antemna, -ae, [?], *F.*, a *yard* (for sails).

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -posi- tus, [ante-*pono*], 3. v. a., (*place in advance, cf. antefero*), *think of more importance*.

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [ante-*verto*], 3. v. a., (*turn in front, cf. antepono*), *prefer*.

antiquitus [antiquō- + *tus*], adv.,

from ancient times, from early times. — Less exactly, *long ago, in early times, anciently*.

antiquus, -a, -um, [anti- (cf. *ante*) + *cus*], adj., *old* (existing from early times, not so much in reference to present age as to former origin, cf. *vetus*), *ancient*.

Antistius, -i, [antisti- (*antistes*, overseer) + *ius*], *M.*, a Roman gen- tile name. — Esp., *Gaius Antistius Reginus*, a legatus of Cæsar.

Antōnius, -i, [?], *M.*, a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. *Marcus*, Mark Antony, the famous trium- vir, a legatus of Cæsar in Gaul; also 2, his brother, *Gaius*, a legatus of Cæsar.

Ap., for **Appius**.

aperiō, -perīre, -peruī, -pertus, [ab-*pario*, *get off, cf. operio, cover*], 4. v. a., *uncover, open*. — **apertus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *open, exposed, uncovered, unobstructed, unprotected*: *latus (the right side, not covered by the shield)*; *collis (without trees)*; *loca (open country)*; *impetus maris (unbroken)*.

apertē [old case-form of *apertus*], adv., *openly*.

Apollō, -inis, [?], *M.*, the son of Jupiter and Latona and twin brother of Diana, god of the sun, of divina- tion, of poetry and music, and presi- dent of the Muses. He was also god of archery, of pestilence, and, on the other hand, of healing. He is identified by Cæsar with some Celtic divinity.

apparō, see **adparo**.

1. **appellō**, see **adpello**.

2. **appellō** (adp-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†ad-pellō-, cf. *compello*], 1. v. a., *call, name, address, call upon, style* (declare one something or address in a certain character).

app-, see **adp-**.

Appius, -ī, [?, a Sabine word?], m., a Roman prænomen.

Apr., for **Aprilis**.

Aprilis, -e, [prob. akin to *aperio*, *open*], (*the month which opens the ground*), adj., of *April*.

aptus, -a, -um, [AP (in *apiscor*, *lay hold of*) + *tus*], adj., (*fitted to*), *suited, adapted, fit, apt*.

apud [akin to *ab*], prep. with acc., *at, among, with, before, on one's part, in relation to* (a person); *in one's house* (company, possession).

aqua, -ae, [?], f., *water, a water-course*: *aqua atque igni interdicere* (a form of banishment among the Romans); *mensurae ex aqua*, *by the water-clock* (a contrivance like an hour-glass for telling time by the running of water).

aquātio, -ōnis, [aqua- (st. of *aquor*, *fetch water*) + *tio*], f., *getting water* (cf. *pabulatio*).

aquila, -ae, [f. of *aquilus*, *dark gray*, perh. remotely akin to *aqua*], f., *an eagle*. — Esp., the standard of the Romans, consisting of an eagle on a staff.

Aquilēia, -ae, [Aquila- + *eius*], f., a city of Cisalpine Gaul (*Venetia*), founded by a Roman colony in B.C. 182 as an outpost on the northeast.

aquifer, -erī, [aquila-fer (reduced fr. -ferus, FER (in *fero*, *bear*) + *us*)], m., *a standard bearer* (of the eagle).

Aquitānia, -ae, [f. of adj. developed fr. *Aquitanus*], f., the part of Gaul between the Province, the Pyrenees, the Garonne, and the ocean (see I. 1).

Aquitānus, -a, -um, [?], adj., of *Aquitania*. — Plur., as noun, *the people of Aquitania*. — Sing., *a man of Aquitania, an Aquitanian*.

Arar, -aris, [?], m., *the Saône*, a river of Gaul rising in the Vosges and flowing into the Rhone at Lyons.

arbiter, -trī, [ad-bito (*go*) + *trus*, cf. -trum], m., (*a bystander*), *a witness*. — Less exactly, *a referee, an arbitrator*.

arbitrium, -ī, [arbitrō- (*umpire, judge*) + *ium* (cf. *iudicium*)], n., *judgment, will, pleasure* (what one sees fit to do).

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, [arbitrō-, *umpire, judge*], 1. v. a. and n., *think, suppose* (judge).

arbor, -oris, [?], f., *a tree*.

arcessō, -sere, -sivī, -situs, [akin to *accedo*, but the exact relation uncertain], 3. v. a., *summon, invite, send for* (persons), *call in*: *aliquem mercede* (*call in to serve for pay*).

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsus, [prob. aridō-, *dry*], 2. v. n., *be hot, be on fire*. — Fig., *be excited, be in a blaze, burn*.

Arduenna, -ae, [?], f., *the Ardennes* (a very large forest region in northeastern Gaul).

arduus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *high, steep, difficult* (of ascent).

Arecomici, -ōrum, [?], m. plur., a branch of the Volcae.

Aremoricus (Arm-), -a, -um, [Celtic *are, near*, and *mor, the sea*],

adj., only F. plur., *Aremorican* (of the states of Gaul near the ocean in Normandy and Brittany).

argentum, -i, [akin to *arguo*, *make bright*], N., (*the shining metal*), *silver*. Also, of things made of the metal, *silverware*, *silver*.

argilla, -ae, [dim. akin to *arguo*, *make bright*, F., (*white clay*)], *clay*: *fusilis* (some vitrifying earth, such as porcelain is made of).

āridus, a-, -um, [tarō- (wh. *areo*, *be dry*) + *duš*], adj., *dry*. — Neut. as noun, *dry land*.

ariēs, -ietis, [?], M., *a ram*. — Fig., *a battering ram* (a long timber armed at the end with metal for demolishing walls). — Less exactly, *a buttress* (piles driven down in a stream to brace a bridge).

Ariovistus, -i, [?], M., a chief of the Germans, called in by the Gauls in their domestic quarrels, who conquered and ruled them until he was himself crushed by the Romans.

Aristius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Marcus*, a tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar's army.

arma, -ōrum, [AR, *fit* (cf. *armus*, *the shoulder joint*) + *mus*], N. plur., *arms*, *equipment*: *armis ius exsequi* (*by force of arms*); *in armis esse*, *to be under arms*, *to be ready for service*, *to be in service*; *parati in armis*, *armed for war*; *ab armis discedere*, *to abandon hostilities*; *in armis*, *in battle*; *armis congressi* (*in battle*), and the like.

armāmenta, -ōrum, [armā- (st. of *armo*) + *mentum*], N. plur., *implements*. — Esp., *rigging*, *tackle*.

armātūra, -ae, [armā- (st. of *armo*) + *tura*], F., *equipment*: *levis armaturæ Numidæ* (*light armed*, without the heavy defensive armor of the legionary).

armātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *armo*.

armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [armō- (st. of *arma*)], I. v. a., *equip*, *arm*. — Pass., *arm* (one's self). — **armātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *armed*, *in arms*, *equipped*.

Arpinēius, -i, [Arpinō- (st. of *Arpinum*) + *eius*], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Gaius*, a Roman knight in Cæsar's army, possibly of Gallic origin, of a family enfranchised by Marius, who came from Arpinum.

arr-, see *adr-*.

ars, *artis*, [AR (*fit*) + *tis* (reduced)], F., (*skill in fitting*), *skill*, *art*. — Plur., *the arts*, *the useful arts*.

artē [old case-form of *artus*], adv., *closely*, *tightly*.

articulus, -i, [artu- (*joint*) + *culus*], M., *a little joint*. — Less exactly, *a joint*.

artificium, -i, [artific- (*artificer*) + *ium*], N., *a skilful contrivance*, *an artifice*, *a trick*. Also, *a trade* (opp. to *ars*, *a higher art*).

artus, -a, -um, [p. p. of *arceo* (*shut up*)], as adj., *tightly bound*, *close*: *silva* (*thick*).

Arvernus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., *of the Arverni* (a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Cevennes in modern Auvergne). — M. plur., *the Arverni*.

arx, *arcis*, [ARC (in *arceo*, *shut up*), + *is* (reduced)], F., *a stronghold*, *a fortress*, *a citadel*.

ascendō (ads-), -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus, [ad-scando, climb], 3. v. a. and n., *climb up, climb, ascend*: *val-lum* (*mount, scale*).

ascēnsus (ade-), -ūs [ad-†cansus, cf. *ascendo*], M., *a climbing up, an ascent, a going up*. — Concr., *a way up, a means of ascent*: *prohibere ascensu* (*from climbing up*).

asciscō, see *adscisco*.

aspectus, see *adspectus*.

asper, -era, -erum, [?], adj., *rough, harsh*. — Fig., *ferce, violent*.

asa-, see *ads-*.

at [prob. form of *ad*], conj., *but, but yet, at least*.

atque (ac), [ad-que], conj., *and* (generally introducing some more important idea), *and even, and especially*. — Also, *as, than*: *par atque, idem atque, the same as*; *simul atque, as soon as*; *similis atque, just like*; *aliter ac, otherwise than, different from what, etc.*; *aliud atque, different from, etc.*

Atrebās, -ātis, [Celtic], adj., *Atrebatian, of the Atrebates* (a people of Belgic Gaul), rarely sing. of one. — Plur., *the Atrebates*.

Ātrius, -ī, [atrō- (st. of *ater, black*) + *ius*], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Quintus*, a soldier in Cæsar's army.

attexō (adt-), -texere, -texuī, -textus, [ad-texo], 3. v. a., *weave on, make on* (by weaving).

attīgō (adt-), -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus, [ad-tango], 3. v. a., *touch upon, touch, reach, join* (of a nation's boundaries).

attribuō (adt-), -buere, -buī, -būtus,

[ad-tribuo], 3. v. a., *allot to, assign*.

attulī, see *adfero*.

auctor, -ōris, [AUG (in *augeo, increase*) + *tor*], M., *a voucher* (for any act or statement), *an authority, an adviser*: *defectionis* (*leader*); *auctor esse, approve, advise*; *eis auctoribus, with their approval*; *auctore hoste, on the authority of the enemy*.

auctōritās, -tātis, [auctor- (as if i-st.) + *tas*], F., *influence, prestige, authority* (not military or political, cf. *imperium* and *potestas*).

auctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *augeo*.

audācia, -ae, [audac- (*bold*) + *ia*], F., *daring, boldness, effrontery*.

audācter, [audac- (*bold*) + *ter*], adv., *with daring, boldly, fearlessly* (but of an enemy): *audacissime, with the greatest daring*.

audāx, -ācis, [audā- (as if st. of *audeo*) + *cus* (reduced)], adj., *daring, bold*. — See *audacia* and *audacter*.

audēō, audēre, ausus, - [prob. *avido-, eager*], 2. v. a. and n., *dare, venture, risk, dare to try (or do)*. — ausus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, *daring*.

audiō, -dire, -divī, -ditus, [prob. akin to *auris, ear*], 4. v. a., *hear, hear of*. — *audiēns*, -entis, p. as adj., *obedient* (with *dicto*).

auditiō, -ōnis, [audī- (st. of *audio*) + *tiō*], F., *a hearing, hearsay, report*.

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, [AUG (causative or fr. unc. noun-stem)], 2. v. a., *increase, magnify, enhance, add to* (something). — Pass., *increase*.

Aulercus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj.,

of the *Aulerci* (a widespread people of several tribes in the interior of Gaul). — Plur., *the Aulerci*.

Aulus, -i, [?], M., a Roman praenomen.

auriga, -ae, [poss. akin to *auris* and *ago*, cf. *aurea*, *headstall*], C., a *charioteer*, a *driver*.

auris, -is, [akin to *ear*, st. †*auri* (cf. *audio*)], F., an *ear*.

Aurunculēius, -i, [Aurunculō- (dim. of *Auruncus*, name of an Italian tribe) + *eius*], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a *legatus* of *Cæsar*.

Auscī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur. of adj., a tribe of *Aquitania*.

ausus, -a, -um, p. p. of *audeo*.

aut [?, but cf. *autem*], conj., or (regularly exclusive, cf. *vel*). — Repeated, *either . . . or*.

autem [?, akin to *aut*], conj., but (the weakest degree of opposition, cf. *sed*), on the other hand, then again, now (explanatory), whereas (in slight opposition to something preceding).

autumnus (*auct-*), -i, [for †*auctominus*, †*auctō-* (cf. *augeo*) + *minus*], M., *autumn* (the season of increase).

auxiliāris, -e, [auxiliō-, *help* (as if auxiliā) + *ris*], adj., *auxiliary*. — Plur. as noun, *auxiliaries*, *auxiliary troops* (not Roman legionaries).

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus, [†auxiliō-, *help*], I. v. dep., give assistance.

auxilium, -i, [†auxili- (akin to *augeo*, increase) + *ium*], N., *assistance*, *aid*, *remedy*, *relief*: *extremum* (the last resource); *ferre* (to assist, to aid); *auxilio* (as a reinforcement); *quos auxili causa habebat* (as auxiliaries, etc.). — Plur., *auxiliaries* (as opp. to the regular heavy-armed infantry); *reinforcements*: *auxilia tardare*, hinder from rendering assistance.

Avaricēnsis, -e, [Avaricō- + *ensis*], adj., of *Avaricum*. — Plur., the people of *Avaricum*.

Avaricum, -i, [Celtic], N., a town of the *Bituriges*, now *Bourges*.

avāritia, -ae, [avarō- (greedy) + *tia*], F., *covetousness*, *greed*, *avarice*.

āvehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus, [ab-veho], 3. v. a., carry off, carry away.

āversus, -a, -um, p. p. of *averto*.

āvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus, [ab-vertō], 3. v. a., turn aside, turn off, push aside. — Fig., *alienate*, *estrangle*. — **āversus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., turned away. Hence, *flying*, or, with a change of point of view in translation, in the rear (of that to which the word is applied): *ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur* (by the enemy getting in their rear, etc.).

avis, -is, [unc. root + *is*], F., a *bird*.

avus, -i, [?], M., a *grandfather*.

Axona, -ae, [Celtic], F., a river of Gaul (now *Aisne*), a tributary of the *Isara* (*Oise*).

B

Bācenis, -is, [Teutonic], F., with *silva*, a forest of Germany between the Cherusci and the Suevi.

Baculus, -ī, [baculus = baculum, *staff*], M., agnomen of Publius SEXTIUS Baculus, a centurion in CÆsar's army.

Baleāris, -e, [?], adj., *Balearic* (belonging to the *Baleares insulæ* in the Mediterranean, now *Iviza*, *Majorca*, and *Minorca*, famous for their slingers).

balteus, -ī, [?], M., *a belt, a baldric* (for the sword, passing over the shoulder, but sometimes also, *a belt* encircling the waist).

Balventius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name, only with *Titus*, a centurion in CÆsar's army.

barbarus, -a, -um, [prob. fr. imitation of unintelligible speech, cf. *balbus*, *stammering*], adj., *foreign* (not Greek or Latin), *uncivilized, savage, barbarian, of the barbarians*. — Plur., *the barbarians* or *savages* (used of the Gauls).

Basilus, -ī, [?], M., agnomen of *Lucius Minucius Basilus*, an officer in CÆsar's army.

Batavī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., the *Batavi* or *Batavians*, a nation occupying the region about the mouths of the Rhine.

Belgae, -ārum, [?], M. plur., *the Belgæ* or *Belgians*, a nation occupying the northern part of Gaul. — Perh. also a small tribe of that nation with this special name.

Belgium, -ī, [Belga- + ium], N., the country of the Belgæ.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, [bellicō- (*of war*) + osus], adj., *warlike*.

bellicus, -a, -um, [bellō- (*war*) + cus], adj., *of war, in war*.

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [bellō-, *war*], I. V. N., *fight, make war*: *studium bellandi, a passion for war*.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, [?], M. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Seine, Somme, and Oise, about modern Beauvais.

bellum, -ī, [old duellum, (fr. duo), *a strife between two*], N., *war, a war*: *bello persequi*, etc. (*in arms*); *bellum inferre, make war* (offensive); *bellum defendere, defend one's self from war*; *parare bellum, make warlike preparations*.

bene [old case-form of *bonus, good*], adv., *well*: *bene gerere negotium, be successful in*, etc.

beneficium, -ī, [benefico- (reduced) (cf. *bene*, FAC in *facio*) + ium], N., *well-doing, a service, a favor*, often rendered by Eng. plur., *services, favors shown, services rendered*: *sortium beneficio, thanks to the lot*; *beneficio suo adductus, by gratitude for his favors*.

benevolentia, -ae, [benevolent- (cf. *bene*, VOL in *volo*) + ia], F., *good-will, kindness*.

Bibracte, -is, [Celtic], N., the chief town of the Hædui (Mont Beuvray) near Autun, which was founded later.

Bibrax, -ctis, [cf. last word], F., a town of the Remi.

Bibroci, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of southeast Britain.

biduum, -i, [bi- (= dvi-, akin to duo, -duum (akin to dies)], N., *two days' time, two days*.

biennium, -i, [bienni- (bi, akin to duo, -annō-, year) + ium], N., *two years' time, the space of two years, two years*.

Bigerriōnes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Pyrenees (cf. *Bigorre*).

binī, -ae, -a, [bi- (= dvi-, akin to duo) + nus], distrib. num. adj., plur., *two each, two sets of, two* (of things in pairs or sets).

bipartitō, [abl. of *bipartitus*, *parted in two*], adv., *in two divisions*: *bipartito conlocatis insidiis* (*in two places*).

bipedālis, -e, [biped- (bi-ped-, in pes, foot) + alis], adj., *of two feet* (in measure), *two feet* (long, wide, etc.).

bis [for dvis, unc. case-form of duo], adv., *twice*.

Bituriges, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Celtic Gaul, in two branches, Vibisci (around Bordeaux) and Cubi (around Bourges).

Bođuōgnātus, -i, [Celtic], M., a leader of the Nervii.

Bōia, F. sing. of **Bōii**, *Boia*.

Bōii, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic nation, of which a part occupied lands in Cisalpine Gaul, a part settled in Pannonia, and a part joined the Helvetii in their emigration.

bonitās, -tātis, [†bonō- (*good*) +

tas], F., *goodness*: *agrorum* (*fertility*).

bonus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *good*: *bono animo esse*, *to be well disposed*; *optimum est*, *it is best*; *optimum iudicium facere*, *express so high an opinion*. — Neut. as noun, *good, advantage*; plur., *goods, property, estate*.

bōs, bovis, [akin to cow], C., a bull, a cow, an ox. — Plur., *cattle*.

bracchium (brāch-), -i, [?], N., an arm.

Brannovices, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a division of the Auleri living near the Hædui.

Brannovii (Bl-), -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic tribe, dependents of the Hædui.

Bratuspantium, -i, [Celtic], N., a fortified town of the Bellovaci, not certainly identified.

brevis, -e, [for bregus, (BRAGH, break) + us], adj., *short* (of space or time): *brevi*, *in a short space*.

brevitās, -tātis, [brevi- (*short*) + tas], F., *shortness, short stature*: *brevitas temporis*, *want of time*.

breviter [†brevi- (*short*) + ter], adv., *briefly*.

Britannī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., the Britons (including all the tribes of Britain).

Britannia, -ae, [†Britannō- + ia (F. of ius)], F., *Britain*.

Britannicus, -a, -um, [†Britannō- + cus], adj., *of Britain, Briton*: *bellum* (*with Britain*).

brūma, -ae, [†brevi- (*short*) + ma (superl.), sc. dies], F., *the winter solstice*.

Brūtus, -ī, [brutus, *heavy*], a family name at Rome. — Esp., *Decimus Junius Brutus Albinus*, a legatus of Cæsar. He distinguished himself in command of Cæsar's fleet off the coast of Gaul, and afterwards

in the civil war on the side of Cæsar. But he joined the conspiracy against Cæsar with Marcus Brutus, and was one of Cæsar's assassins. He was afterwards killed in Gaul by order of Antony.

C

C, for centum, *hundred*.

C., for Gaius.

Cabillōnum, -ī, [Celtic], N., a town of the Hædui on the Saone (*Chalon-sur-Saône*).

Caburus, -ī, [Celtic], M., the personal name of *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul, made a Roman citizen by C. Valerius Flaccus, and father of C. Valerius Proculus and C. Valerius Donnotaurus.

caçūmen, -inis, [?], N., *the top* (of trees, mountains, etc.).

cadāver, -eris, [akin to *cado*, *fall*], N., *a corpse, a body* (dead).

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, [CAD, *fall*], 3. v. n., *fall, be killed*.

Cadūrcus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., *of the Cadurci* (a tribe of Aquitania). — Plur., *the Cadurci*.

caedēs, -is, [†caed (as if root of *caedo*, *kill*) + is or es], F., *a murder, massacre, slaughter, killing*.

caedō, cadere, cecidī, caesus, [prob. causative of *cado*, cf. *fall, fell*], 3. v. a., *strike, strike down, cut, fell, cut down, slay*.

caelestis, -e, [†caellit- (st. of *caeles*, fr. *caelum*) + tia], adj., *heavenly*. — Plur., *the gods*.

caelum, -ī, [?], N., *the sky, the heavens, heaven*. — See *caelestis*.

caerimōnia, -ae, [?], F., *a rite, a ceremony*.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, [?], M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

caeruleus, -a, -um, [perh. akin to *caesius*, *bluish*], adj., *dark blue*.

Caesar, -aris, [?], M., a family name in the gens Iulia. — Esp.: 1. *C. Iulius Caesar*, the conqueror of Gaul and the author of the *Commentaries*. — 2. *L. Iulius Caesar*, a kinsman of the former, acting as his legatus in Gaul.

caespes, -itis, [?], M., *a sod* (used in fortification).

caesus, -a, -um, p. p. of *caedo*.

calamitās, -tātis, [?], F., *disaster* (orig. to crops?), *defeat, misfortune* (also euphemistically for death): *ejus* (*any accident to him*).

Caletes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe in Normandy, on the Seine.

Caletī, -ōrum, same as the preceding.

callidus, -a, -um, [†callō- (cf. *callum*, *thick skin*) + dus], adj., (*tough?*), *shrewd, cunning, skilful*.

cālō, -ōnis, [?], M., *a servant* (of a soldier), *a camp follower*.

campester, -tris, -tre, [campō- (*plain*) + ster, as if †campet + tris]

(cf. *equestris*),], adj., *of the plain: loca (level plains)*.

campus, -i, [?], M., *a plain*.

Camulogenus, -i, [Celtic], M., *a chief of the Aulerci*.

Caninius, -i, [?], M., *a Roman gentile name*.—Esp., *C. Caninius Rebilus*, *a legatus of Cæsar*.

canō, *canere*, *cecini*, *cantus*, [CAN], 3. v. a. and n., *sing, sound* (with voice or instrument).

Cantaber, -bra, -brum, [Celtic], adj., *of the Cantabri* (a warlike people in the north of Spain, allied with the Gauls of Aquitania).—Plur., *the Cantabri, the Cantabrians*.

Cantium, -i, [Celtic], N., *Kent* (the southeast corner of Great Britain).

caper, -prī, [?], M., *a goat*, F., *capra*, -ae, *a she-goat*.

capillus, -i, [adj. form akin to *caput, head*], M., *the hair* (collectively).

capīō, *capere*, *cēpī*, *captus*, [CAP], 3. v. a., *take, capture, take possession of, get, acquire, seize: stipendium; nomen; arma (take up); montem (occupy)*.—Less exactly, *choose, select: locum*.—So also (esp. of ships, etc.), *reach: portus (arrive at, make)*.—Fig., *take in (deceive), captivate, beguile, also experience: dolorem; coniecturam (make); quietem (take, enjoy); fugam (take to flight)*.

caprea, -ae, [†*caprō*- (reduced) (cf. *caper, goat*) + *ea* (F. of *-eus*)], F., *a roe* (a small animal of the deer kind). Another reading for *capra* in VI, 27.

captivus, -a, -um, [as if †*capti-*

(imaginary st. of *capto*, fr. *capio*) + *vus*], adj., *captive*.—Masc. as noun, *a captive, a prisoner*.

captus, -a, -um, p. p. of *capio*.

captus, -ūs, [CAP (in *capio*) + *tus*], M., *a seizing*. Hence, *what one can grasp*.—Fig., *capacity, character, nature*.

caput, -itis, [?, akin to *head*], N., *the head: capite demisso; capite solo ex aqua exstare, have only the head above water*.—Less exactly, *person* (cf. "head of cattle"); *mouth* (of a river).—Fig., *life: poenam capitis (of death); capitis periculo (of life)*.

careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, [?], 2. v. n., *be without, go without*.

carina, -ae, [?], F., *keel, bottom* (of a ship).

Carnutes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., *a Gallic people between the Loire and the Seine, about Orléans*.

carō, *carnis*, [akin to *crudus* and *raw*], F., *flesh, meat*.

carpō, -pere, -psī, -ptus, [akin to *harvest*], 3. v. a., *pluck*.—Fig., *find fault with* (cf. "pick at").

carrum, -i, [Celtic], N., *a cart* (of the Gauls).

carrus, -i, M., *another form for carrum*.

cārus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *dear, precious, valuable*.

Carvilius, -i, [?], M., *a Roman gentile name*.—Also, *a king of part of Kent*.

casa, -ae, [?], F., *a cottage, a hut*.

cāseus, -i, [?], M., *cheese*.

Cassī, -ōrum, [Celtic, cf. *Velio-*

casses and **Cassivellaunus**], *M.* plur., a British tribe.

Cassiānus, -a, -um, [†Cassiō- (reduced) + ānus], adj., of *Cassius*: **bellum** (the war in B.C. 107, in which L. Cassius Longinus was defeated by the Tigurini, near Lake Geneva, and killed).

cassis, -idis, [?], *F.*, a *helmet* (of metal, for horsemen, cf. *galea*).

Cassius, -i, [?], *M.*, a Roman gentile name. — *Esp.*, *L. Cassius Longinus*, consul B.C. 107 (see *Cassianus*).

Cassivellaunus, -ī, [Celtic], *M.*, a British chief ruling north of the Thames, who took command of the general resistance of his countrymen to Cæsar, but was finally reduced to submission.

castellum, -ī, [†castrō- (*fortress*) + *lum* (N. of -lus)], *N.*, a *fortress*, a *fort*, an *outwork*, a *redoubt*.

Casticus, -ī, [Celtic], *M.*, a chief of the Sequani.

castrum, -ī, [SKAD (*cover*) + *trum*], *N.*, a *fortress*. — Plur., a *camp* (fortified, as was the manner of the Romans): in *castris*, in *camp*, also in *service*; *castra ponere*, *pitch a camp*; *castra movere*, *break camp*, *move*; *quintis castris*, *after five days' journey*, as the Romans encamped every night.

cāsus, -ūs, [CAD (in *cado*, *fall*) + *tus*], *M.*, (*what befalls*), an *accident*, a *chance* (good or bad), a *mischance*: *hoc ipso tempore et casu* (*emergency*); *casu*, *by accident*, *by chance*; *casu devenit*, *chanced to*, etc.; *quarum rerum casus* (*the occurrence, the*

happening, the possibility); *eundem casum ferre* (*fate*); *belli casum sustinere* (*take the chances*); in *eiusmodi casu* (*a case*); *ad extremum casum*, *to the most critical position*; *ad omnes casus*, *against all accidents*; in *eum casum deduci* (*that pass*).

Catamantälœdēs, -is, [Celtic], *M.*, a chief of the Sequani.

catēna, -ae, [?], *F.*, a *chain* (for prisoners), a *cable*: in *catenas coniecit* (*into prison*); in *catenis tenere*.

Caturīges, -um, [Celtic], *M.* plur., a people in Roman Gaul (*Provincia*).

Catuvolcus, -ī, [Celtic], *M.*, a chief of the Eburones.

causa, -ae, [?], *F.*, a *cause*, a *reason*, an *excuse*, *grounds*, a *motive* (for an act), a *right* (to anything): *satis causae*, *sufficient reason*. Abl. after a gen., *for the sake of*, *for the purpose of*, *for*, *on behalf of*: *libertatis causa*; *potentiae causa* (*to gain*); *praedandi causa* (*to*, etc.); *insidiarum causa*, *for an ambushade*; *animi causa*, *for amusement*, *for fancy*. — Also, a *cause* (in law), a *case*: *causa cognita*, *after trial*; *causa indicta* (*unheard*); *causam dicere*, *plead one's cause*, *stand a trial*, *be tried*; *causae dictio* (*a trial*). Hence, also, a *situation*, a *case*: *Germanorum unam esse causam* (*the case . . . the same*); in *eadem causa*, *in the same situation*, also, *on the same side*.

cautē [old case-form of *cautus*], adv., *with caution*, *cautiously*.

cautēs, -is, [akin to *cos*, *whetstone*], *F.*, a *rock* (sharp or jagged), a *reef*.

cautus, *p. p.* of *caveo*.

Cavarillus, -i, [Celtic], M., a prince of the Hædui.

Cavarinus, -i, [Celtic], M., one of the Senones, made their king by Cæsar.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, [perh. SKV, *cover*], 2. v. n. and a., *be on one's guard, guard against* (something), *take or give security*.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, [?], 3. v. n., *make way* (in any direction). — Esp., *give way, retreat, retire*: cedentes, *the flying*; cedere loco, *abandon a position*, a military term. — Fig., *yield*: fortunæ.

celer, -eris, -ere, [CEL (in cello, *rush*) + ris], adj., *swift, quick, speedy, fast*: motus (*sudden*).

celeritās, -tātis, [celer- (in celer) + tas], F., *swiftness, activity, speed, promptness*: ad celeritatem onerandi, *to secure quick loading*; itineria (*quick marching*).

celeriter [celer- (in celer) + ter], adv., *quickly, speedily, very soon, soon*.

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?, akin to clam, *secretly*, and caligo, *mist*], 1. v. a., *conceal, hide*: arma. — Pass., *pass unnoticed*.

Celtae, -ārum, [Celtic], M. plur., a great race in Gaul and Britain. — More particularly, *the Celts* (in a narrower sense, occupying the interior of Gaul).

Celtillus, -i, [Celtic], M., one of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix.

Cēnabēnsis, -e, [Cenabō- + ensis], adj., *of Cenabum, of the Cenabenses*, the people of Cenabum.

Cēnabum (Gēn-), -i, [Celtic], N.,

the chief city of the Carnutes, now *Orléans* (from its later name, urbs *Aurellanensis*).

Cēnimāgnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a British tribe.

Cēnomānī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a division of the Aulerci.

cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus, [?], 2. v. a., (perh. *fine*), *reckon, estimate*. — Less exactly, *give one's opinion, advise, decree* (of the Senate), *determine*.

cēnsus, -ūs, [akin to cenaseo], M., *a numbering, a count, a census*.

centum (C), [akin to hund-rēd], indecl. num. adj., *a hundred*.

centuriō, -ōnis, [†centuria- (*century*) + o], M., *a centurion*. A subaltern officer from the ranks, commanding a *century*, originally a hundred men.

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus, (*sifted*), certus, (*determined*), [CER-, *separate*], 3. v. a., *separate*. Hence, *distinguish, see, behold, descry*. — Also, *determine*.

certāmen, -inis, [†certā- (in certo, fr. cerno) + men], N., *a struggle, a contest, rivalry*.

certē [old case-form of certus], adv., *certainly, surely, at least* (surely what is mentioned, if nothing more).

certus, -a, -um, p. p. of cerno as adj., *determined, fixed, certain* (of the thing as well as the person), *sure, established, regular*: certiores facere, *inform, order*; certissimæ res, *absolutely certain facts*; dies certa, *an appointed day*; certa subsidia (*regular*, as organized beforehand); certum in locum (*particular*).

cervus, -i, [root of *cornu* (*horn*) + *vus*], *M.*, a stag; plur., in military language, a structure of forked stakes (like stags' horns), *chevaux-de-frise*.

(*cēterus*), -a, -um, [CE (in *ecce*, *behold*, *hic*, *this*) + *terus* (cf. *alter*)], adj., the rest of (cf. *alius*, *other*, not including all). — Usually plur., the rest, the remaining, the others; *frumento ceterisque rebus* (everything else necessary, where *aliis* would mean some other things).

Ceutrones (*Cent-*), -um, [Celtic], *M.* plur.: 1. A tribe in the Graian Alps (in modern Savoy). — 2. A Belgic tribe.

Cevenna, -ae, [Celtic], *F.*, the *Cévennes* (a woody mountain region on the west side of the lower Rhone valley).

Chēruscī, -ōrum, [?], *M.* plur., a tribe of the Germans between the Weser and the Elbe.

cibārius, -a, -um, [cibō-, *food* (reduced) + *arius*], adj., pertaining to food. — Neut. plur. as noun, provisions: *molita* (*ground corn*).

cibus, -i, [?], *M.*, food.

Cicerō, -ōnis, [cicer (*chickpea*) + *o*, orig. a nickname, possibly from excrescences on the nose], *M.*, a name of a Roman family from Arpinum. — *Esp.*: 1. *Marcus Tullius*, the great orator. — 2. *Quintus* (*Tullius*), his brother, in *Cæsar's* service in Gaul as *legatus*.

Kimberius, -i, [akin to *Cimbri*], *M.*, a prince of the Suevi.

Cimbri, -ōrum, [?], *M.* plur., a German tribe living in Jutland, who

overran Gaul and made a successful inroad into the Roman dominions in the second century B.C. They were conquered at *Aquæ Sextiæ* and *Vercellæ* by *Marius* and *Catulus*, B.C. 102 and 101.

Cingetorix, -igis, [Celtic], *M.*: 1. A leader of the *Treveri*, brother-in-law of his rival, *Indutiomarus*. — 2. A British prince in Kent.

cingō, *cingere*, *cinxī*, *cinctus*, [?], 3. *v. a.*, surround, encircle: *flumen oppidum* (*run around*). — Less exactly, *man* (occupy in a circuit, of walls).

cippus, -i, [?], *M.*, a stake, a pillar, a post. — Plur., apparently jocosely used of a peculiar form of palisades, boundary-posts (?), *chevaux-de-frise*.

circā [case-form (*instr.*?) of *circus* (cf. *circum*)], adv. and prep. with acc., about, around. — See *circiter*.

circinus, -i, [cīrcō- (cf. *circum*) + *nus*], *M.*, a pair of compasses, a compass.

circiter [cīrcō- (*around*) + *ter*], adv. and prep. with acc., about. — *Fig.* (of time, number, and quantity), about (in the neighborhood of), near, not far from.

circuitus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of *circumeo*.

circuitus, -tūs, [circum-itus], *M.*, a circuit (a going round), a circuitous route, a circumference: in *circuitu*, all around.

circum [acc. of *cīrcō*-, *around* (cf. *curvus*)], adv. and prep. with acc., about, around.

circumcidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [circum-caedo], 3. *v. a.*, cut around,

cut (the idea of *around* being implied in the context). — *circumcīsus*, -a, -um, p. p. — Fig., *isolated: collis*.

circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [circum-claudo], 3. v. a., *enclose around, encircle, place a band around*.

circumdatus, -a, -um, p. p. of *circumdo*.

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, [circum-do], 1. v. a., *put around: murus circumdatus* (*encircling, thrown around*). — By a confusion of ideas, *surround, encircle: aciem rhedis*.

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [circum-duco], 3. v. a., *lead around*. — Less exactly, of a line, *draw around*.

circumductus, -a, -um, p. p. of *circumduco*.

circu(m)eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, [circum-eo], irr. v. n., *go around*. — Becoming active, *visit, make a tour of: hiberna*.

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [circum-fundo], 3. v. a., *pour around*. — Pass. (as reflexive), *pour in, rush around, rush in on all sides*. — Also (cf. *circumdō*), *surround: multitudo praesidia* (*surround with a swarming multitude*).

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [circum-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw around*. — Esp. in a military sense, *hurl around, throw around: circumiecta multitudo* (*assailing on all sides*).

circumiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *circumicio*.

circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-

sus, [circum-mitto], 3. v. a., *send around*.

circummūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, [circum-munio], 4. v. a., *fortify around, throw fortifications around, fortify, protect* (by a fortification).

circummūnitus, -a, -um, p. p. of *circummunio*.

circumplector, -plēctī, -plexus, [circum-plecto, *twine*], 3. v. dep., *embrace, surround*.

circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī, no p. p., [circum-sisto, *place (one's self)*], 3. v. a., *stand around, flock around, rally around, surround, hem in, beset*.

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus, [circum-specio], 3. v. a., *look about for*. — Fig., *think over, consider, cast about for: animo consilia* (by way of investigating or divining).

circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, no p. p., [circum-sto, *stand*], 1. v. a., *surround*.

circumvallātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *circumvallo*.

circumvallō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [circum-vallo, *intrench*], 1. v. a., *surround with walls, blockade, invest*.

circumvectus, p. p. of *circumveho*.

circumvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectus, [circum-veho], 3. v. a., *carry around*. — Esp. pass. as dep., *ride around, sail around*.

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, [circum-venio, *come*], 4. v. a., *surround*. — Fig. (cf. 'get round'), *impose upon, defraud, betray, circumvent*.

circumventus, -a, -um, p. p. of **circumvenio**.

cis [case-form of **ce** (cf. **ec-ce**, **cetera**)], adv. and prep. with acc., *this side, this side of*.

Cisalpinus, -a, -um, [**cis** **Alpes** (as if **cisalpi-**) + **nus**], adj., *being this side the Alps, Cisalpine*. **Gallia** (that part of Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps).

Cisrhenanus, -a, -um, [**cis** **Rhe-num** (as if **cisrhenā-**) + **nus**], adj., *being this side the Rhine, this side the Rhine* (as adj. phrase). — Plur. as noun, *the people this side the Rhine* (i.e. towards Gaul).

Cita, -ae, [perh. **ci** (in **cio**) + **ta** (cf. **nauta**)], m., a Roman family name. — Only, **C. Fufius**, a Roman knight doing business in **Cenabum**.

citātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **cito**.

citer, -ra, -rum, [**ce** (cf. **cis**) + **terus** (reduced, cf. **alter**)], adj., *on this side* (rare and antiquated). — Usually **citerior** (compar.), *nearer, hither* (as adj.): **provincia, Gallia** (Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps as opp. to Farther Gaul, cf. **Cisalpinus**); **Hispania** (the eastern part of Spain).

citō, -āre, -āvi, ātus, [**citō-** (fr. **cio**, *put in motion*)], i. v. a., *urge on, hurry*. — **citātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *in haste*: **citatus fertur**, *runs very rapidly*.

citō [abl. of **citus** (fr. **cio**, *put in motion*)], adv., *quickly*: **citissimē** (*very rapidly*).

citrā [case-form f. of **citer**], adv. and prep. with acc., *this side, within* (as opp. to beyond).

citrō [dat. of **citer**], adv., *to this side*: **ultra citroque**, *back and forth, to and fro*.

cīvis, -is, [**ci** (in **quies, rest**) + **vis** (weakening of -**vus**)], c., a citizen, a fellow-citizen.

cīvitās, -ātis, [**civi-** + **tas**], f., *the state of being a citizen, citizenship*. — Esp., *Roman citizenship, the Roman franchise*. — Less exactly, *a body of fellow-citizens, the citisens* (as a body), *one's fellow-citizens, a state* (composed of citizens), *a city* (because the city was the state), *a nation, a tribe* (politically): **expellit ex civitate** (*from the country*).

clam [case of st. akin to **caligo**, **mist**, etc.], adv. and prep. with abl., *secretly*.

clāmītō, -āre, -āvi, ātus, [freq. of **clamo**], i. v. a., *keep crying out, vociferate, cry out*.

clāmor, -ōris, [**clam** (as if root of **clamo**) + **or**], m., *a shouting, a shout, a cry, an outcry*.

clandestīnus, -a, -um, [unc. st. (perh. manufactured from **clam**) + **tinus**], adj., *secret, clandestine*.

clārus, -a, -um, [**CLA** (in **clamo**, *cry out*) + **rus**], adj., *bright, clear*. — Fig., *famous*. — Also (of sound), *loud, distinct*.

classis, -is, [**CLA** (in **clamo**, *cry out*) + **tis**], f., *(a summoning)*. — Less exactly, *the army* (called out). — Esp., *an army* (called out for duty at sea), *a fleet* (the most common later meaning).

Claudius, -ī, [**claudō-** (*lame*) + **ius**], m., a Roman gentile name, probably borrowed from the Sabines. — Esp.,

Appius Claudius, consul with L. Domitius in B.C. 54.

claudō, *claudere*, *clausi*, *clausus*, [of unc. form., akin to *clavis*, *key*], 3. v. a., *close, shut, fasten*. — Esp., *claudere agmen, close the line of march, bring up the rear*.

clausus, -a, -um, p. p. of *claudo*.

clāvus, -i, [CLAU- (cf. *claudio*) + *us*], M., *a nail, spike*.

clēmēns, -entis, [perh. CLA (in *clarus*, *bright*) + *mens* (cf. *vehemens*)], adj., (*bright?*), *gentle* (of weather). — Fig., *gentle, kind, merciful*. — See *clementia*.

clēmēntia, -ae, [clēmēt- + *ia*], F., *kindness, gentleness, humanity, clemency*.

cliēns, -entis, [= *cluens*, p. of *clueo*, *hear, obey*], C., (*a hearer*), *a dependant, a vassal, a retainer*.

clientēla, -ae, [client- + *ēla* (imitating *suadela*, etc.)], F., *vassalage* (as condition of a *cliens*). Hence (viewed fr. the other side), *protection*. — Phrases: *magnae clientelae*, *many vassals* (extensive relations of "clientage"); *Remis in clientelam se dicaverunt* (*surrendered themselves as vassals to, etc.*).

clivus, -i, [CLI (*lean*) + *vus*], M., *a slope, a declivity, an acclivity*; *ad mollendum clivum, to make the ascent easier*.

Clōdīus, -i, [the popular form of *Claudius*], M., *a Roman gentile name, belonging to the plebeian branch of the gens Claudia*. — Esp., *P. Clodius*, *a most bitter enemy of Cicero*. He was killed in a fray by T. Annius Milo, who was defended

by Cicero in a famous oration still extant.

Cn., for *Gnaeus*.

coacervō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con- *acervo*], 1. v. a., *heap up, mass together, heap on top* (of others).

coāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *cogo*.

coāctus, -tūs, [con- *actus* (cf. *cogo*, *force*)], M., *compulsion*.

coagmentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [coag- *mentō*-, *joint*], 1. v. a., *fasten together*.

coartō (-arc-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con- *arto*], 1. v. a., *press together, confine*.

Cocosātes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., *a people of Aquitania*.

coemō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēemptus, [con- *emo*], 3. v. a., *buy up*.

coeō, -īre, -īvi (-īl), *no p. p.*, [con- *eo*], irr. v. n., *come together, unite, meet*.

coepī, -isse, *coeptus*, [con- *īpi* (perf. of *īpo*, cf. *apiscor*)], def. v. a., (*have taken hold of*), *began, undertook, started*. — *coeptus*, -a, -um, p. p. used in same sense as the active with pass. infinitives.

coeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *coepi*.

coerceō, -ercēre, -erculī, -ercitus, [con- *arceo*], 2. v. a., *confine, keep in check*.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con- *agito* (in sense of *revolve, discuss*)], 1. v. a., *consider, think over*. — Esp. (as to some plan of action), *think about, discuss* (what to do), *have an idea of, intend, consider* (that something may happen), *expect* (contemplate the possibility): *cogitare ne, see that not, think how not, plan to prevent*; *nihil cogitare de bello* (*have no thought of, etc.*).

cōgnātiō, -ōnis, [con-(g)natio, *birth*], F., *connection by birth*. — Concretely, *a family, a clan*: *magnae cognationis, having connections* (by blood).

cōgnitus, -a, -um, p. p. of *cognosco*.

cōgnōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitus, [con-(g)nosco, *learn*], 3. v. a., *learn, find out, find, become aware*. — Esp., *investigate, inquire into, learn about, study*. — In perf. tenses (cf. *nosco*), *know, be aware*: *cognitum est de aliqua re (something was known)*; *causa cognita, upon a full investigation, after trial*; *egregia virtute erant cogniti (had been found to be of, etc.)*; *ad cognoscendum, for inquiry*.

cōgō, cōgere, cōgēi, cōactus, [con-ago], 3. v. a., *bring together, collect, assemble, get together*. Hence, *force, compel, oblige*: *coactus, by compulsion*.

cohors, -hortis, [con-†hortis (reduced), akin to *hortus, garden*] F., *an enclosure*. Hence, *a body of troops, a cohort* (the tenth part of a legion, corresponding as a unit of formation to the company of modern tactics, and containing from 300 to 600 men).

cohortātiō, -ōnis, [con-hortatio (cf. *cohortor*)], F., *an encouraging, encouragement*. — Esp. (to soldiers), *an address* (almost invariably a preliminary to an engagement).

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus, [con-hortor], 1. v. dep., *encourage, rally, address* (esp. of a commander): *cohortati inter se, encouraging, urging one another*.

coll- (except *collis*), see *conl-*.

collis, -is, [?], M., *a hill*.

colō, colere, coluī, cultus, [?], 3. v. a., *till, cultivate*. — Fig., *attend upon, court, cultivate* (as a friend), *pay court to, worship* (of divinities).

colōnia, -ae, [colonō- (cf. *colo*) + *ia*], F., (*state of a colonist*). — Concretely, *a colony* (both of the establishment and the persons sent). The Roman colonists were and continued to be Roman citizens, and served as armed occupants of the soil where they were sent in the interests of the mother country.

color, -ōris, [prob. akin to *cāligo*, as opp. to *white*], M., *color*.

com- (con-, co-) [the same as *cum*], adv. in comp., *with, together, up*. Often intensifying the meaning without definite translation.

combūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstus, [con-†buro (?), relation to *uro* very uncertain, cf. *bustum, funeral pyre*], 3. v. a., *burn up, consume*.

comes, -itis, [con-†mitis (MA in *meo, go*) + *tis*], C., *a companion* (esp. an inferior as attendant or follower).

cōminus [formed by some false analogy from *con manus*], adv., *hand to hand* (cf. *ēminus, at a distance*), *in close combat, at short range*.

comitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *comitor*.

comitium, -ī, [?, perh. *comit-* (see *comes*) + *ium*, *the assemblage of followers* (cf. *servitium*)], N., *a part of the Forum at Rome*. — Plur., *an election* (assembly of the people for voting).

comitor, -āri, -ātus, [comit-, *companion*], I. v. dep., *accompany*. — **comitātus**, -a, -um, p. p. in presense, *accompanying*.

commēātus, -tūs, [con-meatus, cf. *commeo*, *go to and fro*], M., *a going to and fro, an expedition* (back and forth), *a trip*. Hence, *communications* (of an army). — So also, *supplies* (of an army), *provisions*.

commemorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com-memoro, *call to mind*], I. v. a., *remind one of*. Hence, *speak of, mention, state* (in a narrative).

commendō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com-mando, *commit*], I. v. a., *intrust, commend, recommend, surrender*.

commēō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, [com-meo], I. v. n., *go back and forth*. — With *ad*, *visit, resort to*.

commilitō, -ōnis, [con-milit- (*soldier*) + *o*], M., *fellow-soldier, comrade*.

comminus, see *cominus*.

commissūra, -ae, [con-†missura (cf. *committo*)], F., *a joint, a seam*.

commissus, -a, -um, p. p. of *committo*.

committō, -mittere, -misi, missus, [con-mitto], 3. v. a., (*let go* (send) *together or altogether*). Hence, *join, unite, attach*: *proellum* (*engage, begin the engagement*). — Also, *trust*: *se barbaris committere* (*put one's self in the hands of, etc.*); *nihil his committere* (*place no confidence in, etc.*). — Also, *admit, allow* (to happen), *commit* (suffer to be done, cf. *admitto*), *perpetrate*: *neque commissum a se, nothing had been done by them*; *committere ut posset, leave it*

possible; *nihil committebant, did nothing*.

Commius, -i, [Celtic], M., a leader of the Atrebatas.

commodē [old case-form of *commodus*], adv., *advantageously, conveniently, fitly, readily, to advantage*: *satis commodē, to much advantage*; *non satis commodē, not very easily*.

commodum, see *commodus*.

commodus, -a, -um, [con-modus, *measure, adj.*, (*having the same measure with*), *fitting, suitable, convenient, advantageous*: *commodissimum est, it is the best thing, most advantageous*. — Neut. as noun, *convenience, comfort, advantage, interest*: *commodo rei publicae, without prejudice to the public interests*; *omnibus in vita commodis, all the blessings of life*; *rei familiaris commodum, the interests of one's property*; *quas sui quisque commodi fecerat* (*for his own convenience*).

commonefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factus, [unc. case-form (of st. akin to *moneo*, *warn*) -facio], 3. v. a., *remind*.

commorātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *commoror*.

commoror, -āri, -ātus, [con-moror], I. v. dep., *delay, stay, linger*.

commōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *commoveo*.

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, [con-moveo], 2. v. a., *move, stir, agitate*. — With reflex., or in pass., *be moved, move* (intrans.), *stir*. — Fig., *disturb, agitate, affect, alarm, influence* (with idea of violent feeling).

communicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **communico**.

communicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†**communicō**- (st. of †**communicus**, **communi**- + **cus**)], 1. v. a., (*make common*), *share, communicate, consult* (with a person about a thing, and so make it common), *add* (a thing to another), *put in along with* (something else).

communiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus [**communio**], 4. v. a., *strongly fortify, fortify, intrench, build* (make by fortification).

communis, -e, [**con**- + **munis** (cf. **munia**, *duties*)], adj., (*having shares together*), *common, general, in common*: **ex communi consensu**, *by general agreement*; **consilium** (*general plan, concerted action*); **res** (*the common interest*).

commūtātiō, -ōnis, [**con**-mutatio (cf. **commuto**)], F., *change*: **aestus** (*turn*).

commūtātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **commuto**.

commūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**commuto**], 1. v. a., *change, exchange*: **studium bellī agriculturā** (*exchange the pursuits of war for agriculture*).

comparātus, -a, -um, p. p. of 1 **comparo**.

1. **comparō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**comparo**], 1. v. a., *get ready, prepare, procure, gain, get together, prepare for* (with a different view of the object in English): **omnibus rebus comparatis**, *having made all arrangements*.

2. **comparō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**con**-

paro], 1. v. a., (*pair together*), *compare*.

compellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, [**con**-pello], 3. v. a., *drive together* (or *altogether*), *drive in, force, drive*.

compendium, -ī, [**com** + **pendium**], N., (*a weighing in*, cf. **expendo**, *weigh out*), *a saving, profit*.

comperiō, -perire, -peri, -pertus, [**con**-pario], 4. v. a., (*get together*), *find out* (by inquiry), *ascertain, discover*. — **compertus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *certain* (cf. **exploratus**).

compertus, -a, -um, p. p. of **comperio**.

complector, -plecti, -plexus, [**con**-plecto, *fold*], 3. v. dep., *embrace, include, enclose*.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus, [**con**-pleo], 2. v. a., *fill up, fill*. — With a different conception of the action from Eng., *cover, man* (of walls).

complexus, -a, -um, p. p. of **complector**.

complūrēs, -plūra (-ia), [**con**-plus], adj. plur., *very many, a great many, a great number of*.

comportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**con**-porto], 1. v. a., *bring together, collect*.

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsus, [**con**-prehendo], 3. v. a., *seize, catch, arrest, capture, grasp* (one by the hand or clothing). — Fig., *take, catch* (of fire).

comprehēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **comprehendo**.

comprobō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**con**-probo], 1. v. a., *prove, approve*: **consilium fortuna** (*justify*).

compulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **compello**.

cōnātum, -ī, [N. p. p. of **conor** as pass.], N., *an attempt, an undertaking*.

cōnātus, -tūs, [conā- (st. of **conor**) + **tus**], M., *an attempt, an effort*.

cōnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conor**.

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [con-cedo], 3. v. a. and n., (*give up a thing to one*), *allow, grant, assign* (leave, where the rest is taken away), *permit, yield the palm* (to a superior), *yield, make a concession*.

concertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [con-certo], 1. v. n., *contend*.

concessus, -sūs, [con-+cessus (cf. **concedo**)], M., *a concession, a permission*.

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, no p. p. [con-cado], 3. v. n., *fall down, fall*.

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus, [con-caedo], 3. v. a., *cut to pieces, cut down* (kill), *cut up* (land by estuaries).

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [conciliō-, *assembly*], 1. v. a., *bring together*. Hence, *win over, secure* (even by force), *win, gain*.

concilium, -ī, [con-+cilium (CAL (*call*) + **ium**, cf. **Kalendae**)], N., *a meeting*. — Esp., *an assembly* (of war or state), *a council, a conference*: *per concilium, in council*.

concīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **concīdo**.

concitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **con-cito**.

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-cito, freq. of **cīeo**, *stir*], 1. v. a., *arouse, stir up, call out* (and so set in motion).

conclāmātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conclamo**.

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-clamo, *cry out*], 1. v. n., *cry out, shout*: *victoriam* (cogn. acc.), *shout victory*.

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [con-claudo], 3. v. a., *shut up, enclose*: *mare conclusum* (*enclosed, inland*).

conclūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **concludo**.

Conconnetodumnus, -ī, [Celtic], M., *a leader of the Carnutes*.

concrepō, -crepāre, -crepui, -crepitūrus, [con-crepo], 1. v. n., *rattle, clash*: *armis* (*clash their arms, of soldiers*).

concurrō, -currere, -curri (-cucurri), **cursus**, [con-curro], 3. v. n., *run together, rush up, rush in, rush* (advance), *flock to, hasten in*: *concursum est, there was a rush*.

concurso, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [con-curso, freq. of **curro**, *run*], 1. v. n., *rush to and fro*: *concurari iubet, orders a noise of running to and fro to be made*.

concursum, -a, -um, p. p. of **con-curro**.

concursum, -sūs, [con-cursum (cf. **concurro**)], M., *a rushing to and fro, a dashing together* (collision). — Esp., *a charge, onset, a crowd running, a crowd*.

condemnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **condemno**.

condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-damno, *condemn*], 1. v. a., *condemn, find guilty*.

condiciō, -ōnis, [con-DIC, *say* (cf.

condico, agree], *F.*, terms, condition, terms of agreement, terms (of fighting), state (of slavery): *ad iniquam condicionem pugnandi*, to fight on unequal terms.

condōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-domo], *I. v. a.*, give up, pardon for the sake of.

Condrūsī, -ōrum, [Celtic], *M. pl.*, a Belgic tribe on the Meuse, clients of the Treveri.

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [con-duco, lead], *3. v. a.*, bring together, bring up (soldiers), hire: *manus conducta*, a band of mercenaries.

cōnfectus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of conficio.

cōnferciō, -ferciere, -fersī, -fertus, [con-farcio], *4. v. a.*, crowd together. — cōnferthus, -a, -um, *p. p.* as adj., close, crowded, dense, closely crowded, in close order, in a solid body.

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [con-fero], *irr. v. a.*, bring together, get together, bring in, gather, collect. — With or without culpam, lay the blame on, charge. — With reflexive, betake one's self, remove, take refuge. — So with other words, fortunās, (remove, transfer). — Also, postpone, delay.

cōnferthus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of confercio.

cōnfestim [acc. of †con-festis (cf. festino, hasten)], *adv.*, in haste, immediately, at once.

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [con-facio], *3. v. a.*, (do up), accomplish, complete, finish up, carry out, finish, perform. — Also, make up, write up (of a document), work

up, dress (of skins). — Also (cf. Eng. "done up"), finish up, exhaust, wear out: *nondum confecta hieme*, when the winter was not yet spent, before the end of, etc. — See also confio.

cōnfidō, -fidere, -fisis sum, [con-fido, trust], *3. v. n.*, (trust fully), be confident, trust, trust to, have confidence in, rely on, feel assured. — cōnſisus, -a, -um, *p. p.* in act. sense, trusting in.

cōnfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, [con-ſigo, fix], *3. v. a.*, fasten together, fasten.

cōnfinis, -e, [con-ſinis], *adj.*, having boundaries together, adjacent: *confinēs Senonibus*, neighbors of the Senones.

cōnfinium, -ī, [confini- + ium], *N.*, neighborhood, confines, common boundaries.

cōnfiō, -fieri, -fectus, [con-ſio], *irr. v. n.* (used rarely as pass. of conficio), be accomplished, etc. (see conficio).

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, [con-firmatio, cf. confirmo], *F.*, (positive) assurance, confirmation.

cōnfirmātus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of confirmo.

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-firmo, make firm], *I. v. a.*, strengthen. — Fig., strengthen, establish (pacem), reassure, encourage, confirm, assure (by oath): *se (resolve)*. Hence (of things and statements), confirm, declare.

cōnſisus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of confido.

cōnſteor, -ſitēri, -ſessus, [con-

fateor, confess], 2. v. dep., *confess, acknowledge, admit*.

cōnfixus, -a, -um, p. p. of *configo*.

cōnflagrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [*con-flagro, blaze*], 1. v. n., *be on fire, burn*.

cōnfectātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *conficco*.

cōnfectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [*con-†ficto, cf. configo*], 1. v. a., *dash against* (one thing against another), *assail, harass*.

cōnfigō, -figere, -fīxī, -fictus, [*con-figo, strike*], 3. v. a. and n., *dash against, contend, fight*.

cōnfluēs, -entis, [*pres. p. of confluō*], M., *a meeting of two rivers, confluence*.

cōnfluō, -ere, -fluxī, no p. p. [*con-fluō*], 3. v. n., *flow together*. — Less exactly (of persons), *flock together*.

cōnfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, no p. p. [*con-fugio*], 3. v. n., *flee, take refuge*.

cōnfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fusus, [*con-fundo*], 3. v. a., *pour together*. — Less exactly, *mingle, mix indiscriminately, unite without distinction, unite, combine*.

congrēdiōr, -gredī, -gressus, [*con-gradiōr, step*], 3. v. dep., *come together*. — In peace, *unite with*. — Esp. in war, *come in contact with, engage, fight*.

congressus, -a, -um, p. p. of *congrēdiōr*.

congressus, -sūs, [*con-gressus, cf. congrēdiōr*], M., *an engagement, encounter*.

coniciō (-iicio), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [*con-iacio*], 3. v. a., *throw together, hurl, cast, discharge: se conicere,*

throw one's self, rush. — Less exactly (esp. in a military sense), *throw* (into prison), *put* (to flight), *place, station* (cf. military *throw troops into, etc.*), *force*. — Fig., *put together* (of ideas).

coniectūra, -ae, [*con-iacura, cf. conicio*], F., *a guess* ("putting two and two together"), *a conjecture: coniecturam capere, form a conjecture, infer*.

coniectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *conicio*.

coniūctim [acc. of *†coniunctis* (iung (as root) + *tis*, cf. *coniungo*)], adv., *unitedly, in common, altogether*.

coniūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *coniungo*.

coniungo, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tus, [*con-iungo, join*], 3. v. a., *unite, connect, fasten together*. — In pass., or with reflexive, *unite* (neut.), *connect one's self, join*. — *coniūctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., united, closely connected*.

coniūnx, -iugis, [*con-†iux (iug, yoke, as st., with intrusive n from iungo)*], C., *a spouse*. — Esp., F., *a wife*.

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, [*con-iuratio, cf. coniuro*], F., *conspiracy, a confederacy*.

coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [*con-iuro*], 1. v. n., *swear together, take an oath* (together), *swear mutual oaths*. Hence, *conspire, plot*.

conlātus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of *confero*.

conlaudātus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of *conlaudo*.

conlaudō (coll-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus,

[con-laudo], I. v. a., *praise* (in set terms).

conlĕctus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of conligo.

conligō (coll-), -ligere, -lēgi, -lĕctus, [con-lego], 3. v. a., *gather together, gather, collect, acquire* (by accumulation). — With reflexive, *collect one's self, recover*.

conligō (coll-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-ligo], I. v. a., *bind together, fasten together: scuta (lock together)*.

conlocātus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of conloco.

conlocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-loco, *place*], I. v. a., *place, set, station* (of troops, etc.): *angustius milites (stow, in a vessel)*. — Esp. (with or without nuptum), *give in marriage, marry* (of a father or guardian). — Fig., *settle: rebus conlocandis, making dispositions*.

conloquium (coll-), -i, [con-floquium, cf. conloquor], N., *a conference, an interview, a parley*.

conloquor (coll-), -loquī, -locūtus, [con-loquor], 3. v. dep., (*talk together*), *confer, hold an interview* (or *parley*), *parley, converse*.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, [? con-, st. akin to onus, *burden*], I. v. dep., *attempt, try, endeavor: idem conari, make the same attempt*.

conquiēscō, -quiēscere, -quiēvi, -quiētūrus, [con-quiēscō, *rest*], 3. v. n., *rest, repose*.

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsivī, -quīsītus, [con-quaero, *seek*], 3. v. a., *search for, seek for, hunt up*.

conquīsītus, p. p. of conquiro.

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, [con-sanguin- (*blood*) + eus], adj., *akin* (by blood). — As noun, *a kinsman*.

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus, [con-scando, *climb*], 3. v. a., *climb, climb upon: navis (in navis) (go on board)*; *vallum (man, mount)*.

cōnscientia, -ae, [con-scientia, cf. conscius], F., *consciousness, privacy, conscience, knowledge*.

cōnsciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitus, [con-scisco, *decree*], 3. v. a., *resolve*. Less exactly, with dat. of reflex., *take to one's self: mortem (commit suicide)*.

cōnscius, -a, -um, [con-fscius, SCI (in scio, *know*) + us], adj., *knowing* (with one's self or another), *conscious, aware of*.

cōnscrībō, -scrībēre, -scripsī, -scriptus, [con-scribo], 3. v. a., *write down*. — Esp., *enrol, conscribe, levy, enlist*.

conscriptus, -a, -um, p. p. of conscribo.

cōnsecrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of consecro.

cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-sacro, *make sacred*], I. v. a., *hallow, consecrate*. — cōnsecrātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *consecrated, sacred*.

cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus, [con-sector, freq. of consequor], I. v. dep., *overtake, follow up*.

cōnsecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of consequor.

cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, [con-fsensio, cf. consensio], F., *agreement, unanimity*.

cōnsēnsus, -sūs, [con-sensus, cf. consensio], M., *agreement, consent, harmonious* (or *concerted*) *action*.

cōnsentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēn-

sūrus, [con-sentio, *feel*], 4. v. n., *agree, conspire, make common cause, act with (some one)*.

cōnsequor, -sequi, -secūtus, [con-sequor], 3. v. dep., *follow (and stay with), overtake*. Hence, *obtain, secure, attain, succeed in (some purpose)*.—Also, *follow close upon, succeed, ensue*.

cōnservō, -āre, -āvi, ātus, [con-servo, *save*], 1. v. a., *save, preserve, spare*.—Also, *observe (law, right), regard*.

Cōnsidius, -i, [con-†sidius (akin to sedeo, *sit*)], a Roman name.—Esp., *Publius*, a Roman soldier.

cōnsidō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, [con-sido], 3. v. n., *sit down (in a place)*.—Less exactly, *take a position, halt, encamp, settle*.

cōnsilium, -i, [con-†siliū (cf. consul, akin to salio, in some earlier unc. meaning)], N., *deliberation, a council (of war, more commonly concilium)*.—Esp., *wise counsel, prudence, discretion*. Hence, *a plan, counsel, design, purpose*.—And so (design carried out), *course, measure, conduct*.—Phrases: *ipsorum esse consilium (a matter for them to decide)*; *quasi consiliū sit res, as if it were a matter for consultation*; *commune consilium, concerted action*; *publicum consilium, action of the state, official action*; *barbaris consilium non defuit (an intelligent plan of action)*.

cōnsimilis, -e, [con-similis], adj., *very like, just like*.

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stiti, no p. p., [con-sisto, *place (one's self)*], 3. v.

n., *take a stand, take a position, stand, keep one's position, form (of troops)*.—In perf. tenses, *have a position, stand*. Hence, *stop, halt, make a stand, hold one's ground, run aground (of ships), remain, stay*.—With in, *occupy, rest on*.—Fig., *depend on, rest on*.

cōnsobrinus, -i, [con-sobrinus, cf. soror, *sister*], M., *first cousin (on the mother's side)*.—Less exactly, (any) *cousin german*.

cōnsōlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of consolor.

cōnsolor, -ārī, ātus, [con-solor, *comfort*], 1. v. dep., *console, cheer*.—cōnsōlātus, -a, -um, p. p. as pres., *consoling*.

cōnspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of conspicio.

cōnspectus, -tūs, [con-spectus, cf. conspicio], M., *sight*.—in conspectu, *in one's presence*; in conspectum proferre (*display*).

cōnspicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of conspicio.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [con-specio, *look at*], 3. v. a., *catch sight of, espy, see*.

cōnspicor, -ārī, ātus, [†conspic-, cf. SPEC, *see*], 1. v. dep., *catch sight of, espy, see*.

cōnspirō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-spiro, *breathe*], 1. v. n., *sound together*.—Fig., *harmonize, agree*.—Also, *conspire, league together*.

cōstanter, [constant- (*standing firm*) + ter], adv., *consistently, uniformly, steadily, with constancy, firmly*.

cōstantia, -ae, [constant- (*stand-*

ing firm) + *ia*], *F.*, *firmness, constancy, undaunted courage.*

cōnsternātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *consterno*.

cōnsternō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-†sternō (cf. *sternax, prostrating*)], *I. v. a.*, *overwhelm*.—*Fig.*, *dismay, alarm*.—cōnsternātus, -a, -um, p. p., *stricken with fear.*

cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvi, strātus, [con-sterno], *3. v. a.*, *strew over* (both of the thing thrown and that over which): *navis constrata* (*decked, full decked*, as opposed to ships only covered at the ends).

cōnstipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-stipo, *press*], *I. v. a.*, *crowd, cram*.—*In pass.* or with reflexive, *crowd together.*

cōnstituō, -stituire, -stitui, -stitutus, [con-statuo], *3. v. a. and n.*, *set up, raise, put together, make up.* Hence, *establish, station, arrange, draw up (aciem)*.—*Fig.*, *determine, appoint, agree upon, determine upon, fix, decide upon: praemia (offer).*

cōnstō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātūrus, [con-sto], *I. v. n.*, *stand together*.—*Fig.*, *agree* (*esp. of accounts*): *numerus* (*be complete*). Hence, *be established, appear, be agreed upon, be evident.* (*Esp. constat, it appears, etc.*)—Also (*from accounts*), *cost*.—Also (*with in*), *depend upon.*

cōnstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *consterno*.

cōnsuēsco, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētus, [con-suesco], *3. v. n.*, *become accustomed*.—*In perf. tenses*, *be accustomed, be wont*.—cōnsuētus, -a, -um, p. p., *accustomed, wont, used.*

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, [con-†suetudo (prob. †suetu- + *do*), cf. *consuesco*], *F.*, *habit, custom, habits* (collectively), *manners, customs, practice: victus* (*customary mode of living*); *itineris* (*usual manner of marching*).

cōnsuētus, -a, -um, p. p. of *consuesco*.

cōnsul, -ulis, [con-sul (cf. *prae-sul, exsul*), root of *salio* in some earlier unc. meaning], *M.*, *a consul* (the title of the chief magistrate of Rome, cf. *consilium*).—With proper names in *abl.*, the usual way of indicating dates: *M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus*, *in the consulship of, etc.*; *se consule*, *in his consulship*, as a date or occasion.

cōnsulātus, -tūs, [†consulā- (cf. *consul*) + *tua*], *M.*, *consulship*.

cōnsulō, -sulere, -sului, -sultus, [prob. *consul*, though poss. a kindred or independent verb], *3. v. a. and n.*, *deliberate, consult, take counsel, decide*.—With *acc.*, *consult, take the advice of*.—With *dat.*, *take counsel for, consult the interests of, consult for the welfare of, look out for, do a service to: vitae* (*spare*).—Phrase: *sortibus consultum* (*est*), *lots were drawn to decide.*

cōnsultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-sultō-, *decision*], *I. v. n.*, *consult: de bello* (*take measures for*).

cōnsultō, [prob. like *abl. abs.* used impersonally], *adv.*, *with deliberation, purposely, designedly.*

cōnsultum, -i, [*N. p. p.* of *consulo*], *N.*, *a decision, an order, a decree*.—*Esp.*, *senatus consultum*, *an order of the senate.*

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmp-tus, [con-sumo], 3. v. a., (*take out of the general store*). Hence, *waste, consume, destroy, spend, exhaust*.

cōnsūmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *consumo*.

cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -sur-rēctus, [con-surgo, *rise*]. 3. v. n., *rise, rise up*. — Esp. of a session, *break up*.

contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-tabulo, cf. *tabula, board*], 1. v. a., *build up* (with floors in stories), *floor with planks*. — Also, *build up* (generally, as of a wall with towers).

contāgiō, -ōnis, [con-†tagio, fr. TAG in *tango, touch*, cf. *contingo*], F., *contact*. — Esp. with something noxious, implying *contagion*.

contāminātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *contamino*.

contāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-tamin- (st. of con-tāmen, i.e. TAG (*touch*) + men)], 1. v. a., *bring into contact, unite*. — Esp. with notion of contagion (cf. *contagio*), *contaminate*: *facinore contaminatus* (*implicated in*).

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, [con-tego], 3. v. a., *cover up, cover*.

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptus, [con-temno, *slight*], 3. v. a., *despise, disregard, hold in contempt*.

contemptiō, -ōnis, [con-†temptio, cf. *contemno*], F., *contempt, scorn*: *in contemptionem venire, incur the contempt*, etc.

contemptus, -tūs, [con-†temptus, cf. *contemno*], M., *contempt, scorn*: *contemptul est, is a matter of ridicule*.

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, [con-tendo, *stretch*], 3. v. n., *strain, struggle, strive, try, endeavor, exert one's self, attempt, be zealous*: *id contendere et laborare, strive and exert one's self for*, etc. — Esp. with verbs of motion, *press on, hasten*. — Also, *fight, contend, wage war*. — With *ad* and in like constructions, *hasten, march, start to go* (in haste): *vi contendere, to force a passage*; *petere contendit, seek earnestly*.

contentiō, -ōnis, [con-†tentio, cf. *contendo*], F., *struggle, efforts*. — Esp., *contest, fighting, dispute*.

contentus, -a, -um, p. p. of *contendo* and *contineo*.

contextō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, [con-texo], 3. v. a., *interweave, weave together*. — Also, *weave* (make by weaving).

contextus, -a, -um, p. p. of *contexo*.

continēns, -entis, pres. p. of *contineo*, wh. see.

continenter [continent- (*holding together*) + *ter*], adv., *continually, without stopping, continuously, incessantly*.

continentia, -ae, [continent- (*holding together*) + *ia*], F., *self-restraint, moderation*.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [con-teneo], 2. v. a., *hold together, hold in*. Hence, in many fig. meanings, *restrain, hold in check, keep* (within bounds), *hem in, retain* (in something). — Pass. or with reflex., *keep within, remain, be included in, be bounded, consist in* (be contained in). — Also, *hold on to, join*. — con-

tinēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., (*holding together*), *continual, contiguous, continuous*. — Also, *restraining one's self, continent*. — As noun, *the continuous land, the continent*. — *contentus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *satisfied, content*.

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus, [*con-tango, touch*], 3. v. a. and n., *touch, reach, join*. — With dat., *happen*.

continuātiō, -ōnis, [*continuā-* (cf. *continuō*) + *tio*], F., *continuation: continuatio imbrum, incessant rains*.

continuō [abl. of *continuus*], adv., *immediately, straightway, forthwith*.

continuus, -a, -um, [*con-†tenuus* (TEN in *teneo* (*hold*) + *uus*)], adj., *continuous, successive: dies (successive)*.

contiō, -ōnis, [prob. for *conventio*], F., *an assembly*. — Less exactly, *an address, a harangue* (to an assembly or to soldiers).

coniōnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *coniōnor*.

coniōnor, -ārī, ātus, [*contion-, address*], 1. v. dep., *harangue, address* (an assembly or an army).

contrā [unc. case-form (instr. ?) of *†conterus* (*con- + terus*, comp. ending)], adv. and prep. with acc., *opposite, contrary to, against, in opposition, on the other hand: contrā atque, contrary to what*, etc.

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [*con-traho*], 3. v. a., *draw together, draw in, bring together, gather together, contract, narrow, make smaller, bring into smaller compass*.

contrārius, -a, -um, [*†conterō-* (see *contra*) + *arius*], adj., *opposite* (lit.

and fig.), *contrary: ex contrario, on the contrary; in contrariam partem, in the opposite direction*.

contrōversia, -ae, [*controversō-* (*opposite*) + *ia*], F., *a dispute, a quarrel*. — Plur., *grounds of quarrel*.

contumēlia, -ae, [unc. form., akin to *contumax* and *tumeo, swell*], F., (*swelling pride?*), *an outrage, an insult, an affront*. — Fig., *violence* (of waves), *buffeting*.

convalēscō, -valēscere, -valuī, no p. p., [*con-†valesco*, cf. *valeo, be well*], 3. v. n., *recover, get well*.

convallis, -is, [*con-vallis*], F., *a valley* (enclosed on all sides). — Less exactly, *a defile, a valley* (of any kind).

convēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *conveho*.

convehō, -vehere, vēxī, vectus, [*con-veho*], 3. v. a., *bring together, bring in, collect*.

conveniō, -venīre, -vēmī, -ventus, [*con-venio*], 4. v. a. and n., *come together, meet, assemble, come in, arrive, agree upon, agree*. — With acc., *meet, come to*. — Also, of things, *be agreed upon, be fitting, be necessary* (in a loose sense in Eng.).

conventus, -tūs, [*con-†ventus* (cf. *convenio* and *adventus*)], M., *an assembly, a meeting*. — Esp., *an assize, court* (the regular assembly of Roman citizens in a provincial town on stated occasions, at which justice was dispensed).

conversus, -a, -um, p. p. of *converto*.

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [*con-verto*], 3. v. a., *turn about, turn*

— Fig., *change*: *signa* (*change front, wheel*); *conversa signa bipartito intulerunt, wheeled and charged the enemy in two directions*; *conversa signa in hostes inferre, face about and charge, etc.*; in *fugam conversa, put to flight*; *conversam [materiam] ad hostem collocabat, placed [fallen trees] with their tops towards the enemy*; *contra vim fluminis, against the current*; *itinere converso, altering his course*; *mentes conversae sunt, their state of mind was changed*.

Convictolitavis, -is, [Celtic], M., a young Hæduan nobleman.

convictus, -a, -um, p. p. of **convinco**.

convincō, -vincere, -vici, -victus, [con-vinco, *conquer*], 3. v. a., *prove, make good* (a charge, etc.): *avaritia convicta, found guilty of avarice* (changing the point of view for the Eng. idiom).

convocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-voco], 1. v. a., *call together, summon, call* (a council).

coōrior, -oriri, -ortus, [con-orior, *rise*], 3. (and 4.) v. dep., *arise, spring up, break out* (of a war).

coōrtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **coōrior**.

cōpia, -ae, [t̄cōpi- (con-ops, *aid*) + ia, cf. *inopia, inops*], F., *abundance, plenty, supply* (both great and small), *quantity, number*. — Esp., *luxury* (abundance of everything). — Plur. (esp. of forces), *forces, resources, supplies*. — Phrases: *copiam facere, afford a supply, give an opportunity*; *magna copia locorum* (*choice*); *copia atque usus, necessary supplies*.

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, [copia (reduced) + osus], adj., (*abounding in wealth*), *well supplied, wealthy*.

cōpula, -ae, [con-+pula (from AP, *lay hold of*)], F., (*holding together*), *a grappling-hook*.

cor, cordis, [root as st. (akin to Eng. *heart*)], N., *the heart*. — Phrase: *cordi esse, be dear*.

cōram [unc. case, formed from con and os, *face*], adv. and prep. with abl., *face to face, present, in person*.

Coriosolites, -tum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Aremoric Gaul.

corium, -i, [?], N., *a hide, a skin*.

cornū, -ūs, [?], N., *a horn*. — Fig., *a wing* (of an army).

corōna, -ae, [?], F., *a garland*. — Fig., *a circle* (line, of soldiers). — Phrase: *sub corona, at auction* (the garland being the symbol of a captive for sale at auction).

corpus, -oris, [unc. root + us], N., *the body, the person*. — Also, *a body* (dead). — Less exactly, *extent* (of a camp). — Phrase: *magnitudo corporis, size, stature*.

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus, [con-rumpo, *break*], 3. v. a., *spoil, ruin*.

cortex, -icis, [?], M. (also F.), *bark*.

Cōrus (Caurus), -i, [?], M., *the northwest wind*.

cōtēs, -is, (cau-) [akin to *cos, whetstone*], F., *a rock* (sharp or jagged), *a reef*.

cotidiānus (quo-), -a, -um, [cotidie + anus], adj., *daily*: *cotidiano labore*.

cotidiē (quo-), [quot (*how many*)

-die, loc. of dies], adv., *daily, every day*.

Cotta, -ae, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a legatus of Cæsar.

Cotuātus, -ī, [?], M., a chief of the Carnutes.

Cotus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a young Hæduan nobleman.

crassitūdō, -inis, [crassō- + tūdo (as if crassitu- + do)], F., *thickness*.

Crassus, -ī, [crassus, *fat*], M., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. *Marcus (Licinius) Crassus*, consul with Pompey, B.C. 55; one (with Cæsar and Pompey) of the combination called the First Triumvirate. — 2. *Publius Crassus* (called *Adulescens, the Younger*, only as distinguished from his father), son of the Triumvir, serving with Cæsar in Gaul as commander of cavalry. — 3. *Marcus Crassus*, another son of the Triumvir, quæstor, B.C. 54, in Cæsar's army.

crātēs, -is, [?], F., a *hurdle, a fascine* (a hurdle used to hold up earthworks in fortification). — Also, *wicker* (for hurdles).

creātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *creo*.

crēber, -bra, -brum, [crē- (in *creo, bring forth*) + ber], adj., *thick, close, numerous, frequent*: *arbores* (*thickly growing*); *praesidia* (*continuous, not far apart, at short intervals*).

crēbrō, [prob. abl. of *creber*], adv., *frequently, constantly, in rapid succession, at short intervals*.

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, [†cred-, *faith* (of unc. formation) + do, *place*], 3. v. a. and n., *trust, entrust, believe, suppose*.

cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?], 1. v. a., *burn, consume*: *igni cremari, be burned alive, be burned to death*.

creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [unc. form., akin to *cresco*], 1. v. a., (*cause to grow*), *create*. — Esp., *elect, choose, appoint*.

Crēs, Crētis, [Gr.], M., a *Cretan*. — As adj., *Cretan*.

crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētus, [st. crē- (also in *creo, bring forth*) with -sco], 3. v. n., *grow, increase, swell* (of a river), *be swelled, increase in influence* (of a man), *grow great, grow powerful*.

Critōgnātus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Arverni.

cruciātus, -tūs, [cruciā- (st. of *crucio, torture*) + tus], M., *crucifying*. Hence, *torture*. — With a change of relation, *suffering* (of the person tortured).

crūdēlis, -e, [†crudē- (in *crudesco, akin to crudus, bloody*) + lis, cf. *Aprilis, animālis*], adj., (*bloody?*), *cruel*. — See the following.

crūdēlitās, -tātis, [crudeli- + tas], F., *cruelty*.

crūdēliter [crudeli- + ter], adv., *cruelly, with cruelty*.

crūs, crūris, [?], N., *the leg*.

cubīle, -is, [†cubi- (st. akin to *cumbo*) + lis (cf. *crudelis*), N. of adj.], N., a *couch, a resting-place, a bed, a lair*.

culmen, -inis, [unc. root (in *cello?*, *rise*) + men], N., a *height, a top, a summit, a roof*.

culpa, -ae, [?], F., a *fault, blame, guilt*.

cultūra, -ae, [cultu- (cf. *colo, till*)

+ ra (F., of rus)], F., *cultivation, culture*: agri cultura, or agricultura, *the cultivation of the soil, agriculture*.

cultus, -tūs, [COL (in colo, till) + tus], M., *cultivation*. — Esp. of one's self, *care*. Hence, *civilization, manner of life, state of civilization*.

cum [?], prep. with abl., *with*.

cum (quom), [case-form of qui], conj., *when, while, whenever*. — Often rendered by a different construction in Eng.: cum non possent, *not being able*; cum prohibent, *while defending*. — Of logical relations (usually with subjv.), *when, while, since, inasmuch as, though, although*: cum . . . tum, *while . . . so also*; cum . . . tum maxime, *not only . . . but especially*; cum primum, *as soon as*.

cumulus, -ī, [†cumō + lus], M., *a mass, a heap, a pile*.

cunctātiō, -ōnis, [cunctā- (st. of cunctor) + tiō], F., *hesitation, reluctance, indisposition to fight*.

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus, [?], I. v. dep., *hesitate, hang back, be reluctant*: non quin (*have no hesitation in, etc.*).

cūnctus, -a, -um, [for coniūnctus ?], adj., *all, all together*.

cuneātim [cuneō-, *wedge* (reduced) + atim, as if acc. of †cuneatis], adv., *in the shape of a wedge*. — Esp. of soldiers, *in* (a peculiar wedge-shaped) *column of attack*.

cuneus, -ī, [akin to conus, *cone*], M., *a wedge*.

cuniculus, -ī, [Gr.], M., (*a cony*). — Transf., *a burrow*. Hence, *a mine* (esp. in a military sense).

cupidē [old case-form of cupidus], adv., *eagerly, zealously, earnestly*.

cupiditās, -tātis, [cupidō- + tas], F., *desire, eagerness, greed*: cupiditate adductus, *through over zeal*.

cupidus, -a, -um, [noun st. akin to cupio + dus], adj., *eager, desirous, longing (for), fond of, ambitious (for), with a passion (for)*.

cupiō, -pere, -pivī, -pitus, [partly root verb, partly from †cupi- (cf. cupidus)], 3. (and 4.) v. a. and n., *be eager (for), be anxious, desire*, (stronger than volo). — With dat., *wish well to, be zealous for*. — Phrase: cupientibus signum dat, *gives the signal to his impatient soldiers*.

cūr (quōr), [perh. for qua re], adv., *why* (rel. and interr.).

cūra, -ae, [akin to caveo, *beware*], F., *care, anxiety, attention*: curae alicui esse, *be one's care, object of one's attention*.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cura], I. v. a. and n., *take care, provide for*. — With gerundive, *cause* (to be done), *have* (done).

currus, -ūs, [CUR (?) + us, cf. curro, run], M., *a chariot* (= essedum).

cursus, -ūs, [CUR (?) + tus, cf. curro, run], M., *a running, running, speed, a run* (in concrete sense), *a course* (space or direction run): cursum adaequare (*keep up with*); cursu incitato or magno, *at full speed*; eodem cursu, *with the same impetus, without stopping*; in hoc medio cursu, *midway of this passage, from Britain to Ireland*.

custōdia, -ae, [custod- (*guard*) + ia], F., *custody, guard* (state of being guarded). — Plur. (concretely), *guards, keepers*.

custodiō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, [custod-, *guard*, as if custodi-], 4. v. a., *keep under guard, guard*.

custōs, -tōdis, [unc. st. † *dis* (cf. *merces*, -ēdis, *palus*, -ūdis)], c., *a guard, a watchman, a keeper, a spy*.

D

D, [half of CIO = M], 500.

D., for Decimus.

Dācus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *Dacian* (of the Dacians, a people of Thrace, north of the Carpathian Mountains, occupying parts of Hungary, Galicia, Wallachia, etc.). — Plur., *the Dacians*.

damnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *damno*.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [damnō-, *loss*], 1. v. a., (*fine*), *find guilty, condemn*.

damnum, -ī, [?, DA (*give*) + *menus* (cf. *alumnus*)], n., (*fine*), *loss*.

Dānuvius (-bius), -ī, [?], m., *the Danube*, the great river flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea.

datus, -a, -um, p. p. of *do*.

dē [unc. case-form of pron. st. DA (in *idem*, *dum*)], adv. (only in comp.) and prep. with abl., *down from, off from, from, away from*.

Hence, *qua de causa*, *for which reason*; *de populo mereor* (*deserve well or ill of, properly win from*); *de consilio* (*by*, cf. *ex*). — Esp. in partitive sense, *out of, of*: *pauci de nostris*. — Also (cf. Eng. *of*), *about, of* (*about*), *in regard to, concerning, for*: *de regno desperare*; *nihil de bello timere*, *have no fear of war*; *de potentatu contendere*; *de iniuriis satisfacere*. — In expressions of time, *just after, about*: *de tertia vigilia*. —

Often with verbs of sense which may take acc.: *sentio de*, *learn, discover*. — Phrases: *de improvviso*, *of a sudden, unexpectedly*. — In comp., *down, off, away, through* (cf. *debeo*, *decerto*).

dēbeō, -bēre, -buī, -bitus, [de-habeo], 2. v. a., (*have off of one's possessions*), *owe, be bound, ought, must, cannot help*: *iudicari debere* (*might well be*, etc.). — Pass., *be due, be owing*.

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [de-cedo], 3. v. n., (*make way off*, cf. *cedo*), *retire, withdraw, withdraw from, shun*. — Esp. (from life), *die*.

decem, [?], indecl. num. adj., *ten*.

dēceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *decipio*.

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus, [de-cerno], 3. v. a. and n., (*decide off, so as to clear away*), *decide, determine, decree, order* (as a result of determination).

dēcortō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-certo, *fight*], 1. v. a. and n., *contend* (so as to close the contest, cf. "*fight it out*"), *decide the issue, try the issue* (of war), *carry on war, fight* (a general engagement): *risk a decisive battle* (with or without pugna).

dēcēssus, -sūs, [de-†cessus, cf. *decedo* and *incessus*], m., *withdrawal, departure*: *aestus* (*ebb, fall*).

Decetia, -ae, [Celtic], f., a city of the Hædui, on the Loire, *Decise*.

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidi, no p. p., [de-cado], 3. v. n., *fall off* (or down), *fall* (from one's horse).

decimus, -a, -um, [tēci- (as st. of decem) + mus], adj., *tenth*. — Masc. as noun, a Roman prænomen (see Brutus).

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [de-capio], 3. v. a., (*take off, catch*), *beguile, deceive*.

dēclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-claro], 1. v. a., (*clear off*), *make plain, declare* (decide and state).

dēclivis, -e, [de-clivis (or clivus, slope)], adj., *sloping down, inclined*. — Plur. as noun, *slopes*.

dēclivitās, -tātis, [declivi- + tas], F., *slope*: ad declivitatem, *downward*.

dēcrētum, -ī, [prop. N. of decre-tus], N., *a decree, a decision*.

dēcrētus, -a, -um, p. p. of decerno.

decumānus, -a, -um, [decumō- (reduced) + anus], adj., *belonging to the tenth*: porta (*the rear gate, of a camp, where the tenth cohort was posted*).

decuriō, -ōnis, [decuria- (reduced) + o], M., *a commander* (of a decuria of cavalry, a small squadron).

dēcurrō, -currere, -curri (cucurri), -cursūrus, [de-curro], 3. v. n., *run down, run away, hurry off*.

decus, -oris, [unc. root (cf. decet, *it becomes*) + us], N., *honor, glory*.

dēdecus, -oris, [de-decus], N., *disgrace, dishonor*.

dēditicius, -a, -um, [deditō- (reduced) + cius], adj., *surrendered*. — Plur. as noun, *prisoners* (taken by surrender), *subjects, persons surrendered*.

dēditiō, -ōnis, [de-datio, cf. dedo], F., *surrender*: in deditiōnem accipere, *receive one's surrender*; in deditiōnem venire, *to surrender*.

dēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of dedo.

dēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [de-dō], 3. v. a., *give over, surrender, give up, devote*. — In pass. or with reflex., *surrender one's self, submit*.

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, [de-duco], 3. v. a., *lead down or off, lead away, withdraw, draw off* (præsidia), *take away* (of men), *bring away, lead* (from one place to another), *bring* (into a situation). — Fig., *induce, bring, lead*. — Esp. of ships, *launch* (draw down); of women, *marry* (used of the man, cf. nubo); of things, *bring, draw, turn*. So, *raise* (a man to fortune). — Also, *rem in periculum* (*cause a perilous situation*); *re in controversiam deducta* (*coming to, etc.*); *deduci milites* (*march out, led by their commander*).

dēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of deduco.

dēfatigātiō (-fet-), -ōnis, [de-fatigatio], F., *exhaustion*.

dēfatigātus (-fet-), -a, -um, p. p. of defatigo.

dēfatigō (-fet-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-fatigo], 1. v. a., *wear out, exhaust, worry, tire out*.

dēfectiō, -ōnis, [de-factio, cf. deficio, *fail*], F., *falling off, defection, falling away, revolt*.

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsus, [de-fendo, *strike*], 3. v. a., *ward off, defend one's self against*. — Also, with changed relation, *defend, protect*.

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, [de-ffensio, cf. *defendo*], F., a defence.

dēfēnsor, -ōris, [de-ffensor, cf. *defendo*], M., a defender. — Also, a means of defence, a defence, a buffer. — Phrase: *speciem defensorum*, a show of defence.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [de-fero], irr. v. a., carry down, carry away, bring, land (of ships). — Pass., be borne down or on, drift (of ships), turn aside: *delati in scrobes* (falling). — Fig., confer upon, put in one's hands, hand over, report, lay before.

dēfessus, -a, -um, p. p. of *defestiscor*.

dēfetiſcor, -fetiſci, -fessus, [de-fatiscor, gape], 3. v. dep., crack open. — Fig., become exhausted. — dēfessus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., exhausted: dēfessus, an exhausted man.

dēficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus, [de-facio, make], 3. v. a. and n., fail, fall away, revolt, fall off, abandon (with ab): *animo* (despond).

dēfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, [de-figo, fasten], 3. v. a., fix (in or down), plant, set, fasten, drive down.

dēfiniō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, [de-finio, end], 4. v. a., set limits to, fix, appoint.

dēfixus, -a, -um, p. p. of *defigo*.

dēfluō, -fluere, -fluxī, -fluxūrus, [de-fluo], 3. v. n., flow down, flow apart, divide (of a river).

dēfore, see *desum*.

dēformis, -e, [de-forma (shape), weakened and decl. as adj.], adj., uncomely, unshapely, ugly, bad-looking.

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, no p. p.,

[de-fugio], 3. v. a. and n., fly from, avoid, fly, flee.

dēiciō (dēiici-), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [de-iacio], 3. v. a., cast down, throw down, drive off, drive out, dislodge, kill (pass., fall), overthrow, throw on shore (of ships), deprive, reduce: *ea spe deiecti*, disappointed in this hope.

dēiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *deicio*.

dēiectus, -tūs, [de-iactus, cf. *iacio*, throw], M., a declivity, a slope.

deinceps, [dein- (cf. *deinde*) + ceps, cf. CAP in *capio*], adv., in succession.

deinde (dein) [de-inde, thence], adv., then, next.

dēlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *defero*.

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-ſlecto, cf. *delicio*], 1. v. a., delight. — Pass., take delight, delight.

dēlectus (dī-), -tūs, [de-lectus, cf. *deligo*, select], M., a levy, a conscription.

dēlectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *deligo*.

dēleō, -lĕre, -lĕvī, -lĕtus, [de-ſleo (akin to *lino*)], 2. v. a., (smear out), blot out, wipe out (of a disgrace). — Fig., annihilate, destroy.

dēlētus, -a, -um, p. p. of *deleo*.

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-ſlibero, perh. akin to *libra*, balance], 1. v. a. and n., discuss, consult, deliberate: *re deliberata*, after discussing the matter.

dēlībrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ſde-librō, bark (adj. *de-liber*)], 1. v. a., peel, strip (of bark).

dēlictum, -ī, [N. p. p. of *delinquo*], N., thing left undone, failure, offence.

dēligātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *dēligo* (-āre).

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [*dēlego*], 3. v. a., *choose out, select*. — dēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *chosen, picked*.

dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [*dēligo*, *bind*], 1. v. a., *tie down, moor, tie*.

dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī, no p. p., [*dēlatesco*, cf. *lateo*, *hide*], 3. v. n., *hide away, hide, skulk, lurk*.

dēmentia, -ae, [*dement* + *ia*], f., *madness, folly*.

dēmessus, -a, -um, p. p. of *dēmeto*.

dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messus, [*dē-meto*, *reap*], 3. v. a., *reap, cut down*.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [*dē-migro*, *depart*], 1. v. n., *move away (change residence), move one's effects, emigrate*.

dēminuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, [*dē-minuo*, cf. *minus*], 3. v. a. and n., *diminish, curtail, lessen, detract*: *de voluptate quicquam (make any diminution of)*: *quid de legibus (disregard in any manner)*; *de sua benevolentia (lessen his good-will)*.

dēminūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *dēminuo*.

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [*dē-mitto*], 3. v. a., *let go down (cf. mitto), let down, stick down (at the bottom of a ditch)*. — In pass. or with reflex., *let one's self down, descend, set one's self down*. — Fig., *despond (se animo), be discouraged*. — dēmīssus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *low-hanging, bowed (of the head)*.

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēemptus,

[*dē-emo*, *take*], 3. v. a., *take down, take off, remove, take away*.

dēmōnstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *dēmōstro*.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [*dē-monstro*, *show*], 1. v. a., *point out, show, represent, mention, state, speak of, make known*.

dēmōror, -ārī, -ātus, [*dē-moror*], 1. v. dep., *delay, retard*.

dēemptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *dēmo*.

dēmum [acc. of *†dēmus* (superl. of *dē*), *nethermost, last*], adv., *at last, at length (not before)*.

dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [*dē-nego*], 1. v. a. and n., *deny, refuse, say not*.

dēnī, -ae, -a, [for *decnī*, *decem* reduced + *nus*], distrib. num. adj. plur., *ten each, ten (on each side), ten (in sets of ten)*.

dēnique [*†denō* (*dē* + *nus*, cf. *dēmum*) *que*], adv., *at last*: *multo denique die, not till late, etc.* — Of order, *finally, in a word, in short*. — Of preference, *at any rate (if no better, etc.)*.

dēnsus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *thick, crowded, dense*.

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [*dē-nuntio*], 1. v. a., *announce (with notion of threat), threaten, declare, warn, order*.

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [*dē-pello*], 3. v. a., *drive off, drive (away), dislodge, avert*.

dēperdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [*dē-perdo*], 3. v. a., *lose, be deprived of*: *tantum opinionis (forfeit)*.

dēpereō, -perīre, -perī, -peritūrus, [*dē-pereo*], irr. v. n., *be lost*.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [de-pono], 3. v. a., *lay down, lay aside, deposit*. — Fig., *lose, abandon (hope), blot out (memory), resign*.

dēpopulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of depopulor.

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus, [de-populor], 1. v. dep., *ravage, lay waste*; p. p., pass., *laid waste*.

dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-porto], 1. v. a., *carry off, carry away, remove*.

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, no p. p., [de-posco], 3. v. a., *demand earnestly, demand, call for, claim*.

dēpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of depōno.

dēprecātor, -ōris, [de-precator, cf. deprecor], M., *a mediator (to beg off something for somebody): eo deprecatore, by his mediation*.

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus, [de-precor], 1. v. dep., *pray to avert something, pray (with accessory notion of relief), beg, beg off, pray for pardon, pray to be spared, resort to prayers, ask for quarter, beseech*.

dēprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, hēnsus, [de-prehendo, grasp], 3. v. a., *capture, catch, seize, take possession of*. — As in Eng., *catch (come upon), surprise*.

dēprehēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of deprehendo.

dēpūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-pugno], *fight decisively, fight it out*.

dēpulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of depello.

dērēctē (dī-) [old case-form of dērectus], adv., *straight: ad perpendicularum (perpendicularly)*.

dērēctus (dī-), -a, -um, p. p. of derigo.

dērigō (dī-), -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, [de-rego], 3. v. a., *straighten out, direct: aciem (form); opera (set in order, arrange)*. — dērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *straight, straight up and down, perpendicular*.

dērivātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dē-rivo.

dērivō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [perh. immediately fr. de-rivus (*brook*), prob. through adj. st.], 1. v. a., *draw off (water), divert*.

dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-rogo, in its political sense], 1. v. a., *take away, withdraw*.

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsūrus, [de-scando], 3. v. n., *climb down, descend*. — Fig., *resort to, have recourse to, adopt (with ad)*.

dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectus, [de-seco], 1. v. a., *cut off*.

dēsērō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, [de-sero, join], 3. v. a., *disunite*. — Esp., *abandon, forsake, give up, leave in the lurch*. — dēsertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *deserted, solitary*.

dēsertor, -ōris, [de-†sertor, cf. desero], M., *a deserter*.

dēsertus, -a, -um, p. p. of desero.

dēsīderātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dēsīdero.

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?, cf. considero], 1. v. a., *feel the want of, desire, miss, need, desire (want to see), lose (of soldiers)*. — Pass., *be missing (lost): perpauci desiderati quin cuncti, etc. (all with very few exceptions)*.

dēsīdīa, -ae, [dēsīd- (st. of dēses, de- SED as st.)], F., *idleness, sloth*.

dēsīgnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dēsīgno.

dēsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-sig-no], I. v. a., *mark out, indicate, mean*.

dēsīlīō, -sīlīre, -sīlūī, -sultus, [de-salio], 4. v. n., *leap down, leap (down), jump overboard, dismount*.

dēsīstō, -sīstere, -sītī, -sītītūrus, [de-sisto], 3. v. n., *stand off, cease, stop, desist from, abandon: fuga (cease flying)*.

dēspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of despicio.

dēspectus, -tūs, [de-īspectus, cf. despicio], M., *a view down, view (from a height): oppidum haberet despectūs (sheer precipices)*.

dēsperātīō, -ōnis, [de-īspēratio, cf. despero], F., *despair, desperation*.

dēsperātus, -a, -um, p. p. of despero.

dēsperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [despero, cf. spes, *hope*], I. v. n. (but see below), *cease to hope, despair*. — dēsperātus, -a, -um, as pass., *despaired of*. — Also as adj., (*hopeless?*, perh. orig. *despaired of*), hence *desperate*.

dēspicō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [de-specio], 3. v. a. and n., *look down, look down upon*. — Fig. (cf. Eng. equivalent), *look down upon, despise*.

dēspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [despolio], I. v. a., *strip off*. — With change of relation, *strip* (also fig., as in Eng.).

dēstinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dēstino.

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [perh. dēstinā-, a prop (fr. de-STA-nus)], I. v. a., *fasten, make fast, make firm, get fast hold of, catch firmly*. Hence, fig., *fix upon, appoint, choose, destine*.

dēstituō, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtus, [de-stātuo], 3. v. a., *set apart (from one's self), abandon, desert*.

dēstitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of destituo.

dēstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of destringo.

dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, [de-stringo], 3. v. a., *strip off*. — Also (cf. despolio), *strip, draw* (of swords, stripping them of their scabbards).

dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, [desum], irr. v. n., (*be away*), *be wanting, be lacking, fail*. — Esp., *fail to do one's duty by*, etc. — Often, *lack* (changing relation of subj. and following dat.), *be without, not have*.

dēsuper [de super], adv., *from above*.

dēterior, -ius, [compar. of īdeter (de + terus, cf. interior)], adj., (*farther down*), *inferior, worse: deteriora vectigalia facere (impair)*.

dēterreō, -terrēre, -terrūī, -territus, [de-terreo], 2. v. a., *frighten off, deter, prevent* (esp. by threats, but also generally).

dētestātus, -a, -um, p. p. of detestor.

dētestor, -ārī, -ātus, [de-testor], I. v. a., (*call the gods to witness to prevent something*), *entreat* (from a thing). — Also, *curse*.

dētinēō, -tinēre, -tinūī, -tentus,

[de-teneo], 2. v. a., *hold off, detain, delay, stop.*

dētrāctō (-trecto), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [de-tracto], 1. v. a., (*hold off from one's self*), *avoid, shun.*

dētrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of de-traho.

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus, [de-traho], 3. v. a., *drag off, snatch (away).*—With less violence, *take away, take off, withdraw* (with no violence at all).

dētrectō, see detracto.

dētrimentōsus, -a, -um, [detrimentō- (reduced) + osus], adj., *detrimental, hurtful.*

dētrimentum, -i, [de-†trimentum (tri- in tero, *rub*, + mentum), cf. detero], N., (*a rubbing off*), *loss, injury.*—Esp., *defeat, disaster.*

dēturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of de-turbo.

dēturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [de-turbo, *disturb*], 1. v. a., *drive off* (in confusion).

deūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstus, [de-uro], 3. v. a., *burn off, burn up.*

deus, -i, [akin to divus, Iovis, dies], M., *a god.*

deūstus, -a, -um, p. p. of deuro.

dēvehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus, [de-veho], 3. v. a., *carry away, bring (to a place), bring along.*

dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [de-venio], 4. v. n., *come away, land (come down from the sea), come (from one place to another).*

dēvexus, -a, -um, [prop. a p. p. of deveho], adj., *sloping.*—Neut. plur. as noun, *slopes, hillsides.*

dēvictus, -a, -um, p. p. of devinco.

dēvincō, -vincere, -vici, -victus, [de-vinco], 3. v. a., *conquer* (so as to prostrate), *subdue* (entirely).

dēvocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [de-voco], 1. v. a., *call down* (or away).—Esp., fig., *invite, bring*: *fortunas in dubium (risk).*

dēvōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of devoveo.

dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, [de-voveo], 2. v. a., *vow (away).*—Less exactly, *devote.*—dēvōtus, -a, -um, p. p. as noun, *a devoted follower* (sworn to die with his companion).

dexter, -era, -erum, (-tra, -trum), [unc. st. (perh. akin to digitus?) + terus], adj., *right* (in the right hand).—*dextra*, F., (sc. *manus*), *the right hand* (esp. used as a pledge of faith, as with us).

Diablintes (-tres), -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of the Aulerci.

diciō (less correctly dīt-), -ōnis, [st. akin to dico + o, cf. legio], F., (*command*, cf. Eng. "say"), *dominion, sway.*

dicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†dicō- (cf. causi-dicus)], 1. v. a., *adjudge, assign* (in some legal manner).—Less exactly (esp. with reflex.), *assign, make over*: *se in clientelam* (*bind one's self, attach one's self*); *se in servitutem* (*surrender*).

dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus, [DIC, in dīco and dicus], 3. v. a. and n., (*point out?*), *say, speak, name.*—Esp., with authority, *name, appoint, fix*: *ius* (*administer*, cf. dīco); *sententiam* (*give*).—Special uses: *dicunt, they*

say; *causam dicere*, *plead one's cause*, hence *be tried*, *be brought to trial*.—See also *dictum*.

dictiō, -ōnis, [*dic* (as root of *dico*) + *tiō*], F., *a speaking, a pleading* (cf. *dico*): *causae* (*pleading one's cause, trial*).

dictum, -ī, [N. p. p. of *dico*], N., *a thing said, a statement, a remark, a command*: *dicto audiens esse alicui* (*be obedient, obey*).

dīdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [*dis-ducō*], 3. v. a., *draw apart, lead apart, separate, divide*.

diēs, -ēī, [prob. for *dives*, DVU + AS], M. (rarely F. in some uses), *a day* (in all Eng. senses).—Also, *time*: *in diēs*, *from day to day*, with idea of increase or diminution: *diem ex diē ducere*, *put off a thing day after day*; *ad diem*, *on the day*; *diēs longior*, *a later time*.

differō, *differre*, *distulī*, *dilātus*, [*dis-ferō*], irr. v. a. and n., *bear apart, spread*.—Also, *postpone, defer, differ*.

difficilis, -e, [*dis-facilis*, *easy*], adj., *not easy, difficult*: *iter* (*hard to pass over*).

difficultās, -tātis, [*difficili-* (weakened) + *tās*], F., *difficulty*: *magna difficultate adiciebatur*, *was much troubled*; *rei frumentariae* (*difficulty of supplying grain*).

difficulter [*difficili-* (weakened) + *ter*], adv., *with difficulty*; compar., *with greater difficulty*.

diffidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum, [*dis-fido*], 3. v. n., *distrust, not have confidence*.

diffisus, -a, -um, p. p. of *diffido*.

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, [*dis-fundo*], 3. v. a., *spread out*.

digitus, -ī, [?], M., *a finger*: *pollex* (*the thumb*).—As in Eng., *a finger's breadth, a finger* (as a measure).

dīgnitās, -tātis, [*dignō* + *tās*], F., *worthiness, worth, dignity, prestige, position* (superior); *tribuere* (*have respect for*).

dīgnus, -a, -um, [?], perh. root of *dico* + *nus*], adj., *worthy*.

dīiudicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [*dis-iudico*, *judge*], 1. v. a. and n., *decide* (between two).

dīlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *diligō*.

diligenter [*diligent-* + *ter*], adv., *carefully, with care, with exactness, exactly, with pains*: *conservavit* (*took pains to save*); *parum diligenter*, *too carelessly*.

dīligentia, -ae, [*diligent-* + *ia*], F., *care, pains, painstaking, diligence*: *remittere* (*cease to take pains, take less care*).

dīligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [*dis-lego*], 3. v. a., (*choose out*), *love, be fond of*.—See also *diligens*.

dīmēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *dīmetior*.

dīmētiōr, -mētīrī, -mēnsus, [*dis-metior*], 4. v. dep., *measure* (in parts), *measure out* (esp. of camp).—*dīmēnsus*, -a, -um, *measured*.

dīmīcātiō, -ōnis, [*dīmico*], F., *fight, contest*.

dīmīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [*dis-mico*], 1. v. n., (*brandish swords to decide a contest?*), *fight* (a decisive battle), *risk an engagement*.

dīmidius, -a, -um, [*dis-mediū*],

adj., (*divided in the middle*), *half*.
— Neut. as noun, *the half*.

dimittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [dis-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go away, let slip, let pass, let go, give up, relinquish, abandon: oppugnationem (raise); victoriam (let go, on purpose)*. — Also, *send in different directions, send about, despatch, detail, disband, dismiss*.

dirēctus, -a, -um, see **derectus**.

direptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **diripio**.

dirigō, see **derigo**.

dirimō, -emere, -ēmi, -ēptus, [dis-emo, take], 3. v. a., *take apart, break up (a conference)*.

diripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus, [dis-rapio], 3. v. a., *seize (in different directions), plunder, pillage, ravage*.

dis, **dī** (**dir**-**dif**-), [akin to **duo**?], inseparable prep. (adv.), in comp., *apart, asunder, in different directions, not, un-*. — Cf. **discedo**, **discerno**, **dirimo**, **diffundo**.

Dis, **Ditis**, [akin to **dives**, *rich*, as the earth is the source of riches], M., *Pluto (the god of the under world, and so of death)*.

discedō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus, [dis-cedo, go], 3. v. n., *withdraw, depart, retire, leave (with ab), go away: locus unde discesserant, the place which they had left; ab officio (fail in one's duty); spes hostibus (forsake, fail); ab armis (lay down one's arms)*.

disceptātor, -tōris, [disceptā- (st. of **discepto**, *decide*) + **tor**], M., *a judge, an arbiter, umpire*.

discernō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētus, [dis-cerno, *separate*], 3. v. a., *separate, distinguish*.

discessus, -sūs, [dis-+cessus, cf. **discedo**], M., *a departure, a withdrawal*.

disciplīna, -ae, [discipulō- (reduced) + **ina**, cf. **rapina**], F., (*pillage*?), *discipline, instruction, a system (of doctrine, etc.), a course of instruction*.

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [dis-claudio], 3. v. a., *shut apart, keep apart, separate, divide*.

discō, **discere**, **didici**, **discitūrus**, [for **tdicisco** (**DIC** + **sco**)], 3. v. a. and n., *learn: discendi causa, for instruction*.

discrimen, -inis, [dis-crimen, cf. **discerno**], N., *a separation, a decision. Hence, a moment of decision, a crisis, critical condition, danger*.

discussus, -a, -um, p. p. of **discutio**.

discutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus, [dis-quatio, *shake*], 3. v. a., *strike (or shake) apart, beat away, drive away, clear away, dislodge, shatter*.

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [dis-iacio], 3. v. a., *hurl apart, break up (a phalanx), disperse, tear off (yards)*. — **disiectus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *scattered, broken, in disorder: pabulatio (in widely scattered places)*.

disiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **disicio**.

dispār, -paris, [dis-par], adj., *unequal, inferior, ill-matched, different*.

disparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dis-

paro], 1. v. a., *scatter, separate*, (cf. *disiungo*).

dispergō, -spargere, -spersi, -persus, [*dis-spargo, scatter*], 3. v. a., *scatter, disperse*.

dispersus, -a, -um, p. p. of *dispergo*.

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [*dis-pono*], 3. v. a., *place about* (in various places), *station* (variously), *array* (at several posts).

dispositus, -a, -um, p. p. of *dispono*.

disputātiō, -ōnis, [*dis-putatio*, cf. *disputo*], F., *discussion, dispute*.

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [*dis-puto, reckon*], 1. v. n. and a., *discuss, investigate*.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, [*dis-tensio* (cf. *dissentio*)], F., *difference of opinion, disagreement, dissension*.

dissentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus, [*dis-sentio, feel*], 4. v. n., *differ in opinion* (cf. *sentio*), *be at variance, disagree* (ab, with).

disserō, -ere, [*dis-sero*], 3. v. a., *plant here and there, place at intervals*.

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [*dis-simulo, make like*], 1. v. a. and n., (*pretend something is not*), *conceal* (what is), *dissemble*.

dissipātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *dis-sipo*.

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [*dis-tupo, throw*], 1. v. a., *scatter, disperse*: *dissipati, straggling troops*.

dissuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, [*dis-suadeo*], 2. v. a., *advise to the contrary, oppose* (in argument), *dissuade*.

distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [*dis-teneo*], 2. v. a., *keep apart, hold asunder, keep from uniting, cut off* (in military sense), *isolate*.

distō, -stāre, [*dis-sto*], 1. v. n., *stand apart, be distant*: *quantum iunctura distabat* (as far as the distance between, etc.); *quantum summa labra distabant* (the width [of the ditch] at the top).

distrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [*dis-traho*], 3. v. a., *drag asunder, separate*. Hence, *distract*.

distribuō, -buere, -buī, -būtus, [*dis-tribuo, assign*], 3. v. a., *assign* (to several), *distribute, divide*.

dītissimus, -a, -um, superl. of *dives*.

diū [prob. acc. of st. akin to *dies*], adv., *for a time, a long time, for some time, long*: *tam diu, so long*; *quam diu, how long, as long, as long as*; *diutius, any longer*; *diutissime, for the longest time, longest*.

diurnus, -a, -um, [*dius*, akin to *diu* and *dies*, + *nus*], adj., *of the day, daily* (as opposed to *nightly*): *nocturnis diurnisque itineribus* (by night and day).

diūtinus, -a, -um, [*diu* + *tinus*], adj., (*long in time*), *long continued*.

diūturnitās, -tātis, [*diuturno* + *tas*], F., *length of time, long continuance, length* (in time).

diūturnus, -a, -um, [*diu* + *turnus*, cf. *hesternus*], adj., *long continued, long* (in time).

dīversus, p. p. of *diverto*.

divertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [*dis-vertō*], 3. v. a. and n., *turn aside* (or *apart*), *separate*. — *dīver-*

sus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *separate, distant, diverse, different*.

divēs, -itis, [?], adj., *rich*.

Dīviciācus, -ī, [Celtic], M.: 1. A leader of the Hædui, brother of Dumnorix.—2. A leader of the Suessiones.

Divicō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., a leader of the Helvetii.

dividō, -videre, -visī, -visus, [dis- + vido, VIDH (?), cf. vidua, *widow*], 3. v. a., *divide, separate*.—**divīsus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *divided*: Gallia divisa est.—Also, *spread out*.

divīnus, -a, -um, [divō- (as if divi) + nus], adj., *of the gods, divine*: res divinae, *matters of religion, religion*.

1. **dō**, dare, dedī, datus, [DA, *give*, cf. 2. dō], 1. v. a., *give, afford, offer, allow, concede, assign, grant*: responsum (*answer, reply*); sibi minus dubitationis dari, *that he had less hesitation*; filiam in matrimonium (*marry*); se vento (*run before the wind*); mānus (*submit, yield, from holding out the hands to be bound*); hostes in fugam (*put to flight*); operam (*take pains, exert one's self, see to it that, etc.*); negotium uti (*employ one to, etc., engage one to, etc.*); suspicionem (*afford, make a show, but also have an appearance*); arbitros (*assign referees, a judicial function*).

2. **dō** [DHA, *place*], confounded with 1. dō, but appearing in comp., *place, put*, as abdō, condō.

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, [unc. formation akin to dico and disco], 2. v. a., *teach, show, inform, repre-*

sent, state (in the course of the narrative).

documentum, -ī, [docu- (?) (as st. of doceo) + mentum], N., *a means of teaching, a proof, a warning, an example*.

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, [perh. dolō- (st. of dolus, *craft*)], 2. v. n., *feel pain, suffer*.—Esp. mentally, *be pained, grieve*.

dolor, -ōris, [dol- (as root of doleo) + or], M., *pain* (physical or mental), *distress, indignation, chagrin, vexation*: magno dolore ferre, *be very indignant, feel much chagrin*; magno esse dolori, *to be a great annoyance or sorrow*; almost concrete, *a grievance*.

dolus, -ī, [perh. akin to doleo, originally *stroke* ?], M., *an artifice, deceit, tricks, a stratagem*.

domesticus, -a, -um, [domō- (as if domes-, cf. modestus) + ticus], adj., (*of the house*), *of one's home, one's own, at home*: bellum (*domestic, internal, intestine*).

domicilium, -ī, [perh. domō- + t̄cilium (fr. root of colo)], N., *an abode, a house, a dwelling-place, a house* (as a permanent home).

dominor, -ārī, -ātus, [dominō-], 1. v. dep., *rule, be master*.

dominus, -ī, [†domō- (*ruling*) + nus], M., *a master, an owner*.

Domitius, -ī, [domitō- (*reduced*) + ius], M., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul in B.C. 54.

domus, -ī (-ūs), [DOM (*build* ?) + us (-os and -us)], F., *a house, a home*: domī, *at home*; domum, *home*,

to one's home; domo, from home; domo exire, go away, emigrate.

dōnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **dono**.

Donnotaurus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a Gallic name. — Esp., **Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus**, a chief of the Helvetii, son of C. Valerius Caburus, and brother of C. Valerius Procillus. The first two names of these persons are Roman, taken from the name of their patron.

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [donō-], I. v. a., *present, give* (as a gift). — Also, *honor with a gift, present* (one with a thing); *civitate aliquem donare, give one the rights of citizenship.*

dōnum, -ī, [DA (*give*) + nus], N., a gift.

dorsum (-us), -ī, [?], N. (and M.), *the back*. — Less exactly, *a summit* (of a long ridge).

dōs, **dōtis**, [DA (*give*) + tis (reduced)], F., (*a gift*). — Esp., *a marriage gift, a dowry, a portion* (given at marriage).

druīdes, -um, [Celtic], M., *the Druids*, the priests of the Gallic religion.

Dubis, -is, [Celtic], M., *the Doubs*, a river of Gaul, flowing from the Jura into the Saône.

dubitātiō, -ōnis, [dubitā- (st. of dubito) + tiō], F., *doubt, hesitation*: *alicui minus dubitationis dari, to feel less doubt or hesitation.*

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [†dubitō- (partic. of lost verb dubo?, cf. dubius)], I. v. n., *doubt, have doubt, feel doubtful*. — Also (absolutely, or with inf., rarely with quin), *hesitate, feel hesitation, vacillate.*

dubius, -a, -um, [duo + bius, cf. **superbus** and **dubito**], adj., *doubtful*: *est dubium, there is doubt, it is doubtful.*

ducentī, -ae, -a, [duō-centi (plur. of centum)], adj., *two hundred*.

dūcō, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, **ductus**, [DUC (in dux)], 3. v. a., *lead, draw, bring* (of living things): *primum pilum (be first centurion)*. — Esp. of a general, *lead, march*. — With or without in **matrimonium**, *marry* (of the man). — Less exactly, *run* (a line, a ditch), *draw, make*. — Fig., *prolong, drag out*. — As mercantile word, and so fig., *reckon, consider*.

ductus, -tūs, [DUC + tus], M., *lead, command*.

dum [pron. DA, prob. acc., cf. **tum**], conj., *at that time*. — Also, *while, so long as*. Hence, *till, until*.

Dumnorix, -īgis, [Celtic], M., a leader of the Hædui, brother of Diviciacus.

duo, -ae, -o, [dual, of st. †dvō, cf. **bis**], num. adj., *two*.

duodecim [duo-decem], indecl. num. adj., *twelve*.

duodecimus, -a, -um, [duo-de-cimus], num. adj., *twelfth*.

duodēnī, -ae, -a, [duo deni], num. adj., *twelve* (in a set).

duodēvigintī [duo de viginti, *twenty*], indecl. num. adj., *eighteen*.

duplex, -plicis, [duo-†plex, cf. **plico**, *fold*], adj., *two-fold, double*: *acies (in two divisions, arranged for successive attacks in the same direction, or for the same tactical purpose).*

duplicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [duplic-],
I. v. a., *double, increase two-fold.*

dūritia, -ae, [durō- + tia], F.,
hardness, hardship.

dūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [durō-],
I. v. a., *harden, toughen, make hardy.*

Dūrocortorum, -i, [Celtic], N.,
the chief city of the Remi, now
Rheims.

dūrus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *hard.* —
Fig., *hard, severe, difficult*: si quid
erat durius (*any severe contest*): si nil
esset durius, *if no accident happened.*

Dūrus, -i, [durus], M., a Roman
family name. — Esp., *Quintus La-*
berius Durus, a military tribune in
Cæsar's army, killed in Britain.

dux, ducis, [DUC (*lead*) as st.], C.,
a leader, a guide, a commander.

E

ē, shortened form of **ex** (esp. in
composition), which see.

eā [instr. or abl. of is], adv., *this*
way, that way, thus, in that direction,
in that quarter.

Eburōnes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur.,
a Belgian tribe, dependents of the
Treveri, living north of these be-
tween the Meuse and the Rhine.

Eburovices, -um, [Celtic], M.
plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of
the Auleri living in the region of
modern *Perche.*

ēdiscō, -discere, -didici, no p. p.,
[ex-disco], 3. v. a., *learn off, learn*
by heart, commit to memory.

ēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of **edo**.

ēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [ex-do],
3. v. a., *put forth, give forth*: ex-
empla cruciatusque (*make an ex-*
ample by inflicting severe torture). —
ēditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *elevated,*
raised, high.

ēdoceō, -docēre, -docui, -doctus,
[ex-doceo, teach], 2. v. a., *show forth,*
explain, inform, tell, instruct.

ēdūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus,
[ex-duco], 3. v. a., *lead out, lead*

forth, draw (a sword), *bring out*
(baggage-train).

ēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of **educo**.

effarciō (-ferc-), -farcire, -farsi,
-fertus, [ex-farcio], 4. v. a., *stuff*
out, fill in (solid).

effēminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-
femino, or perh. *teffeminō* (or -i),
in either case from *femina*], I. v. a.,
make into a woman. — Less exactly,
(*make like a woman*), *enervate,*
weaken: animos (*enfeeble, debauch*).

effero, efferre, extulī, elātus, [ex-
fero], irr. v. a., *carry out, bring out,*
carry away. — Less exactly and fig.,
spread abroad, make known, publish
abroad, puff up, elate (cf. Eng. "car-
ried away"). — Also (cf. **edo**), *raise*
up.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [ex-
facio], 3. v. a., *make out, make, en-*
able, accomplish, cause, produce,
cause to be, make into, make out
(furnish): ut praeberent (*make them*
afford); ut sint laboris (*make capa-*
ble of); ut posset (*make possible*);
classem (*get together, construct*).

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus,

[*ex-fodio*], 3. v. a., *dig out, gouge out*.

effossus, -a, -um, p. p. of *effodio*.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, [*ex-fugio*], 3. v. a., *escape, flee* (absolutely), *fly from*.

egēna, pres. p. of *egeō*.

egeō, egēre, eguī, no p. p., [tegō- (cf. *indigus, in want*)], 2. v. n., *want, need, be in want*. — egēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., *needy, destitute*.

egestās, -tātis, [unc. st. (perh. *egent*) + *tas*], F., *poverty, destitution*.

ego, meī, [cf. Eng. *I*], pron., *I* (*me*, etc.). — Plur., nōs, *we, us*, etc.

egomet, nōsmet, etc., pron. emph., with encl. -met, *I, we*.

ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus, [*ex-gradior, step*], 3. v. dep., *march out, go out, move beyond: finis (pass beyond)*; navi (*land, disembark*); unde erant egressi, *the place they had left*; ex oppido (*evacuate*).

ēgregiē [old case-form of *egregius*], adv., *remarkably, finely, extremely well*.

ēgregius, -a, -um, [e grege (*out of the herd*) + *ius*], adj., *out of the common, remarkable, superior, excellent, uncommon, special*.

ēgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of *egredior*.

ēgressus, -sūs, [e-gressus, cf. *ingressus* and *egredior*], M., *a landing*.

ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [*ex-lacio*], 3. v. a., *cast out, drive out, cast up* (cf. *edo*). — With reflex., *rush out, rush*.

ēiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *ēicio*.

ēiusmodī [*eius modi*], as adj. phrase, *of this kind, of such a kind, such, of such a nature, of this nature*.

ēlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus, [*ex-labor*], 3. v. dep., *slip out, escape*.

ēlāpsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *elabor*.

ēlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *effero*.

Elaver, -veris, [Celtic], N., *a tributary of the Loire, now Allier*.

ēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *eligo*.

elephantus, -ī, [Gr. acc. *ἐλέφαντα*, declined], M., *an elephant*.

Eleutetī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., *a people dependent on the Arverni*.

ēliciō, -licere, -licuī, -licitus, [*ex-lacio*], 3. v. a., *entice out, draw out*.

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [*ex-lego*], 3. v. a., *pick out, select*. —

ēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *picked* (troops).

Elusātēs, -ium, [Iberian], M. plur., *a people of Aquitania*.

ēmigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [*ex-migro*], 1. v. n., *remove* (permanently), *emigrate*. — With *domo* (in same sense).

ēmineō, -nēre, -nuī, no p. p., [*ex-†mineo, project*], 2. v. n., *stand out, project*.

ēminus [*ex manu, hand*, cf. *cominus*], adv., *at a distance, at long range*.

ēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [*ex-mitto*], 3. v. a., *let go, drop, send out, throw, hurl, discharge*. — Pass., or with reflex., *rush out*.

emō, emere, emī, emptus, [EM ?, orig. *take*], 3. v. a., (*take*, only in compounds). — Esp., *buy* (cf. Eng. *sell*, orig. *give*), *purchase*.

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus, [ex-nascor],
3. v. dep., *spring out, grow out*.

ēnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of enascor.
enim [prob. e (in en, ecce) +
nam], (always postpositive) conj.,
really. — Esp. as explanatory, *for,*
but, now, for in fact: neque enim,
for of course . . . not, for you see
. . . not.

ēnūntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of
enuntio.

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-
nuntio, *announce*], I. v. a., *make*
known, report, disclose, reveal: hosti-
bus enuntiarī, (*that*) *the enemy were*
informed of.

eō, ire, ivī (iī), itūrus, [root i],
irr. v. n., *go, pass, march, advance,*
proceed. — Pass. inf. iri used with
verbs to form the fut. pass. inf.

eō [old dat. of is], adv., *thither,*
there (in sense of *thither*). — Often
translated by more def. expressions
in Eng., *to the place* (where, etc.), *on*
them (*it, him, etc.*): usque eo ut, *to*
that degree that, so far that.

eō, abl. neut. used as the abl. of
degree of difference; see is.

eōdem [old dat. of idem, cf. eo,
thither], adv., *to the same place, in*
the same place (cf. eo), *there also*:
eodem conduxit (*to the same place*
[as himself]); eodem pertinere, *look*
in the same direction, tend the same
way; eodem illo pertinere . . . ut,
avored the same idea . . . that,
belonged to the same design . . .
that.

ephippiātus, -a, -um, [ephippiā-
(as if st. of verb, cf. auratus) + tus,
see ephippium], adj., *saddled, capar-*

isoned: equites (*riding on saddles,*
as a less manly form of horseman-
ship).

ephippium, -ī, [Gr. ἐφίππιον (ἐπī,
upon; ἵππος, a horse)], N., a horse-
cloth, caparison, housing.

epistula (epistola), -ae, [Gr.],
F., a letter, a note, a message (in
writing), a despatch.

Eporēdorix, -igis, [Celtic], M.:
1. A nobleman of the Hædūi. — 2.
Another, VII, 67.

epulum, -ī, plur., -ae, -ārum, [?], N.
(sing.), F. (plur.), a feast, a banquet.

eques, -itis, [equō + tis (re-
duced)], M., a horseman, a rider. —
Plur., cavalry. — Esp. (as orig. serv-
ing on horseback), a knight (one of
the moneyed class at Rome, next in
rank to the senate). — So also, a
knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding
class).

equester, -tris, -tre, [equit- +
tris], adj., of knights, of cavalry.

equitātus, -tūs, [equitā- (as st.
of equito, ride) + tus], M., cavalry,
horse (troops serving on horseback).

equus, -ī, [AK (swift) + vus], M.,
a horse.

Eratosthenēs, -is, [Gr.], M., a
Greek philosopher and mathema-
tician of Alexandria, born at Cyrene
B.C. 276. He was famous for his
investigations in geography and as-
tronomy.

ērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of erigo.

ēreptus, -a, -um, p. p. of eripio.

ergā [prob. instr. of same st. as
ergo], prep. with acc., towards (of
feeling and conduct): fides erga ali-
quem.

ergō (-ō rarely) [unc. form, perh. dat., cf. erga], adv., *therefore, then*.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus, [ex-rego, *make straight*], 3. v. a., *set up straight, raise up*. — With reflex., *get up*. — ērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *high, high and straight*.

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripiui, -reptus, [ex-rapio], 3. v. a., *snatch away, wrest* (a thing from), *deprive* (one of a thing, changing the relation in Eng.), *take from, rescue*: *se eripere ne, save one's self from doing a thing*.

errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [?], 1. v. n., *wander, go astray, err, be mistaken*.

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus, [ex-rumpo], 3. v. a. and n., *burst out, sally out, make a sally*.

ērūptiō, -ōnis, [ex-ruptio, cf. erumpo], F., *a breaking out, a sally, a sortie*.

essedā, -ae (-um, -i), [Celtic], F. (and N.), *a war chariot* (of the Gauls).

essedārius, -i, [essedō- (-a) (reduced) + arius], M., *a charioteer* (a warrior fighting from an essedum).

Esuvii, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the region of Normandy.

et, conj., *and*: et . . . et, *both . . . and*.

etiam [et iam], conj., *also, even, even now, yet*: quin etiam, *nay more*.

etsi [et si], conj., *even if, although, though*.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus, [ex-vado, *go*], 3. v. n., *escape*.

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī (-vulsī),

-vulsus, [ex-vello], 3. v. a., *pull out, pluck out*.

ēveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [ex-venio], 4. v. n., *come out, turn out, happen*.

ēventus, -tūs, [ex-+ventus, cf. conventus and evenio], M., *result, issue, fate, success*.

ēvocātus, -a, -um, p. p. of evoco.

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-voco], 1. v. a., *call out, call forth, summon, challenge* (ad pugnam), *carry away* (cupiditas longius), *invite* (omnes ad se spe praedae). — ēvocātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj. and noun, *veteran* (of soldiers who have served their time and are only called out in emergencies), *veterans* (almost equal volunteers).

ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [ex-volo], 1. v. n., *fly out, rush out*.

ex (ē) [?], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., *out of* (cf. ab, *away from*), *out*. — Less exactly, *from* (lit. and fig.), *of* (made of): *facilia ex difficillimis redegerat, had made easy instead of most difficult, as they were*. Hence, *after*. — Also, *on account of, in accordance with, by means of*. — Also, *above* (raised from). — Also (cf. ab), *in, on*: *una ex parte, on one side*; *ex itinere, on the march, starting from it*; *ex vinculis, in chains, doing something from them*; so, *ex equis, on horseback*; *ex eorum corporibus*; *ex ea civitate, from that nation, belonging there*; *ex fuga, in their flight*. — Other phrases: *ex commutatione dolere, suffer from the change*; *diem ex die, day after day*; *magna ex parte,*

in a great degree, for the most part; quaerere ex, *ask of, ask*, cf. ab; ex eo plus doloris capere (*on this account, etc.*); ex cratibus (*of, made of*); unus e filiis (*one of, etc.*); ex communi consensu, *by common consent*; ex percontatione, *by inquiry*, from one which was made; ex Hispania (*a man from*); ex eo die quintus (*from, after*); ex usu, *for the advantage*, cf. "of use"; ex planitie editus (*above, raised out of*); e regione, *opposite*; ex litteris (*in accordance with, from facts stated in, etc.*); ex tertia parte aestimare (*as a third, cf. heres ex asse*), ex contrario, *on the contrary*. — In comp., *out, completely* (cf. "out and out"), *off, up, after, from, un-*.

exāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of exigo.

exagitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-agito, freq. of ago, *drive*], I. v. a., *pursue, drive, harass, persecute*.

exāminātus, -a, -um, p. p. of examinō.

exāminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [examin- (st. of examen, *tongue of the balance*)], I. v. a., *weigh*.

exanimātus, -a, -um, p. p. of exanimō.

exanimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [exanimō-], I. v. a., *deprive of breath (life), kill*. — exanimātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *out of breath, exhausted*.

exārdescō, -ārdescere, -ārsi, no p. p., [ex-ardesco, cf. ardeo, *burn*], 3. v. n., *blaze up*. — Fig., *become enraged, become excited*.

exaudiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, [ex-audio], 4. v. a., *hear* (from a distance), *hear distinctly*.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus, [ex-cedo], 3. v. n., *go out, leave* (with abl.), *withdraw, retire*. — Absolutely, *leave the fight*.

excello, -ere, -ui, -sus, [ex-+cello], 3. v. a. and n., *raise, rise, surpass, excel*. — excelsus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *high, elevated*.

excelsus, -a, -um, p. p. of excello. exceptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-capto, cf. excipio], I. v. a., *catch up, take hold of*.

exceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of excipio.

excidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus, [ex-caedo], 3. v. a., *cut out, cut off, break down* (gates).

excipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [ex-capio], 3. v. a., *take off, take up, pick up, receive, catch* (of animals). Hence, *follow, come after, come next*: vada (*stand, of vessels*); vim fluminis (*break*); alios alii (*succeed*); hunc alii (*follow, take up the cry in shouting*).

excitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of excito.

excitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-cito, cf. exciteo, *call up*], I. v. a., *call out, rouse, stimulate (induce)*. — Also, *raise* (towers), *kindle* (fire).

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus, [ex-claudio], 3. v. a., *shut out, cut off* (from doing a thing), *prevent*.

exclūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of excludo.

excōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-cogito], I. v. a., *think out, devise*.

excruciātus, -a, -um, p. p. of excrucio.

excrucio, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-crucio, cf. crux, *cross*], I. v. a., *torture, torment*.

excubitor, -tōris, [as if **ex-†cu-**bitor, cf. **excubo**], *M.*, a *sentinel* (as lying out of the camp or tent).

excubō, -cubāre, -cubui, -cubiturus, [**ex-cubo**], *I. v. n.*, *lie outside*. — *Esp.* of camp, *stand guard, keep a night-watch, watch*.

exculcō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**excalco**], *I. v. a.*, *tread down, trample down*.

excurrō, -currere, -curri, (-cucurri), -cursurus, [**ex-curro**], *3. v. n.*, *run out, make a sally*. — See **excursio**.

excursiō, -ōnis, [**ex-†cursio**, cf. **ex-curro**], *F.*, a *sally, a sortie*.

excūsātiō, -ōnis, [**ex-†causatio**, cf. **excuso**], *F.*, an *excuse, an apology*.

excūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**ex-†causo**, cf. **causa, reason**], *I. v. a.*, *give as an excuse*. — Also (with change of relation), *excuse, ex-culpate*.

exemplum, -ī, [**ex-†templum**, *EM* (in *emo, take*) + *ius* with parasitic *p*], *N.*, (something taken out), a *sample, a copy, a precedent, an example*.

exeō, -īre, -īvi (-īi), -itus, [**ex-eo**], *irr. v. n.*, *go forth, go out, emigrate, march out, remove*.

exerceō, -ercēre, -erui, -ercitus, [**ex-arceo, drive off**], *2. v. a.*, *train, practise, exercise*.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, [**exercitā-** (st. of **exercito**) + *tio*], *F.*, *practice, exercise*.

exercitātus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of **exercito**.

exercitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**exercitō-**, cf. **exerceo**], *I. v. a.*, *train, practise*. — **exercitātus**, -a, -um, *p. p.* as *adj.*, *trained*. — *Superl.*, *very well trained*.

exercitus, -tūs, [as if **ex-arcitus**, cf. **exerceo**], *M.*, (a *training*). — *Concretely*, (a *body trained or in training*), an *army* (large or small, acting independently), a *force*.

exhauriō, -haurire, -hausi, -haustus, [**ex-haurio**], *4. v. a.*, *drain off*. — *Less exactly*, *carry off* (earth).

exigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctus, [**ex-ago**], *3. v. a.*, (lead out), *pass, spend, finish, complete*: *exacta hiema, the end of winter*; *aestas exacta erat* (was ended).

exiguē [old case-form of **exiguus**], *adv.*, *scantly, meagrely*: *exigue habere frumentum* (have a scanty supply of, etc.).

exiguitās, -tātis, [**exiguo-** + *tas*], *F.*, *scantiness, meagreness*: *temporis* (short time, want of time); *pellium* (small size); *castrorum* (narrowness, small size).

exiguus, -a, -um, [**ex-†aguus** (*AG* + *uus*), cf. **exigo**], *adj.*, (exact?), *narrow, scanty, small, meagre*.

eximius, -a, -um, [**ex-†emius**, *EM* + *ius*, cf. **eximo, take out**], *adj.*, (taken out), *exceptional, remarkable, very high* (*opinio*).

existimātiō, -ōnis, [**ex-aestimatio**, cf. **existimo**], *F.*, *estimate, opinion*.

existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**ex-aestimo, reckon**], *I. v. a.* and *n.*, *estimate, believe, think, suppose, imagine*.

exitus, -tūs, [**ex-itus**, cf. **exeo**], *M.*, (a *going out*), a *passage* (out, concretely). Hence, *an end, the last part*: *quem habere exitum* (what is the result of, etc.). — *Fig.*, a *result, a turn* (of fortune), *an issue*.

expediō, -īre, -ivī, -itus, [prob. †expedi- (st. of adj. *ex-pes*, *foot-free*)], 4. v. a. and n., *disentangle, disencumber, set free* (cf. *impedio*). — Less exactly and fig., *set in order, get ready, arrange, station* (of troops). — **expeditus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *unincumbered, easy* (liter), *not difficult, quick, active, light-armed* (of troops), *in light marching order* (of troops without baggage), *mobile* (of troops), *ready*.

expeditiō, -ōnis, [as if *ex-†pedi- + tio*, cf. *expedio*], F., (*light-armed service* ?), *a getting ready, a despatching*. Hence, *an expedition: misit in expeditionem* (*detached*).

expeditus, p. p. of *expedio*.

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [ex-pello], 3. v. a., *drive out*. — Fig., *dispel*.

experior, -perīrī, -pertus, [ex-†perior, pass. of *pario*, *get*], 4. v. dep., (*get for one's self* ?), *experience, try: fortunam* (*risk, try, bear, endure*).

expertus, -a, -um, p. p. of *experior*.

expiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *expio*.

expiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-pio], 1. v. a., (*purify*), *expiate*. — Transferred to the signs of divine wrath, *expiate: incommodum* (*wipe out, i.e. make good, retrieve*).

expleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [ex-pleo], 2. v. a., *fill out, fill up, make up* (filling the required measure).

explōrātor, -tōris, [as if *ex-†plo-rator*, cf. *exploro*], M., *a scout, a pioneer* (as a means of reconnoitring, cf. *speculator, a spy*).

explōrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *exploro*.

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-plo-ro, prob. *search* by calling or crying], 1. v. a., *investigate, explore, search, examine, reconnoitre*. — **explōrātus**, -a, -um, p. p., *assured, certain: explorata victoria, being assured of victory: habere omnia explorata, know certainly*.

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [ex-pono], 3. v. a., *place out, set out: exercitum* (*disembark, also draw up, array*). — Fig., *set forth* (in speech), *state*.

exportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-porto], 1. v. a., *carry out, carry away, export*.

exposcō, -poscere, -poposci, no p. p., [ex-posco], 3. v. a., *demand* (with eagerness).

exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [ex-premo], 3. v. a., *press out, force out: vocem* (*elicit, get out of one, extort*). — Also (cf. *edo*), *raise up: turris agger* (as the mound of circumvallation rose with the towers on it as it approached the city).

expūgnātiō, -ōnis, [ex-pugnatio, cf. *expugno*], F., *a storming* (of a city), *taking* (of a city by storm).

expūgnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *expugno*.

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-pugno, *fight*], 1. v. a., *take* (by storm), *capture* (by storming a city or boarding a ship): *stipendiariis expugnatis, the cities of their tributaries sacked*.

expulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *expello*.

exquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisi-

tus, [ex-quaero, *seek*], 3. v. a., *search out, inquire, ask for*.

exquisitus, -a, -um, p. p. of ex-
quiro.

exsequor, -sequi, -secutus, [ex-
sequor], 3. v. dep., *follow out, follow up*: ius (enforce).

exserō, -serere, -serui, -sertus, [ex-
sero], 3. v. a., (disentangle), *thrust out, uncover*.

exsertus, -a, -um, p. p. of exsero.

existō, -sistere, -stiti, -stiturus(?), [ex-sisto], 3. v. n., *stand out, rise up, come out*: malacia (ensue); motus (break out); cornu (grow out, project).

expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-
specto], 1. v. a. and n., *look out for, wait for, wait, wait to see* (si, whether, etc.), *expect, anticipate*.

exspoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-
spolio], 1. v. a., *strip off*.—Also, *strip of* (cf. despolio).—Fig., *deprive, rob* (of, abl.).

extinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of ex-
stinguo.

extinguō, -stinguere, -stinxi, -
stinctus, [ex-stinguo], 3. v. a.,
(punch out, as a fire in the woods?),
extinguish (lit. and fig.), *destroy, put
an end to*.

extō, -stāre, -stiti, -stāturus(?), [ex-sto], 1. v. n., *stand out*: ex
aqua (be above).

extructus, -a, -um, p. p. of ex-
struo.

extruō, -struere, -struxi, -structus,
[ex-struo], 3. v. a., *heap up, build
up, pile up*.

exsul, -ulis, [ex- SAL (of salio),
as st., with some lost connection of
meaning, cf. consul], C., *an exile*.

exter, -tera, -terum, [ex + terus
(reduced)], adj., *outer, outside*.—
extrēmus, -a, -um, superl., *farthest,
extreme, last*: extremi, as noun, *the
rear*; in extremis lingulis (at the
extremity of, etc., and often in this
sense); ad extremum, *till the last,
at last*; ad extremum producta casum
(to the last extremity); ab extrema
parte, *at the very end*; in extrema
spe, *almost in despair*; in extremis
suis rebus, *in the last extremity*;
extrema fames, *the last extremity of
hunger*.

exterreō, -terrere, -terruī, -territus,
[ex-terreo], 2. v. a., *frighten away,
frighten greatly, terrify*.

exterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of ex-
terreo.

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timui, no
p. p., [ex-timesco], 3. v. a. and n.,
fear greatly, fear (much), dread.

extorqueō, -torquere, -torsī, -tor-
tus, [ex-torqueo, twist], 2. v. a.,
wrench from, wrest from, force from.

extortus, -a, -um, p. p. of extor-
queo.

extrā [abl. or instr. (?) of exter,
cf. supra], adv. and prep. with acc.,
outside, out of.

extractus, -a, -um, p. p. of ex-
traho.

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractus,
[ex-traho], 3. v. a., *drag out*: mul-
tum aestatis (drag out, waste).

extrūdō, -trudere, -trūsī, -trūsus,
[ex-trudo], 3. v. a., *thrust out, push
out, shut out* (by dikes).

exuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtus, [ex- unc.
verb, cf. induo], 3. v. a., *strip off*:
armis exutis, *deprived of arms*.—

Also (cf. *despolio*), *strip, deprive, despoil*: *Romanos impedimentia*.

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, [*exuro*], 3. v. a., *burn up*.

exūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *exuo*.

F

faber, -brī, [FA (in *facio*) + *ber* (for *brus*)], (M. of *faber, skilful*), a *mechanic, an engineer* (in an army).

Fabius, -ī, [? *faba* (bean) + *ius*, cf. *Cicero*], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: 1. *Quintus Fabius Maximus* (Allobrogicus), who conquered the Arverni in B.C. 121 on the Rhone. — 2. *Gaius Fabius*, a legatus of Cæsar in Gaul. — 3. *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion.

facilis, -e, [†*facō* (cf. *beneficus*) + *lis*], adj., *easy* (to do, cf. *habilis*), *convenient, without difficulty, easy* (generally). — *facile*, N. as adv., *easily, conveniently, without difficulty*.

facinus, -oris, [†*facin*- (as if root of †*facino*, longer form of *facio*) + *us*], N., a *deed* (of any kind). — Esp. (as in English), a *deed* (of crime), a *misdeed, a crime, guilt* (referring to some particular act), *criminal conduct*. See *admitto*.

faciō, *facere*, *fēci*, *factus*, [FAC + *io*], 3. v. a. and n., *make, do, act*. — Used in a great variety of senses as in Eng.: *coniurationem* (*form*); *sementes* (*do planting*); *iter* (*march, travel, proceed*); *vim* (*use violence, force a passage, offer resistance*); *rates* (*build*); *testudinem* (*form*); *ea* (*perform*); *pacem* (as in Eng.); *finem orandi* (*put an end to, stop, etc., cease, etc.*); *phalangem* (*form*); *fidem* (*give assurance, also gain be-*

lief, gain credence); *gratum* (*do a favor*); *senatus consultum* (*make, pass*); *verba* (*speak, act as spokesman*); *potestatem* (*give an opportunity, permit, allow*); *satisfacere* (*do enough, satisfy*). — Esp. with clause of result, *cause* (to), *do* (omitting in Eng. the connective *that*, and expressing the thing done in the indicative). — So in pass., *be done, be caused, happen, result, ensue, occur, turn out, be*: *non sine causa fit, it is not without reason*; *fit ut, the result is that*; *feri posse, be possible*; *quid fit, what is going on*; *fit gratulatio, one is congratulated*. — Often with two accs. (or with adj. corresponding to second acc.), *make, render*: *vectigalia deteriora* (*make less, diminish*). — Esp.: *certiorem facere, inform*. — So with pred. gen.: *nihil reliqui, leave nothing undone, leave no further possibility*; *sui commodi naves* (*make for his convenience*). — *factum*, -ī, N. of p. p., half noun and half participle, and to be translated by either, *act, thing done, etc.*: *id factum graviter tulit, took this action much to heart*; *recte factum, good conduct*, (but notice the adverb); *si quid opus facto, if anything was necessary to be done*. — *fiō*, *fieri*, as pass. in all senses.

factiō, -ōnis, [prob. †*facti* + *o*, but treated as FAC + *tio*, cf. co-

hortatio], F., *a business, an employment*. — Also, *a party, a faction*.

factum, -i, see facio.

factus, -a, -um, p. p. of facio.

facultās, -tātis, [facul (for facili cf. simul) + tas], F., *ease, facility*. — So, *chance, power, opportunity*. quantum facultatis dari potuit, *so far as opportunity was offered*; sui conligendi (*chance to*, etc.). Hence, concretely, *means, resources, supply*: navium; facultates ad largiendum.

fāgus, -i, [prob. BHAG, *eat*, + AS (-us), from the fruit], F., *a beech, beech* (of the timber).

fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsus, [? SPHAL, *trip up*], 3. v. a. and n., *deceive*: spes aliquem (*disappoint*); fallendo, *by deceit*. — falsus, -a, -um, p. p., *deceived*. — Also (transferred to things), *false, unfounded*.

falsus, -a, -um, p. p. of fallo.

falx, falcis, [?], F., *a sickle, a pruning-hook*. — Also, *a hook* (of similar form for demolishing walls).

fāma, -ae, [FA (in for, *speak*) + MA], F., *speech, common talk, reputation*. — Concretely, *a rumor, a story*.

famēs, -is, [?], F., *hunger, starvation*: famem tolerare, *keep from starving, appease hunger*.

familia, -ae, [famulō-, *servant* (reduced), + ia], F., *a collection of attendants, a household*. — Applied to Gaul, *a clan, retainers*.

familiāris, -e, [prob. familiā- + ris, but treated as famili- + aris (cf. animalis)], adj., *of the household*: res (*estate, property*). — Esp. as noun, *a friend*.

familiāritās, -tātis, [familiar- + tas], F., *intimacy* (with, genitive).

fās [FA (in for, *speak*) + as], indecl. N., *right* (in conscience, or by divine law): non est fas (*permitted, allowed*).

fastigātē [old case-form of fastigatus], adv., *sloping*.

fastigātus, -a, -um, p. p. of fastigo.

fastigium, -i, [†fastigō- (unc. form akin to fastus, *scorn*, cf. castigo) + ium, cf. fastigo], N., *elevation, slope, descent* (of a slope).

fastigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†fastigō- (cf. fastigium)], I. v. a., *bring to a point*. — Esp. fastigātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *inclined, sloping*: leniter (*with an easy slope*).

fātum, -i, [N. of fatus, p. p. of for], N., (*what is spoken*, cf. fas), *fate, lot, destiny*.

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, [?], 2. v. n., *favor, be favorable to*.

fax, facis, [?], F., *a torch, a firebrand, fire* (lighted missiles).

fēlicitās, -tātis, [felic- (as if felici-) + tas], F., *good fortune, good luck, lucky star*: summa (*perfect success*).

fēliciter [felic- (as if felici-) + ter], adv., *happily, fortunately, luckily, successfully*.

fēmina, -ae, [FE, *nurse*, + mina, cf. alumna], F., *a woman, a female*.

femur, -oris (-inis), [?], N., *the thigh*.

fera, see ferus.

ferāx, -ācis, [reduced noun-st. (akin to fero) + ax, as if †ferā + cis (reduced)], adj., *fertile*.

ferē [?, old case-form of st. †ferō- (akin to fero)], adv., *almost, about*.—Also, *almost always, generally, usually, for the most part*.—With negatives, *hardly*.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (for tlātus), [BHAR, *bear*, and TOL (TLA) in tollo], irr. a. and n., *bear, carry, endure, tolerate, stand, withstand, carry off, win*.—Often in a loose sense, translated by various special words in Eng., *commit, offer*, etc.—With reflex. or in pass., *rush, pass, proceed, roll* (of a river).—With advs. indicating manner of receiving anything, *suffer, bear, take it, feel*: *acerbius ferre inopiam* (*suffer severely from*); *magno cum dolore ferre*, *be much pained or indignant at*; *moleste (graviter) ferre*, *be annoyed at, take hard, be indignant at*.—Special uses: *responsa* (*carry away, receive*); *auxilium* (*carry aid, assist*); *arma* (*bear arms, fight*); *condicionem* (*propose*); *signa* (*bear on the standards, march*); *ventus ferebat* (*carried the ships, blew*); *consuetudo fert* (*is*); *opinio fert* (*goes*); *ut natura montis ferebat*, *according to the outline of the mountain*.

ferrāmentum, -ī, [as if ferrā- (st. of verb from ferrum) + mentum], N., *a tool* (of iron).

ferrāria, -ae, [F. of ferrarius, cf. ferrum], F., *an iron mine*.

ferreus, -a, -um, [ferrō- + eus], adj., *of iron, iron* (made of iron).

ferrum, -ī, [?], N., *iron, steel, sword*.

fertilis, -e, [†ferti- + lis, (as if FER + tillis)], adj., *fertile, fruitful*.

fertilitās, -tātis, [fertili- + tas], F., *fertility, productiveness*.

ferus, -a, -um, [FER (*rush*) + us, cf. deer], adj., *wild, ferocious*.—Fem. as noun, *wild beast, game*.

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [†ferve- (case-form akin to ferveo) + facio], 3. v. a., *heat, heat red-hot* (iacula).

fervefactus, -a, -um, p. p. of fervefaciō.

fervō, fervēre, ferbuī (fervi), no p. p., [noun-st. akin to febris], 2. v. n., *be hot, be red-hot*.

fībula, -ae, [FIG (in figo, *fasten*) + bula], F., *a clasp, a buckle*.

fictus, -a, -um, p. p. of fingō.

fidēlis, -e, [fidē- (st. of fides) + lis], adj., *faithful*.

fidēs, -eī, [FID (*bind*) + es], F., *a promise, a pledge*: *laedere* (*break faith*); *fidem facere*, *give assurance*; *fidem praestare*, *keep faith, perform one's duty*.—Also, *good faith, fidelity*.—Transferred, *confidence, faith* (in); *fidem facere*, *gain credence*.—Esp. of promised protection, *protection, dependence, alliance*: *quorum in fide erat civitas* (*to whom . . . was subject, under whose protection*); *Caesaris fidem sequi* (*come under, surrender one's self to*); *in fidem se permittere* (*venire*), *place themselves under protection of, etc.*

fidūcia, -ae, [†fiduc- (†fidu-, *faithful*, + cus, reduced) + ia], F., *confidence, reliance*.

figūra, -ae, [†figu- (FIG, in figo, + us) + ra, F. of rus], F., *shape, form*.

filia, -ae, [F. of filius], F., *a daughter*.

filius, -i, [ʔ], M., *a son*.

figō, fingere, finxi, fictus, [FIG, cf. figura]. 3. v. a., *mould*; *voltum* (*compose*). — **Fig.**, *invent*, *contrive*. — **fictus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj. and noun, N. pl., *fictions*: *ficta respondent*, *make up answers*; *sibi* (*conjure up*).

finiō, -ire, -ivī, (-iī), -itus, [fini-], 4. v. a., *set bounds to*, *limit*, *bound*, *measure* (ending a division).

finis, -is, [ʔ], M., *a limit*, *an end*: *finem facere*, *put an end to*, *cease*; *quem ad finem*, *as far as*. — Plur., *boundaries*, *limits*, *territories*, *country*.

finitimus, -a, -um, [fini- + timus], adj., *on the borders*, *neighboring*, *adjacent*, *neighbors* (of). — Plur. as noun, *neighbors*. — Also, **finitumus**.

fiō [FU in fui], as pass. of **facio**, which see.

firmiter [firmō- + ter], adv., *firmly*, *stoutly*, *steadily*.

firmitūdō, -inis, [firmō- + tudo], F., *solidity*, *strength* (of resistance).

firmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [firmō-], 1. v. a., *make strong*, *strengthen*, *fortify*.

firmus, -a, -um, [DHAR, *hold*, + mus], adj., *strong* (for resistance), *firm*, *steady*: *minime firma*, *weakest*.

fistūca, -ae, [ʔ], F., *a pile-driver*.

Flaccus, see **Valerius**.

flagitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [as if †flagitō-, p. p. of †flago, akin to *flagro*, *blaze*], 1. v. a., *ask* (in heat?), *demand earnestly*: *Haeduos frumentum*, *grain of the Haeduans*.

flamma, -ae, [FLAG (*blaze*) + ma], F., *flame*, *fire*.

flectō, flectere, flēxi, flexus, [ʔ], 3. v. a., *bend*, *turn*.

flēō, flēre, flēvi, flētus, [ʔ], 2. v. a. and n., *weep*: *flentes*, *in tears*.

flētus, -tūs, [fle- (st. of fleo as root) + tus], M., *weeping*, *lamentation*: *magno flētu*, *with many tears*.

flō, flāre, flāvi, flātus, [ʔ], 1. v. n. and a., *blow*.

flōrēs, -entis, [pres. p. of *floreo*, *bloom*], as adj., *blooming*. — **Fig.**, *flourishing*, *prosperous*, *influential* (*juvenis*): *flōrentissimis rebus*, *in most prosperous circumstances*.

flōs, flōris, [ʔ], M., *a flower*. — **Fig.**, *the flower* (of troops).

fluctus, -tūs, [FLU (G) (in *fluo*, cf. *fluxi*) + tus], M., *a wave*.

flūmen, -inis, [FLU (in *fluo*) + men], N., *a river*.

fluō, fluere, flūxi, fluxus, (fluxūrus, fluctūrus, fluitūrus), [FLU], 3. v. n., *flow*.

fodiō, fodere, fōdi, fossus, [ʔ], 3. v. a., *dig*.

foedus, -eris, [FID (in *fides*, cf. *fidus*) + us], N., *a treaty*, *a league*, *a compact*.

fore, for *futurum esse*; see **sum**.

forem, for *essem*; see **sum**.

foris [abl. plur. of †fora], as adv., *out of doors*. — Less exactly, *outside* (of anything, as beyond the siege lines).

forma, -ae, [DHAR (in *firmus*) + ma], F., *shape*, *form*.

fors, fortis, [FER (in *fero*) + tis (reduced)], F., *chance*. — **forte**, abl. as adv., *by chance*, *perchance*, *accidentally*, *as it happened*.

forte, see **fors**.

fortis, -e, [akin to **firmus**], adj., *strong, brave, courageous*: **vir fortis**, *a man of courage*.

fortiter [**forti**- + **ter**], adv., *bravely, stoutly, undauntedly*: **fortius factum**, *any deed of prowess*.

fortitūdō, -inis, [**forti**- + **tudo**], F., *bravery, prowess*.

fortuitō [abl. of †**fortuitus**, p. p. of verb in -uo, cf. **fortuna**], adv., *by chance, accidentally, fortuitously*.

fortūna, -ae, [†**fortu**- (**FER** + **tus**, cf. **fortuito**) + **na**, F. of -**nus**], F., *fortune, chance, fate, lot* (one's *fortune*), *chances* (*belli*), *success* (good or bad). — Plur., *fortunes, resources, chances* (*means*) *of success*. — Esp., *good fortune, success*: **fortunam temptare**, *try one's chances*.

fortūnātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **fortuno**], as adj., *fortunate, prosperous*.

forum, -ī, [akin to †**fora**], N., (*an open place*), *a market-place*.

fossa, -ae, [F. of **fossus**, p. p. of **fodio**, *dig*], F., *a ditch, a trench*.

fovea, -ae, [?, perh. akin to **foveo**, as a pit for storage], F., *a pitfall*.

frāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **frango**.

frangō, **frangere**, **frēgī**, **frāctus**, [**FRAG**], 3. v. a., *break* (as a solid body). — Esp. of ships, *wreck*. — Fig., *break down, crush*.

frāter, -tris, [prob. **FER** + **ter**, cf. **pater**], M., *a brother*.

frāternus, -a, -um, [**frater** + **nus**], adj., *of a brother, fraternal*: **nomen** (*the name of brothers*).

fraus, **fraudis**, [?, akin to **frustra**], F., *loss*. Hence, *treachery, deceit*.

fremitus, -tūs, [**fremi**- (st. of

fremo, *roar*) + **tus**], M., *a murmur, a confused noise, a roar*.

frequēns, -entis, [orig. pres. p. akin to **farcio**, *stuff*], adj., *crowded, numerous, in great numbers*.

frētus, -a, -um, [root akin to **firmus** + **tus**], adj., *relying on, confident in* (on account of).

frigidus, -a, -um, [†**frigō**- (whence **frigeo**, *be cold*) + **dus**], adj., *cold*.

frigus, -oris, [**FRIG** (in **frigeo**, etc.) + **us**], N., *cold*. — Plur., *cold* (cold "snaps," frosts).

frōns, **frontis**, [?, akin to **brow**], F., *brow, face*: **a media fronte**, *from the middle of the forehead*. — Less exactly, *front, brow*: **a fronte**, *in front*.

fructuōsus, -a, -um, [**fructu**- + **osus**], adj., *fruitful*.

frūctus, -tūs, [**FRU**(G) + **tus**], M., *enjoyment*. Hence, (*what one enjoys*), *fruit, crops, income, profit, interest* (from money): **victoriae** (*advantages of victory*).

frūmentārius, -a, -um, [**frumentō**- (reduced) + **arius**], adj., *of grain*: **loca** (*fruitful in grain*); **res** (*grain supply, provisions*); **inopia** (*scarcity of grain*).

frūmentātiō, -ōnis, [**frumentā**- (st. of **frumentor**) + **tio**], F., *foraging, gathering grain, harvesting, foraging expedition*.

frūmentor, -tārī, -tātus, [**frumentō**-], 1. v. dep., *forage, gather grain, get supplies*.

frūmentum, -ī, [**FRU** (in **fruo**) + **mentum**], N., *grain* (cf. **fructus**). — Plur., *standing grain, crops*.

fruo, **frui**, **frūctus**, [**FRU**, cf. **fructus**], 3. v. dep., *enjoy*.

frūstrā [abl. or instr. of st. akin to *fraus, loss*], adv., to no purpose, without effect.

[**frūx**], *frūgis*, [FRU(G) in *fruor* as st.], F., *fruit*. — Plur., *crops*.

Fūfius (-sius), -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. See *Cita*.

fuga, -ae, [FUG + a], F., *flight*: *fit fuga*, a rout ensues; *fugae mandare se*, take to flight; in *fugam dare*, put to flight; *fugam petere*, seek safety by flight, escape; *ex fuga evaserat*, had escaped from the flying crowd.

fugātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *fugo*.

fugīō, *fugere*, *fūgī*, *fugitūrus*, [FUG (in *fuga*)], 3. v. a. and n., fly, fly from, run away. — Fig., *shun, avoid*.

fugitīvus, -a, -um, [*fugī-* (st. of *fugio*?) + *tīvus*], adj., runaway. — Plur. as noun, runaway slaves.

fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [*fuga-*], I. v. a., put to flight, rout.

fūmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [*fumō-*], I. v. n., smoke.

fūmus, -ī, [FU (DHV) + *mus*, akin

to *dust*], M., smoke. — Plur., *smoke* (in several columns).

funda, -ae, [akin to *fundo*], F., a sling.

funditor, -tōris, [*funda* (as if verb-st.) + *tor*], M., a slinger.

fundō, *fundere*, *fūdī*, *fūsus*, [FUD], 3. v. a., pour. — Less exactly, scatter. — Esp. of battle, put to rout, rout.

fūnebris, -e, [cf. *funus*], adj., of a funeral. — N. plur. as noun, funeral rites.

fungor, *fungī*, *fūctus*, [?], 3. v. dep., perform, discharge (abl.).

fūnis, -is, [?], M., a rope.

fūnus, -eris, [unc. root + *us*], N., (murder?), death, a funeral.

furor, -ōris, [FUR (cf. *furo*, rage) + *or*], M., madness, frenzy, fury.

fūrtum, -ī, [N. p. p. of lost verb akin to *fur*, thief], N., theft, a theft.

fūsilis, -e, [*fuso-* (p. p. of *fundo*) + *lis*, cf. *flexilis*], adj., (capable of being poured), molten (of metals), vitrified, red-hot.

futūrus, see *sum*.

G

Gabalī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic people, dependants of the Arverni.

Gabīnius, -ī, [*Gabinō-* (cf. *Gabii*) + *ius*], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Aulus Gabinius*, consul with *Lucius Piso* in B.C. 58.

gaesum, -ī, [Celtic], N., a javelin.

Gāius (*Cāius*, C.), -ī, [?], M., a Roman prænomen.

Galba, -ae, [Celtic, meaning *fat*], M., a Gallic and Roman family name.

— Esp.: 1. *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, a legatus of Cæsar. — 2. A king of the Suessiones.

galea, -ae, [?], akin to *galerus*, leather cap], F., a helmet (of leather, worn by cavalry).

Gallia, -æ, [F. of adj. in -ius, Gallo- + *ius*], F., Gaul, including all the country bounded by the Po, the Alps, the Rhine, the ocean, the Pyrenees, and the Mediterranean, thus occupying all northern Italy, France, and Belgium.

Gallicus, -a, -um, [Gallō- + cus], adj., *of the Gauls, Gallic*.

gallina, -ae, [gallo- (*cock*) + ina], F., *a hen*.

Gallus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., *of Gaul, Gallic*. — As noun, *a Gaul, the Gauls*. — Also, as a Roman family name. See **Trebius**.

Garumna, -ae, [Celtic], c., a river of S. W. Gaul, now the *Garonne*.

Garumni, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Gallic tribe in the Pyrenees, on the head waters of the Garonne.

Gatēs, -ium, [Celtic], m. pl., a Gallic people of Aquitania.

gaudeō, gaudere, gāvisus, [†ga-vidō-, cf. **avidus**], 2. v. n., *be delighted, rejoice*.

gāvisus, -a, -um, p. p. (neut. pass.) of **gaudeo**.

Geidumni, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Belgian tribe, dependants of the Nervii.

Genāva, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city of the Allobroges, at the outlet of Lake Lemman, now *Geneva*.

gener, -erī, [?], M., *a son-in-law*.

generātīm [as if acc. of †**generatis** (**generā**- + **tis**)], adv., *by tribes*.

gēns, gentis, [GEN, *beget*, + **tis** (reduced)], F., *a family, a tribe, a clan, a people*.

genus, -eris, [GEN, *beget*, + **us**], N., *a generation, a race, a family (stock), a nation, a tribe*. — Less exactly, *a kind, a sort, a class*. — Also, abstractly, *kind, character, nature, method (pugnae)*: **genus hominum**, *the character of the inhabitants*.

Gergovia, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city in the lands of the Arverni.

Germānia, -ae, [F. of adj. in -**ius**, cf. **Gallia**], F., *Germany*, the whole country between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea.

Germānicus, -a, -um, [Germanō- + **cus**], adj., *of the Germans, German, Germanic*.

Germānus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *German* (of the country of Germany or its people. The name of the people is the original, but as usual is an adj.). — Plur. as noun, *the Germans*.

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus, [GES, of unc. kin], 3. v. a., *carry* (indicating a more lively action than **fero**), *carry on, manage, wage (war), hold* (a magistracy), *do* (any business). — Pass., *be done, go on* (of operations): **rem bene** (*male*) (*operate successfully* or otherwise, *carry on operations, succeed well or ill*); **negoti bene gerendi**, *of successful action*; **his rebus gestis**, *after these operations*; **res gestae**, *exploits, operations, a campaign*.

gestus, -a, -um, p. p. of **gero**.

gladius, -i, [?], M., *a sword*.

glāns, glandis, [?], F., *a nut, an acorn*. — Also, *a ball* (for shooting).

glēba (**glae**-), -ae, [?], F., *a clod* (of earth), *a lump*.

glōria, -ae, [akin to **inclutus**, *renowned*], F., *fame, glory*.

glōrior, -āri, -ātus, [gloriā-], 1. v. dep., *glory in, boast of* (abl.).

Gnaeus (**Cnēius**, **Cn.**), -i, [akin to **gnavus**, *active*], M., a Roman praenomen.

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., one of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix.

Gorgobina, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city in the territory of the Hædui, founded by the Boii emigrating from Cisalpine Gaul.

Graecus, -a, -um, [Gr.], adj., of the Greeks, Greek. — As noun, a Greek, the Greeks. Cf. Germanus for relation of noun and adj.

Gräiocelī, -ōrum, [?], M. plur., a people of the Alps, near Mt. Cenis.

grandis, -e, [?], adj., large, of great size.

grātia, -ae, [gratō- (reduced) + ia], F., "gratefulness" (in both Eng. senses of *grateful*), *gratitude* (that one has from others or towards others), *good-will*, *favor*. Hence, *influence*, *friendship*, *source of influence*, *ground of friendship*. — Esp.: *gratias agere*, express gratitude, render thanks, thank; *gratias habere*, feel gratitude, be grateful; *gratias [gratiam] referre*, make a grateful return, pay off an obligation, requite; *gratiam inire*, secure the gratitude of any one, conciliate. —

With gen., for the sake of, on account of, for, (for the purpose of): *sui purgandi gratia*, to excuse one's self.

grātulātiō, -ōnis, [gratulā- + tio, cf. *frumentatio*], F., a congratulation (of others or one's self), *rejoicing*: *fit gratulatio*, there is great rejoicing.

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus, [†gratulō-

(gratō + lus)], I. v. dep., *congratulate*.

grātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of lost verb], adj., *pleasing*, *grateful*: *gratum facere*, do a favor.

gravis, -e, [for †garvis, †garus], adj., *heavy*. — Fig., *serious*, *severe*, *hard*: *gravioris aetatis*, of more advanced years; *si gravior quid acciderit*, if anything serious should occur; *caerimonia* (*solemn*, *binding*); *ne quid gravior statueret*, that he would not pass any very severe judgment.

gravitās, -tātis, [gravi- + tas], F., *weight*. — Fig., *importance*, *power*.

graviter [gravi- + ter], adv., *heavily*, *with great weight*, *with force*. — Fig., *severely*, *seriously*: *graviter ferre*, take to heart, suffer from; *premere* (*press hard*); *multo gravior exarsit* (*more violently*).

gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [gravi- (as if gravā-)], I. v. a., *make heavy* (cf. *levo*). — Pass. as dep., (*make heavy for one's self*), *be reluctant*, *be unwilling*, *object*.

Grudīī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Belgian people, dependants of the Nervii.

gubernātor, -tōris, [gubernā-, *steer*, + tor], M., a *pilot*, a *helmsman*.

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†gustō- (st. akin to *gustus*, Eng. *choose*)], I. v. a., *taste*, *eat*.

H

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, [?], 2. v. a. and n., *have*, *hold*, *keep*, *occupy*, *possess*: *sedes*; *equitatum*

circum se; *aditum* (*have in itself*, and so *offer*); *castra* (*occupy*); *se habere*, *be*; *quantum in se habet* (*as*

there is in, etc.); *secum habere* or *apud se*, *have with him*, also *detain*; *censum* and the like (*hold, conduct*); *contentiones* (*carry on*); *orationem* (*deliver*). — Esp. with *p. p.* as a sort of continued perfect (whence the perf. of modern languages), *have, hold, keep*: *redempta habere*, *buy up and hold*; *civitates obstrictas* (*keep under obligation*); *equitatum coactum* (*get and keep*). — Also, *treat*: *pro amico*. Hence, *consider* (cf. *hold*): *pro explorato* (*consider certain*). — Esp.: *rationem habere*, *keep an account, take an account of, have regard for, consider, regard, act in view of*: *satis habere*, *be satisfied, be content*; *habere quemadmodum oppida defenderent* (*have any means of, etc.*).

Haeduus (Aed-), -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., *of the Hædui*, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône. — As noun, *a Hæduan, the Hædui*.

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [freq. of *haereo*, *stick*, cf. *dictito*], I. v. n., *get caught, stick, struggle* (*caught in a marsh*).

hāmus, -ī, [?], M., *a hook*.

harpagō, -ōnis, [Gr. *ἀρπάγη* (Latinized) + *o*], M., *a hook* (esp. for walls, like a fire-hook), *a grappling-iron*.

Harūdes, -um, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe originally from Jutland, remaining from the great expedition of the Cimbri.

haud [?], adv., *not* (negating single words), *not at all*.

Helvēticus, -a, -um, [Helvetiō-

(reduced) + *cus*], adj., *Helvetian* (see *Helvetius*).

Helvētius, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., *of the Helvetii* (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine). Cf. *Germanus* for the form. — Plur. as noun, *the Helvetii*.

Helvī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Roman province.

Hercynius (Orcyn-), -a, -um, [Teutonic], adj. (only with *silva*), *Hercynian* (the great forest embracing all the mountain country of Germany).

hērēditās, -tātis, [hered-, *heir* (as if *heredi*-), + *tas*], F., *inheritance, an inheritance*.

Hibernia, -ae, [?], F., *Ireland*.

hibernus, -a, -um, [hiem- + *ernus*, cf. *nocturnus*], adj., *of winter, winter* (as adj.). — Neut. pl. (sc. *castra*), *winter quarters, a winter encampment*.

hic [†hi- (loc. of hi-c) *ce*], adv., *here in this place, there* (of a place just mentioned).

hīc, *haec*, *hōc*, *hūius*, [hi- (pron. st.) + *ce*, cf. *ecce*, *cetera*], dem. pron., (pointing to something near the speaker in *place, time, or interest*), *this, these, he, they, this man* (*woman or thing*). — Referring to things before mentioned (but with more emphasis than *is*): *hic pagus unus*, *this one canton*; *ex his qui arma ferre possent* (*of these* [before enumerated], *those who*, etc.). — Less commonly, of what follows: *his mandatis* (*the following, as follows, these*). — Esp.: *haec memoria*, *the present generation*: *tempus* (*the*

present) ; *his paucis diebus, within a few days.* — *hoc, neut. abl., used adverbially, in this respect, on this account, by so much.* — Often where a more definite word is used in Eng. : *his ita respondit (to this embassy).* — Often *hic . . . ille, the one . . . the other, this (near by) . . . the other (farther off), this last (nearer on the page) . . . the other, the latter . . . the former.*

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**hiem-** (as if **hiema-**)], **i. v. n., winter, pass the winter.**

hiems (-mpe), -emis, [?], F., winter.

hinc [†**him** (loc. of †**hi**) + **cē**], **adv., from here, hence.**

Hispania, -ae, [**Hispanō** + **ia** (F. of **-ius**)], **F. (of adj., cf. Gallia), Spain.**

Hispanus, -a, -um, [?], adj., Spanish.

homō, -inis, [prob. **humō** (*the earth*) + **o**], **C., a human being (cf. vir, a man, as a male), a man (including women).**

honestus, -a, -um, [**honor-** (orig. st. of honor) + **tus**], **adj., esteemed, respected, worthy, honorable.**

honor (-ōs), -ōris, [unc. root + **or**], **M., honor, respect: honoris causā, out of respect.** — Also, *honorable position.*

honōrificus, -a, -um, [**honor** (as if **honor**) + **†ficus** (cf. **beneficus**)], **adj., honorable, (giving honor).**

hōra, -ae, [Gr.], **F., an hour (of the day).** — The Romans divided their day into twelve hours from sunrise to sunset, which were not of equal length at all times of the

year, but were always so many twelfths of the solar day.

horreō, horrēre, horruī, no p. p., [**HORR,** (orig. **HORS, bristle**) + **us**, prob. used orig. of the sensation called "goose pimples," where the hair seems to stand on end], **2. v. n. and a., bristle (see above). Hence, shudder at, dread.**

horribilis, -e, [**horrō** (as if st. of **horreo**) + **bilis**], **adj., to be shuddered at, frightful, dreadful.**

horridus, -a, -um, [†**horrō** (cf. **horreo**) + **du-**], **adj., bristling, horrible, dreadful, frightful.**

hortātus, -a, -um, p. p. of hortor.

hortor, -tārī, -tātus, [for **horitor**, freq. of old **thorior, urge**], **i. v. dep., encourage, urge on, urge, address.** — Less exactly, of things, *urge, move, prompt.*

hospes, -itis, [prob. **GHAS-PATIS**, orig. *host (lord of eating)*], **M., a host.** — Also, *a guest, a stranger.* Hence, *a guest-friend* (in the peculiar relation of **hospitium**, which was a kind of hereditary friendship between persons of different countries, not personal, but of a family or state), *a friend* (of the kind above mentioned): **familiaris et hospes, a personal and family friend.**

hospitium, -i, [**hospit-** + **ium**], **N., the relation of host (or guest).** Hence (cf. **hospes**), *friendship: hospitium atque amicitia, alliance and friendship, family and personal friendship; hospitio Ariovisti utabatur, was in friendly relations with Ariovistus.*

hostis, -is, [**GHAS** (cf. **hospes**) +

tia], c., (orig. *guest*), a *stranger*, an *enemy* (of the state), the *enemy* (collectively, either sing. or plur.).

hūc [ho- (dat. of hi-, see hīc) + cē], adv., *hither*, *here* (in sense of *hither*), *to this* (place, etc., cf. eo): huc accedebant, *to these* [ships before mentioned], *were added* (see accedo); accedebat huc, *to this was added the fact that*, etc.

hūiusmodī, see hic and modus.

hūmānitās, -tātis, [humanō- + tas], f., *humanity* (as opp. to bru-

tishness), *civilization*, *cultivation*, *refinement*, *courtesy*.

hūmānus, -a, -um, [st. akin to homo, man, + nus], adj., *civilized*, *cultivated*, *refined*.

humilis, -e, [humō- (ground) + lis], adj., *low*, *shallow* (cf. altus, deep). — Fig., *low*, *humble*, *poor*: Ubios humiliiores redegerunt (*humiliated, rendered less important*).

humilitās, -tātis, [humili- + tas], f., *lowness*, *shallowness*. — Fig., *humble position*, *insignificance*.

I

I., for unus, etc., *one*.

iaceō, -cēre, -cuī, -citūrus, [?, cf. iaculum], 2. v. n., *lie*, *lie dead*: iacentes, *the slain*.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, [?, cf. iaceo], 3. v. a., *throw*, *hurl*, *cast*: aggerem (*throw up*); ancoras (*cast, drop*).

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iactō-], 1. v. a., (freq. of iacio), *toss*, *toss about*, *bandy about* (of talk), *discuss*.

iactūra, -ae, [iactu- + ra (f. of rus)], f., *a throwing away*, *a loss*, *a sacrifice* (of men in war), *an offer* (of reward).

iactus, -a, -um, p. p. of iacio.

iaculum, -ī, [†iacō- (akin to iacio, throw)], n., *a javelin*.

iam [acc. of pron. st.], adv., *now* (of progressive time, cf. nunc, emphatic and instantaneous), *by this time*, *at last*, *already*, *at length*; iam non, *no longer*; iam ante, *some time before*, *even before*; iam utebatur, *was getting to use*; iam reverti (*was*

at last, etc.; *was beginning to*, etc.); nihil iam, *no longer*; also with no idea of time, *even*, *in fact*.

ibi [old case-form of is (cf. tibi)], adv., *there* (in a place before mentioned).

Iccius, -ī, [?], m., a nobleman of the Remi.

ictus, -tūs, [IC (in ico, strike) + tus], m., *a stroke*: ictus scorpionis (*a shot of*, etc.).

Id., for Idus.

idcirco [id (n. acc. of is) -circo (case-form of same st. as circa, circum)], adv., *for that reason*, *for this reason*, *therefore*.

idem, eadem, idem, [is dem, cf. dum], dem. adj. pron., *the same*. — Often as noun, *the same thing* (things), *the same*: eadem quaerit, *makes the same inquiries*; idem castellum, *this very fort*.

identidem [cf. idem and tandem], adv., *repeatedly*, *again and again*.

idōneus, -a, -um, [?, akin to

idem ?], adj., *fit, suitable, adapted*: *homo* (*capable*); *tempestas* (*favorable*).

Idūs, -uum, [?, perh. akin to *aestus*], F. plur., *the Ides* (a day of the lunar month falling at the full moon, conventionally on the 15th of March, May, July, October, and the 13th of the other months, and used by the Romans to reckon dates).

ignis, -is, [?, same word as Sk. *agnis*, *the god of fire*], M., *fire*: *igni necari*, *to be burned to death*. — Plur., *camp-fires*.

ignōbilis, -e, [in- (g) *nōbilis*], adj., *not famous, obscure*.

ignōminia, -ae, [†*ignomin-* (in- (g) *nomen*, *name*) + *ia*], F., *want of fame, disgrace*. — Almost concretely, *disgraceful defeat*.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†*ignarō*, *ignorant*], I. v. a., *fail to notice, not know, be ignorant of*. — Pass., *be unobserved*: *non ignorans*; *not unaware of*.

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvi, -nōtus, [in- (unc. which meaning) (g) *nosco*, *know*], 3. v. n. and a., *overlook, pardon*.

ignōtus, -a, -um, [in- (g) *notus*], adj., *unknown, strange*.

ille, -a, -ud, [old *ollus*, fr. pron. root + *lus* (?)], dem. pron., *that* (of something remote, cf. *hic*). — Often as noun (opposed to some other emphatic word), *he, she, it, they*: *hic . . . ille*, *this . . . that, the other, the latter . . . the former*.

illic [loc. of *ille* + *ce*, cf. *hic*], adv., *there* (more remote, opposed to *hic*, near by), *in that place* (*na-*

tion, country, etc.): *illic . . . quo*, *in the place to which*, (but with more emphasis than *ibi . . . quo*).

illō [dat. of *ille*, cf. *eo*], adv., *thither, there* (in sense of *thither*), *that way*.

Illyricum, -i, [?, N. of adj.], M., *Illyria* (the country east of Venetia and the Adriatic, and west of Macedonia and Thrace. It belonged to Caesar's province along with the two Gauls).

imbēcillitās, -tātis, [†*imbecillō* (*weak*), + *tas*], F., *weakness, feebleness*: *animi* (*feebleness of purpose, pusillanimity*).

imber, *imbris*, [?], M., *a rain-storm, a rain*.

imitor, -tārī, -tātus, [†*imitō*, p. p. of *timō* (cf. *imago*)], I. v. dep., *imitate, copy*.

immānis, -e, [in-†*manus*, *good*?], adj., (“uncanny”?), *monstrous, huge, enormous*.

immineō, -minēre, no perf., no p. p., [in-*mineo*], 2. v. n., *overhang, project*. — Fig., *threaten*.

immissus, p. p. of *immitto*.

immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [in-*mitto*], 3. v. a., *let in, let down* (into), *insert, throw* (upon), *send against*.

immolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†*timola-* (in-*mola*, *meal*)], I. v. a., (*sprinkle with the sacred meal*), *sacrifice*.

immortālis, -e, [in-*mortalis*], adj., *immortal*.

immūnis, -e, [in-†*munis*, cf. *communis* and *munia*], adj., *free from tribute*.

immunitās, -tātis, [immuni- + tas], F., *freedom from public burdens*.

imparātus, -a, -um, [in-paratus], adj., *unprepared, not ready*.

impedimentum, -ī, [impedi- + mentum], N., *a hindrance*: esse impedimento, *to hinder*. — Esp. in plur., *baggage, a baggage train* (including the beasts of burden), *pack-horses*.

impediō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, [†imped- (in-pes, *foot*, as if impedi-)], 4. v. a., *entangle, hamper, interfere with*. — Fig., *hinder, embarrass, impede*: in iure (*hinder in exercise of*). — **impeditus**, -a, -um, p. p., *hampered, entangled, occupied, difficult* (navigatio), *impassable* (loca): esse victoribus nihil impeditum (*there is no obstacle in the way of, etc.*); prospectus (*interrupted*).

impeditus, p. p. of **impedio**.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [in-pello], 3. v. a., *drive on*. — Fig., *instigate, incite, impel*.

impendeō, -ēre, [in-pendeo, *hang*], 2. v. n., *overhang*.

impēsus, -a, -um, [p. p. of impendo, *expend*], adj., *expensive, very high* (of price).

imperātor, -tōris, [imperā- + tor], M., *commander* (in chief), *general*.

imperātum, -ī, [N. p. p. of impero], N., *an order, a command*: ad imperatum, *at one's command*.

imperātus, -a, -um, p. p. of impero.

imperfectus, -a, -um, [in-perfectus], adj., *unfinished*: re imperfecta, *without accomplishing one's purpose, unsuccessful*.

imperītus, -a, -um, [in-peritus, *skilled*], adj., *unacquainted with, ignorant, unversed in*.

imperium, -ī, [†imperō- (whence impero, cf. pario, *get*) + ium], N., *command, supreme authority, control, supremacy, supreme power, power* (military), *rule, sway* (both sing. and plur.). — Concrete, *an order, a command*. — Esp.: novis imperiis studere (*new forms of government*); nullo certo imperio (*command of any particular person*); imperi aut potestatis, *military or civil authority*.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†imperō- (in-tparus, cf. pario, *get*)], 1. v. a. and n., *demand* (*make requisition for*, prob. orig. meaning), *require* (in same sense). Hence, *order* (in military sense), *rule, command, give orders*: illo imperante, *under his command*.

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in-patro, *bring to pass*], 1. v. a., *accomplish* (anything by a request), *succeed in* (obtaining), *obtain* (a request): impetro a, *prevail upon, persuade*; ab iis impetrari ut, *they be persuaded to*; ea re impetrata, *this being granted*; si non impetraret, *if his request was not complied with*; impetro ut, etc., *obtain a request to, be allowed to, etc., succeed in having*; impetrari posse, *could be granted*.

impetus, -tūs, [in-tpetus (cf. peto, *aim at*)], M., *a rush, an attack, an onset, a charge, an assault, violence, fury*: facere (*inroad, charge, invasion*); is impetus, *such fury, etc.*; impetus gladiatorum exceperunt, *re-*

ceived the charge of the enemy with drawn swords.

impius, -a, -um, [in-pius], adj., *impious* (offending divine law).

implicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **implico**.

implico, -āre, -āvi (-uī), -ātus (-itus), [in-plico, *fold*], I. v. a., *entangle, interweave, entwine*.

implōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in-ploro, *cry out*], I. v. a., *implore, beseech*.

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [in-pono], 3. v. a., *place upon, mount* (men on horses), *place, impose* (fig.).

importātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **importo**.

importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in-porto, *carry*], I. v. a., *import*.

impositus, -a, -um, p. p. of **impono**.

imprimis [in primis], adv., *among the first, especially, particularly* (more than anything else).

improbus, -a, -um, [in-probus, *good*], adj., *bad, wicked, unprincipled*.

imprōvisus, -a, -um, [in-provisus], adj., *unforeseen: improvised* (de improviso), *on a sudden, unexpectedly, unawares*.

imprūdēns, -entis, [in-prudens, *foreseeing*], adj., *not expecting, incautious, unsuspecting, off one's guard, unguarded, not being aware*.

imprudentia, -ae, [imprudent- + ia], f., *ignorance, want of consideration, want of forethought*.

impūbēs, -eris (-is), [in-pubes], adj., *beardless, immature*. Hence, *chaste, unmarried*.

impūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in-pugno, *fight*], I. v. a. and n., *attack, invade, charge, fight* (in an offensive warfare).

impulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **impello**.

impulsus, -sūs, [in-pulsus, cf. **impello**, *drive on*], m., *impulse*. — Fig., *instigation*.

impūne [N. of **impunis** (in-poena, *punishment*, weakened and decl. as adj.)], adv., *with impunity*.

impūnitās, -tātis, [impuni- + tas], f., *freedom from punishment, impunity*.

īmus, -a, -um, superl. of **inferus**.

1. in- [cf. Eng. *un-*], neg. particle, only in composition.

2. in [?, cf. Eng. *on*; cf. also *inde*], prep. a. With acc., of motion, having its terminus within or on (cf. **ad**, with terminus at or near), *into, upon, within, to, against, among*: in volgus elatum est (*spread abroad among*). — Of time, *for, to, till*. — Fig., without actual motion, but only direction, *towards, against, upon*: in eos exempla edere (*visit upon*); in se voluntas (*good-will towards*). — Often where Eng. has a different conception, *in, on*: abdere in silvas, *hide in the woods*; in civitatibus conlocasse (*had married in, etc.*); in utram partem fluat (*in which direction, etc.*); in conspectum venire (*in sight*). — In adverbial expressions where no motion appears, *in, according to, with, to*: mirum in modum (cf. quem ad modum); in eam sententiam, *to this purport*; in speciem, *with the appearance*; in

altitudinem, *in height*, cf. *to the height of*. — Esp.: in Caesarem incidit, *happened to meet Caesar*; in perpetuum, *for ever*; in Morinos (*into the country of*, etc.); in catenas conicere, *throw into prison*; in fucam conicere, *put to flight*.

b. With abl., of rest (lit. and fig.), *in, on, among, within*: in tanta propinquitate (*under circumstances of, in a case of*); in tanto imperio P. R., *when the R. people had such dominion*. — Often, *in the case of, in respect to*: in eo, *in his case, in regard to him*. — Esp.: in Meldis (*in the country of*); in ancoris, *at anchor*; in eo manere, *abide by*, etc.; in praesentia, *for the present*; in potestate, *under the power*; in opere esse, *to be engaged in the work*; in illo vestigio temporis positum (*depending on, etc.*); in eo constare (*depend upon, etc.*). — In comp. as adv., *in, upon, towards*, and the like.

inānis, -e, [?], adj., *empty*. — Fig., *empty, vain, idle, mere, bare*.

incautē [old case-form of incautus], adv., *incautiously, carelessly*.

incautus, -a, -um, [in-cautus, p. p. of caveo], adj., *incautious, off one's guard*.

incendium, -i, [in-†candium, cf. incendio], N., *a burning, a fire*: incendia aedificiorum, *the burning of buildings*, each one being conceived as a separate burning, as is usual in Latin.

incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēsus, [in-†cando, cf. candeo, glow], 3. v. a., *set fire to, burn*. — Fig., *rouse, excite, fire*.

incēsus, -a, -um, p. p. of incendio.

inceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of incipio.

incertus, -a, -um, [in-certus], adj., *uncertain, dubious, untrustworthy, (rumores): itinera (obscure, blind); ordinibus (in disorder)*.

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus, [in-cado], 3. v. n., *fall upon*. — Less exactly and fig., *fall in with, meet, occur, happen*.

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus, [in-caedo], 3. v. a., *cut into, half cut down (trees)*.

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [in-capio, take], 3. v. a. and n., *begin, undertake*.

incīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of incidō.

incitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of incito.

incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in-cito], 1. v. a., *set in motion* (in some particular direction) (lit. and fig.), *urge on, drive, impel, excite, rouse*. — incitātus, -a, -um, p. p., *excited to anger, angered, spurred on*: incitato equo, *at full gallop*; incitato cursu, *at full speed*. — Esp.: se aestus incitare (*rush in*).

incōgnitus, -a, -um, [in-cognitus], adj., *unknown*.

incolō, -colere, -colui, no p. p., [in-colo], 3. v. a. and n., *inhabit, live, dwell*: incolendi causa, *for a permanent abode*.

incolumis, -e, [?], adj., *unharmful, unhurt, preserved, safe, safe and sound, uninjured*.

incommodē [old case-form of incommodus], adv., *inconveniently, unfortunately, badly, ill*.

incommodus, -a, -um, [in-commodus], adj., *inconvenient, unfortunate*.

— Esp., *incommodum*, N. as noun, *disadvantage, misfortune*, euphemism for *defeat, loss, disaster, harm*.

incrēdibilis, -e, [in-credibilis], adj., *incredible, marvellous, extraordinary*.

increpitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [increpitō- (cf. increpo)], I. v. a., *upbraid, taunt, revile*.

incumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitūrus, [in-cumbo], 3. v. n., *lie upon*. — Esp., fig., *bend to, exert one's self: animo et opibus in* (*bend one's mind and energies to*).

incursiō, -ōnis, [in-†cursio, cf. incurro, *rush upon*], F., *an inroad, an attack, an invasion, a raid*.

incursus, -sūs, [in-cursus, cf. incurro, *rush upon*], M., *an inroad, an attack*.

incūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in-†causo, cf. causa, *cause*], I. v. a., *upbraid, rebuke, chide*.

inde [†im (loc. of is, cf. interim, hinc) -de (form akin to -dem, dum, cf. indu, old form of in)], adv., *from there, thence, from the place (which, etc.), after that, then*.

indiciūm, -ī, [indic- + ium], N., *information: per indicium, through an informer*.

indīcō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus, [indico, *say*], 3. v. a., *order, proclaim, appoint*.

1. **indictus**, -a, -um, p. p. of indico.

2. **indictus**, -a, -um, [I. in-dictus], adj., *unpleaded* (causa, cf. dico), *untried, unheard*.

indignē [old case-form of indignus], adv., *unworthily, shamefully*

(*unworthily of one's self or of the circumstances*).

indīgnitās, -tātis, [indigno- + tas], F., *unworthiness, disgrace* (cf. indigne), *outrage, an indignity*.

indīgnor, -ārī, -ātus, [indignō-], I. v. dep., *be indignant* (deem unworthy of one's self).

indīgnus, -a, -um, [in-dignus], adj., *unworthy*.

indīligēns, -entis, [in-diligens], adj., *negligent, careless, heedless*.

indīligenter [in-diligenter, cf. indiligens], adv., *carelessly, negligently*.

indīligentia, -ae, [indiligent- + ia], F., *carelessness, want of care, want of energy* (application).

indūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, [in-duco], 3. v. a., *draw on*. Hence, *cover: acuta pellibus*. — Also, *lead on*. Hence, *induce, instigate, impel*.

inductus, -a, -um, p. p. of induco.

indulgentia, -ae, [indulgent- (pres. p. of indulgeo) + ia], F., *indulgence, favor, clemency*.

indulgeō, -duigēre, -dulsi, -dultus, [?, perh. st. compounded of in-dulcis, *pleasant towards*], 2. v. n., *favor, treat with indulgence*.

induō, -duere, -dui, -dūtus, [?, cf. exuo], 3. v. a., *put on*. Hence, fig. with reflex., *pierce, impale* (one's self): *se vallis; se stimulus* (*be pierced by*).

industriē [old case-form of industrius, *active*], adv., *actively, promptly, with energy*.

indūtiāe (indūc-), -ārum, [?], F. plur., *a truce, an armistice*.

Indūtiomārus, -ī, [Celtic], M., *a chief of the Treveri*.

inēō, -īre, -īvi (-ī), -itus, [in-eō], irr. v. a., *enter upon, go into*. — Fig., *adopt, make, begin, gain, secure*. — Esp.: *inita aestate, at the beginning of summer*; *inire rationem, take an account*; *inire consilium, form a plan*; *inire numerum, enumerate*.

inermis, -e (-us, etc.), [in-arma], adj., *unarmed, defenceless*.

iners, -ertis, [in-ars, skill], adj., *shiftless, cowardly, sluggish, unmanly*.

infāmia, -ae, [infami- (*disreputable*) + ia], F., *dishonor, disgrace*: *latrocinia nullam habent infamiam (bring no dishonor, are not held dishonorable)*; *infamia et indignitas, shame and disgrace*.

infāns, -antis, [in-fans, pres. p. of *for, speak*], C., *a child, an infant, an infant child*.

infectus, -a, -um, [1. in-factus], adj., *not done*. — Esp.: *re infecta, without success*, cf. *imperfectus*; *re infecta discedere (without accomplishing one's purpose)*.

Inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [in-fero], irr. v. a., *bring in, import, put upon*: *in equum (mount one on horseback)*; *bellum (make, of offensive war)*; *signa (make a charge, advance)*; *vulnera (inflict)*. — Fig., *cause, inflict, commit*: *periculum (create, cause)*; *spem (inspire)*; *causam (ad-duce, assign, allege)*.

Inferus, -a, -um, [unc. st. + rus (cf. *superus*)], adj., *low*: *inferior pars, the lower end*; *ab inferiore parte, down below, of a river*. — Superl., **infimus** (*imus*), *lowest, the bottom of, at the bottom*: **infimus**

collis, the foot of the hill, **ad infimum**, *at the bottom*. — Neut. as noun, *the bottom*.

infēstus, -a, -um, [in-festus, fr. *fendo, strike*], adj., *hostile, in hostile array*: *infestis signis, arrayed for fight, in a charge, in order of attack*.

inficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [?, in-facio], 3. v. a., (*work into*?), *dye, stain*.

infidēlis, -e, [in-fidelis], adj., *unfaithful, wavering in faith*.

Infigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, [2. in-figo], 3. v. a., *fasten in, fix in, fix on*.

Infimus, see **inferus**.

Infinitus, -a, -um, [in-finitus], adj., *unbounded, countless, endless, numberless, infinite*.

Infirmitās, -tātis, [infirmō + tas] F., *feebleness, unsteadiness, inconsistency, fickleness*.

Infirmus, -a, -um, [in-firmus, strong], adj., *weak, feeble*: *animus (feeble courage, want of courage)*; *arbores (unsound, weakened)*; *infirmior, less powerful*; *naves (unseaworthy)*.

Infixus, -a, -um, p. p. of **infigo**.

Inflectō, -flectere, -flēxī, -flexus, [in-flecto], 3. v. a., *bend down*. — Pass., or with reflex., *become bent*.

Inflexus, -a, -um, p. p. of **inflecto**.

Influō, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus, [in-fluo], 3. v. n., *flow into, empty into*.

Infodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, [in-fodio], 3. v. a., *dig in, bury*.

Infra [instr. (?) of **inferus**], adv. and prep. with acc., *below, farther down, less than*.

ingēns, -entis, [in-gens, *not be-*

longing to the kind (?)], adj., *huge, enormous, very large*.

ingrātus, -a, -um, [in-gratus], adj., *unpleasing*.

ingredior, -gredi, -gressus, [in-gradior, *step*], 3. v. dep., *march into, enter, march in*.

iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [in-lacio], 3. v. a., *throw into, throw upon*. — Less exactly, *place in, put on, embark*. — Fig., *inspire*.

iniectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *inicio*.

inimicitia, -ae, [inimicō + tia], F., *enmity, hostility*.

inimicus, -a, -um, [in-amicus], adj., *unfriendly, hostile*. — As noun, *an enemy* (personal, or not in war, cf. *hostis*, *an enemy of the state, or an enemy at war*), *a rival, an opponent*.

iniquitās, -tātis, [iniquō + tas], F., *inequality, irregularity, unevenness*. — Fig., *unfairness, unequal nature, unfavorableness*.

iniquus, -a, -um, [in-aequus], adj., *uneven*. — Fig., *unjust* (of persons and things), *unfavorable, unfair, disadvantageous*. — Compar., *iniquior locus, less favorable position*.

initium, -i, [in-titium (itō + ium), cf. *ineo*], N., *a beginning, the first of*: *initium capere, facere, begin, start*; *transeundi* (*the initiative, the first steps, the first attempt to, etc.*); *initium fit ab, the start is first made at* (also lit.); *fugae factum* (*the first tendency to fly was shown*); *retinendi* (*the first detention*); *silvarum* (*the edge*); *Remorum* (*boundary*); *artificiorum initia* (*the first principles, the first knowledge of, etc.*).

iniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iunctus, [in-iungo], 3. v. a., *attach to*. — Fig., *impose upon* (*his . . . servitutem*).

iniūria, -ae, [in-ius (*right*) + ia, cf. *iniurius*], F., *injustice, outrage, wrong, violence* (as opposed to right), *abuse*.

iniussū [in-iussu, abl. of *iuseus*], adv., *without orders*.

inlātus (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of *in-fero*.

inligātus (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of *inligō* (ill-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in-ligo, *bind*], 1. v. n., *bind on, attach, fasten to*.

inlustris (ill-), -e, [in-lustrō (or kindred st.), cf. *lustrō, light*], adj., *distinguished, renowned, remarkable, famous*: *inlustriore loco natus, of any prominence*.

innāscor, -nāscī, -nātus, [innāscor], 3. v. dep., *grow in, spring up in*. — Fig., *be inspired, be excited*. — *innātus*, p. p. as adj., *natural, innate*.

innātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *innāscor*. *innītor*, -nīti, -nīsus (-nīxus), [in-nītor], 3. v. dep., *lean upon, support one's self on*. — *innīxus*, p. p. in present sense, *leaning on*.

innīxus, -a, -um, p. p. of *innītor*. *innocēns*, -entis, [in-nocens, p. of *noceo, injure*], adj., *harmless, guiltless, innocent*.

innocentia, -ae, [innocent- + ia], F., *blamelessness, integrity*.

inopia, -ae, [inop- (*needy*) + ia], F., *scarcity, dearth, destitution, want, privation, want of supplies*.

inopināns, -antis, [in-opinans], adj., *unsuspecting, not suspecting*.

inquam, [?], def. v. n., *say*.

inrideō (irr-), -ridēre, -risī, -rīsum, [in-rideo, *laugh*], 2. v. n., *ridicule, laugh at*.

inridiculē (irr-), [old case-form of inridiculus], adv., *without humor*.

inrumpō (irr-), -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [in-rumpo], 3. v. n. and a., *break in, break into, storm*.

inruptiō (irr-), -ōnis, [in-ruptio, cf. eruptio and inrumpo], F., *a breaking in, an attack (on a fortified place), raid, incursion*.

insciēns, -entis, [in-sciens], adj., *not knowing, unaware*: insciente Caesare, *without C.'s knowledge*.

inscientia, -ae, [in-scient- + ia], F., *ignorance, lack of acquaintance with*.

inascius, -a, -um, [in-+scius, cf. conscius and scio], adj., *not knowing, unaware, ignorant*.

insecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of insequor.

insequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [insequor], 3. v. dep., *follow up, pursue*.

inserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, [insero, *join*], 3. v. a., *insert, stick in*.

insidiae, -arum, [†insid- (cf. insideo, *sit in*) + ia], F. plur., *an ambush, a stratagem, a trick, a plot, a trap, treachery*: per insidias, *with deception, treacherously*.

insidiar, -ārī, -ātus, [insidiā-], 1. v. dep., *lie in wait, make treacherous attacks*.

insignis, -e, [in-signō-, *mark*, decl. as adj.], adj., *marked, memorable, signal*. — **insigne**, N. as noun, *signal, sign, decoration (of soldiers)*.

insiliō, -silire, -siluī, -sultus, [insalio], 4. v. a., *leap upon*.

insimulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of insimulo.

insimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [insimulo, *make like*], 1. v. a., *charge, accuse*.

insinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [insinuo], 1. v. a. and n., *wind in*. — With reflex., *work one's way into, slip in*.

insistō, -sistere, -stīti, no p. p., [in-sisto], 3. v. a. and n., *stand upon, set foot upon, stand, keep one's footing*. — Fig., *adopt (rationem pugnae), devote one's self (in bellum)*.

insolenter [insolent- (cf. soleo, *be wont*) + ter], adv., *(in an unusual manner), insultingly, insolently*.

inspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [inspecto], 1. v. a. and n., *look upon, look on*: inspectantibus nobis, *before our eyes*.

instābilis, -e, [in-stabilis, cf. sto], adj., *unsteady*. — Fig., *changeable, uncertain*.

instar [instā + ris (?), reduced], N. indecl., *(an image), in the likeness of (with gen.), like, in the manner of*.

instigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†in-stigō- (STIG (*goad*) + us)], 1. v. a., *goad, stimulate, drive on, urge on*.

instituō, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtus, [instatuo], 3. v. a., *set up, set in order, array: opus (finish)*. — Also, *provide, procure, get ready*. — Also, *set about, undertake, begin to practice, adopt (a plan, etc.), begin, set on foot*. — So, *teach, train, habituate*.

institūtum, -ī, [N. p. p. of instituo], N., *a habit, a practice, an institution, a custom*.

instō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātūrus, [in-
ste, stand], 1. v. n., *be at hand, press on.*—Fig., *threaten, impend, menace: tempus instantis belli, time of active, immediate war.*

instrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **instruo**.

instrūmentum, -i, [instru- (cf. **instruo**) + mentum], N., *furniture, equipment, tools and stores* (of soldiers).

instruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, [in-struo, build], 3. v. a., *build, fit up, fit out, array, draw up* (of troops).

insuēfactus, -a, -um, [p. p. of †**insuefacio**], p. p., *trained.*

insuētus, -a, -um, [in-suetus], adj., *unaccustomed, unused.*

insula, -ae, [akin to in-salio?], F., ('tussocks' in a swamp) *an island.*

insuper [in-super, above], adv., *on the top, above, at the top.*

integer, -gra, -grum, [in-†**teger** (TAG, in tango, touch, + rus)], adj., *untouched, unimpaired, unwearied, fresh; as noun, fresh troops.*—Esp., *not entered upon* (of business); *re integra, before anything was done, before being committed to any course of action.*

integō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, [in-tego], 3. v. a., *cover over, face* (turris coriis).

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [inter-lego], 3. v. a., (*pick out* [distinguish] between), *learn, know, find out, discover, see plainly, be aware.*

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, [in-tendo], 3. v. a., *stretch, strain.*—Esp. of the mind or eyes, *be intent,*

be absorbed: oculis intentis, with eyes intent; animis intentis in ea re, with their minds absorbed in this.

intentus, -a, -um, p. p. of **intendo**.

inter [in + ter, cf. alter], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., *between, among: arbitros inter civitatis dat (to decide between); inter aciem, in the line.*—Of time, *within, for.*—Often in a reciprocal sense: *inter se, with, to, from, etc., each other, one another; cohortati inter se, encouraging each other, one another; obsides inter eos dandos curavit, caused them to exchange hostages.*

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [inter-cedo], 3. v. n., *come between, go between, lie between, intervene, exist between, occur between, be, pass* (of time): *ipsis cum Haeduis intercedere, exist between them and the Haedui.*

interceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **intercipio**.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [inter-capio, take], 3. v. a., *intercept, cut off.*

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [inter-clando, shut], 3. v. a., *cut off, shut off, block* (roads): *fugam (stop, cut off).*

interdicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictus, [inter-dico], 3. v. a., (*intervene by an order*), *forbid, prohibit: Gallia Romanis interdici (exclude the Romans, etc., by order); aqua atque igni (expel, by forbidding fire and water, the regular form of exile); interdicerene, forbid to, order not to.*

interdiū [inter-diu (acc. or abl.)

akin to dies)], adv., *in the daytime, by day.*

interdum [inter dum (orig. acc.)], adv., *for a time, sometimes.*

intereā [inter eā (prob. abl.)], adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

intereō, -ire, -ivī (-iū), -itūrus, [inter-eo (*go into pieces*), cf. interficio)], irr. v. n., *perish, die, be killed.*

interfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of interficio.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [inter-facio], 3. v. a., (*cut to pieces, cf. intereo*), *kill, put to death.*

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [inter-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw in* (between). — Pass., *lie between, intervene*: **spatio interiecto**, *intervening, i.e. leaving a short interval*; **portubus interiectis** (*lying at intervals*); **sagittariis** (*thrown in at intervals*).

interiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of intericio.

interim [loc. of †interus, cf. inter, interior], adv., *meanwhile.*

interior, -us, [comp. of †interus (in-terus, cf. alter)], adj., *inner, interior.* — Masc. as noun: **interiores**, *men in the interior, men in the town.*

interitus, -tūs, [inter-itus, cf. intereo], *destruction, death.*

intermissus, see intermitto.

intermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [inter-mitto], 3. v. a. and n., (*let go between*), *leave off, discontinue, stop, interrupt, cease*: *neque diem neque noctem* (*not cease day or night*); **spatiis intermissis**, *leaving intervals*; **brevi tempore intermisso**, *waiting a short time*; **spatio intermisso**, *after*

a time; **triduo intermisso** (*leaving an interval of, etc.*); **nocte intermissa**, *a night intervening*; **flumen intermittit** (*discontinue, leave a vacant place*); **subeuntes non intermiserunt** (*did not cease, etc.*); **intermissa profectione** (*delaying*); **vento intermisso** (*ceasing, failing*); **nocturnis temporibus ad laborem intermissis**, *ceasing their toil in the night time*; **tempus ab opere**, *at any time cease the work*; **diem quin**, etc. (*let a day pass without, etc.*); **intermissae trabes** (*separated*); **intermissis magistratibus**, *passed over for a year*; **pars oppidi intermissa a flumine** (*left unprotected*); **planities intermissa collibus** (*broken by, lying between*).

interneciō, -ōnis, [inter-†necio, same root as neco, *kill*], F., *extermination, annihilation* (*exercitus*).

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [inter-†pello, cf. appello, -āre], I. v. a., *interrupt, interfere with.*

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [inter-pono], 3. v. a., *put in between* (lit. and fig.), *interpose, allege* (an excuse to break off something): **nulla suspicione belli interposita**, *no suspicion of war appearing to hinder*; **fidem reliquis interponere** (*give a promise not to do something*); **decretum** (*put in, introduce, into the affairs of the Gauls*); **nulla dubitatione interposita**, *with no hesitation to prevent, etc.*

interpres, -pretis, [inter-†pres (akin to pretium?)], C., *a mediator, an interpreter.*

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus, [inter-pret-], I. v. dep., *interpret, explain.*

interrogātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **interrogo**.

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**inter-rogo**], 1. v. a., (*ask at intervals*), *question, interrogate, ask*.

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [**inter-rumpo**], 3. v. a., *break off* (between two points), *break down* (bridges), *destroy*.

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, [**inter-scindo**], 3. v. a., *cut off* (between two points), *break down, tear down*.

intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, [**inter-sum**], irr. v. n., *be between, be among, be in, be engaged in*: *non amplius intersit, there is an interval of not more than, etc.*; *proelio, divinis rebus* (*be engaged in, take part in*).—Esp., *impers.*, *it is of importance, it interests, it concerns*; with neg., *it makes no difference*.

intervallum, -ī, [**inter-vallus**, *distance between stakes in a rampart*], n., *distance* (between two things), *distance apart, interval*.

intervenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [**inter-venio**], 4. v. n., *come between, come up* (at a particular juncture), *arrive*.

interventus, -tūs, [**inter-+ventus**, cf. **eventus** and **intervenio**], m., *a coming* (to interrupt something), *intervention*.

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, [**in-texo**], 3. v. a., *weave in, weave together*.

intextus, -a, -um, p. p. of **intexo**.

intoleranter [**intolerant-** (*not enduring*) + **ter**], adv., (*with no pa-*

tience or restraint over one's self), *fiercely, violently*.

intrā [**instr.** (?) of **†interus**, cf. **inter** and **extra**], adv. and prep. with acc., *into, within, inside*.

intrītus, -a, -um, [**in-tritus** (p. p. of **tero**, *wear*)], adj., *unworn*.—Fig., *unexhausted, unwearied*.

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [**†interō-**], 1. v. a., *enter, go in*.

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [**intro-duco**], 3. v. a., *lead in, bring in, march in* (troops).

introeō, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -itus, [**intro-eo**], irr. v. a. and n., *enter, come in*.

introitus, -tūs, [**intro-itus**, cf. **introeo**], m., *an entrance, an approach* (means of entrance).

intrōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of **intrōmitto**.

intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [**intro-mitto**], 3. v. a., *let go in, send in*.—With reflex. or in pass., *rush in*: **intrōmissus**, *rushing in*.

intrōrsus [**intro-vorsus** (*petrified nom.*, p. p. of **verto**, *turn*)], adv., *into the interior, inside, within*.

intrōrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptūrus, [**intro-rumpo**], 3. v. n., *break in, burst in*.

intueor, -tuēnī, -tuitus (-tūtus), [**in-tueor**], 2. v. dep., *gaze upon, gaze at, cast one's eyes upon*.

intulī, see **infero**.

intus [**in + tus**], adv., *within*.

inūsītātus, -a, -um, [**in-usitatus**], adj., *unwonted, unaccustomed*: **in-usitatio**, *less familiar*.

inūtilis, -e, [**in-utīlis**], adj., *of no use, unserviceable*.—In a pregnant sense, *unfavorable*.

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, [in-venio], 4. v. a., *find*, (come upon, cf. *reperio*, *find by search*), *learn*.

inventor, -tōris, [in-+ventor, cf. *invenio*], M., *a discoverer, an inventor*.

inventus, -a, -um, p. p. of *invenio*.

inveterāscō, -rāscere, -rāvī, -rātūrus, [in-veterasco], 3. v. n., *grow old in, become established in*.

invictus, -a, -um, [in-victus], adj., *unconquered*. — Also, *unconquerable, invincible*.

invidēō, -vidēre, -vidī, -vīsus, [in-video, *see*], 2. v. n. and a., (*look askance at*), *envy, be jealous of, grudge*.

invidia, -ae, [invidō- (*envious*) + *ia*], F., *envy, odium*.

inviolātus, -a, -um, [in-violatus], adj., *inviolate*. — Also (cf. *invictus*), *inviolable, sacred*.

invisus, -a, -um, p. p. of *invideo*.

invitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *invito*.

invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?], 1. v. a., *invite, request, attract*.

invītus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *unwilling*. — Often rendered as adv., *against one's will*.

ipse, -a, -um, [is-potis (?)], intens. pron., *self, himself*, etc. (as opp. to some one else, cf. *sui*, reflex., referring to the subject), *he, etc.* (emph.), *he himself*, etc.: *hoc ipso tempore, at this very time*; *ipse per se, in and of itself*; *inter se* (regular reciprocal), *each other, with each other, by each other*, etc.

irācundia, -ae, [iracundō- + *ia*], F., *wrath* (as a permanent quality,

cf. *ira*, a temporary feeling), *irascibility, anger, passion, animosity*.

irācundus, -a, -um, [ira + *cundus*], adj., *of a violent temper, passionate, irascible*.

is, ea, id, [pron. I], dem. pron., *this* (less emph. than *hic*), *that* (unemph.), *these, those*, etc., *the, a, he, she, it*: *quae pars ea*, etc., *the part which*, etc.; *eo deceptus quod*, etc. (*by the fact that*, etc.); *et id*, *and that too*; *ea quae*, *the things which, what*; *Rhodanus influit et is transitur* (*and this river*, etc.); *cum ea ita sint*, *since this is so*; *is locus quo*, *a place where*; *neque eam plenissimam, and that not a very full one*; *manere in eo quod*, etc., *abide by what*. — Abl. N., *eo*, *the* (old Eng. instrumental), *so much, on that account, therefore*: *eo magis*, *all the more*; *eo gravius*, *so much the more severely*.

iste, -a, -ud, [is-te (cf. *tum, tantus*, etc.)], dem. pron., *that, that of yours*.

ita [I + *ta* (instr. (?) of *TA*)], adv., *so, in such a way, in this way, thus, to such an extent, as follows*: *ut . . . ita*, *as . . . so, though . . . yet, both . . . and*; *ita . . . ut*, *in proportion as, as*; *non ita*, *not so very, not very*.

Italia, -ae, [Italō- (reduced) + *ia* (F. of *ius*)], F., *Italy*.

itaque [ita que], adv., *and so, accordingly, therefore*.

item [I-tem (acc.?, cf. *idem*)], adv., *in like manner, so also, in the same way* (before mentioned).

iter, *itineris*, [st. fr. I (*go*) + *unc.* term.], N., *a road, a march, a way, a route, a course, a journey*: *in*

itinere, on the road; in eo itinere, on the way; iter facere, march, travel; iter dare, allow to pass; itinere prohibere, forbid to pass, keep from passing; magnis itineribus, by forced marches; tutum iter, a safe passage.

iterum [I + *terus*, cf. *alter*], adv., *a second time, again: semel atque iterum, again and again.*

Itius [Celtic], adj., (with *portus*), the port where Cæsar embarked for Britain the second time; either *Wissant* or *Boulogne*.

iuba, -ae, [?], F., *the mane*.

iubeō, *iubēre*, *iussī*, *iūssus*, [prob. *ius-habeo*, cf. *præbeo*], 2. v. a., *order, command, bid*.

iudicium, -ī, [*iudic-* (in *iudex*, *judge*) + *ium*], N., *a judgment, (judicial), a trial, an opinion* (expressed officially); *an opinion* (generally), *advice: optimum iudicium facere, express* (by some act) *a very high opinion; iudicio, by design; often translated by court.*

iudicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [*iudic-* (in *iudex*, *judge*)], 1. v. a., *formally decide, decide, judge, adjudge, think, consider: nihil gravius de civitate* (*think nothing harsh about, etc.*).

iugum, -ī, [*IUG* (in *iungo*) + *um*], N., *a yoke; sub iugum mittere* (an insult inflicted on a conquered army). Hence, *a ridge, a crest* (of a row of hills).

iumentum, -ī, [*IUG-* (?) + *men-*], N., *a beast of burden, a pack-horse, a horse*.

iūctūra, -ae, [*iunctu-* + *ra* (F. of -*rus*)], F., *a joining, a joint: quan-*

tum distabat iunctura, as far as the distance apart, of two things joined.

iūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *iungo*.

iungō, *iungere*, *iūnxī*, *iūctus*, [*IUG*], 3. v. a., *join, unite, attach together*. — In pass. or with reflex., *unite with, attach one's self to*.

iūnior, comp. of *iuvenis*.

Iūnius, -ī, [?, prob. *iuveni-* + *ius*, but cf. *Iuno*], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Decimus Iunius Brutus*, see *Brutus*. — Also, *Quintus Iunius*, a Spaniard in Cæsar's service.

Iuppiter, *Iovis*, [*Iovis-pater*], M., the god of the visible heavens and the atmosphere, who was regarded as the supreme divinity of the Romans.

Iūra, -ae, [Celtic], M., a chain of mountains in Gaul, running N.E. from the Rhone to the Rhine, separating the Sequani and the Helvetii.

iūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [*iur-* (st. of *ius*)], 1. v. n., *swear, take an oath*.

iūs, *iūris*, [*YU* (akin to *IUG*) + *us*], N., *justice, right, rights* (collectively), *rights over* (anything), *claims*.

iūs iurandum, *iūris iurandī*, [see the two words], N., *an oath*.

iūssū [abl. of *tiussus*], used as adv., *by order, by command*.

iūstitia, -ae, [*iusto-* + *tia*], F., *justice* (just behavior), *sense of justice, fair dealing*.

iūstus, -a, -um, [*ius* + *tus*], adj., *just, lawful*. — Also, *complete, perfect, regular: populi Romani iustissimum esse imperium, that the Romans were best entitled to dominion*.

iuvenis, -e, [?], adj., *young*. — As noun, *a young man* (not over 45), *a youth*: *iuniores*, *the younger soldiers*.

iuventūs, -tūtis, [iuven- (orig. st. of iuvenis) + tus], F., *youth*. — Concretely, *the youth, the young men*.

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, [?], I. v. a., *help, aid, assist*.

iūxtā [instr. (?) of *iuxtus*, sup. of *iugis* (IUG + is)], adv. and prep. with acc., *next, near, near by*.

K

Kal., for **Kalendae** and its cases.

Kalendae (Cal-). -ārum, [F. plur. of *calendus*, p. of verb akin to *calo*, *call*], F. plur., *the Calends* (the first

day of the Roman month, when, as it would seem, the times of the moon were announced to the assembled people).

L

L., for **Lucius**.

L (ψ), [a corrupt form of the Greek letter ψ (prop. χ), originally used for 50, and retained in the later notation], a sign for *quinquāgintā*.

Laberius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — See **Durus**.

Labiēnus, -ī, [?, perh. *labia* (*lips*) + *enus*], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Titus Atius Labienus*, a violent partisan of Cæsar, a legatus under him in Gaul, but afterwards in the civil war on the side of Pompey.

labor, -ōris, [RABH (*seize*) + or (for -os)], M., *toil, exertion* (in its disagreeable aspect), *labor* (as painful), *trouble, hardship*.

lābor, lābī, lāpsus, [unc., cf. *lābō*, *totter*], 3. v. dep., *slip, slide, fall*. — Fig., *commit an imprudence, go wrong, be disappointed*.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [labor-], I. v. n., *toil, exert one's self*: *id contendere et laborare ne*, *strive and be anxious not to have, etc.*; *animo*

laborare, *contrive, revolve in one's mind anxiously*. — Also, *suffer labor, be hard pressed, labor*.

labrum, -ī, [LAB (in *lambo*, *lick*, cf. *labia*, *lips*) + rum], N., *the lip*. — Less exactly, *the edge* (of a horn, of a ditch), *the rim* (of a cup).

lāc, lactis, [?], N., *milk*.

lācessō, -cessere, -cessivī, -cessītus, [st. akin to *lacio* (*entice*) + unc. term], 3. v. n., *irritate, provoke*. — Esp., *attack, harass, assail, skirmish with*: *iniuriā Haeduos* (*wantonly harass*).

lacrima, -ae, [†dakru- + ma], F., *a tear*.

lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [lacrima-], I. v. a. and n., *weep, shed tears*.

lacus, -ūs, [?], M., *a reservoir, a lake*.

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus, [unc.], 3. v. a., *wound, injure*. — Fig., esp., *break* (one's word, etc.), *violate*.

laesus, -a, -um, p. p. of *laedo*.

laetitia, -ae, [laetō- + tia], F., *joy, gladness* (cf. laetus).

laetus, -a, -um, [unc. root (perh. akin to *glad*) + tus], adj., *joyful* (of the inner feeling), *rejoicing, glad*.

languidē [old case-form of languidus], adv., *with little energy, feebly*.

languidus, -a, -um, [cf. langueo, *be weary*], adj., *spiritless, listless, languid*: languidior, *with less spirit*.

languor, -ōris, [LANG (in langueo, *be weary*) + or], M., *want of spirit, listlessness, weariness*.

lapis, -idis, [?], M., *a stone* (to throw, etc.). — Collectively, *stone, stones*.

lāpsus, -a, -um, p. p. of labor.

laqueus, -i, [LAC (in lacio, *entice*) + eus], M., *a slip-moose*.

largior, -iŕi, -itus, [largō-, *abundant*], 4. v. dep., *give lavishly, bestow upon, supply with*. — Also, *give bribes, give presents*.

largiter [largō- (*abundant*) + ter], adv., *lavishly*: largiter posse, *possess abundant influence*.

largitiō, -ōnis, [largi- (st. of largior) + tiō], F., *lavish giving, bribery*.

lassitudō, -dinis, [lassō- (*weary*) + tudo, cf. fortitudo], F., *weariness, exhaustion*.

lātē [old case-form of latus], adv., *widely*: latius, *too far*; longe lateque, *far and wide*.

latebra, -ae, [latē- (in lateo) + bra], F., *a hiding-place*.

lateō, latēre, latuī, no p. p., [?], 2. v. n., *lie concealed, lurk, be concealed, pass unnoticed*.

lātitudō, -dinis, [latō- + tudo] F., *breadth, width*.

Latobrigi, -ōrum, [Teutonic], M. plur., *a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii*.

latrō, -ōnis, [prob. st. borrowed fr. Greek + o], M., *a mercenary* (?), *a robber*.

latrōcinium, -i, [latron- + cinium, cf. ratiocinor], N., *freebooting, robbery, highway robbery*.

lātus, -a, -um, [prob. for †platus, cf. Eng. *flat*], adj., *broad, wide, extensive*.

latus, lateris, [prob. latō-], N., *the side* (of the body). — Also, generally, *a side, a flank, an end* (of a hill).

lātus, -a, -um, [for †latus, TLA (cf. tollo, tuli) + tus], p. p. of fero.

laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [laud-], I. v. a., *praise, commend*.

laus, laudis, [?], F., *praise, credit, glory, merit* (thing deserving praise).

lavō, -āre (-ere), -āvi (lāvi), -ātus (lautus, lōtus), [?], I. v. a., *wash*. — In pass. used reflexively, *bathe*.

laxō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [laxō-, *loose*], I. v. a., *loosen, open out, extend*.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, [legā- (*despatch*) + tiō], F., (*a sending or commission*), *an embassy, an embassy* (message of ambassadors).

lēgātus, -i, [prop. p. p. of lēgo, *commission, despatch*], M., *an ambassador, envoy*. — Also, *a lieutenant, a legatus*. To a Roman commander were assigned (legare) one or more subordinate officers capable of taking command in his absence or en-

gaging in independent operations under his general direction. These were the *legati*, and with the *quæstor* composed a kind of staff.

legiō, -ōnis, [LEG (*select*) + *io*], F., (*a levy*); hence, *a legion* (originally the whole levy, later the unit of army organization, numbering from 3000 to 6000 men, divided into ten cohorts).

legiōnārius, -a, -um, [legion- + *arius*], adj., *of a legion, of the line, legionary* (the Roman heavy infantry of the legion as opposed to all kinds of auxiliary troops).

Lemannus, -i, [?], M., (with *lacus* either expressed or implied), *the Lake of Geneva, Lake Leman*.

Lemovices, -um, [Celtic], M. pl.: 1. A Gallic tribe in modern Limousin. The name is preserved in *Limoges*.

lēnis, -e, [?], adj., *gentle, smooth*.

lēnitās, -tātis, [leni- + *tas*], F., *gentleness, gentle current* (of a river).

lēniter [leni- + *ter*], adv., *gently: lenius, with less vigor*.

Lepontiī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Alps on the Italian side of St. Gothard.

lepus, -oris, [?], M., *a hare*.

Leuci (*Levacī*), -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a Gallic tribe on the Moselle.

Levacī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Belgian Gaul, dependents of the Nervii.

levis, -e, [for *tleghvis*, LAGH (*jump*) + *us* (with inserted *i*, cf. *brevis*), Eng. *light*], adj., *light, slight, unimportant, of no weight: auditio* (*mere hearsay without founda-*

tion).—Also (cf. *gravis*), *inconstant, fickle, wanting in character: quid esset levius* (*less dignified*).

levitās, -tātis, [levi- + *tas*], F., *lightness*.—Also (cf. *levis*), *inconstancy, fickleness*.

levō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [levi- (as if *levō*-)], 1. v. a., *lighten*. Hence, *free from a burden, relieve*.

lēx, *lēgis*, [LEG (in *lego*, *select*)], F., *a statute, a law*.

Lexovii, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Normandy.

libenter [libent- (*willing*) + *ter*], adv., *willingly, with pleasure*.—With a verb, *be glad to, etc.*

liber, -bera, -berum, [†libō- (whence *libet*, *it pleases*) + *rus* (reduced)], adj., *free* (of persons and things), *unrestricted, undisturbed, unincumbered*.

liberālītās, -tātis, [liberali- + *tas*], F., *generosity, liberality*.

liberālīter [liberali- + *ter*], adv., *generously, kindly* (*respondit*): *oratione prosecutus* (*addressing in generous language*).

liberātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *libero*.

liberē [old case-form of *liber*], adv., *freely, boldly, without restraint: liberius, with too little restraint*.

liberī, -ōrum, [prob. M. plur. of *liber*, *the free members of the household*], M. plur., *children*.

liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [liberō-], 1. v. a., *free, set free, relieve* (from some bond); *liberare se*, *secure one's freedom*.

libertās, -tātis, [liberō- (reduced) + *tas*], F., *liberty, freedom, independence*.

Ibrilis, -e, [libra- (*pound*) + *ilis*], adj., of a pound weight: *fundae* (*heavy missiles from slings, one-pounders*).

licentia, -ae, [licent- (cf. *licet*) + *ia*], F., *lawlessness, want of discipline*.

liceor, licēri, licitus, [prob. pass. of *licet*], 2. v. dep., *bid* (at an auction).

licet, licēre, licuit (*licitum est*), [†licō-, cf. *delicus, reliquus*], 2. v. n., *be allowed*: *id sibi*, etc. (*that they be allowed*); *per te licet*, *you allow*, *you do not hinder*; *licet conspicari*, *one can see*; *quibus esse licet*, *who may be, who have a chance to be*; *petere ut liceat*, *to ask permission*.

Liger, -eris, [Celtic], M., a river of Gaul between the Hædui and the Bituriges, the *Loire*.

lignātiō, -ōnis, [lignā- (cf. *lignum*, *wood*) + *tio*], F., *getting wood*.

lignātor, -tōris, [lignā- (cf. *lignum*, *wood*) + *tor*], M., *wood-forager, wood-cutter*.

lilium, -ī, [?], N., *a lily*. The name is applied jocosely to a peculiar kind of *chevaux-de-frise*.

linea, -ae, [linō- (*flax*) + *ea* (F. of -eus)], F., *a line*.

Lingones, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Vosges Mts.

lingua, -ae, [?], F., *tongue*. Hence, *language*.

lingula, -ae, [lingua- + *la* (F. of -lus)], F., *a little tongue, a tongue of land*.

linter (*lunt-*), -tris, [?], F. (?), *a trough, a skiff, a boat*.

linum, -ī, [prob. borr. fr. Gr.], N., *flax*.

lis, litis, [for †stlis, cf. *locus* and Eng. *strife*], F., *a suit at law*. — Also, *the amount in dispute, damages*.

Liscus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a Hæduan, brother of Diviciacus.

Litavicus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a Hæduan chief.

littera (lit-), -ae, [?, akin to *lino*, *smear*], F., *a letter* (of the alphabet). — Plur., *letters, writing, an alphabet, a letter* (an epistle), *records*.

litus, -oris, [?], N., *a shore, a beach*.

locus, -ī, [for †stlocus (*place*) STLA + *cus*], M. (sing.), N. (generally pl.), *a place, a spot, a position, a region* (esp. in plur.), *a point, the ground* (in military language), *space, extent* (of space), *room*. — Fig., *position, rank, a point, place* (*light, position, character*), *an opportunity, a chance*: *obsidum loco*, *as hostages*.

locūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *loquor*.

longē [old case-form of *longus*], adv., *far, too far, absent, far away, distant*: *non longius mille* (*not more than*); *longe afuturum*, *would be far from helping*; *longius prodire* (*any distance*); *longius aberat*, *was rather far away*; *longe nobilissimus* (*far, altogether*).

longinquus, -a, -um, [case-form of *longus* (perh. loc.) + *cus*], adj., *long* (of time and space), *distant, long-continued*.

longitūdō, -dinis, [longō- + *tudo*], F., *length*.

longurius, -ī, [longō- + *urius*], M., *a long pole*.

longus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *long* (of space and time); in *longiorem*

diem, *to a more distant day*; *navis longa*, *a ship of war, a war galley*, (opposed to the broader *naves onerariae*); *longum est expectare*, *it is too long to wait, it would take too long to, etc.*

loquor, loquī, locūtus, [?], 3. v. dep., *speaking, talk, converse.*

lōrica, -ae, [lōrō- (*strap*) + ica], F., *a coat of mail* (orig. of leather thongs). — Also, *a breastwork, a rampart* (on a wall).

Lūcānius, -ī, [Lucanō- + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Quintus Lucanius*, a centurion in Cæsar's army.

Lūcius, -ī, [luc- (in *lux*) + ius], M., a Roman prænomen.

Lucterius, -ī, [?, perh. Celtic], M., a Gallic name, perh. borrowed from the Romans. — Esp., *Lucterius Cadurcus*, a commander under Vercingetorix.

Lugotorix, -igis, [Celtic], M., a British prince.

lūna, -ae, [LUC (in *luceo*, *shine*) + na], F., *the moon*. Also personified, *Luna, the Moon*.

Lutetia, -ae, [?], F., a city of the Parisii, on the island of modern Paris.

lūx, lūcis, [LUC, *shine*, as st.], F., *light, daylight*: *prima luce*, *orta luce*, or *luce*, *at daybreak*.

lūxuria, -ae, [†luxurō- (*luxu- (excess) + rus*) + ia], F., *luxury, riotous living*.

M

M., for **Marcus**.

M [corruption of CIO (orig. Φ) through influence of *mille*], 1000.

māceria, -ae, [†mācerō- (whence *macerō*, *soften*) + ia], F., (*mortar?*), *a wall*.

māchinātiō, -ōnis, [machinā- + tio], F., *contrivance* (mechanical). — Concretely, *a contrivance, an engine, a derrick*.

maestus, -a, -um, [p. p. of *maereo*, MIS (in *miser*, *wretched*) + tus], adj., *sad, sorrowful, dejected*.

Magetobriga, -ae, [Celtic], F., a town in Gaul where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls. Position uncertain.

magis [MAG (in *magnus*) + ius (N. comparative)], adv., *more, rather*: *eo magis*, *so much the more, all the more*. See also *maxime*.

magistrātus, -tūs, [magistrā- (as if st. of †magistro, cf. *magister, master*) + tus], M., *a magistracy* (office of a magistrate). — Concretely, *a magistrate* (cf. "the powers that be").

māgnificus, -a, -um, [magnō- + ficus (FAC (in *facio*) + us)], adj., *splendid, grand, magnificent*.

māgnitūdō, -dinis, [magnō- + tudo], F., *greatness, great size, size, extent, stature, force* (venti), *severity* (supplici): *silvarum* (*immense woods*); *corporum* (*size, stature*).

māgnopere, see *opus*.

māgnus, -a, -um, [MAG (*increase*) + nus, cf. *magis*], adj., *great* (in any sense, of size, quantity, or degree), *large, extensive, important, serious* (motus), *heavy* (portoria), *high* (aestus), *loud* (vox): *magni habere, to*

value highly, make much account of; magni interest, it is of great importance. — **māior**, compar. in usual sense. — Also, **māior** (with or without *natu*), *elder, older*. — In plur. as noun, *elders, ancestors*. — **maximus**, superl., *largest, very large, greatest, very great*, etc.: **maximis itineribus**, *by forced marches*. See also **Maximus**.

māiestās, -tātis, [**maios**- (orig. st. of *maior*) + *tas*], F., (*superiority*), *majesty, dignity*.

māior, see **magnus**.

malacia, -ae, [borr. fr. Greek], F., (*soft weather*), *a calm*.

male [old case-form of **malus**], adv., *badly, ill, unsuccessfully*. — **peius**, compar. — **pessime**, superl.

maleficium, -i, [**maleficō**- (*mischievous*) + *ium*], N., *harm, mischief*.

mālō, *mälle, mālui*, no p. p., [**mage-** (for **magis**) *volō*], irr. v. a. and n., *wish more, wish rather, prefer, prefer rather*.

malus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *bad* (in all senses), *ill*. — **pēior**, compar. — **pessimus**, superl.

mālus, -i, [Gr.], M., (*apple-tree*), *mast, beam* (upright).

mandātum, -i, [N. p. p. of **mando**], N., *a trust* (given to one), *instructions* (given), *a message* (given to some one to deliver).

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?, †**mandō**- (*manu-do*)], I. v. a., *put into one's hands, entrust, instruct* (*give instructions to*), *commit*: *se fugae* (*take to*); *quibus mandatum est*, *who had been instructed*.

Mandubii, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe north of the Hædui.

Mandubracius, -i, [Celtic], M., a Briton, prince of the Trinobantes.

māne [old case-form of †**manis** (? *ma* + *nis*, cf. **Matuta**, *goddess of dawn*)], adv., *in the morning*.

maneō, *manēre, mānsi, mānsūrus*, 2. v. n., *stay, remain, stay at home* (absolutely, opp. to **proficiſcor**). — Fig., *continue, stand by* (in *eo quod*).

manipulāris, -is, [**manipulō** + *aris*, prop. adj.], M., *comrade* (of the same manipulo or company).

manipulus, -i, [**manu-** †**pulus** (PLE + *us*)], M., (*a handful*, esp. of hay, used as an ensign), *a manipulo* (two centuries, a third of a cohort).

Manlius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., **Lucius Manlius**, as proconsul, beaten by the Aquitani in B.C. 78.

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [†**mansuē-** (cf. **mansuesco**, *grow tame*, and **calefacio**) -**facio**], 3. v. a., *tame*. — Pass., **mānsuēfiō**, *be tamed*.

mānsuētūdō, -dinis, [†**mansue-** (cf. **mansuefacio**) + †**tūdo**], F., *tame-ness, gentle disposition, kindness*.

manus, -ūs, [?], F., *the hand*: in **manibus nostris**, *just at hand, within reach*; **manu defendere** (*by arms*); **dat manus**, *hold out the hands to be bound, acknowledge one's self conquered, give in*. — Also (cf. **manipulus**), *a company, a band, a troop*.

Marcomanni, -ōrum, [Teutonic, akin to *march* and *man*, "the men of the marches"?], M. plur., a supposed German tribe in the army of Ariovistus.

Mārcus, -ī, [*the hammer, akin to marceo, be soft, and morior, die*], M., a Roman prænomen.

mare, -is, [?], N., *the sea*: **mare oceanum**, *the ocean*; **nostrum** (i.e. the Mediterranean).

maritimus, -a, -um, [mari- + timus, cf. finitimus], adj., *of the sea, sea-, maritime, naval, on the sea*: **aestus** (*in the sea*); **ora** (*the sea-shore*).—Also, **maritimus**.

Marius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., **Gaius Marius**, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 101) and freed Rome from the fear of a Northern invasion.

Mārs, **Mārtis**, [?], perh. MAR (in **morior, die**) + **tis**, *the slayer*, but more probably of wolves than of men in battle], M., **Mars**, originally probably a god of husbandry defending the sheep, but afterwards identified with the Greek Ἄρης and worshipped as the god of war. Cæsar again identifies him with the Celtic *Hesus*.—See **aequus**.

mās, **maris**, [?], adj., *male*.—Noun, *a male*.

matara, -ae, [Celtic], F., *a javelin* (of a peculiar kind, used by the Gauls).

māter, -tris, [?, prob. MA (cre-ate) + ter], F., *a mother, a matron*.

māter familiās (old gen. of familia), F., *a matron*.

māteria, -ae (-es, -ēī), [?, prob. mater + ia (F. of -ius)], F., *wood*

(cut, for material), *timber*, (cf. **lignum**, *wood for fuel*).

māterior, -ārī, -ātus, [materia-], I. v. dep., *get timber, bring wood*.

Maticō, -ōnis, [Celtic], F., a city of the Hædui, now *Macon*.

mātrimōnium, -ī, [mater- (as if matri) + monium], N. (*motherhood*), *marriage, matrimony*: in **matrimonium** *ducere, marry*.

Matrona, -ae, [Celtic], M., a river of Gaul, joining the Seine near Paris, the *Marne*.

mātūrē [old case-form of **maturus**], adv., *early, speedily*.

mātūrēscō, -tūrēscere, -tūruī, no p. p., [maturē- (cf. **maturo**) + scō], 3. v. n., *get ripe, ripen*.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [maturō-], I. v. a. and n., *hasten, make haste*.

mātūrus, -a, -um, [†matu- (MA, (in mane) + tus) + rus], adj., *early*.—Also (by unc. conn. of ideas), *ripe, mature*.

maximē [old case-form of **maximus**], adv., *in the greatest degree, most, very, in the highest degree, especially*: **ea maxime ratione**, *in that way more than any other*; **maxime confidebat**, *had the greatest confidence*.

Maximus [sup. of **magnus**, as noun], M., a Roman family name.

medeor, -ērī, no p. p., [†medō- (whence **medicus, remedium**), root unc., cf. **meditor**], 2. v. dep., *attend* (as a physician), *heal*.—Fig., *remedy, relieve*.

mediocris, -cre, [mediō- + cris], adj., *middling, moderate*: **spatium** (*a little, no great*); **non mediocris**, *no little, no small degree of*.

mediocriter [mediocri- + ter], adv., *moderately*: non mediocriter, *in no small degree*.

Mediomatrici, -ōrum, (-um), [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Rhine, about Metz.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, [mediō-terra (*land*) + aneus], adj., *inland*.

medius, -a, -um, [MED (cf. Eng. *mid*) + ius], adj., *the middle of* (as noun in Eng.), *mid-*: in colle medio (*half way up*); locus medius utriusque (*half way between*); de media nocte, *about midnight*.

Meldi, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul.

melior, compar. of bonus.

Melodūnum, -i, [Celtic], N., a city of the Senones, on an island in the Seine, now *Melun*; see *Metiosedum*.

membrum, -i, [prob. formed with suffix -rum (N. of -rus)], N., *a limb, a part of the body*.

meminī, -isse, [perf. of MAN, in mens, etc.], def. verb a., *remember*.

memoria, -ae, [memor + ia], F., (*mindfulness*), *memory, recollection, power of memory*: memoria tenere, *remember*; memoriam prodere, *hand down the memory* (of something just mentioned); memoriam deponere, *cease to remember*; memoria proditum, *handed down by tradition*; supra hanc memoriam, *beyond the memory of this generation*; dignum memoria, *worthy of remembrance*; nostrā memoriā, *within our memory, in our own time*.

Menapii, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur.,

a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Scheldt.

mendācium, -i, [mendac- (*false*) + ium], N., *falsehood, a falsehood*.

mēns, mentis, [MAN + tis (reduced)], F., (*a thought?*), *the intellect* (as opposed to the moral powers, cf. **animus**), *the mind, a state of mind*: mentes animosque, *minds and hearts*; oculis mentibusque, *with eyes and thoughts*.

mēnsis, -is, [unc. form fr. MA, *measure* (cf. *moon, month*)], M., *a month*.

mēnsūra, -ae, [†mensu- (MA, *measure*, as if man, + tu) + ra (F. of -rus)], F., *measure*: ex aqua mensuræ, *measures by the water-clock*; itinerum (*accurate length*).

mentiō, -ōnis, [as if MAN (in meminī) + tio (prob. †menti + o)], F., *mention*.

mercātor, -tōris, [†mercā- (cf. mercor, *trade*) + tor], M., *a trader* (who carries his own wares abroad).

mercātūra, -ae, [†mercātu- + ra (F. of rus)], F., *traffic, trade, commercial enterprise*.

mercēs, -ēdis, [mercē- (cf. merx, *merchandise*) + dus (reduced)], F., *hire, pay, wages*.

Mercurius, -i, [unc. form, akin to merces, etc.], M., *Mercury*, the Roman god of gain, traffic, etc. Afterwards, identified with the Greek Hermes, he was considered also the god of eloquence as well as of trade, the messenger of the gods, and the god of roads, etc. He is identified by Cæsar with a Celtic divinity, probably Teutates.

mereor, -ēri, -itus, (also **mereo**, active), 2. v. dep., *win, deserve, gain*. — Also (from earning pay), *serve*: **mereri de**, *serve the interests of*.

meridiānus, -a, -um, [**meridiē** + **anus**], adj., *of midday*: **tempus** (*noon*).

meridiēs, -ēi, [prob. **medio**- (reduced) -**dies**], *M.*, *midday, noon*. — Also, *the south*.

meritum, -i, [*N. p. p. of mereo*], *N.*, *desert, service*. — **meritō** (abl. as adv.), *deservedly*: **minus merito**, *without the fault*; **magis . . . quam merito eorum**, *more than by any act of theirs*; **merito eius a se fieri**, *that he deserved that he should do it*.

meritus, -a, -um, *p. p. of mereo*.

Messāla, -ae, [?], *M.*, a Roman family name. — Esp., **Marcus Valerius Messala**, consul, B.C. 61, with **Marcus Piso**.

mētior, **mētiri**, **mēnsus**, [†**meti**- (**MA** + **tis** ?)], 4. v. dep., *measure, measure out, deal out* (rations), *distribute*.

Metiosēdum, -i, [Celtic], *N.*, earlier name of **Melodunum**.

Mētius, -i, [?], *M.*, a Gaul in relations of hospitality (see **hospes**) with **Ariovistus**.

metō, **metere**, **messui**, **messus**, [?], 3. v. a., *cut, reap, gather*.

metus, -tūs, [unc. root + **tus**], *M.*, *fear*. — Often superfluous with other words of fearing: **metu territare**, *terrify*. — Esp.: **hoc metu**, *fear of this*.

meus, -a, -um, [**MA** (in **me**) + **ius**], poss. adj. pron., *my, mine*.

mihi, see **ego**.

mīles, -itis, [unc. st. akin to **mille** as root + **tis** (reduced)], *C.*, *a soldier, a common soldier* (as opposed to officers), *a legionary soldier* (*heavy infantry*, as opposed to other arms of the service). — Collectively, *the soldiers, the soldiery*.

militāria, -e, [**milit** + **aris**], adj., *of the soldiers, military*: **signa** (*battle-standards*). See **res**.

militia, -ae, [**milit** + **ia**], *F.*, *military service, service* (in the army).

mille, indecl. **milia**, -ium, [akin to **miles**], adj. in sing., noun in plur., *a thousand*: **mille passuum**, *a thousand paces, a mile*.

Minerva, -ae, [unc. form akin to **memini**, etc.], *F.*, **Minerva**, the goddess of intellectual activity, and so of skill and the arts, identified with the Greek **Athene**.

minimē [old case-form of **minimus**], adv., *in the smallest degree, least, very little, not at all*.

minusus, -a, -um, [lost st. (whence **minuo**) + **imus** (cf. **infimus**), superl. of **parvus**], adj., *smallest, least*. — Neut. as noun and adv., *the least, least, very little*.

minor, -us, [lost st. (cf. **minimus**) + **ior** (compar. ending)], adj., compar. of **parvus**, *smaller, less*: **dimidio minor**, *half as large*. — Neut. as noun and adv., *less, not much, not very, not so much, not so*: **quo minus**, *in order that . . . not*; **si minus**, *if not*; **minus valebat** (*not so strong, less, etc.*); **minus uti** (*not so well*); **minus magnus fluctus** (*less violent, smaller*).

Minucius (**Minut**-), -i, [perh. akin

to minus], M., a Roman gentile name. See Basilus and Rufus.

minuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, [†minu- (cf. minus)], 3. v. a. and n., *lessen, weaken, diminish*: aestus (*ebb*); vim (*break the force, etc.*); controversias (*settle*); desidiā (*cure, correct*); ostentationem (*humble*).

mīrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of miror.

mīror, -ārī, -ātus, [mīrō-], 1. v. dep., *wonder, wonder at, be surprised*. — mīrātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, *surprised*.

mīrus, -a, -um, [?, SMI (cf. smile) + rus], adj., *surprising, marvellous, wonderful*: mirum in modum, *in a surprising manner*.

miser, -era, -erum, [MIS (cf. mae-reo) + rus], adj., *wretched, pitiable, miserable, poor*.

misericordia, -ae, [misericord- (*merciful*) + ia], F., *mercy, pity, clemency*.

miseror, -ārī, -ātus, [†miserō-], 1. v. dep., *bewail, complain of*.

missus, -a, -um, p. p. of mitto.

missus, -sūs, [MIT (? root of mitto) + tus], M., *a sending*: missu Caesaris, *despatched by Caesar, under orders of Caesar*.

mītissimē [old case-form of mī-tissimus], adv., superl. of mite (N. of mitis), *very gently, very mildly, in very gentle terms*.

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [?], 3. v. a., *let go* (cf. omitto), *send, despatch, discharge, shoot*: sub iugum mittere, *send under the yoke*. See iugum.

mōbilis, -e, [prob. movi- (as if st. of moveo, or a kindred st.) + bilis],

adj., *easily moved, movable, mobile, fickle, hasty*.

mōbilitās, -tātis, [mobili- + tas], F., *mobility, activity* (of troops), *inconstancy, fickleness*.

mōbiliter [mobili- + ter (prob. terum, reduced)], adv., *easily* (of motion), *readily*.

mōderor, -ārī, -ātus, [†moder- (akin to modus, cf. genus, genero)], 1. v. dep., *control, regulate, restrain*.

modestia, -ae, [modestō- + ia], F., *moderation, self-control, subordination* (of soldiers).

modō [abl. of modus], adv., (*with measure* ?), *only, merely, just, even, just now, lately*: paulum modo (*just a very*); non . . . modo, *not only*; aspectum modo, *the mere sight*.

modus, -ī, [MOD (cf. moderor) + us], M., *measure, quantity*. Hence, *manner, fashion, style, method*: ad hunc modum, *after this fashion*; nullo modō, *in no way*. See eiusmodi.

moenia, -ium, [MI (*distribute* ?) + nis (cf. communis) (orig. shares of work done by citizens?)], N. plur., *fortifications, walls of a city*.

mōlēs, -is, [?, cf. molestus], F., *a mass*. — Esp., *a dike, a dam*.

molestō [old case-form of molestus, *troublesome*], adv., *heavily, severely*: moleste ferre, *take hardly, be vexed at*.

mōlimentum, -ī, [moli- (st. of molior, *strive*) + mentum], N., *trouble, difficulty, exertion*.

molitus, -a, -um, p. p. of molo.

molliō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, [molli-], 4. v. a., *soften*. — Fig., *make easy*: clivum.

mollis, -e, [?], adj., *soft, tender*. — Fig., *weak, feeble, not hard, not firm*: animus ad resistendum; litus (*gently sloping*).

mollitiēs, -ēi (also, -a, -ae), [mollī- + ties (cf. -tia)], F., *softness*. — Fig., *weakness*: animi (*feebleness of purpose, weakness of character*).

molō, -ere, -uī, -itus, [?], 3. v. a., *grind*. See cibarius.

mōmentum, -ī, [movi- (as st. of moveo, move) + mentum], N., *means of motion, cause of motion*. — Fig., *weight, importance, influence*: habere (*be of importance*).

Mona, -ae, [Celtic], F., the Isle of Man, off the coast of Britain, but confounded with Anglesea.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [causative of MAN (in memini) or denominative fr. a kindred st.], 2. v. a., *remind, warn, advise, urge*.

mōna, montis, [MAN (in mineo, project) + tis (reduced)], M., *a mountain, height*.

mora, -ae, [prob. root of memor, *mindful*, + a], F., *delay, grounds of delay*.

morātus, -a, -um, p. p. of moror.

morbus, -ī, [MAR (in morior, die) + bus], M., *sickness, illness*.

Morini, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Belgæ on the coast of Picardy.

morior, mori (moriri), mortuus (moritūrus), [MAR (cf. mors)], 3. v. dep., *die*.

Moritasgus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Senones.

moror, -ārī, -ātus, [mora-], 1. v.

dep., *retard, hinder, check* (the advance of), *delay, wait, stay*.

mors, mortis, [MAR (cf. morior) + tis], F., *death*: sibi mortem consciscere, *commit suicide*.

mortuus, -a, -um, p. p. of morior.

mōs, mōris, [?], M., *a custom, a usage, a way* (of acting). — Plur., *customs, habits, character* (as consisting of habits, cf. ingenium and indoles, of native qualities).

Mosa, -ae, [Celtic], M., a river in Belgic Gaul, now the *Meuse*, or *Maas*.

mōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of moveo.

mōtus, -tūs, [movi- (as st. of moveo) + tus], M., *a movement, a disturbance, an uprising*: expeditior (*movement of ships*); celer atque instabilis (*changes, of the passage of events in maritime warfare*); siderum (*revolutions*).

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, [?], 2. v. a., *set in motion, move, stir*: castra (*move from a place to another*; also, absolutely, *break camp*).

mulier, -eris, [?], F., *a woman*.

mūliō, -ōnis, [mulō- + o], M., *a muleteer, a driver*.

multitūdō, -dinis, [multō- + tudō], F., *a great number, great numbers, number* (generally). — Esp., *the multitude, the common people*.

multō, see multus.

multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [multa-, *fine*], 1. v. a., *punish* (by fine), *deprive* (one of a thing as a punishment).

multum, see multus.

multus, -a, -um, [?, poss. root of mille, miles, + tus], adj., *much*,

many: multe die, late in the day; ad multam noctem, till late at night. — *multum*, neut. as noun and adv., much. — Also, plur., multa, many things, much, a great deal. — Abl., multo, much, far: multo facilius. — As compar., plūs, pluris, N. noun and adv.; plur. as adj., more, much, very: as noun, several, many. — As superl., plurimus, -a, -um, most, very many, very much: quam plurimi, as many as possible; quam plurimos possunt, the most they can; plurimum posse, have most power, be very strong or influential; plurimum valere, have very great weight.

mūlus, -ī, [?, perh. akin to molo, grind], M. (the mill-beast), a mule.

Mūnātius, -ī, [prob. akin to munus], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Munatius Plancus, a legatus in Cæsar's army.

mundus, -ī, [?], M. (orig. adj., well ordered, a translation of Gr. κόσμος), the universe, the world.

mūnimentum, -ī, [muni- + mentum], N., a fortification. — Plur., a defence.

mūniō, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -itus, [muni- (st. of moenia)], 4. v. a. and n.,

fortify. — Less exactly, protect, defend, furnish (by way of protection), make (by embankment), construct: castra; iter. — munitissima castra (very strongly fortified).

mūnitiō, -ōnis, [muni- + tiō], F., fortification (abstractly). — Concretely, a fortification, works, fortifications, defences: munitio operis, building works of defence; munitio-nis causa, to build works, etc.

mūnitus, -a, -um, p. p. of munio.

mūnus, -eris, [min (as if root of moenia) + us, orig. share (cf. moenia)], N., a duty, a service, a task: munus militiæ, military service. — Also, (a contribution), a tribute, a gift, a present.

mūrālis, -e, [murō + alis], adj., of a wall, wall-: pila (heavy javelins for service in siege operations).

mūrus, -ī, [?], M., a wall (in itself considered, cf. moenia, defences).

mūsculus, -ī, [mus + culus, dimin.], M., (little mouse), a shed (small and very strong, for covering besieging soldiers).

mutilus, -a, -um, [?], adj., mutilated: cornibus (with short broken horns, of the elk).

N

nactus, -a, -um, p. p. of nanciscor.

nam [old case-form, cf. tam, quam], conj., for.

Nammēius, -ī, [Celtic], M., a Helvetian sent as ambassador to Cæsar.

Namnetes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl.,

a Gallic tribe on the Loire around Nantes.

namque [nam-que], conj., for (a little more emphatic than nam).

nanciscor, -iscī, nactus (nactus), [NAC], 3. v. dep., find, get, procure, light upon, get hold of, obtain.

nactus, -a, -um, p. p. of nanciscor.

Nantuātes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of Gaul of uncertain position, probably in Savoy.

Narbō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., a city of the Roman province of Gaul, early made a Roman colony, now *Narbonne*.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, [GNA, cf. gigno], 3. v. dep., *be born, arise, be produced, spring up, be raised* (of beasts), *be found* (plumbum). — **nātus**, p. p., *sprung, born*.

Nasua, -ae, [?, Germanic], M., a leader of the Suevi.

nātālis, -e, [natu- (reduced) + alis], adj., *of birth*: *dies natalis*, *a birthday*.

nātiō, -ōnis, [GNA (cf. nascor) + tio, perh. through intermediate st.], F., *(a birth), a race, a nation, a tribe, a clan*.

nātīvus, -a, -um, [natu- (reduced) + ivus], adj., *native, natural*.

nātūra, -ae, [natu- + ra (F. of -rus)], F., *(birth), nature, character* (of living creature), *character, nature* (of inanimate things); *ea rerum natura, such the state of the case*; *secundum naturam fluminis, down stream*; *natura triquetra (in form)*; *natura cogeбат, must necessarily*; *de rerum natura (physical science)*; *eadem feminae marisque (form, organization)*; *naturam vincere (human nature)*; *natura loci, nature of the ground*.

nātus, -a -um, p. p. of nascor.

nātus, -tūs, [GNA (cf. nascor) + tus], M., *birth*: *maiores natu, elders*.

nauta, -ae, [borrowed from Gr. ναύτης], M., *a sailor, a boatman*.

nauticus, -a, -um, [nauta- + cus], adj., *of a sailor* (or *sailors*), *naval*.

nāvālis, -e, [navi- (reduced) + alis], adj., *of ships, naval*: *navalis pugna, sea-fight*.

nāvicula, -ae, [navi- + cula], F., *a boat, a small vessel, a skiff*.

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, [navigā- + tio], F., *a sailing, a voyage, travelling by sea, a trip* (by sea).

nāvigium, -i, [†navigō- (? navi + tagus) + ium], N., *a vessel* (general), *"a craft," a boat*.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†navigō- (see navigium)], I. v. n., *sail*.

nāvis, -is, [(s)NU, float (increased), with added i], F., *a ship, a vessel, a boat*: *oneraria (a transport)*; *longa (a war galley)*; *navi egredi, land*.

nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [(g)navō-, busy], I. v. a., *do one's best*: *operam (do one's best)*.

nē [NA, unc. case-form], conj., *lest, that . . . not, not to* (do anything), *from* (doing anything), *so that . . . not, for fear that*. — After verbs of fearing, *that*. — Also adv., *ne . . . quidem, not . . . even, not . . . either*; *ne Vorenus quidem, nor Vorenus either*; *Vorenus, too, did not*, etc.

-ne (enclitic) [prob. same as **nē**, orig. = **nonne**], conj., *not?* (as a question, cf. **nonne**), *whether, did* (as question in Eng.), *do*, etc. — See also **necne, nec**.

nec, see **neque**.

necessārius, -a, -um, [†necessō- (reduced) + arius], adj., *(closely bound?)*, *necessary*: *tempus (critical)*; *causa (pressing, unavoidable)*:

res (*absolutely necessary, needful, indispensable*).—Also, as noun, a *connection* (a person bound by any tie), a *kinsman, a close friend*.—Abl. as adv., *necessariō*, of necessity, necessarily, unavoidably.

necesse [?, *ne-cessō*-, cf. *cedo*], indecl. adj., *necessary*.—With *est*, *one must, one cannot but, one must inevitably*.

necessitās, -tātis, [†*necessō* + *tas*], F., *necessity, constraint, compulsion: temporis (exigency); suarum necessitatum causa (interests)*.

necessitūdō, -dinis, [†*necessō* + *tudo*], F., *close connection* (cf. *necessarius*), *intimacy, close relations*.

necne [*nec ne*], conj., *or not* (in double questions).

necō, -āre, -āvi (-uī), -ātus (-tus), [*nec* (st. of *nex*, *death*)], I. v. a., *put to death, kill, murder* (in cold blood).

nēcubi [*ne cubi* (? for *quobi*, see *ubi*)], conj., *that nowhere, lest anywhere, that not . . . anywhere*.

nefārius, -a, -um, [*nefas* + *ius*], adj., *wicked, infamous, abominable*.

nefās, [*ne-fas*], N. indecl., *a crime* (against divine law) : *nefas est, it is not allowable*.

neglegō (*necl*-), -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus, [*nec* (= *ne*) -lego], 3. v. a., *not regard, disregard, neglect: iniurias (leave unavenged, leave unpunished); hac parte neglecta (leave unnoticed); metu mortis neglecto (careless of, etc.)*.

negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?, *posā. ne-aiō*], I. v. a. and n., *say no, say . . . not, refuse*.

negōtior, -ārī, -ātus, [*negotiō*], I. v. dep., *do business* (on a large scale, as in money, etc.).

negōtium, -ī, [*nec-otium, ease*], N., *business, occupation, an undertaking*.—Less definitely, *a matter, a thing*.—Also, *difficulty, trouble: in ipso negotio, at the moment of action; negotium conficere, make a thorough business of a thing, finish a thing up; quid negoti, what business? cf. Eng. "what business have you here?"*; *dare negotium alicui, employ one, give in charge to*.

Nemetes, -um, [*Teutonic*], M. pl., a German tribe on the Rhine.

nēmō, †*nēminis*, [*ne-homo, man*], C., *no one, nobody: non nemo, many a one*.

nēquāquam [*ne-quaquam, anyway* (cf. *eā, quā*)], adv., *in no way, by no means*.

neque (*nec*) [*ne-que*], adv., *and not, and yet . . . not, nor: neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor*.

nēquī(d)quam (*nēquic*-), [*ne . . . qui(d)quam, anything*], adv., *to no purpose, in vain, not without reason*.

Nervicus, -a, -um, [*Nerviō* (reduced) + *cus*], adj., *of the Nervii, Nervian*.

Nervius, -a, -um, [*Celtic*], adj., *Nervian*.—M. plur., *the Nervii*, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.

nervus, -ī, [prob. for †*nevrus*], M., *a sinew*.—Fig., in plur., *strength, vigor*.

neu, see *neve*.

neuter, -tra, -trum, [*ne-uter, which* (of two)], adj. pron., *neither*.—Plur., *neither party, neither side*.

nēve (neu) [ne-ve], conj., *or not, and not, nor.*

nex, necis, [?], F., *death, violent death, execution.*

nihil, see **nihilum**.

nihilum, -ī (nihil), [ne-hilum, *trifle, whit?*], N. (also indecl.), *nothing*: nihil reliqui, *nothing left*; nihil respondere, *make no answer*. — **nihilō**, abl. as adv., *none, no*. — **nihil**, acc. as adv., *not at all*: non nihil, *somewhat*.

nimius, -a, -um, [nimi- (? , st. of nimis, *too much*) + ius], adj., *too much, too great*.

nisi [ne-si], conj., (*not . . . if*), *unless, except, except in case*: nisi cum, *until*; nisi rogatus, *without being asked*.

nīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **nitor**.

Nitiobriges (-broges), -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Aquitania, on the Garonne.

nītor, nīsus (nīxus), nītī, [prob. genu, *knee*], 3. v. dep., (*strain with the knee against something*), *struggle, strive, exert one's self*: niti insidiis (*rely upon*).

nix, nivis, [?], F., *snow*.

nōbilis, -e, [as if (g)no (root of nosco, *know*) + bilis], adj., *famous, noble, well-born* (cf. "notable"). — Plur. as noun, *the nobles*.

nōbilitās, -tātis, [nobili- + tas], F., *nobility*. — Concretely, *the nobility, the nobles*.

nocēns, see **noceo**.

noceō, nocēre, -uī, no p. p., [akin to **nex**, *death*], 2. v. n., *do harm to, injure, harm, harass*. — **nocēns**, -entis, p. as adj., *hurtful, guilty* (of some harm).

noctū [abl. of †noctus (noc- + tus)], as adv., *by night*.

nocturnus, -a, -um, [noc- + turnus, cf. diuturnus], adj., *of the night, nightly, nocturnal, in the night, by night*: tempus (*night-time*).

nōdus, -ī, [?], M., *a knot, a joint*: nodi et articuli, *protuberant joints*.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, [ne-volo], irr. v. a. and n., *not wish, be unwilling, wish not, not like to have*: noli, *no-lite, do not* (with infin.).

nōmen, -minis, [(G)NO (root of nosco, *know*) + men], N., *a name* (what one is known by), *name* (fame, prestige). — As a name represents an account, *an account*: nomine dotis (*on account of, as*); suo nomine, *on his own account*; nomine obsidum, *under pretence of hostages*.

nōminātim [acc. of real or supposed †nominatis (nominā- + tis)], adv., *by name* (individually).

nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [nomin-], I. v. a., *name, mention, call by name*.

nōn [ne-oenum (unum)], adv., *not*: non est dubium, *there is no doubt*; non mediocriter, *in no small degree*.

nōnāgintā, indecl., num., *ninety*.

nōndum (see **dum**), *not yet*.

nōnnūllus (see **nullus**), *some*.

nōnnumquam (see **numquam**), *sometimes*.

nōnus, -a, -um, [†novi- (?) + nus (mus)], num. adj., *ninth*.

Nōrēia, -ae, [Teutonic], F., a city of the Norici, in modern Styria.

Nōricus, -a, -um, [st. akin to Noreia + cus], adj., *of the Norici, Norican*.

nōs, nōsmet, see **ego**, **egomet**.

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus, [(G)NA, *know*], 3. v. a., *learn, become acquainted with*. — In perf. tenses, *know*. — **nōtus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *known, familiar, well-known*: *notis vadis* (*being acquainted with, etc.*).

noster, -tra, -trum, [prob. nos (nom. plur.) + *ter*], poss. adj. pron., *our, ours*. — In plur., *our men* (the Romans), *our forces*.

nōtitia, -ae, [notō + tia], F., *acquaintance with, knowledge*.

nōtus, p. p. of *nosco*.

novem [unc. reduced case-form], indecl. num. adj., *nine*.

Noviodūnum, -ī, [Celtic], N.: 1. A town of the Bituriges, on the Loire. — 2. A town of the Hædui. — 3. A town of the Suessiones.

novitās, -tātis, [novō + tas], F., *novelty, strangeness, strange character*: *rei* (*novelty, unexpected occurrence*).

novus, -a, -um, [?, cf. Eng. *new*], adj., *new, novel, fresh*: *res novae*, *a change of government, revolution*. — **novissimus**, -a, -um, superl., *latest, last*: *agmen* (*the rear*).

nox, noctis, [akin to *noceo*, *harm*], F., *night*: *prima nocte*, *in the early part of the night*; *multa nocte*, *late at night*.

noxia, -ae, [NOC (in *noceo*, *harm*) + unc. term.], F., *crime, guilt*.

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptus, [akin to *nubes*, *cloud*], 3. v. n., *veil one's self* (of the bride), *marry* (of the woman).

nūdātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *nudo*.

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nudō-], 1. v. a., *lay bare, expose, strip*. —

Less exactly, *clear* (*murum defensoribus*).

nūdus, -a, -um, [?, root (akin to *naked*) + *du*], adj., *naked, bare, unprotected, exposed*.

nūllus, -a, -um, [ne-ullus], adj., *not any, no*. — As noun, *no one*. — **nōn nūllus**, *some*. — Plur. as noun, *some, some persons*.

num [pron. NA, cf. *tum*], adv., interrog. particle, suggesting a neg. answer, *does, is, etc., it is not, is it?* and the like: *num posse* (in indirect discourse, *could he, etc.*).

nūmen, -inis, [NU (in *nuo*, *nod*) + *men*], N., (*a nod*), *will, power*. Hence, *divinity*.

numerus, -ī, [t₁numo- (cf. *nummus*, *Numa*) + *rus*], M., *a number, number*: in *hostium numero habuit* (*in the place of, etc.*, euphemism for *slaughtered*); *totidem numero*, *the same number*; *impedimentorum* (*quantity, i.e. number of pack-horses*); *ad numerum*, *to the required number*; *aliquo numero*, *of some account*.

Numida, -ae, [?], M., *a Numidian* (employed in the Roman army as cavalry, cf. *Zouave, Turco*).

nummus, -ī, [akin to *numerus*], M., *a coin*: *pro nummo*, *for coin*.

numquam (nun-) [ne-umquam], adv., *never*.

nunc [num-ce, cf. *hic*], adv., *now* (emphatic, as an instantaneous *now*, cf. *iam*, unemphatic and continuous): *etiam nunc*, *even then* (of the past considered as present).

nūntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *nuntio*. **nūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nuntiō-],

I. v. a., *send news, report, make known*: *nuntiatum est ei . . . ne* (*he was ordered not to, etc.*).

nūntius, -ī, [†novent- (p. of †noveo, *be new*) + ius], M., (*new-comer*), *a messenger*. Hence, *news*: *nuntium mittere* (*send word*); *per eorum nuntios* (*agents*).

nūper [for *novi-per*, cf. *parum per*], adv., *lately, recently, not long ago*.

nūsquam [*ne-usquam*], adv., *nowhere, in no case* (almost equal *never*).

nūtus, -tūs, [NU + tus], M., *a nod, a sign*: *ad nutum*, *at one's beck, at one's command*; *nutu*, *by signs*.

O

ob [unc. case-form], adv. (in comp.), and prep. with acc. (*near*), *against*. Hence, *on account of, for*: *ob eam rem*, *for this reason, on this account*.—In comp., *towards, to, against, over*.

obaerātus, -a, -um, [ob-†aeratus, as if p. p. of †aero, cf. *aes*, *money*], adj., *bound in debt* (to some one).—As noun, *a debtor, a servant for debt*.

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [ob-ducō], 3. v. a., *lead towards, lead against*: *fossam* (*throw out, in a military sense, carry along*).

obeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, [ob-eo], irr. v. a., *go to, go about, attend to*.

obicīō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [ob-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw against, throw in the way, present, throw up* (against the enemy, etc.), *set up, expose*.—**ob-iectus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *lying opposite, lying in the way*.

obitus, -tūs, [ob-itus, cf. *obeo*], M., *a going to*.—Esp., *a going to death* (cf. *obire mortem*), *destruction, annihilation*.

obiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *obicio*.

oblātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *offero*.

obliquē [old case-form of *obliquus*], adv., *obliquely, slanting*.

obliquus, -a, -um, [ob-†liquus, cf. *li(c)mus, aslant*], adj., *slanting*.

obliviscor, -līvīscī, -lītus, [ob-†livio, cf. *liveo*], 3. v. dep., (*grow dark against* ?), *forget*.

obsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [manufactured from *ob sacrum* (*near or by some sacred object*)], I. v. a., *entreat, adjure, implore*.

obsequentia, -ae, [obsequent- (*yielding*) + ia], F., *compliance, deference*: *nimia obsequentia*, *too ready compliance*.

observātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *ob-servo*.

observō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ob-servo], I. v. a., (*be on the watch towards* ?), *guard, maintain, keep*: *iudicium* (*follow, comply with*); *dies natalis* (*keep, celebrate*).

obses, -idis, [ob-†ses, cf. *praeses* and *obsideo*], C., (*a person under guard*), *a hostage*.

obsessiō, -ōnis, [ob-†sessio, cf. *obsideo*], F., *a blockade, a siege, a state of siege* (cf. *oppugnatio*, of actual siege operations).

obsecus, -a, -um, p. p. of **obsideo**.
obsidēō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus, [ob-sēdeo], 2. v. a., (*sit down against*), *blockade, beset, guard*.

obsidiō, -ōnis, [obsidiō- (reduced) + o], F., *a siege* (cf. **obsessio**), *a blockade: obsidione liberare* (*from besetting enemies*).—Also, *the art of siege*.

obsignātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **obsigno**.

obsignō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ob-signo], 1. v. a., *seal up, seal*.

obstistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p., [ob-sisto], 3. v. n., *withstand, resist*.

obstinātē [old case-form of **obstinatus**, fr. **obstino**, *persist*], adv., *persistently*.

obstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of **obstringo**.

obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictus, [ob-stringo], 3. v. a., *bind* (lit. and fig.): *habere obstrictas* (*under obligation*).

obstrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **obstruo**.

obstruō, -struere, -struxī, -strūctus, [ob-struo, *pile*], 3. v. a., *block up, barricade*.

obtemperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [ob-tempero], 1. v. n., (*conform to*), *comply with, submit to*.

obtestātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **obtestor**.

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus, [ob-testor, cf. **testis**, *witness*], 1. v. dep., *implore* (*calling something to witness*).

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [ob-teneo], 2. v. a., *hold* (*against something or somebody*), *retain, maintain, occupy, possess: provinciam*

(*have control of as praetor*); *institissimam apud eum causam obtinere*, *be entirely free from obligation towards him, as having a perfect right to benefits conferred*.

obtuli, perf. of **offero**.

obveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [ob-venio], 4. v. n., *come to, come in one's way, fall to* (by lot).

obviam [ob-viam], adv., *in the way of, to meet* (any one): *obviam venire, come to meet*.

occāsio, -ōnis, [ob-+casio, cf. **occido**], F., *opportunity: occasio brevis, a short time; rem occasionis, a matter of opportunity*.

occāsus, -sūs, [ob-casus, cf. **occido**], M., *a falling, a setting* (of the sun): *solis* (*the sunset, the west*).

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, [ob-cado], 3. v. n., *fall, be slain, set: sol occidens, the west*.

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus, [ob-caedo, *cut*], 3. v. a., *kill, massacre: occisi, the slain*.

occīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **occido**.

occultātiō, -ōnis, [occulta- + tio], F., *concealment*.

occultātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **occulto**.

occultē [old case-form of **occultus**], adv., *secretly*.

occultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [occultō-], 1. v. a., *conceal, hide*.

occultus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **occulo**], as adj., *concealed: in occulto, in secret; ex occulto, from an ambush, in ambush; in occulto sese continere, keep themselves hidden; insidiandi ex occulto, of attacking from an ambuscade*.

occupātiō, -ōnis, [occupā- + tio], F., *occupation* (engagement in business), *business affairs* (of business): **occupationes tantularum rerum**, *engagement in such trifling matters*.

occupātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **occupo**.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†occupō- or †occup-, ob and st. akin to **capio**], 1. v. a., *seize, take possession of, seize upon, occupy* (only in military sense): **regna** (*usurp*); **in opere occupati** (*engaged, employed*).

occurrō, -currere, -currī (-cucurrī?), -cursūrus, [ob-curro], 3. v. n., *run to meet, meet, come upon, find, fall in with, meet*. Hence in pregnant sense, *thwart, baffle, frustrate*: **eo** (*run, to meet an enemy*); **ad animum** (*occur*).

Ōceanus, -ī, [Gr.], M., *the ocean* (with or without *mare*).

Ocelum, -ī, [Celtic], N., a town of the Graioceli in Cisalpine Gaul (prob. *Oulx* in Piedmont).

octāvus, -a, -um, [octo + **vus**, poss. †octau + **us**], num. adj., *eighth*.

octingentī, -ae, -a, [st. akin to octo + centum], num. adj., *eight hundred*.

octō [?], indecl. num. adj., *eight*.

octōdecim [octo-decem], indecl. num. adj., *eighteen*.

Octodūrus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a town of the Veragri, now *Martigny*.

octōgintā [octo + ?], indecl. num. adj., *eighty*.

octōnī, -ae, -a, [octo + **nus**], adj., *eight at a time, eight each, eight*.

oculus, -ī, [†ocō- (cf. AK, *see*) +

lus], M., *the eye*: **sub oculis**, *in sight, before the eyes*.

ōdī, **ōdisse**, [perf. of lost verb (with pres. sense), akin to **odium**], def. v. a., *hate, detest*.

odium, -ī, [VADH (*spurn*) + **ium**], N., *hatred*.

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus, [ob-fendo], 3. v. a. and n., *dash against, hurt*: **animum** (*hurt the feelings, alienate, shock*).—**Abso-**lutely, *suffer a mishap*.

offēnsiō, -ōnis, [ob-†fensio, cf. **defensio** and **offendo**], F., *striking against*.—Fig., *offence*: **sine offē-**sione **animi**, *without wounding one's feelings*.

offerō, **offerre**, **obtulī**, **oblātus**, [ob-fero], irr. v. a., (*bring to*), *throw in one's way, offer*: **se hostibus** (*throw themselves upon*); **se morti** (*expose one's self to*); **quos sibi oblatos** (*placed in his power*); **beneficium** (*confer, render*).

officium, -ī, [ob-†facium, cf. **beneficium**], N., (*doing something to one*), *a service, performance of a duty*.—Transf., *a duty, allegiance, an obligation*: **discedere ab officio**, *fail of one's duty*.

Olovicō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., a king of the Nitiobriges.

omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [ob-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go by*: **consilium** (*leave untried, neglect*); **omni-**bus **omissis rebus**, *leaving everything else*.

omnīnō [abl. of †omninus (omni- + **nus**)], adv., *altogether, entirely, only, utterly, in all, at all, any way, only just, whatever* (with negatives).

omnia, -e, [?], adj., *all, the whole* of (as divisible or divided, cf. *totus* as indivisible or not divided). — In sing., *every* (without emphasis on the individuals, cf. *quisque*, *each*, emphatically); *celerius omni opinione* (*of any one*); *omni tempore*, *on all occasions, always*; *omnes preces*, *every form of prayers*; *omnibus rebus*, *everything, everything else*; *per omnia*, etc. (*through nothing but*, etc.). — In plur. as a short expression for *all others*.

onerārius, -a, -um, [oner- (as st. of *onus*) + *arius*], adj., *for burdens*: *naves* (*transports*).

onerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [oner- (as st. of *onus*)], 1. v. a., *load*: *celeritas onerandi* (*of ships*), *facility of loading*.

onus, -eris, [unc. root + *us*], N., *a burden, a load, a freight, a cargo*. — Abstr., *weight*. — Esp.: *tanta onera navium*, *ships of such weight*.

opera, -ae, [oper- (as st. of *opus*) + a (f. of -us)], F., *work, pains, attention*: *operam navare*, *do one's best*; *operam dare*, *devote one's self, exert one's self, take pains*. — With *ut*, *try, take care*: *opera uti* (*services, help*, etc.); *quorum opera interfectus* (*through whose means, agency*).

opiniō, -ōnis, [opinō- (cf. *nec opinus*) + *o*], F., *notion, expectation*: *celerius omni opinione*, *quicker than any one would suppose*; *opinio virtutis* (*reputation for*, etc.); *tanta opinio huius belli* (*impression*); *tantam opinionem timoris praebuit* (*gave such an idea, impression*); also, *opinio timoris* (*display, cause for an*

impression); *speciem atque opinionem pugnantium praebere*, *make a show and give an impression of being combatants*; *nomen atque opinio* (*reputation*); *ut fert illorum opinio*, *as their notion is*; *ad opinionem Galliae*, *for an impression on the Gauls*; *opinionem praecipere*, *to anticipate*.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, no p. p., [noun-st. from *ob* and st. akin to *porto*, cf. *opportunus*], 2. v. impers., *it behooves, it ought, it is best*: *poenam sequi* (*the punishment was to follow*); *frumentum metiri* (*he ought*, etc.); *alio tempore atque oportuit* (*than it should have been*).

oppidānus, -a, -um, [oppidō- (*reduced*) + *anus*], adj., *of a (the) town*. — Plur. as noun, *the townspeople*.

oppidum, -i, [ob- + *pedum* (*a plain?*)], N., (*the fortified place which, according to ancient usage, commanded the territories of a little state*), *a stronghold, a town* (usually fortified).

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, [ob- + *pono*], 3. v. a., *set against, oppose* (*something to something else*): *novem oppositis legionibus*, *with nine legions opposed to the enemy*. — **oppositus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *opposed, lying in the way, opposite*.

opportūnē [old case-form of *opportunus*], adv., *opportunately, seasonably*.

opportunitās, -tātis, [opportunō- + *tas*], F., *timeliness, fitness* (*of time or circumstance*), *good luck* (*in time or circumstance*), *favorable chance*.

convenience (of a means of fortification).

opportūnus, -a, -um, [ob-portūnus, cf. portus, harbor, and Portūnus], adj., (*coming to harbor?*), *opportune, advantageous, lucky*.

oppositus, -a, -um, p. p. of **oppono**.

oppressus, -a, -um, p. p. of **opprimo**.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [ob-premo], 3. v. a., (*press against*), *overwhelm, crush, overpower, overtake (surprise)*.

oppugnatio, -ōnis, [oppugnā + tio], F., *a siege* (of actual operations, cf. obsidio, blockade), *besieging, an attack* (in a formal manner against a defended position).

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob-pugno, fight], 1. v. a., *attack* (formally, but without blockade), *lay siege to, carry on a siege, assail* (a defended position).

[ops, cf. Ops, the goddess], opis, [?], F., *help, aid*. — Plur., *resources, means, strength, blessings*. — Also, *help* (from several sources).

optātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of opto, wish], as adj., *desired, desirable, wished for, welcome*.

optimē, superl. of bene.

optimus, -a, -um, [op (cf. ops?) + timus (cf. finitimus)], superl. of bonus.

opus, operis, [OP + us], N., *work, labor* (as accomplishing its purpose, cf. labor, as tiresome). — In military sense, *a work, works, fortifications*: *natura et opere munitus* (*by nature and art*); *operum atque arti-*

ficiolorum (*trades, handicrafts*). — In abl., **magno** (quanto) (tanto) opere, *very much, very, greatly*: (*how much*), (*so much, so, so earnestly*): often as one word, **magno-pere, quantopere, tantopere**.

opus [same word as preceding], N. indecl., *need, necessity*: *si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset*, *if he needed anything of Caesar*; *si quid opus facto, etc.*, *if anything needs to be done*.

ōra, -ae, [?], F., *a shore, a coast*.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, [orā- (*speak*) + tio], F., *speech, words, talk, address, discourse, argument*.

ōrātor, -tōris, [orā- (*speak*) + tor], M., *a speaker, an ambassador, envoy*.

orbis, -is, [?], M., *a circle* (a circular plane): *orbis terrarum*, *the circle of lands, the whole world*. — Less exactly, *a hollow square* (in military language), *a circle*.

Orcynia, -ae, [Teutonic or Celtic], F., see **Hercynius**.

ōrdō, -inis, [akin to ordior, begin a web], M., *a series, a row, a tier, a rank* (of soldiers), *a grade* (of centurions, as commanding special ordines of soldiers, also the centurions themselves), *an arrangement, an order*: *perturbatis ordinibus*, *the ranks being broken*; *ratio ordoque agminis*, *the plan and arrangement of the march*; *ordines servare*, *to keep their places*, (of soldiers, also of anything laid in rows or tiers, *preserve the arrangement*, not deviating from it).

Orgetorix, -igis, [Celtic], M., *a nobleman of the Helvetii*.

orior, **oriri**, **ortus**, [?], 3. (and 4). v. dep., *arise, spring up*: **orta luce**, at daybreak. — **Fig.**, *begin, start, spring from, arise, be started, have its source*. — **oriēns**, **-entis**, p. as adj., *rising*: **sol** (*sunrise, the east*).

ōrnāmentum, **-ī**, [**ornā-** + **men-** + **tum**], N., *an adornment*. — **Fig.**, *an honor* (an addition to one's dignity), *a source of dignity*.

ōrnātus, **-a**, **-um**, p. p. of **orno**.

ōrnō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, [unc. noun-st.], 1. v. a., *adorn, equip, furnish*. — **Fig.**, *honor*. — **ōrnātus**, **-a**, **-um**, p. p. as adj., *furnished, well-equipped, honored*.

ōrō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, [**or-** (as st. of **os**, *mouth*)], 1. v. a. and n., *speak*. — **Esp.**, *pray, entreat*.

ortus, **-a**, **-um**, p. p. of **orior**.

ortus, **-tūs**, [**OR** (in **orior**) + **tus**], M., *a rising*: **solis** (*sunrise, the east*).

ōs, **ōris**, [?], N., *the mouth, the face*: **ora convertere**, *turn the eyes*.

Osismi, **-ōrum**, [Celtic], M. plur., *a people of Gaul* (in Brittany).

ostendō, **-tendere**, **-tendī**, **-tentus**, [**obs-tendo**], 3. v. a., (*stretch towards*), *present, show, point out, make known, state, declare*: **copias** (*discover, unmask*).

ostentātiō, **-ōnis**, [**ostenta-** + **tio**], F., *a showing, a display*: **ostentationis causa**, *for display*; **ostentationem comminuere**, *humble the pride*.

ostentō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, [**osten-to-**], 1. v. a., *display, exhibit*.

ōtium, **-ī**, [?], N., *repose, inactivity, quiet* (freedom from disturbance).

ōvum, **-ī**, [perh. **avi-** + **um**], (*belonging to a bird?*), N., *an egg*.

P

P., for **Publius**.

pābulātiō, **-ōnis**, [**pabulā-** + **tio**], F., *a foraging, getting fodder*: **pabulationis causā**, *for forage*.

pābulātor, **-tōris**, [**pabulā-** + **tor**], M., *a forager*.

pābulor, **-ārī**, **-ātus**, [**pabulō-**], 1. v. dep., *forage, gather fodder*.

pābulum, **-ī**, [**PA** (in **pasco**, *feed*) + **bulum**], N., *fodder* (for animals, including the stalk as well as the grain), *green fodder*.

pācātus, **-a**, **-um**, p. p. of **paco**.

pācīscor, **-īscī**, **pāctus** (also **pācīscō**, **-ere**) [**paci** (as st. of **pāco**, *agree*) + **sco**], 3. v. a. and dep.,

bargain. — **Esp.**, **pāctus**, **-a**, **-um**, p. p., *agreed upon, settled*.

pācō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, [**pac-**, in **pax**, *peace*], 1. v. a., *pacify, subdue*. — **pācātus**, **-a**, **-um**, p. p. as adj., *peaceable, quiet, subject* (as reduced to peace).

pāctum, **-ī**, [see **pactus**], N., (*a thing agreed*), *an agreement, an arrangement*. Hence, *a method, a way* (of doing anything): **quo pacto**, *in what way, how*.

pāctus, **-a**, **-um**, p. p. of **pacīscor** and **pango**.

Padus, **-ī**, [Celtic], M., *the Po*, the great river of Northern Italy (Cisalpine Gaul).

Paemāni, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., people of the Belgians.

paene [?], adv., *almost, nearly*.

paenitet, -ēre, -uit, [†poenitō- (perh. p. p. of verb akin to *punio*, *punish*)], 2. v. a., impers., *it repents* (one), *one repents, one regrets*.

pāgus, -ī, [PAG (in *pango*) + *us* (with unc. conn. of ideas)], M., *a district, a canton* (cf. *vīcus*, a smaller collection of dwellings).

palam [unc. case-form, cf. *clam*], adv., *openly, publicly, without concealment*.

palma, -ae, [Gr.], F., *the palm* (of the hand).

palūs, -ūdis, [?], F., *a marsh*.

palūster, -tris, -tre, [palud- + tris], adj., *marshy, swampy*.

pandō, *pandere*, *pandī*, *passus*, [akin to *pandus*, *bent*], 3. v. a., *spread out* (perh. orig. of the hands, bending back the wrist): *passis manibus*, *with outstretched hands*; *passis capillis*, *with dishevelled hair*.

pār, *paris*, [perh. akin to *paro*, *pario* (through the idea of barter or exchange)], adj., *equal, alike, like*: *intervallum* (*the same*). — Esp., *equal in power, a match for*.

parātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *paro*.

parcē, [old case-form of *parcus*], adv., *sparingly, frugally*.

parcō, *parcere*, *peperci* (*parsi*), *parsūrus* (*parcitūrus*), [akin to *parcus* (PAR + *cus*), *acquisitive*, and so *frugal*?], 3. v. n., *spare*. — Esp., *save alive*: *parcendo*, *by economy, by frugality*.

parēns, -entis, [PAR (in *pario*) + *ens*], C., *a parent*.

parentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [parent-], 1. v. n., *make a funereal offering* (to deceased relatives, esp. parents). Hence, *avenge* (making an offering of the wrong-doer).

pāreō, *pārēre*, *pārui*, *pāritūrus*, [parō- (cf. *opiparus*)], 2. v. n., *be prepared, appear, obey, submit to*.

pariō, *parere*, *peperi*, *partus* (*paritūrus*), [PAR, *procure* (perh. orig. by barter, cf. *par*)] 3. v. a., *procure, acquire, secure*.

Parisiī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic tribe around modern Paris, whose town Lutetia takes its modern name from them, cf. *Rheims*, (Remi), *Trèves* (Treveri).

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [parō-, cf. *opiparus*, and *pareo*], 1. v. a., *procure, provide, prepare, get ready for* (bellum used concretely for the means of war), *arrange*. — **parātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *ready, prepared*: *animo parato* (with mind resolved), *resolute, determined*; *paratus in armis*, *armed for war*.

pars, *partis*, [PAR + *tis* (reduced), akin to *portio*, and perh. to *par* through idea of barter], F., (*a dividing*), *a portion, a part, a share*. — Often of position or direction merely, *side, direction, region*: *una ex parte*, *on one side*; *in utram partem*, *in which direction*; *ex utraque parte*, *on both sides*; *sinistra pars*, *the left flank*; *pars fluminis* (*bank*); *maior pars*, *the majority*. — Fig.: *qua ex parte*, *in which respect*; *omnibus partibus*, *in all respects*; *in utramque partem*, *in both respects, both ways*, (of a plan); *in*

utramque partem, *on both sides* (of a discussion). — Esp.: tres partes, *three quarters*, (three parts out of four); ex parte, *in part*; ad inferiorem partem fluminis, *down the river*; ab inferiore parte fluminis (*further down*, etc.). — partim, acc. as adv., *in part, partly, some . . . others*.

partim, see pars.

partior, -īrī, -ītus, [parti-], 4. v. dep., *divide*: partitis temporibus, *alternately*.

partitus, -a, -um, p. p. of partior.

partus, -a, -um, p. p. of pario.

parum, [akin to parvus, perh. for parvum], adv., *not very, not much, not sufficiently*: parum diligenter, *too carelessly, without sufficient care*.

parvulus, -a, -um, [parvō- + lus], adj., *small, slight, insignificant*: ab parvulis, *from infancy*.

parvus, -a, -um, [perh. for paucus, cf. paucus], adj., *small, slight, little*.

passim [acc. of passis (pad (in pando, *spread*) + tis)], adv., *in all directions, all about*.

passus, -a, -um, p. p. of pando.

passus, -a, -um, p. p. of patior.

passus, -sūs, [PAD (in pando) + tus], M., (*a spreading of the legs*), *a stride* (of both feet), *a step, a pace* (esp. as a measure, about five Roman feet): mille passuum, *a Roman mile*, five thousand feet.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [noun-st. akin to pateo + facio], 3. v. a., *lay open, open*.

patefactus, -a, -um, p. p. of patefacio.

patefiō, pass. of patefacio.

pateō, -ēre, -uī, no p. p., [?], 2. v. n., *be extended, lie open, spread, extend, be wide, be open*. — patēns, -entis, p. as adj., *open, exposed*.

pater, -tris, [PA (in pasco?) + ter], M., *a father*. — Plur., ancestors.

patienter, [patient- + ter], adv., *patiently*.

patientia, -ae, [patient- + ia], F., *patience, endurance, forbearance* (in refraining from fighting).

patior, pati, passus, [?], 3. v. dep., *suffer, endure, allow, permit*: vim tempestatis (*endure, stand*).

patrius, -a, -um, [patr- + ius], adj., *of a father, ancestral, of one's fathers*.

patrōnus, -ī, [fr. pater, for form cf. colonus + nus], M., *a patron, a protector*.

patruus, -ī, [pat (e) r- + vus?], M., *an uncle* (on the father's side, cf. avunculus, on the mother's).

paucitās, -tātis, [paucō- + tas], F., *small number*.

paucus, -a, -um, [PAU (cf. paulus and parvus) + cus], adj., *almost always in plur., few, some few* (but with implied *only* in a semi-negative sense): paucis (paucis) respondit (*in a few words, briefly*).

paulatim [paulō- (reduced) + atim, as if acc. of † paulatis († paulā + tis)], adv., *little by little, a little at a time, gradually, few at a time*.

paulisper [paulis (abl. plur. of paulus?) per], adv., *a little while*.

paulō [abl. of **paulus**, *little*], as adv., *a little, slightly*.

paululum [acc. of **paululus**, dim. of **paulus**], as adv., *a very little*.

paulum [acc. of **paulus** (**PAU** + **lus**, cf. **paucus**)], as adv., *a little, a short distance, somewhat*.

pāx, **pācis**, [**PAC** (*fix*), as st.], **F.** (*a treaty?*), *peace, favor*.

peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [?], **I. v. n.**, *go wrong, commit a fault*.

pectus, -oris, [perh. **pect** (as root of **pecto**, *comb*) + **us**, from the rounded shape of the breast, cf. **pectinatus**], **N.**, *the breast*.

pecūnia, -ae, [† **pecunō**- (**pecu**- (*cattle*) + **nus**, cf. **Vacuna**) + **ia**], **F.**, *money* (originally *cattle*), *wealth*.

pecus, -oris, [**PEC** (*tie?*) + **us**], **N.**, *cattle* (especially *sheep* and *goats*): *pecore vivere* (*flesh of cattle*). — **Pl.**, *cattle, flocks and herds*.

pedālis, -e, [**ped**- + **alis**], adj., *of a foot* (in thickness), *a foot thick*.

pedes, -itis, [**ped**- (as if **pedi**) + **tis** (reduced)], **C.**, *a footman, a foot-soldier*. — Collectively, *the infantry*.

pedester, -tris, -tre, [**pedit**- + **tris**], adj., *of infantry, of persons on foot*: *itinerā* (*journeys on foot, marches, land routes*); *proelium* (*on land*); *copias* (*the foot, the infantry*).

peditātus, -tūs, [**pedit**- + **atus**, cf. **consulatus**], **M.**, *foot, infantry*.

Pedius, -i, [?], **M.**, a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Quintus Pedius*, a nephew of *Cæsar* and a *legatus* under him in *Gaul*. He sided with *Augustus*, and was afterwards made *consul* by *Augustus's* patronage.

pēior, see **malus**.

pēius, see **male**.

pellis, -is, [?], **F.**, *a hide, a skin* (either on or off the body of an animal): *sub pellibus*, *in tents*, i.e. *in the field*.

pellō, **pellere**, **pepulī**, **pulsus**, [?], **3. v. a.**, *strike, beat, drive, defeat, repulse, rout*.

pendō, **pendere**, **pependī**, **pēnsus**, [?], **3. v. a.**, *hang, weigh, weigh out*. Hence (since *money* was earlier weighed, not counted), *pay, pay out*. — Esp. with words of punishment, *pay* (a penalty), *suffer* (punishment, cf. *dare* and *capere*).

penes [prob. acc. of st. in -os akin to **penitus**], prep. with acc., *in the power of*.

penitus [st. akin to **penes**, **penus**, etc., + **itus**, cf. **antiquitus**], adv., *far within, deeply, entirely, utterly*: *penitus ad extremos finis* (*clear to, all the way to*).

1. per [unc. case-form], adv. (in composition) and prep. w. acc., *through, along, over, among*. — Fig., *through, by means of* (cf. **ab**, *by*, directly), *by the agency of*. — Often accompanied by the idea of hindrance: *per anni tempus potuit, the time of the year would allow*; *per te licere, you do not prevent, you allow*; *per aetatem non poterant* (*on account of*). — Often in adv. expressions: *per fidem, in good faith*, in reference to a deception on the other side; *per concilium, in council*; *per insidias, treacherously*; *per cruciatum, with torture*; *per vim, forcibly*; *locus ipse per se* (*in and of itself*).

2. per [prob. a different case of

same st. as 1. per], adv. in comp., *very, exceedingly, completely*.

peractus, -a, -um, p. p. of perago.

peragō, -agere, -ēgi, -actus, [1. perago], 3. v. a., *conduct through, finish, accomplish*: concilium (*hold to the end*); conventus (*finish holding*).

perangustus, -a, -um, [2. perangustus], adj., *very narrow*.

perceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of percipio.

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [1. per-capio], 3. v. a., *take in* (completely), *learn, acquire, hear*. — Esp. of harvests, *gather*. Hence, fig., *reap*: fructus victoriae.

percontātiō, -ōnis, [percontā- (*inquire*) + tio], F., *inquiry, inquiries* (though sing. in Latin).

percurrō, -currere, -cucurri, (-curri), -cursus, [1. per-curro], 3. v. n. and a., *run along*.

percussus, -a, -um, p. p. of percutio.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus, [1. per-quatio, *shake*], 3. v. a., *hit, strike, run through*.

perdisco, -discere, -didici, no p. p., [1. per-disco], 3. v. a., *learn thoroughly, get by heart*.

perditus, -a, -um, p. p. of perdo.

perdo, perdere, perdidī, perditus, [1. per-do], 3. v. a., *destroy* (cf. interficio), *ruin*. — perditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *ruined, desperate, abandoned*.

perducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, [1. per-duco], 3. v. a., *lead through, lead along, bring over, carry along, make* (fossam), *march* (legionem). — Fig., *prolong, win over, bring*: rem ad extremum casum (*reduce*).

perductus, -a, -um, p. p. of perduco.

perendinus, -a, -um, [perendie (†peren-die, cf. postridie) + inus], adj., (*of the day beyond*, cf. per), *of day after to-morrow*: perendino die, *day after to-morrow, in two days*.

perēō, -īre, -īl (-ivī), -itūrus, [1. per-eo, go], irr. v. n., *perish, be killed* (in battle).

perequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [1. perequito, cf. eques], 1. v. a. and n., *ride over* (or around).

perexiguus, -a, -um, [2. perexiguus], adj., *very small*.

perfacilis, -e, [2. per-facilis], adj., *very easy*.

perfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of perficio.

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [1. per-fero], irr. v. a., *carry through* (or over): opinioem (*spread among*); consilium (*carry over*); famam (*bring*). — Also, *bear through* (to the end), *endure, suffer, submit to*.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [1. per-facio, *make*], 3. v. a., *accomplish, complete, finish, make* (complete). — With ut (uti), *succeed* (in doing or having done), *cause to*.

perfidia, -ae, [perfidō- + ia], F., *perfidy, treachery, faithlessness*.

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgi, fractus, [1. per-frango], 3. v. a., *break through*.

perfuga, -ae, [1. per-†fuga (FUG + a, cf. scriba)], M., *a refugee, a fugitive, a deserter*.

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, no p. p., [1. per-fugio], 3. v. n., *run away, flee* (to a place), *escape to*.

perflugium, -ī, [1. per-+flugium, cf. perflugio], N., a place of refuge, refuge.

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus (?), [1. per-rego, keep straight], 3. v. n., (keep one's direction?), keep on, continue to advance, advance.

periclitor, -ārī, -ātus, [†periclitō- (as if p. p. of periculus, cf. periculum)], 1. v. dep., try, make a trial, be exposed, be put in peril.

periculōsus, -a, -um, [poriculō- + osus], adj., dangerous.

periculum (-clum), -ī, [†peri- (cf. ex-perior, try) + culum], N., a trial, an attempt. Hence, *peril*, danger, risk.

peritus, -a, -um, [†peri- (cf. ex-perior, try) + tus], p. p. as adj., (tried), experienced, skilled, skilful.

perlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of perfero.

perlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of perlego.

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [1. per-lego], 3. v. a., read through, read (a letter aloud).

perluō, -luere, -luī, -lūtus, [1. per-luo], 3. v. a., wash all over. — Pass. (as reflex.), bathe.

permāgnus, -a, -um, [2. permagnus], adj., very great, very large.

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, mānsūrus, [1. per-maneo], 2. v. n., remain (to the end), continue, hold out, persist: in eadem libertate (continue to live, etc.).

permisceō, -miscēre, -miscuī, -mixtus (-mistus) [2. per-misceo], 2. v. a., mix (thoroughly), mingle.

permissus, -a, -um, p. p. of permitto.

permittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [1. per-mitto], 3. v. a., (give over), grant, allow, give up, entrust: fortunās (trust); summam imperi (place in the hands of, etc.); suffragiis rem (leave the matter to, etc.).

permixtus, -a, -um, p. p. of permisceo.

permōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of permoveo.

permovēō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [1. per-moveo], 2. v. a., move (thoroughly), influence, affect.

permōtus, -a, -um, p. p., much affected, much influenced, overcome.

permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsi, -mulsus, [1. per-mulceo], 2. v. a., smooth over. Hence, soothe, pacify.

perniciēs, -ēī, [?, akin to nex, death], F., destruction, ruin.

perpaucus, -a, -um, [2. per-paucus], adj.—Plur., very few, but very few, only a very few.

perpendiculum, -ī, [perpendi- (st. of perpendo, hang down) + culum], N., a plumb line: ad perpendiculum, perpendicularly.

perpetior, -peti, -pessus, [1. per-patior], 3. v. dep., suffer, endure.

perpetuus, -a, -um, [1. per-+petuus (PET (aim) + uus)], adj., (keeping on through), continuing, continued, continuous, without interruption, lasting, permanent: vita (whole); paludes (continuous); in perpetuum, forever, permanently. — Abl. as adv., perpetuō, forever, constantly, continually.

perquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitus, [1. per-quaero], 3. v. a., search for, inquire about.

perumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus, [1. *per-rumpo*], 3. v. a. and n., *break through, force one's way through, break, force a passage*.

perruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *perumpo*.

perscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, [1. *per-scribo*], 3. v. a., *write out* (in full).

persequor, -sequi, -secutus, [1. *per-sequor*], 3. v. dep., *follow up, pursue, attack: mortem, iniurias* (avenge).

perseverō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [*perseverō*], *very strict*, 1. v. n., *persist*.

persolvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solūtus, [2. *per-solveo*], 3. v. a., *pay* (fully). — Esp. (cf. *pendo*) of penalties, *pay, suffer* (punishment).

perspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *perspicio*.

perspicō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus, [1. *per-†specio*], 3. v. a., *see through, see, inspect, examine*. — Also, *see thoroughly*. — Fig., *see clearly, see, understand, learn, observe, find, discover*.

perstō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātūrus, [1. *per-sto*], 1. v. n., *stand firm, persist, remain firm, be firm*.

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, [1. *per-suadeo*], *advise*, 2. v. a. and n., *induce, persuade: hoc volunt persuadere* (make people believe). — Pass. (impers.), *be persuaded* (dat. of person), *be satisfied, believe*.

perterreō, -terrere, -terruī, -territus, [1. *per-terreo*], 2. v. a., *terrify, alarm: perterritus equitatus* (put in a panic); *timore perterritus, struck with terror; quos perterritos* (panic-stricken, flying in terror).

pertinācia, -ae, [*pertinac- + ia*], F., *obstinacy, stubbornness*.

pertineo, -tinēre, -tinui, no p. p., [1. *per-teneo*], 2. v. n., (*hold a course towards*), *tend, extend*. — Fig., *have to do with, tend: eodem illo ut, etc.* (have the same purpose, look in the same direction); *res ad plures pertinet* (more are implicated in, etc.).

pertuli, see *perfero*.

perturbātiō, -ōnis, *perturbā- + tio*, F., *disturbance, alarm, panic, demoralization*.

perturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *perturbo*.

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [1. *per-turbo*, *disturb*], 1. v. a., *disturb, throw into confusion, confuse, throw into disorder, alarm, terrify*.

pervagor, -ārī, -ātus, [1. *per-vagor*], 1. v. dep., *roam about, scatter*.

pervenio, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus, [1. *per-venio*], 4. v. n., (*come through to*), *arrive at, get as far as, reach, come*. — Fig., *arrive: ad hunc locum* (come to this point); *pars* (of property, come, fall).

perventus, -a, -um, p. p. of *pervenio*.

pēs, pedis, [PAÐ, *tread, as st.*], M., *the foot*. — Also, as a measure, *a foot*. — Esp.: *pedem referre, draw back, give way; pedibus proeliari* (on foot); *ad pedes desillire* (to the ground, from on horseback, etc.); *pedibus aditus, approach by land*.

petō, petere, petivī, petitus, [PAT], 3. v. a. and n., (*fall?, fly?*), *aim at, attack, make for, try to get, seek, go to get, go to*. Hence, *ask, request*,

look for, get: *petentibus Haeduis* (at the request of, etc.); *fugam* (take to).

Petrocoriī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe on the Garonne (*Perigord*).

Petrōnius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Marcus Petronius*, a centurion in Cæsar's army.

Petrosidius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Lucius Petrosidius*, a standard-bearer in Cæsar's army.

phalanx, -angis, [Gr. φάλαγξ], F., a *phalanx* (properly an arrangement of troops in a solid mass from eight to twenty-four deep, but applied also to other bodies of troops), an array.

Pictōnes (Pect-), -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic tribe south of the Loire (*Poitou*).

pietās, -tātis, [piō-, dutiful, + tas], F., *filial affection*, *affection* (for the gods or one's country, etc.), *patriotism*.

pilum, -ī, [?], N., a *pestle*. — Also, a *javelin* (the peculiar weapon of the Roman legion, with a heavy wooden shaft about 4 ft. long, and an iron head on a long iron shank, making a missile more than 6 ft. long): **pilum murale**, a heavier missile of the same kind for use in siege works.

pilus, -ī, [pilum], M., a *century* (of soldiers, a name applied to indicate the rank of centurions, see *centurio*). — Also, a *centurion* (of a particular rank). — Phrases: *primi pilī centurio* (of the first century or rank); *primum pilum duxerat*, had commanded in the first century of the first cohort, been first centurion.

pinna, -ae, [= *penna*, feather

(*PET* (*fly*) + *na*)], F., an *artificial parapet* (of osier or the like run along the top of a wall).

Pīrūstae, -ārum, [?], M. plur., a tribe of Illyria.

piscis, -is, [?], M., a *fish*. — Collectively, *fish*.

Pisō, -ōnis, [piō (*pease*) + o], M., (a man with a wart like a pea?, cf. *Cicero*), a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, a *legatus* in the army of Cassius which was defeated by the Helvetii B.C. 107, and grandfather of No. 2. — 2. *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Cæsonius*, father of Calpurnia, Cæsar's wife. — 3. *Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus*, consul with M. Messala in B.C. 61. — 4. *Piso*, an Aquitanian (probably enfranchised by one of the above named).

pix, **pīcis**, [?], F., *pitch*.

placēō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [†*placō* (cf. *placo*, and *placidus*)], 2. v. n., *please*. — Esp. in third person, *it pleases* (one), *one likes*, *one determines*, *one decides*.

placidē [old case-form of *placidus*, *quiet*], adv., *quietly*, *calmly*.

plācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [st. akin to *placeo*], 1. v. a., *pacify*, *appease*.

Plancus, -ī, [perh. akin to *planus*], M. (*Flat-foot*), a Roman family name. — See *Munatius*.

plānē [old case-form of *planus*], adv., *flatly*, *clearly*, *entirely*.

plānitīēs, -ēī, [planō + *tēs*, cf. -*tia*], F., a *plain*.

plānus, -a, -um, [unc. root + *nus*], adj., *flat*, *level*, *even*: *carinae planiores* (less deep, less rounding).

plēbs (plēbēs), -is (-ēi), [PLE (in *plenus*) + unc. term. (cf. *turba*)], *F.*, the populace, the multitude, the common people.

plēnē [old case-form of *plenus*], *adv.*, fully, entirely, completely.

plēnus, -a, -um, [PLE (in *pleo*, *fill*) + *nus*], *adj.*, full: luna; legio.

plērumque, see *plerusque*.

plērusque, -aque, -umque, [PLE (in *pleo*, *fill*) + *rus-que* (cf. *-pletus*, *plenus*)], *adj.* only in plur., most of, very many. — *Acc. sing. as adv.*, plērumque, generally, usually, for the most part, very often.

Pleumoxii, -ōrum, [Celtic], *M. plur.*, a people of Belgic Gaul, clients of the Nervii.

plumbum, -i, [?], *N.*, lead. — **plumbum album**, tin.

plūrimus, see *multus*.

plūs, [akin to *pleo*, *fill*], see *multus*.

pluteus, -i, [?], *M.*, a mantelet, a cover (movable, for defence). — Also, a bulwark, a defence, a breastwork.

pōculum, -i, [root (or st.) PO- (in *potus*, *drink*) + *culum*], *N.*, a drinking-cup.

poena, -ae, [perh. † *povi-* (PU) + *na* (cf. *punio*, *punish*)], *F.*, a penalty. Hence, a punishment (see *persolvo*, *repeto*).

pollex, -icis, [?], *M.*, the thumb (with or without *digitus*).

polliceor, -licēri, -licitus, [† *por-* for *pro* (cf. *portendo*) -*liceor*, *bid*], 2. v. dep., offer, promise (voluntarily): liberaliter (made liberal offers).

pollicitātiō, -ōnis, [pollicitā- + *tio*], *F.*, an offer, a promise.

pollicitus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of *polliceor*.

Pompēius, -i, [† *pompe-* (dialectic form of *quinque*) + *ius*], *M.*, a Roman gentile or family name. — *Esp.*: 1. *Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus*, the great rival of Cæsar, consul with Marcus Crassus in B.C. 58. — 2. *Gnaeus Pompeius*, an interpreter of *Quintus Titurius*, probably a Gaul enfranchised by one of the *Pompeys*.

pondus, -eris, [PEND (in *pendo*, *weigh*) + *us*], *N.*, weight.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, [prob. † *por-sino* (cf. *polliceor*)], 3. v. a., lay down, place, put: posita tollere (things laid up, consecrated); ponere custodes (set); castra (pitch); praesidium (station, but see below). — *Fig.*, place, lay, make, depend on: in fuga praesidium; spem salutis in virtute (find, found, seek). — **positus**, -a, -um, *p. p.*, situated, lying, depending on: posita est, lies; positum est in, etc., depends on, etc.

pōns, pontis, [?], *M.*, a bridge.

populātiō, -ōnis, [populā- + *tio*], *F.*, a plundering, a raid.

populor, -ārī, -ātus, [populō-], 1. v. dep., (strip, of people?, cf. *Eng.*, skin, shell, bark a tree), ravage, devastate.

populus, -i, [PAL? (in *pleo*, *fill*), reduplicated + *us*], *M.*, (the full number, the mass), a people (in its collective capacity), a nation, a tribe (as opposed to individuals): populus Romanus (the official designation of the Roman state).

por-, **port-**, [akin to *pro*], *oba prep.*, only in comp., forth.

porrēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of por-rigo.

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, rēctus, [†por- (cf. polliceor), -rego], 3. v. a., stretch forth: porrecta loca pertinent (stretch out in extent).

porrō [?], akin to †por (cf. por-rigo)], adv., furthermore, further, then (in narration).

porta, -ae, [POR (go through) + ta], F., (way of traffic ?), a gate.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [porta-?], 1. v. a., carry (perh. orig. by way of traffic), bring, convey.

portōrium, -ī, [?, porta (reduced) + orium (N. of -orius), perh. orig. †portor + ius], N., (gate-money? or carrier's money?), a duty (an impost), a toll.

portus, -tūs, [POR (cf. porta) + tus], M., (a place of access), a harbor, a haven, a port.

poscō, poscere, poposcī, no p. p., [perh. akin to prex, prayer], 3 v. a., demand (with some idea of claim, stronger than peto, weaker than flagito), require, claim.

positus, -a, -um, p. p. of pono.

possessiō, -ōnis, [†por-†sessio (cf. obsessio)], F., possession, occupation —Concretely (as in Eng.), possessions, lands (possessed).

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus, [†por-sedeo], 2 v. a., (settle farther on?), occupy (in a military sense), possess (lands, of a people), hold possession of.

possum, posse, potuī, [pote- (for potis) -sum], irr. v. n., be able, can, etc.: plurimum posse, be most powerful, have very great influence; tan-

tum potest, has so much weight, power, influence; largiter posse, have great influence; multitudo posse, be strong in numbers; equitatu nihil posse, have no strength in cavalry; quicquid possunt, whatever power they have; quid virtute posent, what they could do by valor; fieri posse, be possible; ut spatium intercedere posset (might intervene); quam maximum potest, the greatest possible.

post [?], prob. abl. of st. akin to postis (cf. ante, antes, rows, and antae, pilasters)], adv. and prep. with acc., behind, after: post diem tertium, three days after; post se, in their rear; post hunc, next to him.

postea [post ea], adv., afterwards.

posteaquam [postea quam], conjunctive adv., (later than), after (only with clause).

posterus, -a, -um, [post- (or st. akin) + terus (orig. compar.)], adj., the next, later: postero die, the next day; in posterum, the next day. Plur. as noun, posterity. — postrēmus, -a, -um, superl., last. — postrēmō, abl., lastly, finally.

postpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [post-pono], 3. v. a., place behind, postpone: omnibus rebus postpositis, disregarding everything else.

postpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of post-pono.

postquam, [post quam], conjunctive adv., (later than), after.

postrēmō, see posterus.

postrēmus, see posterus.

postrīdiē [†posteri- (loc. of pos-

ternus) -die], adv., *the next day*: postridie eius diei, *the next day after that*.

postulātum, -i, [N. p. p. of postulo], N., *a demand, a requirement, a request, a claim*.

postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?], I. v. a., *claim* (with idea of right, less urgent than posco), *ask, request, require*: tempus anni (*require, make necessary*).

potēns, -entis, [p. of possum as adj.], adj., *powerful*: homo (*influential*); potentiores, *men of influence*.

potentātus, -tūs, [potent- + atus, cf. consulatus], M., *the chief power, supremacy*.

potentia, -ae, [potent- + ia], F., *power* (political influence), *authority* (not official or legal).

potestās, -tātis, [potent- + tas], F., *power* (official, cf. potentia, and civil, not military, cf. imperium), *power* (generally), *control, ability, opportunity, chance*: sui potestatem facere, *give a chance at them, give an opportunity to fight them*; se potestati alicuius permittere (*surrender, etc.*); consistendi potestas erat nulli (*chance, possibility*); discedendi potestatem facere (*give permission, etc.*); facta potestate, *having obtained permission*; imperium aut potestas, *military or civil power*; deorum vis ac potestas, *the power and dominion of the gods*.

potior, potiri, potitus, [poti-, cf. potis, *able*], 4 v. dep., *become master of, possess one's self of, get the control of*: imperio (*secure*); castris (*capture*).

potior, -us, -ōris, (compar. of potis], adj., *preferable*. — potius, acc as adv., *rather, preferably*.

potitus, -a, -um, p. p. of potior.

prae [unc. case-form of same st. as pro], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., *before, in comparison with*. — Esp. with words implying hindrance, *for, on account of* (some obstacle). — In comp., *before others, very, before, at the head of*.

praeacūtus, -a, -um, [prae-acutus (p. p. of acuo)], p. p. as adj., *sharpened to a point, pointed*.

praebeō, praebere, praebuī, praebitus, [prae-habeo], 2 v. a., (*hold before one*), *offer, present, furnish*: munimenta (*furnish, and so afford, make*).

praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautus, [prae-caveo], 2. v. n., *take care beforehand, take precaution, be on one's guard*.

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [prae-cedo], 3. v. a., *go before*. — Fig., *excel, surpass*.

praeeptus, -cipitis, [prae-caput], adj., *headlong, in haste*: locus praeeptus, *a steep incline*.

praeceptum, -i, [p. p. of praecipio], N., *an instruction, an order*.

praeceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of praecipio.

praecipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [prae-capio], 3. v. a., *take beforehand, anticipate*. — Also, *order, give instructions*.

praecipitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [praecipit-], I. v. a., *throw headlong*: se (*plunge headlong*).

praecipuē [old case-form of praecipuus], adv., *especially*.

praecipuus, -a, -um, [prae-†cap-
uus (CAP + vus)], adj., (*taking the
first place*), *special*.

praecūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus,
[prae-claudō], 3. v. a., (*close in front
of some one or something*), *shut off*,
barricade.

praecō, -ōnis, [?], m., *a herald*.

Praeconinus, -i, [praecon- + inus],
m., *a Roman family name*. — See
Valerius.

praecurrō, -currere, -cucurrī (-cur-
rī), -cursūrus, [prae-curro], 3. v. n.,
run on before, *hasten on before*, *has-
ten in advance*, *hurry on before*:
equites (*ride on in advance*); *celeri-
tate* (*get the start of*, etc.).

praeda, -ae, [prob. prae-†hida
(root of -hendo, *seize*, + a)], f.,
booty, *prey*, *plunder*.

praedicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†prae-
dicō- (or similar st. from prae with
DIC)], 1. v. a. and n., *make known*
(before one), *proclaim*, *assert*, *de-
scribe*, *boast*, *vaunt one's self*.

praedor, -ārī, -ātus, [praeda], 1. v.
dep., *plunder*, *take booty*.

praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus,
[prae-duco], 3. v. a., *lead* (etc.), *be-
fore*: *murum* (*carry out*, *draw
round*).

praefectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **prae-
ficio**. — As noun, see **praeficio**.

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [prae-
fero], irr. v. a., *place before*, *esteem
above*, *prefer to* (with quam): *se
alicui* (*show one's self better than*).

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus,
[prae-facio], 3. v. a., *put before*,
place in command of, *set over*. —
praefectus, p. p. as noun, *a cap-*

tain (esp. of cavalry), *a commander*,
an officer.

praefigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus,
[prae-figo], 3. v. a., *fix in front*, *set
on the edge* (of something).

praefixus, -a, -um, p. p. of **prae-
figo**.

praemetuō, -metuere, no perf., no
p. p., [prae-metuo], 3. v. a. and n.,
fear beforehand, *be anxious*.

praemittō, -mittere, -misi, -mis-
sus, [prae-mitto], 3. v. a., *send for-
ward*, *send on*, *send ahead*.

praemium, -i, [prae-†emium (EM,
in emo, *buy*, + ium)], (taken before
the general distribution or disposal
of booty?), n., *a reward*, *a prize*,
distinction (as a reward or prize):
magno praemio remunerari (*a great
price*).

praecoccupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
[prae-occupo], 1. v. a., *take in oppo-
sition* or *beforehand*: *timor animos*
(*take complete possession of*, to the
exclusion of everything else); *vias*
(*close against one*), *preoccupy*.

praecoptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [prae-
opto], 1. v. a., *wish in preference*,
choose rather, *prefer*.

praeparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [prae-
paro], 1. v. a., *prepare beforehand*.

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -posi-
tus, [prae-pono], 3. v. a., *put in com-
mand*, *set over*.

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rup-
tus, [prae-rumpo], 3. v. a., *break off*
(at the end or in front). — **praerup-
tus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *precipitous*.

praeruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **prae-
rumpo**.

praesaepiō (-sēp), -saepire, -saepsī,

-saepetus, [prae-saepio], 4. v. a., *hedge in, wall off*.

praesaepetus, -a, -um, p. p. of praesaepio.

praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, [prae-scribo], 3. v. a., (*write down beforehand*), *prescribe, order, direct, give directions*.

praescriptum, -ī, [N. p. p. of praescribo], N., *an order, orders*.

praescriptus, -a, -um, p. p. of praescribo.

praesēns, -entis, p. of praesum.

praesentia, -ae, [praesent- + ia], F., *presence, the present moment*: in praesentia, *for the moment, at the moment*.

praesentiō, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsus, [prae-sentio], 4. v. a., *see beforehand, find out in time, find out (beforehand)*.

praesertim [as if acc. of †praesertis (SER, in sero (join) + tis)], adv., *especially, particularly*.

praesidium, -ī, [prae-†sidium (SED + ium), cf. obsidium], N., (*a sitting down before*), *a guard, a garrison, a force* (detached for occupation or guard): intra praesidia, *within the lines*.—Fig., *protection, assistance, support*: praesidio litterarum (*with the assistance of, etc.*); in fuga praesidium ponere, *seek safety in flight*.

praestō [?, perh. "praesto," *I am here* (as if quoted)], adv., *on hand, ready, waiting for, in attendance upon*: praesto esse, *be waiting for, meet*.

praestō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātus (-stītus), [prae-sto], 1. v. a. and n.,

stand before, be at the head, excel, be superior: praestat, *it is better*.—Also, causatively (*bring before*), *furnish, display*: officium (*discharge, perform*); stabilitatem (*afford, possess*); fidem (*keep, perform one's duty*).

praesum, -esse, -fuī, [prae-sum]. irr. v. n., *be in front, be at the head of, be in command*: magistratui (*hold*).—praesēns, -entis, p., *present, immediate*: pluribus praesentibus, *in the presence of many*; praesens adesse, *be present in person*.

praeter [compar. of prae (cf. inter)], adv. and prep. with acc., *along by, past, beyond*.—Fig., *except, beside, contrary to*.

praetereā [praeter-ea (abl.)?], adv., *furthermore, besides*: si nemo praeterea, *if no one else*.

praetereō, -ire, -iī, -itus, [praeter-eo], irr. v. a. and n., *go by, pass by, pass over*.—praeteritus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *past*.—Esp. N. plur., praeterita, *the past* (cf. "bygones").

praeteritus, -a, -um, p. p. of praetereo.

praetermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [praeter-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go by, let slip, omit, neglect*.

praeterquam [praeter-quam], conjunctive adv., *except, besides*.

praetor, -tōris, [prae-†itor, (1, go + tor)], M., (*a leader*), *a commander*.—Esp., *a praetor*, one of a class of magistrates at Rome. In early times two had judicial powers and the others regular commands abroad. Later all during their year of office had judicial powers, but like the

consuls (who were originally called praetors) they had a year abroad as proprætors: *legatus pro prætore* (*lieutenant in command, acting as a prætor*).

praetōrius, -a, -um, [*praetor* + *ius*], adj., of a *praetor* (in all its senses); *praetoria cohors, the body guard, of a commander* (see *praetor*).

praeūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstus, [*prae-uro*], 3. v. a., *burn at the end* (in front); *praeustae sudes* (*burnt at the point, to harden them*).

praeūstus, -a, -um, p. p. of *praeuro*.

praevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [*prae-verto, turn*], 3. v. a., *anticipate, forestall, attend to first*.

prāvus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *crooked*. — Fig., *wrong, vicious*.

premō, *premere*, *pressī*, *pressus*, [?], 3. v. a., *press*. — Esp., *press hard, attack fiercely, harass, oppress: se ipsi, crowd, impede, embarrass each other*.

prendō (*prehendo*), *prendere*, *prendī*, *prēnsus*, [*prae* + *hendo*], 3. v. a., *seize* (against some one else?), *seize* (generally), *take, grasp*.

pretium, -ī, [?], N., a *price, cost, value*.

† *prex*, *precis* (dat., acc., and abl. only; plur. entire), [?], F., a *prayer, an entreaty, an imprecation*.

prīdiē [loc. of st. of *pro* (*prae*?) -*diē*, cf. *postrīdiē*], adv., *the day before*.

primipīlus [*primō*-*pīlus*], M., *the first centurion*. See *centurio* and *pīlus*.

primō [abl. of *primus*], adv., *at first* (opposed to *afterwards*, cf. *primum*).

primum [acc. of *primus*], adv., *first* (in order of incidents, opposed to *next*, etc.), *in the first place: cum primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible*.

primus, -a, -um, see *prior*.

prīnceps, -ipia, [*primō*- (reduced) -† *ceps* (CAP as st.)], adj., (*taking the lead*), *first, chief, foremost: principes belli inferendi* (*leaders in, etc.*); *locus* (*chief, highest*); *ea princeps persolvit* (*was the first to*). — Often as noun, *leading man, leader, chief man, chief: legationis* (*head*).

prīncipātus, -tūs, [*prīncip* + *atus*, cf. *consulatus*], M., *foremost position, first place, highest place, the lead* (in power and influence among states), *leadership*.

prior, -us, -ōris, [compar. of st. of *pro*], adj., *former, before: priores, those in front; non priores inferre* (*not the first to, etc.*). — *prius*, N. as adv., *before* (see also *priusquam*). — *primus*, -a, -um, superl., *first: agmen* (*front*); *primos civitatis* (*the best men*); a *prima obsidione, from the beginning of the siege: in primis, especially*. — See *primo* and *primum*.

prīstinus, -a, -um, [*prius*-*tinus*, cf. *diutinus*], adj., (*of former times*), *old, former: pristinus dies, the day before*.

prius, see *prior*.

priusquam [*prius*-*quam*], conj. adv., *earlier than, before*. Often separated.

privātim [as if acc. of † *priva-*

tis (privā- + tis)], adv., *privately*, as *private persons* (opp. to *magistratus*): *de suis privatim rebus* (*their own private affairs*); plus *posse privatim* (*in their own name*, opposed to official action).

privātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of *privo*, *deprive*], adj., (destitute of official character), *private*, *personal*.

prō [for *prod*, abl. of st. akin to *prae*, *prior*, etc.], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., *in front of*, *before*. Hence, *in place of*, *instead of*, *for*, *as*, *on behalf of*: *nihil pro sano*, *nothing prudent*; *pro explorato*, *ascertained, as certain*. — Also, *in view of*, *in accordance with*, *in proportion to*, *according to*, *considering*, *in return for*, *for*. — In comp., *before*, *forth*, *away*, *for*, *down* (as falling forward).

probātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *probo*.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [probō-], i. v. a., (*make good*, *find good*), *aprove*, *test*, *prove*, *show*, *be satisfied with*, *favor* (a plan), *adopt* (a measure).

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [pro-cedo], 3. v. n., *go forward*, *advance*, *proceed*: *longius* (*go to a distance*).

Proculus, -ī, [Proculō- + *lus*], m., a Roman family name. — See *Valerius*.

prōclinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *proclino*.

prōclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pro-clino], i. v. a., (*bend forward*), *throw down*: *res proclinata* (*falling, ruined*).

prōcōnsul, -ulis, [pro-consul, on account of the phrase *pro consule*],

m., a *proconsul*, an *ex-consul* (during his term of service abroad).

procul [?, †procl-, “off” (pro + *cus*) + *lus* (reduced, cf. *simul*)], adv., *at a distance* (not necessarily great), *at some distance*, *afar*, *from afar*.

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, no p. p., [pro-cumbo, *lie*], 3. v. n., *fall* (forward), *fall* (generally), *sink down*, *lie down* (for rest), *become lodged* (of grain). — Less exactly, *incline*, *slope*, *lean*.

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [procuro], i. v. a., *care for*, *have charge of*, *attend to*.

prōcurrō, -currere, -curri, (-cucurri), -cursurus, [pro-curro], 3. v. n., *run forward*, *charge*, *rush out*.

prōdeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus, [prod (see pro) -eo], irr. v. n., *go forth*, *come forth*, *come out*, *go forward*: *longius* (*go to any distance*).

prōdesse, see *prōsum*.

prōditiō, -ōnis, [pro-†ditio, cf. *prodo*], f., (*a giving away*), *treason*, *treachery*.

prōditor, -tōris, [pro-dator (cf. *prodo*)], m., a *traitor*, a *betrayor*.

prōditus, -a, -um, p. p. of *prodo*.

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [pro-do], 3. v. a., (*give forward*), *give forth*, *publish*, *betray* (give away), *transmit*, *hand down*: *memoriam* (*preserve*, by handing down to posterity); *memoria proditum*, *told in tradition*, *handed down*.

prōdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [pro-duco], 3. v. a., *lead forth*, *lead out*, *bring out* (iumenta), *draw up* (troops). — Fig., *protract*, *prolong*.

prōductus, -a, -um, p. p. of produco.

proelior, -ārī, -ātus, [proeliō-], i. v. dep., *fight* (in war).

proelium, -ī, [?], N., a battle (a single encounter, great or small), a contest, an engagement, a general engagement, a skirmish: committere (*engage, join battle, risk a battle, begin an engagement, begin the fight, fight*).

profectiō, -ōnis, [pro-factio (cf. proficiscor)], F., a setting out, a departure, retreat (the special idea coming from the context), starting, evacuation.

profectus, -a, -um, p. p. of proficio.

profectus, -a, -um, p. p. of proficiscor.

proferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [pro-fero], irr. v. a., *bring forth, bring out*.

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectūrus, [pro-facio], 3. v. n., (*make way forward*), advance (cf. proficiscor). — Fig., gain advantage ("get on"), gain (much or little), accomplish (something): satis ad laudem profectum est, *enough has been done for glory*; ad pacem parum profici, *not much was doing towards peace*; plus multitudine telorum proficere (*have the advantage in*).

proficiscor, -ficiscī, -fectus, [pro-†faciscor (cf. proficio)], 3. v. dep., (*make way forward*). — Esp., start, leave, depart, set out, withdraw, march out, go out, come out, sail out: quo proficiscimur, *whither we are going*; unde erant profecti, *whence*

they had come; ad proficiscendum pertinere (*to a journey, etc.*).

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus, [pro-fateor, confess], 2. v. dep., *declare publicly*: se (*offer one's self, volunteer as, declare one's self*).

prōfligātus, -a, -um, p. p. of profligo.

prōfligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†pro-fligō- (pro-†fligus, FLIG + us)], i. v. a., (*dash to the ground*). — Esp., put to rout, rout.

prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, no. p. p., [pro-fluo], 3. v. n., *flow forth, rise*.

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, [pro-fugio], 3. v. n., *flee forth, flee, escape, make one's escape*.

prōgnātus, -a, -um, [pro-(g)natus], p. p. as adj., *sprung from*: prognati ex, *descendants of*.

prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus, [pro-gradior, step, go], 3. v. dep., *go forward, march forward, march out, come out*. — Also, fig., *proceed, go*: amentia longius (go).

prōgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of progredior.

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus, [pro-habeo], 2. v. a., *hold off, keep off, repel, stop, prevent, restrain, hinder from, forbid*. — Also (by a change of relation of the two things concerned), *protect*: aliquem ab omni militum iniuria (keeping one protected from the assailant).

prohibitus, -a, -um, p. p. of prohibeo.

prōciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [pro-lacio], 3. v. a., *throw forward, throw away, cast* (down, cf. pro), *abandon*: aquillam intra vallum (*throw over*);

proiectae, casting themselves; **se ex navi** (*leap*).

proinde [pro-inde], adv., (*from there forward*), *therefore, hence*.

pröminēns, -entis, p. of **promineo**.

prömineo, -minēre, -minui, no p. p., [pro-†mineo (cf. minor, project)], 2. v. n., *lean forward, lean over*.

prömiscuē [old case-form of **promiscuus**], adv., *in common*.

prömissus, -a, -um, p. p. of **promitto**.

prömittö, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [pro-mitto], 3. v. a., (*let go forward*), *let grow* (of the hair): **promisso capillo sunt**, *they wear long hair*.

prömötus, -a, -um, p. p. of **promoveo**.

prömoveo, -movēre, -mövi, -mötus, [pro-moveo], 2. v. a., *move forward, advance, push forward*.

pröptus, -a, -um, [p. p. of **promo**, *bring forth*], as adj., (*taken out of the store ready for distribution*), *ready, quick, active*.

prömnturium, (-mon-), -i, [akin to **promineo**], N., *a headland*.

prönē [old case-form of **pronus**, *leaning*], adv., *with a slope*.

prönüntiö, -äre, -ävi, -ätus, [pronuntio], 1. v. a., (*publish forth*), *make known, communicate, declare, give orders, make proclamation*.

prope [?, akin to **pro**, cf. **procul** and **proximus**], adv. and prep. with acc., *near*. — Fig., *almost, nearly*. — Compar., **propius**, *nearer*: **propius tumultum** (as prep.). — Superl., **proximē**, *lately, last*.

pröpellö, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, [pro-pello], 3. v. a., *drive away* (cf. **pro**), *repulse, rout, dislodge, force back* (changing the point of view).

properö, -äre, -ävi, -ätus, [properö-, *quick*], 1. v. a. and n., *hasten, be in haste, make haste*.

propinquitās, -tätis, [propinquö- + tas], F., *vicinity, a being near, a position near*: **propinquitates fluminum** (*positions near, etc.*). — Esp., *nearness in blood, relationship, a relation (by blood)*.

propinquus, -a, -um, [st. akin to **prope** (or case-form) + **cus**], adj., *near at hand, near*. — Esp. by blood, *related*. — As noun in plur., *relatives*.

propior, -us, -öris, [compar. of st. of **prope**], adj., *nearer*. — **proximus**, superl. (of st. †procö-, cf. **procul**), *nearest, next, neighboring*: **bellum (last)**. — With force of prep. (cf. **prope**): **proximi Rhenum**, *nearest the Rhine*.

pröpönö, -pönere, -posui, -positus, [pro-pono], 3. v. a., *place before, set before, lay before*: **vexillum (hang out)**. — Less exactly, *offer, put in the way, present* (difficulty), *make known, state, represent*.

pröpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of **propono**.

proprius, -a, -um, [?, akin to **prope**?], adj., *of one's own*: **fines (particular)**; **hoc proprium virtutis** (*a peculiar property, a mark*).

propter [prope + ter, cf. **aliter**, **praeter**], adv. and prep. with acc., *near by*. — Also, *on account of* (cf. "all along of").

propterea [propter-ea (prob. abl. or instr. of is)], adv., *on this account*.—With **quod**, *because, inasmuch as*.

prōpugnātor, -tōris, [pro-pugno] (cf. **propugno**), *M.*, a *defender*.

prōpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [propugno], 1. v. n., (*rush forward to fight, or fight in front*), *rush out* (fighting), *discharge missiles* (ex silvis).

prōpulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [propulso (cf. **propello**)], 1. v. a., *repel, keep off, drive off, defend one's self against*.

prōra, -ae, [Gr.], *F.*, the *pro*w (of a ship).

prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, [pro-ruo], 3. v. a., *dash down, overthrow, demolish*.

prōrutus, -a, -um, p. p. of **proruo**.

prōsecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **prosequor**.

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [prosequor], 3. v. dep., *pursue, follow* (on one's way), *escort*.—Fig. (from escorting), *address, take leave of one* (with some kind of attention).

prōspectus, -tūs, [pro-spectus (cf. **prospicio**)], *M.*, *outlook, view*: in **prospectu**, *in sight*; **prospectu tenebris adempto**, *the view cut off by the darkness*.

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spec-tus, [pro-†specio], 3. v. a., *look forward, look out*.—Fig., *provide for, take care, look out*.

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus, [pro-sterno], 3. v. a., *dash to the ground, overthrow* (lit. and fig.).

prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfuī**, **prōfūtūrus**, [pro(d)-sum], irr. v. n., *be for the advantage of, benefit*: **quod allui prodest**, *by which one profits*.

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, [pro-tego], 3. v. a., (*cover in front*), *protect, cover*.

prōterreō, -terrere, -terrui, -territus, [pro-terreo], 2. v. a., *frighten away, drive away in fright*.

prōterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of **proterreo**.

prōtinus (-tenu), [pro-tenus, *as far as*], adv., *forward, straight on*. Hence, *straightway, forthwith, at once, instantly* (keeping right on).

prōturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **proturbo**.

prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [proturbo, *disturb*], 1. v. a., *drive in confusion, drive off, dislodge*.

prōvectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **provehō**.

prōvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectus, [pro-veho], 3. v. a., *carry forward*.—In pass., *be carried forth, sail out, set sail*: **leni Africo provectus** (*sail with, be driven by*).

prōveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [pro-venire], 4. v. n., *come forward*.—Esp. of fruits, *come up, grow*.

prōventus, -tūs, [pro-†ventus, cf. **eventus** and **provenio**], *M.*, *an issue* (a coming forth), *success, a result*.

prōvideō, -videre, -vidī, -visus, [pro-video], 2. v. a., *foresee, see beforehand, take care, make provision, provide, arrange beforehand*: **satis est provisum**, *sufficient provision has been made*.

prōvincia, -ae, [†provincō- (**vinc-**

as root of *vinco* (*conquer*) + *us* + *ia*], F., (office of one extending the frontier by conquest in the field), *office* (of a commander or governor), *a province* (in general), *a function*. — Transf., *a province* (governed by a Roman magistrate). — Esp., *The Province* (of Gaul); so with *nostra*, *ulterior*, *citerior* (the province, as opposed to the unconquered parts of Gaul).

prōvinciālis, -e, [provincia- + *lis*], adj., *of a province*. — Esp., *of the province* (of Gaul).

provisus, -a, -um, p. p. of *provideo*.

prōvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [pro- + *volō*], I. v. n., *fly forth*. — Less exactly, *rush forth*, *rush out*, *fly out* (of cavalry, etc.).

proximē, see *prope*.

proximus, see *propior*.

prūdētia, -ae, [prudent-, *foreseeing*, + *ia*], F., *foresight*, *discretion*.

Ptiānī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Aquitania.

pūbēs (pūber), -eris, [?, prob. same root as *puer*], adj., *adult*. — Plur. as noun, *adults*, *grown men*, *young men of age*.

publicē [old case-form of *publicus*], adv., *publicly*, *in the name of the state*, *as a state*, *on behalf of the state*: *publice iurare* (*for the people*, making the oath bind them).

publicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [publicō-], I. v. a., (*make belong to the people*), *confiscate*.

publicus, -a, -um, [populō- + *cus*], adj., *of the people* (as a state), *of the state*, *public*: *consilium* (a

state measure, *a public measure*, *action by the state*, *action by general consent*); *res publica*, *the commonwealth*, *the state*, *the interests of state*, *public business*; *relatis in publicum cornibus* (*publicly displayed*); *mulieres in publicum procurrare* (*abroad into the streets*).

Pūblius, -ī, [prob. populō- + *ius*, cf. *publicus*], M., a Roman *præno-*men.

puDET, *puDēre*, *puDuit* (*puDitum* est), [?], 2. v. impers., (*it shames*), *one is ashamed* (translating the accusative as subject).

puDor, -ōris, [PUD (in *puDET*) + *or*], M., *shame*, *a sense of shame*, *a sense of honor*.

puer, -ī, [?], M., *a boy*. — Plur., *children* (of either sex); *a pueris*, *from childhood*.

puerilis, -e, [puerō- (reduced) + *ilis*], adj., *of a child*: *aetas* (*of childhood*).

pūgna, -ae, [PUG (in *pugno*) + *na*], F., *a fight* (less formal than *proelium*): *ad pugnam*, *for fighting*; *genus pugnae* (*of fighting*).

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pugna-], I. v. n., *fight*, *engage*. — Often impers. in pass., *pugnatum est*, etc., *an engagement took place*, *they fought*, *the fighting continued*. — Esp.: *pugnandi potestatem fecit*, *offered battle*; *pugnantes*, *those engaged*.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, [?], adj., *beautiful*, *handsome*, *fine*. — Fig., *fine*, *noble*, *splendid*.

Pullō, -ōnis, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Titus Pullo*, a centurion in Cæsar's army.

pulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of pello.

pulsus, -ūs, [PEL (in pello) + tus], M., *a stroke, a beat*: pulsu remorum praestare (*the working, etc.*).

pulvis, -eris, [?], M., *dust*.

puppis, -is, [?], F., *the stern*.

pūrgātus, -a, -um, p. p. of purgo.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†purigō- (purō- + †agus, cf. ago)], I. v. a.,

clean, clear. — Fig., *excuse, exonerate, free from suspicion, exculpate*.

putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [putō- (st. of putus, *clean*)], I. v. a., *clean up, clear up*. — Esp.: *rationes (clear up accounts)*. Hence alone, *reckon, think, suppose*.

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, [?], adj., only with montes, *the Pyrenees mountains*, between France and Spain.

Q

Q., for Quīntus.

quā [abl. or instr. (?) of qui], rel. adv., *by which (way), where*.

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, [quadrāginta (reduced) + nus], distrib. num. adj., *forty each, forty (each often omitted in Eng.)*.

quadrāgintā [akin to quattuor], indecl. num. adj., *forty*.

quadringentī, -ae, -a, [akin to quattuor], num. adj., *four hundred*.

quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesītus, [?, with r for original s], 3. v. a., *search for, look for, inquire about, inquire, ask*: eadem (*make the same inquiries*).

quaestiō, -ōnis, [quaes (as root of quaero) + tio], F., *an investigation*: habere de aliquo (*examine, as witnesses, usually by torture*).

quaestor, -tōris, [quaes (as root of quaero) + tor], M., (*investigator, or acquirer, perh. both*). — Esp., *a quaestor* (the Roman officer who had charge of the finances of an army).

quaestus, -tūs, [quaes (as root of quaero) + tus], M., *acquisition*.

quālis, -e, [quō- (st. of quis) +

alis], inter. adj., *of what sort? qualis ascensus (what is the nature of? etc.)*.

quam [case-form of quis and qui, cf. tam, nam], adv. and conj.: 1. Interrog., *how?* — 2. Rel., *as, than*: praeferre quam (*rather than*). — Often with superlatives, *as much as possible*: quam maximus, *the greatest possible*; quam maxime, *very much*. — See also postquam, posteaquam, priusquam (often separated), which are best translated by a single word, omitting the relative part, according to the common English idiom.

quamdiū (often written separately), adv. (see diu): 1. Interrog., *how long?* — 2. Rel., *as long, as long as* (with antecedent omitted).

quam ob rem (often found together), adv. phrase: 1. Interrog., *why?* — 2. Rel., *on which account, for which reason*.

quamvis [quam vis], adv., *as you please, however, no matter how*.

quandō [quam + unc. case-form akin to de], adv., *at any time: si quando, if ever, whenever*.

quantō, see quantus.

quantus, -a, -um, [prob. for *ka-* (root of *qua*) + *vant* + *us*], adj.:

1. Interrog., *how great? how much?*
quantum boni, how much good?
quantae civitates (how important?).

— 2. Relative, *as great as, as much as*: *tantum . . . quantum, so much . . . as*; *so quanta . . . tanta pecunia.*

quantusvis, -avis, -umvis, [*quantus-vis* (from *volo*)], *however great, as great as you please.*

quā rē, adv. phrase, *by which thing, wherefore, therefore, on account of which* (circumstance, etc.), *why*. — The relative and interrogative senses are not always distinguishable; *neque commissum qua re, nothing had been done for which*, etc.; *res hortabantur qua re*, etc. (*many reasons for doing so urged*, etc., *to*).

quartus, -a, -um, [*quattuor-* (reduced) + *tus*], num. adj., *fourth*: *quartus decimus, fourteenth.*

quasi [*quam* (or *quā*) -*si*], conj., *as if*: *quasi vero, as if forsooth* (ironical).

quattuor [?, reduced pl.], indecl. num. adj., *four*.

quattuordecim [*quattuor-decem*], indecl. num. adj., *fourteen*.

-que [unc. case-form of *qui*], (always appended to the word or to some part of the phrase which it connects), conj., *and*. — Sometimes connecting the general with the particular, *and in general, and other*.

quem ad modum, phrase as adv., *how, just as, as*.

queror, **queri**, **questus**, [?, with *r* for original *s*], 3. v. dep., *complain*,

complain of, find fault, find fault with, bewail, lament.

questus, -a, -um, p. p. of *queror*.

quī, **quae**, **quod**, **cūius**, [prob. *quō* + *i* (demon.)], rel. pron., *who, which, that*. — Often where a demon. is used in Eng., *this, that*. — Often implying an antecedent, *he who*, etc.: *ea quae, things which, whatever*; *qua de causa, for this reason*; *qui patebant (though they, etc.)*; *qui videant, men to see, scouts*; *qui, and they*; *habere sese quae, with subjv. (something to, etc.)*; *qui potuissent (men who)*; *qui postularent, to demand*; *haec esse quae, this was what*; *qui faceret, in that he, etc.*; *paucis diebus quibus (after)*; *idem quod, the same as*. — *quō*, abl. of degree of difference as adv., *the (more, less, etc.)*. — See also *quis*, *quod*, 2 *quo*, and 3 *quo*.

quicquam, see *quisquam*.

quicumque, **quae**, **quod**, [*quicumque* (cf. *quisque*)], indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whichever, whatever*.

quidam, **quae**, **quod** (*quid*-), [*qui-dam* (case of *DA*, cf. *nam, tam*)], indef. adj. pron., *a* (possibly known, but not identified), *a certain, certain, a kind of* (referred to as belonging to the class, but not exactly the thing spoken of): *artificio quodam, a kind of trick*; *quidam ex militibus (one)*.

quidem [unc. case-form of *qui* + *dem* (fr. *DA*, cf. *tandem, idem*)], adv., giving emphasis, but with no regular English equivalent: *ne . . . quidem, not . . . even, not . . . either*; *vestrae quidem certe, yours at least*,

with emphasis; *si quidem, if at least, in so far as, since.*

quies, -ētis, [quies- (st. of *quiesco*, keep quiet) + tis (reduced)] F., *rest, sleep, repose.*

quiētus, -a, -um, [quies- (st. of *quiesco*, cf. *quies*) + tus], p. p. as adj., *at rest, quiet, peaceable, settled, at peace, free from disturbance.*

quīn [qui (abl. or instr. of *qui*) + ne], conj., interrog., *how not?* and rel., *by which not*: *quin etiam, nay even, in fact.* — After negative verbs of hindrance and doubt, *so but that, but that, that, from* (doing a thing), *to* (do a thing); *non dubito quin, I doubt not that*; also, rarely, *I do not hesitate to*; *non aliter sentio quin, I have no other idea than that*; *non exspecto quin, I do not delay doing, etc.*; *nec abest ab eo quin, it is not far from being the case that, etc.*

quīnam (quis-), quae-, quod- (quid-), cūius-, [qui-nam], interr. pron., *who?* etc. (emph.): *quibusnam manibus* (*with what possible?* etc.).

quīncūnx, -ūncis, [quinque-uncia, ounce], F., (an arrangement of dots in the form marked on the five-ounce piece of copper, ⋄⋄), *a quincunx*: *in quincuncem dispositis* (*in quincuncial or alternate order*).

quīndecim [quinque-decem], indecl. num. adj., *fifteen.*

quīngentī, -ae, -a, [quinque-centum], num. adj., *five hundred.*

quīnī, -ae, -a, [quinque + nus], distrib. num. adj., *five at a time, five* (at a time).

quīnquāgintā [quinque + unc. st.], indecl. num. adj., *fifty.*

quīnque [?], indecl. num. adj., *five.*

quīntus, -a, -um, [quinque + tus]. num. adj., *fifth.* — Esp. as a Roman praenomen (orig. the fifth-born?).

Quīntus, -i, see *quintus*.

quis (quī), quae (qua), quid (quod), cūius [st. qui- and quō-]: 1. Interrog. adj. pron., *who? which? what?* — 2. Indef., *one, any one, any thing*: *ne quid, that nothing*; *ubi quis, when any one*; *si quis, if any one.*

quisnam, see *quinam*.

quispiam, quae-, quid- (quod-), cūius-, [quis-piam (pe-iam, cf. *quippe, nempe*)], indef. adj. pron., *any, any one, any thing.*

quisquam, no fem., quid- (quic-), cūius-, [quis-quam], indef. pron. used substantively (cf. *ullus*), only with negatives and words implying a negative, making a universal negative, *any one, anything.* — As adj., *any.*

quisque, quae-, quid- (quod-), cūius-, [quis-que], indef. adj. pron. (distrib. universal), *each, each one, every.* — Esp. with superlatives, implying that things are taken in the order of their quality: *nobilissimus quisque, all the noblest*, one after the other in the order of their nobility; *antiquissimum quodque tempus, the most ancient times* in their order; *decimus quisque, every tenth, the tenth part of, one in ten.* — With *ut*, and *ita*, a proportion is indicated, *in proportion as . . . so, the more . . . the more.*

quisquis, quaequae, quicquid (quidquid), cuiuscuius, [quis,

doubled], indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever, every one who, all who.*

quīvis, quae-, quid- (quod-), cuius-, [qui-vis], indef. adj. pron., *who you please, any one, any whatever* (affirmative), *any* (whatever).

1. quō, see qui.

2. quō [old dat. of qui], adv.: 1. Interrog., *whither?* — 2. Rel., *whither, into which, as far as* (i.e. to what end): *quo intrare* (*which*); *habere quo* (*have any place to go to, or the like*). — 3. Indef., *anywhere.*

3. quō [abl. of qui], as conj., *in order that* (with comparatives), *that: magis eo quam quo* (*than that, than because*). — Esp., quō minus, *that not, so that not: recusare quominus, refuse to.*

quoad [quo-ad], conj., (*up to which point*), *as far as, until, as long as.*

quod [N. of qui], conj., (*as to which*), *because, inasmuch as, in that, as for the fact that, the fact that, that, as for* (with clause ex-

pressing the action): *quod ai, now if, but if.*

quō minus, see 3 quo.

quoniam [quom (cum) -iam], conj., (*when now*), *inasmuch as, since, as, seeing that.*

quoque [?], conj., following the word it affects, (*by all means?*), *also, as well.* Cf. etiam (usually preceding).

quōque, see quisque.

quōque, quo with enclitic.

quōqueversus, see versus.

quot [akin to quis], adj. pron. indecl.: 1. Interrog., *how many?* — 2. Rel., *as many, as many as* (with implied antecedent), *the number which.*

quotannis [quot-annis], adv., (*as many years as there are*), *every year, yearly.*

quotiēns [quot + iens, cf. quinquiens], adv.: 1. Interrog., *how often? how many times?* — 2. Rel., *as often, as often as* (with implied antecedent).

R

rādix, -icis, [?], F., *a root.* — Plur., *the roots* (of a tree), *the foot* (of a mountain).

rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsus, [?], 3. v. a., *shave, scrape.*

rāmus, -ī, [?], M., *a branch, a bough, a prong* (of antlers).

rapiditās, -tātis, [rapidō- + tas], F., *swiftness, rapidity.*

rapīna, -ae, [rapī- (as if st. of rapio, seize) + na (F. of -nus)], F., *plunder.* — Plur., *plundering.*

rārus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *thin, scattered, singly, in small bodies* (of soldiers), *a few at a time, few* (as being wide apart).

rāsus, -a, -um, p. p. of rado.

ratiō, -ōnis, [trati- (ra, in reor, + ti) + o], F., *a reckoning, an account, a roll.* — Also, *calculation, reason, prudence, terms, a plan, science* (or art, or knowledge, as systematic), *a reason* (as consisting in a calculation), *a manner, a method,*

a consideration: rationem habere, take an account, take account of, have regard to, take into consideration, take measures, take care of, a mercantile term, cf. account; rei militaris (art, also nature); omnibus rationibus, in all ways, in all respects; proeli (character); reposcere (demand an account, make one responsible); rationem habere ut, take care that, etc.; rationem habere frumentandi (take measures for, etc.).

ratis, -is, [?], F., a raft.

Rauraci, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe on the upper Rhine.

re-, red-, [abl. of unc. st. perh. akin to -rus], inseparable prep., back, again, away, out, un-. — Esp. implying a giving or taking something which is due, or which creates an obligation by the taking, see recipio, refero.

rebelliō, -ōnis, [rebelli- + o], F., a renewal of war, an uprising, a rebellion.

Rebilus, -i, [?], M., a Roman family name. — See Caninius.

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus, [re-cedo], 3. v. n., make way back, retire, withdraw.

recēns, -entis, [prob. p. of lost verb treceo, be back, (cf. recipero)], adj., (? just coming back?), new, fresh, late.

recēnsēō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsus, [re-censeo, estimate], 2. v. a., review, inspect (of troops).

receptāculum, -i, [receptā- + culum], N., a retreat, a place of refuge.

receptus, -a, -um, p. p. of recipio.

receptus, -tūs, [re-captus, cf. recipio], M., a retreat, a way of retreat, a refuge: receptui canere, to sound a retreat.

recessus, -sūs, [re-+cessus (cf. recedo)], M., a retreat: recessum dare (a chance to retreat).

recidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, [re-cado], 3. v. n., fall again, fall back, fall upon (one after some one else).

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [re-capio], 3. v. a., take back, get back, recover, take in, receive, admit: misericordiam (admit of); tela recipi, be exposed to missiles; ad se (attack). — With reflexive, retreat, fly, return, retire, get off, withdraw, resort: se ad aliquem (rally on).

recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-cito], 1. v. a., read (aloud).

reclinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of reclino.

reclinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-clino], 1. v. a. and n., lean back, lean over, lean: reclinator, leaning.

rēctē [old case-form of rectus], adv., straight, right, rightly: recte factum, a good action.

rēctus, -a, -um, [p. p. of rego], adj., (directed), straight: recta regione, in a straight direction, parallel with.

recuperō (-cip-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†reciperō-, from recō- (cf. recensa) + parus (cf. pario)], 1. v. a., get back, recover, regain.

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-†causo (cf. excuso)], 1. v. a. and n., (give an excuse for drawing back), refuse, reject, repudiate, object to; abs., make

objections: de stipendio (*refuse to pay*, etc.); quin (*refuse to*); quominus (*refuse to*); periculum (*refuse to incur*).

rēda (rhēda), -ae, [perh. Celtic form akin to rota], F., a wagon (with four wheels).

redāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of redigo.

redditus, -a, -um, p. p. of reddo.

reddō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [re (red) -do], 3. v. a., *give back, restore, pay* (something due, cf. re), *render*: supplicatio (*offer*).

redēptus, -a, -um, p. p. of redimo.

redeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus, [re (red-) -eo], irr. v. n., *go back, return, come down again* (collis ad planitiem): eodem unde redierat (*come*); summa (*be referred*).

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [re (red-) -ago], 3. v. a., *bring back, reduce, render, bring* (sub imperium Galliam), *make* (one thing out of another).

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptus, [re- (red-) -emo], 3. v. a., *buy back, redeem, purchase, buy*.

redintegrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of redintegrō.

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re (red-) -integrō], 1. v. a., *renew* (again), *restore, revive* (spem).

reditiō, -ōnis, [red-titio (cf. redeo)], F., a *return*.

reditus, -tūs, [re- (red-) -itus], M., a *return*.

Redones, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Brittany.

redūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [re-duco], 3. v. a., *lead back, bring*

back, draw back, draw in, extend back.

refectus, -a, -um, p. p. of reficio.

referō, -ferre, -ttulī, -lātus, [re-fero], irr. v. a., *bring back, return, bring* (where something belongs), *report*. — Esp.: ad senatum (*lay before for action*); de re publica (*consult in regard to*); gratiam (*make return, show one's gratitude*); pedem (*retreat, draw back*).

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [re-facio], irr. v. a., *repair, refresh*: se ex labore (*rest*); exercitum (*allow to recover*).

refractus, -a, -um, p. p. of refringo.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -fractus, [re-frango], 3. v. a., *break away, break in* (portas): vim fluminis (*break, opposite to its direction*).

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, [re-fugio], 3. v. n., *run away, escape*.

Rēginus, -i, [akin to rex], M., a Roman family name. — See Antistius.

regiō, -ōnis, [REG + io, but cf. ratio], F., a *direction, a part* (of the country, etc.), a *region, a country, a district*: recta regione, *straight, along, parallel*; e regione, *over against, just opposite*.

rēgius, -a, -um, [reg- + ius], adj., of a king, *regal, royal*.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [regnō], 1. v. n., *rule, be in power, reign*.

rēgnum, -ī, [REG + num (N. of -nus)], N., a *kingdom, royal power, a throne*. — Plur., the *royal power* (of several cases).

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, [akin to rex], 3. v. a., *direct, manage, rule, have control of*.

rēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [re-lacio], 3. v. a., *throw back, hurl back, drive back, throw away, drive off*.

rēiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of reicio.

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, no p. p., [re-languesco], 3. v. n., *languish away, be relaxed, be weakened, be deadened*.

relātus, -a, -um, p. p. of refero.

relēgātus, -a, -um, p. p. of relego.

relēgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re-lēgo, *deputē*], 1. v. a., *remove, separate*.

relictus, -a, -um, p. p. of relinquo.

religiō, -ōnis, [?, re-legio (cf. religo)], F., (the original meaning unc.), *a religious scruple, a religious observance, the service of the gods, a superstition, a superstitious terror, religion*. — Plur., *religious matters* (of all kinds).

relinquō, -linquere, -liquī, -lictus, [re-linquō], 3. v. a., *leave behind, leave, abandon: obsidionem (raise)*. — Pass., *be left, remain*.

reliquus, -a, -um, [re-+liquus (LIQ (leave) + us)], adj., *left, remaining, the rest, the other, other* (meaning all other), *the others, all other, future* (of time), *remaining: nihil est reliqui, there is nothing left; nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt, made the greatest possible speed*.

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, [re-maneo], 2. v. n., *remain behind, remain, stay*.

rēmex, -igis, [remō- with unc. term. (perh. +agus)], M., *an oarsman, a rower*.

Rēmī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Belgæ about Rheims, which was their capital.

rēmigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [re-mig-], 1. v. n., *row*.

remigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [re-migro], 1. v. n., *move back, return*.

reminiscor, -minisci, [re-+minis- cor (MAN, in meminī, + isco)], 3. v. dep., *remember*.

remissus, -a, -um, p. p. of remitto.

remittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, [re-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go back, send back, throw back*. — Fig., *relax, cease to use, give up: remissioribus frigoribus (less intense)*.

remollēscō, -mollēscere, no perf., no p. p., [remollesco], 3. v. n., *soften away, soften, become feeble*.

remōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of removeo.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [re-moveo], 2. v. a., *move back, move away, send away, remove, draw away, get out of the way*. — **remotus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *far away, remote*.

remūneror, -ārī, -ātus, [re-munero], 1. v. dep., *repay, requite*.

Rēmus, -ī, [?], M., one of the Remi.

rēmus, -ī, [?], M., *an oar*.

rēnō, -ōnis, [?], M., *a skin, a pelt*.

renovō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [re-novo, fr. novus, new], 1. v. a., *renew*.

renūntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of renuntio.

renūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [renuntio], 1. v. a., *bring back word, report, proclaim*.

repellō, -pellere, -ppuli, -pulsus, [re-pello], 3. v. a., *drive back, repel, repulse*: *ab hac spe repulsi, disappointed in this hope.*

repente [?], adv., *suddenly.*

repentinus, -a, -um, [repente + inus], adj., *sudden, hasty*. — **repentinō**, abl. as adv., *suddenly.*

reperiō, reperire, repperi, reperitus, [re- (red-) pario], 4. v. a., *find out, discover, find* (by inquiry, cf. *invenio*): *reperi sunt multi, there were many.*

reperitus, -a, -um, p. p. of *reperio*.

repetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitus, [re-peto], 3. v. a., *try to get back, demand back, ask for*: *poenas (inflict, exact, cf. sumo).*

repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [repleo], 2. v. a., *fill up, supply well.*

replētus, -a, -um, p. p. of *repleo*.

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [reporto], 1. v. a., *carry back.*

reposcō, -poscere, no perf., no p. p., [re-posco], 3. v. a., *demand back, demand* (something due).

repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [repraesento], 1. v. a., *make present, do at once.*

reprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, [re-prehendo], 3. v. a., *drag back, seize hold of, find fault with, blame, censure.*

repressus, -a, -um, p. p. of *reprimō*.

reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [re-premo], 3. v. a., *check.*

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [repudiō-], 1. v. a., (*spurn with the feet, cf. tripudium*), *spurn, refuse, reject.*

repugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [repugno, fight], 1. v. n., *resist*. — *Fig., be in opposition.*

repulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *repello*.

requirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitus, [re-quaero], 3. v. a., *search out*. Hence, *request, require, demand, need.*

rēs, rei, [akin to reor, reckon], F., *property, business, an affair, a matter, a thing* (in the most general sense), *a fact, an occurrence, an event, a case, an action, an act*. — Often to be translated from the context: *ob eam rem, for this reason*; *quam ob rem, for which reason, wherefore*; *his rebus, by these means, for these reasons, on this account*; *ea res, this*, (often equivalent to a pronoun); *qua in re, in which*; *eius rei, of this*; *his rebus cognitis (this)*; *qua ex re futurum, the result of which would be*; *huc rei, for this purpose, for this*; *alia re iurare (in any other way)*; *nihil earum rerum quas, etc., nothing of what, etc.*; *sine certa re, without certain grounds*; *omnibus rebus, in every respect, in all ways*; *his omnibus rebus unum repugnabat (considerations, reasons, arguments)*; *quibus rebus occurrendum esse (dangers)*; *rem deferre, lay the matter before, not for consultation, bring information, cf. rem referre*; *rerum omnium casus, all accidents*; *rem gerere, operate, conduct operations, in war, succeed well or ill*; *his rebus gestis, after these operations, events*; *male re gesta, want of success*; *rerum natura, nature, also, state of the case*;

imperitus rerum, ignorant of the world; omnium rerum summa (of the whole, of all the forces); ei rei student (this branch, cavalry); cuius rei, of which, ships. — Esp., the affairs (of a person), position, interests, condition, fortunes, circumstances: Gallicis rebus favere (the interests of Gaul); rem esse in angusto (affairs, things); commutatio rerum, change of fortunes. — Esp.: res secundae, or adversae, success, prosperity, or adversity, want of success; res publica, the commonwealth, the state, the general interests, public business, politics; res communis, the common interest; de re publica, in regard to the welfare of the state, about politics; res divinae, divine worship, and everything pertaining to it, religion; res familiaris, property; res militaris, warfare, the art of war; res frumentaria, grain supply, grain; res alicui est, one has business with, has to do with, and the like; one's affair is; res est, it is a fact, it is so; novae res, a new form of government, revolution.

rescindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissus, [re-scindo], 3. v. a., cut away, tear down, break down, destroy.

resciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitus, [re-sciaco, inquire], 3. v. a., find out, learn, discover.

rescribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus, [re-acribo, write], 3. v. a., transfer (by writing).

reservātus, -a, -um, p. p. of reservo.

reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-servo], 1. v. a., keep back, reserve, hold in reserve.

resideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, no p. p., [re-sedeo], 2. v. n., sit back, sit down, remain behind, remain.

residō, -sīdere, -sēdī, no p. p., [re-aido], 3. v. n., sink down, become calm, subside.

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p., [re-sisto], 3. v. n., stand back, stop, withstand, make a stand, resist, remain.

respicō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [re-tspectio], 3. v. a. and n., look back, look back at, look behind one, see behind one, consider.

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsus, [re-spondeo, promise], 2. v. n., reply, answer.

respōnsum, -ī, [N. p. p. of respondeo], N., a reply. — Plur., a reply (of several parts).

rēs publica, see res.

respuō, -spuere, -spuī, no p. p., [re-spuo], 3. v. a., spit out. — Fig., spurn, reject.

restinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of restinguo.

restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus, [re-stinguo, quench], 3. v. a., extinguish.

restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus, [re-statuo], 3. v. a., set up again, replace, restore, make anew.

restitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of restituo.

retentus, -a, -um, p. p. of retineo. retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [re-teneo], 2. v. a., hold back, restrain, (quin, from doing something), detain, retain: memoriam (preserve); Gallos (arrest).

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus,

[re-traho], 3. v. a., *drag back, bring back* (a person).

revellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsus, [re-vello, *pull*], 3. v. a., *tear away, pull away*.

reversus, -a, -um, p. p. of revertō.

revertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus, [re-vertō], 3. v. n., *return* (in perf. tenses). — Pass. as deponent in pres. tenses, *return, go back, come back*.

revincio, -vincire, -vixi, -vinctus, [re-vincio], 4. v. a., *bind back* (to something), *make fast, fasten, bind*.

revinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of revincio.

revocatus, -a, -um, p. p. of revoco.

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-voco], 1. v. a., *call back, call away, call off, recall*.

rēx, rēgis, [REG, *rule, as st.*], M., *a king*.

Rhēnus, -ī, [Celtic?], M., *the Rhine*.

Rhodanus, -ī, [Celtic?], M., *the Rhone*.

rīpa, -ae, [?], F., *a bank*.

rīvus, -ī, [akin to Gr. *péw*], M., *a brook, a stream* (not so large as flumen).

rōbur, -oris, [?], N., *oak*.

rogatus, -a, -um, p. p. of rogo.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?], 1. v. a.

and n., *ask, request, ask for*: *sacramento rogare milites* (*bind by an oath, enlist under oath*).

Rōma, -ae, [?], F., *Rome*.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, [Roma- + nus], M., *Roman*. — As noun, *a Roman*.

Rōscius, -ī, [?], M., *a Roman family name*. — Esp., *Lucius Roscius*, *a legatus of Caesar*.

rōstrum, -ī, [ROD- (in rodo, *gnaw*) + trum], N., *a beak*. — Esp. of a ship, *the beak, the ram* (used as in modern naval fighting).

rota, -ae, [?], F., *a wheel*.

rubus, -ī, [?, perh. rub- (in ruber) + us], M., (*red?*), *a bramble*.

Rūfus, -ī, [prob. dial. form = rubus, *red*], M., *a Roman family name*. See Sulpicius.

rūmor, -ōris, [?], M., *a rumor* (confused report), *report*.

rūpēs, -is, [RUP (cf. rumpo) + unc. term.], F., *a cliff, a rock* (in position).

rūsus [for reversus], adv., *back again, back, again, in turn*.

Rutēnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., *a tribe on the borders of Provence*.

Rutilus, -ī, [prob. akin to ruber], M., *red*. — As a Roman family name. — Esp., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus*, *a cavalry officer under Caesar*.

S

Sabīnus, -ī, [unc. st. (cf. sabulus, *sand*) + inus], M., (*Sabine*). — As a Roman family name. — See Titurius.

Sabis, -is, [Celtic], M., *a river of Gaul flowing into the Meuse, now Sambre*.

sacerdōs, -dōtis, [sacrō-dos (DA + tis)], C., (*arranger of sacred rites?*), *a priest*.

sacrāmentum, -ī, [sacrā-, *hallow*, + mentum], N., *an oath*.

sacrificium, -ī, [†sacrificō- (sacrō-

†facus, cf. *beneficus*) + ium], N., a *sacrifice*.

saepe [N. of †*saepis* (perh. same as *saepes*)], adv., often: *minime saepe*, most rarely. — *saepius*, compar., many times, repeatedly.

saepenumero [*saepe*, *numero*], adv., oftentimes, many times.

saepēs, -is, [akin to *saepio*, *hedge in*], F., a *hedge*.

saeviō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, [*saevō*-, *raging* (as if *saevi*-)], 4. v. n., be angry, rage, be violent.

sagitta, -ae, [?], F., an *arrow*.

sagittārius, -ī, [*sagitta*- + *arius*], M., an *archer*, a *bowman*.

sagulum, -ī, [*sagō*- (*cloak*) + *lum*], N., a *cloak* (military).

saltus, -tūs, [?, perh. *SAL* (in *salio*, *leap*) + *tus*], M., a *wooded height*, a *glade*, a *pass* (in the mountains).

salūs, -ūtis, [*salvō*-, (?) *safe*, + *tis* (cf. *virtus*)], F., *health*, *well-being*, *welfare*, *safety*, *preservation*, *deliverance*, *life* (as saved or lost); *salute desperata*, despairing of saving one's self; *salutis suae causa*, to protect one's self; *ad salutem contendere* (a place of safety).

Samarobrīva, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city of the Ambiani, now *Amiens*.

sanciō, *sancire*, *sānxi*, *sāncus*, [*SAC* (in *sacer*)], 4. v. a., bind (in some religious manner), make sacred, solemnly establish (by law). — *sāncus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., holy, sacred, solemn, inviolable.

sāncus, -a, -um, p. p. of *sancio*.

sanguis, -inis, [?], M., *blood* (as the vital fluid, generally in the body, cf. *cruor*).

sānitās, -tātis, [*sanō*- + *tas*], F., *soundness*, *sound mind*, *good sense*.

sānō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [*sanō*], 1. v. a., make sound, make good, repair.

Santonēs, -um, (-ī, -ōrum), [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe between the Loire and the Garonne.

Santonī, see *Santonēs*.

sānus, -a, -um, [*SA*- (akin to *salvus*) + *nus*], adj., *sound* (in body or mind), *sane*, *discreet*: *nihil pro sano facere* (nothing discreet).

sapiō, -ere, -iī (-ivī), no p. p., [?, *SAP*], 3. v. a. and n., *taste* (actively or passively). Hence, *be wise*, *understand* (what to do).

sarcina, -ae, [*sarci*- (as if st. of *sarcio*, or a kindred noun-st.) + *na* (F. of *nus*)], F., a *pack* (sewed up?). — Plur., *baggage* (soldiers' packs, cf. *impedimenta*, baggage not carried by soldiers).

sarciō, *sarcire*, *sarsī*, *sartus*, [?], 4. v. a., mend, patch. — Fig., restore, repair.

sarmentum, -ī, [perh. *SARP*, *prune* (but cf. *sarcina*) + *mentum*], N., (either *prunings* or *tied fagots*), only in plur., *fagots*, *fascines*.

satis [?], adv., enough, sufficiently. — Often with partitive, equivalent to a noun or adj., enough, sufficient: *satis habere*, consider sufficient, be satisfied; *neque . . . satis comode* (not very, etc.); *satis grandis*, rather large, tolerably large. — Often a mild expression for *very* and the like.

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factūrus, [*satis facio*], 3. v. n., do enough for, satisfy, make amends, excuse one's self, apologize.

satisfactiō, -ōnis, [satis-factio (cf. satisfacio)], F., *amends, excuses, an apology*.

satus, -a, -um, p. p. of **sero**.

saucius, -a, -um, [?], adj., *wounded*.

saxum, -ī, [?], N., *a rock* (as movable), cf. **rupes**.

scālae, -ārum, (sing. rare), [perh. **scad-** (in **scando**, *climb*) + **la**], F., *a ladder, a scaling ladder*.

Scaldis, -is, [?], M., *a river of Gaul, the Scheldt*.

scapha, -ae, [Gr., orig. a "dug-out"], F., *a skiff, a boat*.

scelerātus, -a, -um, [as if (perh. really) p. p. of **scelero** (*stain with crime*?)], adj., *villainous, accursed*.

scelus, -eris, [?, perh. orig. "*crookedness*," cf. **pravus** and 'wrong'], N., *crime, wickedness*.

scienter [**scient-** (cf. **scio**) + **ter**], adv., *knowingly, skilfully*.

scientia, -ae, [**scient-** (cf. **scio**) + **ia**], F., *knowledge, acquaintance with* (thing in the genitive), *skill*.

scindō, **scindere**, **scidī**, **scissus**, [**scid**, *split*], 3. v. a., *tear, tear down*.

sciō, **scīre**, **scivī**, **scītus**, [?], 4. v. a., (*separate*?), *distinguish, know*.

scorpiō, -ōnis, [?], M., *a scorpion; a machine for throwing darts*. Hence, *a shot from an engine* (of that kind).

scribō, **scribere**, **scripsī**, **scriptus**, [?], 3. v. a. and n., *write, give an account* (in writing).

scrobis, -is, [prob. akin to **scribo**], M. and F., *a ditch, a pit*.

scūtum, -ī, [?], N., *a shield*, of the Roman legion, made of wood, con-

vex, oblong (2½ by 4 ft.), covered with leather.

sē- sēd- [old abl. of unc. st.], prep., mostly as adv. in comp., *apart, away, aside, off, un-*.

sē, see **sui**.

sēbum, -ī, [?], N., *tallow*.

secō, **secāre**, **secuī**, **sectus**, [prob. causative of **SEC**], 1. v. a., *cut, reap*.

sēcretō [abl. of **secretus**, p. p. of **secerno**, *separate*], adv., *in private, privately*.

sectiō, -ōnis, [**SEC** (in **seco**) + **tio**], F., *a cutting*. Hence (prob. from dividing in lots), *a lot of booty, booty*.

sector, -ārī, -ātus, [prob. **sectā** (**SEQU** + **ta**, cf. **moneta**)], 1. v. dep., *pursue, chase after*.

sectūra, -ae, [prob. **sectu-** (**SEC** + **tus**) + **ra**, F. of **-rus**], F., *a cutting, a mine, a shaft, a gallery*.

secundum, see **secundus**.

secundus, -a, -um, [part. in **-dus** of **sequor**], adj., *following*. Hence, *second*. — Also (as not opposing), *favorable, successful*: **secundiores res**, *greater prosperity*; **proelium secundum nostris** (*in favor of*); **secundo flumine**, *down the stream*; **secunda acies**, *the second line of battle, the second division*. — Neut. acc. as prep. with acc., *along, in the direction of, in accordance with*; **secundum ea**, *besides that*.

secūris, -is, [**SEC** + unc. term.], F., *an axe*. — Esp., *the axe of the licitor* (as a symbol of the power of life and death).

sēcus, [**SEQU** (in **sequor**) + unc. term.], adv., (*inferior*), *otherwise*. —

Compar., *sēcius* (*sētius*), *less*: *nihilō aecius*, *none the less*, *nevertheless*.

secūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *sequor*.

sed [abl. of unc. st., cf. *re*], conj., *apart* (cf. *seditio*, and *securus*), *but* (stronger than *autem* or *at*), *but yet*.

sēdecim [*sex-decem*], indecl. num. adj., *sixteen*.

sēdēs, -is, [*SED* + *es* (M. and F. term. corresponding to N. -us)], F., *a seat*. Hence, *an abode* (both in sing. and plur.), *a settlement*: *locus ac sedes*, *a place of abode*.

sēditio, -ōnis, [*sed-titio* (I + *tio*)], F., *a secession*, *a mutiny*, *an uprising*.

sēditiosus, -a, -um, [*sedition* + *osus*], adj., *seditionous*, *factionous*.

Sedulius, -i, [?], M., a leader of the Lemovices.

Sedūnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Alps.

Sedusiī, -ōrum, [Teut.], M. plur., a tribe of Germans.

seges, -etis, [unc. st. + *tis*], F., *a crop of grain* (growing), *a field* (of grain).

Sēgnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Belgic Gaul.

Segonax (-*ovax*), -actis, [Celtic], M., a British king.

Segontiāci, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Britain.

Segusiāvī (-*ānī*), -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people west of the Rhone, near modern Lyons.

semel [prob. N. of adj., akin to *similis*], adv., *once*: *semel atque iterum*, *more than once*, *again and again*; *ut semel*, *when once*, *as soon as*.

sēmentis, -tis, [*semen* (*seed*) +

tis, cf. *Carmentis*, *virtus*], F., *a sowing*: *sementis facere*, *sow grain*.

sēmita, -ae, [*se*-(*sed*-) + *īmita* (MI, in *meo*, *go*, cf. *comes*)], F., *a side path*, *a by path*, *a path* (over the mountains).

semper [*†semō* (?) (in *semel*) -*per* (cf. *parumper*)], adv., *through all time*, *all the time*, *always*.

Semprōnius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — See *Rutilus*.

senātor, -tōris, [*†senā*- (as if verb-st. akin to *senex*, perh. really so, cf. *senatus*) + *tor*], M., (*an elder*). Hence, *a senator*.

senātus, -tūs, [*†senā*- (as if, perh. really, verb-st. akin to *senex*)], M., *a senate* (council of old men). — Esp., *the senate* (of Rome, the great body of nobles acting as an administrative council).

senex [*seni* + *cus* (reduced)]. — Gen., *senis*, [?, cf. *seneschal*], adj. (only M.), *old*. — Esp. as noun, *an old man* (above forty-five).

sēnī, -ae, -a, [*sec(s)* + *ni*], distrib. num. adj., *six each*, *six* (where *each* is implied in Eng. by the context).

Senones, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Seine, near *Sens* (their chief town, anciently *Agedincum*).

sententia, -ae, [*†sentent-* (p. of simpler pres. of *sentio*) + *ia*], F., (*feeling*, *thinking*). Hence, *a way of thinking*, *an opinion*, *a view*, *a determination*, *a sentiment*, *a feeling*, *a purpose*, *a design*. — Esp., officially, *a judgment*, *an opinion*, *a sentence*, *a vote*: in *ea sententia permanere*

(of that mind); in eam sententiam, to this purport.

sentio, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsus, [?], 4. v. a., perceive (by the senses), know, see, think (of an opinion made up), learn about, learn: unum sentiunt ac probant, hold the same opinion, etc.

sentis, -is, [?], M., a briar.

sēparātim [as if acc. of †separatis (separā- + tis)], adv., separately, privately (apart from others).

sēparātus, -a, -um, p. p. of separo.

sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [se- (sed-) paro], 1. v. a., (get apart?), separate. — Esp. sēparātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., separate.

septem [?], indecl. num. adj., seven.

septentriōnēs (septem, triones), -um, M. plur., the seven plough oxen (the stars of the Great Bear). — Hence, the north. — Also (by an error), in the sing., septentrio, -ōnis, the north: a septentrionibus, in the north; sub septentrionibus, in the north, towards the north.

septimus, -a, -um, [septem + mus, cf. primus], adj., the seventh.

septingenti, -ae, -a, [septem (in some form) -centum (?)], num. adj., seven hundred.

septuāgintā [from septem, in some unc. manner], indecl. num. adj., seventy.

sepultūra, -ae, [†sepultu- (cf. sepelio, bury) + ra (F. of -rus)], F., burial, burying.

Sēquana, -ae, [Celtic], F., the Seine.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj.,

of the Sequani (a tribe of Gaul, on the Rhone, N. of Macon). — Masc. sing., one of the Sequani, a Sequanian. — Masc. plur., the Sequani.

sequor, sequi, secutus, [SEQU], 3. v. dep., follow, accompany: damnatum poena (be inflicted upon, the penalty following the condemnation); eventus (ensue); hiems quae secuta est (the following); fidem (hold to, remain under, come under, surrender one's self to, etc.); aestus commutationem (take advantage of).

Ser., for Servius.

sermō, -ōnis [SER (in sero, twine) + mo (prob. -mō + o)], M., (series?). Hence, conversation (continuous series of speech), talk, intercourse, conversation with (genitive).

serō, serere, sēvī, satus, [SA, redupl.], 3. v. a., plant, sow.

sērō [abl. of serus], adv., too late.

Sertōrius, -ī, [sertor (garland-maker?) + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Q. Sertorius, a partisan of Marius, who held a command in Spain against the party of Sulla from B.C. 80 to B.C. 72.

servilis, -e, [servi- (as if st. of servus or akin, cf. servio) + lis], adj., of slaves, of a slave, servile: in servilem modum, as with slaves, (i.e. by torture); tumultus (the servile war, the revolt of the slaves under Spartacus in B.C. 73).

serviō, -īre, if (-ivī), -īturus [servi- (as if st. of servus or akin)], 4. v. n., be a slave (to some one or something); rumoribus (be blindly guided by, follow); bello (devote one's self to).

servitūs, -tūtis, [†servitu- (servō

+ tus) + tis, cf. *iuventus*, *semen-* [tis], F., *slavery, servitude*.

Servius, -i, [servō- + ius], M., a Roman prænomen.

servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [servō-], I. V. A., *watch, guard, keep, preserve*: *praesidia* (*hold, maintain*); *ordines* (*keep*); *fidem* (*keep one's word*).

servus, -i, [unc. root (SER, bind?) + vus], M., a *slave*.

sēsē, see *sui*.

sēsquipedālis, -e, [†*sēsquiped-* (a foot and a half) + *alis*], adj., of a foot and a half, *eighteen-inch* (beams, etc.).

seu, see *sive*.

sevēritās, -tātis, [sevērō- + tas], F., *strictness, harshness, severity*.

sēvocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [se (sed) -voco], I. V. A., *call aside, call out* (aside).

sex [?], indecl. num. adj., *six*.

sexāgintā [sex + unc. term.], indecl. num. adj., *sixty*.

sexcenti (ses-), -ae, -a, [sex-centum], num. adj., *six hundred*.

Sextius, -i, [sextō- + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: 1. *Titus Sextius*, a legatus of Cæsar. — 2. *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion in Cæsar's army.

sī [loc. prob. akin to *se*], conj., (*in this way, in this case, so, cf. sic*), *if, in case*. — Esp., *to see if, whether*: *id si fieret, should this happen*, etc.

sibi, see *sui*.

Sibusātes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a people of Aquitania, near the Pyrenees.

sic [si-ce, cf. *hic*], adv., *so, in this manner, in such a manner*,

thus: *sic . . . ut, so . . . that, so well . . . that*; *sic reperiebat* (*this*). — *sicuti*, as conj., *just as, just as if*.

siccitās, -tātis, [sicco- + tas], F., *dryness, drought, dry weather*. — Plur. in same sense, of different occasions.

sicut (*sicuti*), see *sic*.

sīdus, -eris, [SED + us], N., (*position?*), a *heavenly body*.

signifer, -feri, [signo-fer (FER (bear) + us)], M., a *standard-bearer*.

significātiō, -ōnis, [significā- + tio], F., a *making of signs, a signal, an intimation, a warning*.

significō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†*significō* (signō-*ficus*, cf. *facio*)], I. V. N., *make signs, indicate, make known, spread news, give an intimation, give information, show*: *hac re significari, this is an indication*; *de fuga*; *deditionem* (*make signs of*).

signum, -i, [unc. root + num (N. of -nus)], N., (*a device?*), a *sign, a signal*. — Esp., a *standard* (for military purposes, carried by any body of men, consisting of some device in metal on a pole). — Phrases: *signa convertere, wheel, change front, face about*; *signa inferre, advance to attack, charge*; *conversa signa inferre, change front and charge*; *infestis signis* (*for an attack, at charge*); *signa ferre, move, move on, march*; *signa subsequi, keep the line of march*; *signa relinquere, leave the ranks*; *se continere ad signa, keep the ranks*; *a signis discedere, desert, leave the ranks*; *ad signa convenire, join the army*; *ad signa consistere, rally around the standard*; *signa constituere, halt*.

Silānus, -ī, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Marcus Silānus*, a legatus of Cæsar.

silentium, -ī, [silent- + ium], N., *stillness, silence*. — **silentiō**, abl., *in silence, silently*.

Silius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Titus Silius*, a military tribune in Cæsar's army.

silva, -ae, [?], F., *a forest, woods, forests*. — Plur. in same sense.

silvester (-tris), -tris, -tre, [silva- (as if *silvus*-, cf. *palustris*) + tris], adj., *woody, wooded*.

similis, -e, [†simō- (cf. *simplex, semper*) + lis], adj., *like, similar*.

similitūdō, -inis, [simili- + tūdō], F., *likeness, resemblance (to, genitive)*.

simul [N. of *similis*, cf. *facul*], adv., *at the same time*: **simul atque** (or without *atque*), *as soon as*; **simul . . . simul**, *both . . . and*.

simulācrum, -ī, [simulā- + crum], N., *an image, a likeness*.

simulātiō, -ōnis, [simulā- + tiō], F., *a pretence, a show, deceit*.

simulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *simulo*.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [simili- (as if, perh. orig., †simulō)], I. v. a., *pretend, make a show of (something), feign*.

simultās, -tātis, [simili- (cf. *simul*) + tas], F., (*likeness*?, *equality*?), *rivalry*.

sīn [si-ne], conj., (*if not*), *but if*.

sincērē [old case-form of *since-rus*], adv., *honestly, truly, frankly*.

sine [?], prep. with abl., *without*.

singillātīm (singul-), [as if *singulā-* (*singulus*) + *tīm* (acc. of

-tis)], adv., *singly, one by one, individually*.

singulāris, -e, [singulō- + aris], adj., *solitary, single*. Hence, *unique, extraordinary, unparalleled, unequalled, marvellous*.

singulī, -ae, -a, [sim (in *similis*) + unc. term.], adj., *one at a time, single, each, one by one, several (severally)*. — Often to denote distribution, *one to each*: **singulī singulos**, (with verb), *one . . . each*; **singulis legionibus singulos legatos** (*one over each*); **ab singulis legionibus singulos legatos discedere** (*each from his*); **inter singulas legiones** (*between each two, one to each*); **navis singulas Romanis equitibus** (*severally, separately, one to each*); **sevocare singulos** (*individuals, one by one*).

sinister, -tra, -trum, [?], adj., *left*: **sub sinistra (manu)**, *on the left*.

sinistrōrsus [sinistro-vorsus (*versus*)], adv., *to the left*.

sinō, *sinere*, sīvī, situs, [sī (of unc. meaning)], 3. v. a., (*lay down*, cf. *pono*), *leave*. Hence, *permit, allow*.

situs, -tūs, [sī + tus], M., (*a laying, a leaving*), *situation, position, site*.

sive, seu, [si-ve], conj., *if either, or if*: **sive . . . sive**, *either . . . or, whether . . . or*.

socer, -erī, [?], M., *a father-in-law*.

societās, -tātis, [sociō- + tas], F., *an alliance*.

socius, -ī, [SEQU (*follow*) + ius], M., *a companion, an ally, a comrade*.

sōl, sōlis, [?], M., *the sun*. — Also personified, *Sol, the Sun*. — See also under *orior, occido, occasus*.

sōlācium (sōlāt-), -ī, [solacō- + ium], N., *a consolation, a comfort.*

soldurius, -ī, [Teutonic], M., *a retainer, a follower.*

soleō, solēre, solitus, [?], 2. v. n., *be wont, be accustomed.*

sōlitūdō, -inis, [solō- + tudo], F., *loneliness.* Hence, *a wilderness.*

sollertia, -ae, [sollert- (solō- + ars, with complete skill, cf. sollicito) + ia], F., *skill, ingenuity, shrewdness.*

sollicitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of sollicito.

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sollicitō- (solō- + citus, entirely roused)], 1. v. a., *stir up, instigate, make overtures to, tamper with, approach (with money, etc.), offer bribes to, tempt.*

sollicitūdō, -inis, [†sollicitu- (st. akin to sollicitus) + dō], F., *anxiety, apprehension.*

solum, -ī, [?], N., *the soil, the foundation, the bottom: solum agri, the bare ground; ab infimo solo, from the very bottom.*

sōlus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *alone, only.*—solum, N. as adv., *alone, only.*

solūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of solvo.

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, [prob. se-luo, loose], 3. v. a., *unbind, loose.*—Esp. with *navis*, *weigh anchor, set sail.*—Also without *navis*, *absolutely, set sail.*

sonitus, -tūs, [soni- (as st. of sono) + tus], M., *a sound, noise.*

sonus, -ī, [SON + us], M., *a sound.*

soror, -ōris, [?], F., *a sister: soror ex matre, a half-sister.*

sors, sortis, [perh. SER (in sero) + tis, but the orig. sense is unc.], F., *a lot (for divination), chance.*

Sōtiātes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., *a people of Aquitania.*

spatium, -ī, [?], N., *space, extent, a space, a distance.*—Transf., *time, space of time, lapse of time.*—Phrases: *quantum fuit diei spatium, as much as there was time for; intermisso spatio, after an interval; spatia omnis temporis, the whole course of time.*

speciēs, -iēi, [SPEC + ies (akin to -ia)], F., (a sight, prob. both act. and pass.).—Passively, *a sight, a show, an appearance: summa species earum stantium, a perfect appearance of standing trees (lit. of them standing); ad speciem, for show.*

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [spectō-], 1. v. a. and n., *look at, regard, have regard to, lie towards (of a country), face.*

speculātor, -tōris, [speculā- + tor] M., *a spy, a scout.*

speculātōrius, -a, -um, [speculator + ius], adj., (of a scout), *scouting, reconnoitring (navigia).*

speculor, -ārī, -ātus, [speculō-, cf. specula, watch-tower], 1. v. dep., *spy, reconnoitre: speculandi causa, as a spy.*

spērātus, -a, -um, p. p. of spero.

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [spes- (prob. orig. st. of spēs) with r for s], 1. v. a. and n., *hope, hope for, expect.*

spēs, -ei, [?], F., *hope, expectation: summam in spem venire, have the greatest hope.*

spiritus, -tūs, [spiri- (as st. of spiro, breathe) + tus], M., *breath.*—Also, *spirit.* Hence, in pl., *pride, arrogance, temper.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [spoliō-, *booty*], I. v. a., *despoil, strip*. — Fig., *rob, deprive, despoil*.

spontis (gen.), **sponte** (abl.), [prob. akin to **spondeo**, *promise*], F., only with poss. or (poetic) gen., *of one's own accord, voluntarily, on one's own account*. — Rarely, *by one's influence*.

stabiliō, -īre, -ivī (iī), -ītus, [stabili-], 4. v. a., *make firm*.

stabilitās, -tātis, [stabili- + tas], F., *steadiness, firmness*.

statim [acc. of **†statis** (sta- + tia)], adv., *(as one stands, on the spot), at once, forthwith, immediately*.

statiō, -ōnis, [apparently STA + tio, prob. **†stati** + o, whence the common -tio used as ending without regard to its origin], F., *(a standing), a position, a post, a picket*: in **statione**, *on guard*.

statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, [statu-], 3. v. a., *set up*. Hence, *establish, resolve upon, determine, consider* (make up one's mind), *take measures*. — Euphemistic for, *punish* (de eo causa cognita).

statūra, -ae, [statu- + ra, F. of -rus], F., *(a standing), stature, size*.

status, -tūs, [STA + tus], M., *(a standing), a position, a condition, a state, a situation*.

stimulus, -ī, [†stigmō- (STIG + mus) + lus], M., *a goad, a spur*. — As name of a calthrop or instrument of defence, "*spurs*."

stipendiārius, -a, -um, [stipendiō- + arius], adj., *tributary, under tribute, subject to tribute*.

stipendium, -ī, [stipi-, *gift*, and st. akin to **pendo** (perh. **†pendus**, cf. **pendulus**) + ium], N., *a tribute*.

stipes, stipitis, [?], M., *a trunk* (of a tree).

stirps, stirpis, [?], M. and F., *a stock, a stem*. — Fig., *a race*: **stirpem hominum interfāci**, *men to be killed root and branch*.

stō, stāre, steti, statūrus, [STA], I. v. n., *stand, be placed*: **decreto** (*stand by, abide by*).

strāmentum, -ī, [STRA (form of root of **sterno**) + mentum], N., *(something strewn), straw, thatch*. — Also plur., *saddle-cloths*.

strepitus, -tūs, [strep- (as st. of **strepo**, *roar*) + tus], M., *a noise, a confused din*.

studeō, studēre, studuī, no p. p., [†studō- (or †studa-), cf. **studium**], 2. v. n., *be eager for, be devoted to, pay attention to, attend to, desire* (a thing in the dat.).

studiōsē, [old case-form of **studiōsus**], adv., *eagerly, zealously*.

studium, -ī, [prob. †studō- + ium, cf. **studeo**], N., *eagerness, zeal, devotion, fondness* (for a thing), *enthusiasm*. Hence, *a pursuit* (to which one is devoted), *an occupation*.

stultitia, -ae, [stultō- (*foolish*) + tia], F., *folly*.

sub [unc. case, prob. abl., akin to **super**], adv. (in comp.) and prep.:

a. With abl. (of rest in a place), *under*: **sub oculis**, *before the eyes*. — Also, *just by*: **sub monte** (*at the foot of*); **sub sinistra**, *at the left*; **sub vallo**, *just under the wall*.

b. With acc. (of motion towards

a place), *under, close to*. — Of time, *just at, just before*: *sub vesperum*.

c. In comp., *under, up* (from under), *away* (from beneath), *secretly* (underhand), *in succession, a little, slightly*.

subāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of subigo.

subdolus, -a, -um, [sub-dolus, *artifice*], adj., *cunning, wily*.

subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [sub-duco], 3. v. a., *draw up, lead up*: *navis (beach, draw up)*.

subductiō, -ōnis, [sub-ductio, cf. subduco], F., *a drawing up, a beaching* (of ships).

subductus, -a, -um, p. p. of subduco.

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, [sub-eo], irr. v. a., *go under, undergo, encounter, come up, approach*.

subfodiō (suff-), -fodere, -fodi, -fossus, [sub-fodio], 3. v. a., *dig under, stab* (underneath).

subfossus, -a, -um, p. p. of subfodio.

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [sub-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw under, place below, place under, subject, expose to*. — Also, *throw up*. — subiectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *lying near*.

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -actus, [sub-ago], 3. v. a., *bring under, subject*.

subitō, see subitus.

subitus, -a, -um, [p. p. of subeo], adj., (*coming up secretly from under*), *sudden, suddenly* (as if adv. taken with the verb), *quick, hasty*. — subitō, abl. as adv., *suddenly, of a sudden*.

sublātus, -a, -um, [sub- (t) latus], p. p. of tollo.

sublevātus, -a, -um, p. p. of sublevo.

sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sub-levo], 1. v. a., *lighten up, lighten, raise, raise up, assist, render assistance*. — With reflexive, *rise up*. — sublevātus, p. p., *supporting one's self*.

sublica, -ae, [?], F., *a pile*.

subluō, -luere, no perf., -lūtus, [sub-luo], 3. v. a., *wash underneath, wash*: *flumen collis radices*.

subministrō (sum-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [sub-ministro], 1. v. a., *supply* (as needed), *furnish* (from time to time), *provide*.

submittō (sum-), -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [sub-mitto], 3. v. a., *send up, send to one's assistance, send as reinforcements, send* (as help), *reinforce*.

submōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of submoveo.

submoveō (sum-), -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [sub-moveo], 2. v. a., *drive off, dislodge*.

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, [sub-ruo], 3. v. a., *dig under, undermine*.

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [sub-sequor], 3. v. dep., *follow up, follow on, follow, succeed to*.

subsidiū, -ī, [sub-+sedium (SED + ium)], N., (*a sitting in reserve*), *a reserve, a reinforcement, help, relief, support, assistance, resources, provisions*: *subsidiū mittere, send assistance*; *subsidiū ferre, rescue*; *subsidiū comparare, make provision*.

subsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, [sub-sido], 3. v. n., *sit down, remain behind*.

subeistō, -sistere, -stiti, no p. p., [sub-sisto], 3. v. n., *stop behind, halt, make a stand: ancorae (hold)*.

subsum, -esse, -fui, -futurus, [sub-sum], irr. v. n., *be under, be near, be close by (a certain distance off), be near at hand, approach*.

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractus, [sub-traho], 3. v. a., *take away (underneath), carry away, take away (generally)*.

subvectiō, -ōnis, [sub-vectio, cf. subveho], F., *bringing up, transportation, conveyance*.

subvehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus, [sub-veho], 3. v. a., *bring up*.

subveniō, -venire, -vēni, -venturus, [sub-venio], 4. v. n., *come under, come to the support of, come to the assistance of, assist*.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus, [sub-cedo], 3. v. n., *come up, advance, come in place of, succeed to, take the place of, come next*. — Also, *be successful, prosper*.

succendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēnsus, [sub-īcādo (cf. cādeo, glow)], 3. v. a., *set on fire (as if beneath)*.

succēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of succendo.

successus, -ūs, [sub-cessus (cf. succedo)], M., *a coming up, an advance, a close approach*.

succidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus, [sub-caedo], 3. v. a., *cut under, cut down*.

succīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of succido.

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubi, -cubiturus, [sub-cumbo], 3. v. n., *lie down (under), give way, succumb*.

succurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursū-

rus, [sub-curro], 3. v. n., *rush to support, rush to one's rescue, run to help, succor*.

sudis, -is, [?], F., *a stake*.

Suessiōnes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of the Belgians between the Marne and the Isère. Their town Noviodunum was later called from them *Soissons*.

Suēvi (Suēbi), -ōrum, [Teutonic], M. plur., name of the tribes inhabiting a large part of Germany, *Swabians*.

Suēvus, -a, -um, [see Suevi], adj., *Swabian*. — As noun, *a Swabian (man or woman)*.

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [sub-facio], 3. v. a., *make in place of, supply the place of*. Hence, *suffice, be sufficient, be adequate*.

suffrāgium, -ī, [akin to suffringo, break up], N., *(a pastern bone, or a potsherd, either used as a ballot), a ballot, vote*.

Sugambri (Sig-), -ōrum, [Teutonic], M., a German tribe between the Sieg and the Lippe.

suggestus, -tūs, [sub-gestus, cf. suggerō], M., *(earth brought up), a raised mound, a tribunal, a platform (whence the Roman commander addressed his troops)*.

suī (prop. gen. N. of suus), sibi sē, [sva], reflex. pron., *himself, etc.* — Often to be translated by the personal, *he, etc.*, also *each other*. — Esp.: *inter se, from, with, by, etc., each other; inter sese dant, give each other, exchange; per se, of himself, etc., (without outside influence or excitement); see ipse*.

Sulla, -ae, [ʔ], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla*, the great partisan of the nobility and opponent of Marius, called the Dictator Sulla.

Sulpicius, -ī, [ʔ], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: 1. *Sulpicius Rufus*, a legatus of Cæsar. — 2. *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, a legatus of Cæsar.

sum, esse, fui, futurus, [AS, cf. *am, is*], irr. v. n., *be (exist)*. — Also, with weakened force, *be (as a mere copula)*. — Phrases: *erant duo itinera (there were)*; *sibi esse in animo, that he had in mind, intended*; *pars quae est ad Hispaniam (lies)*; *eorum est, they have*; *multum sunt in venationibus (much engaged)*.

summa, -ae, [F. of *summus* as noun], F., (*the top*), *the sum, the total, the main part*: *summa omnium rerum, the whole amount*; *belli, (the general management, the chief control)*; *imperi (the chief command)*; *imperi bellicae administrandi (the chief management, etc.)*; *rerum consiliorumque (chief control)*; *summa exercitus, the main body, etc.*; *summam victoriae, the whole victory*.

summus, see *superus*.

sūmō, sūmere, sūpsī, sūptus, [sub-emo, take], 3. v. a., *take away, take, get, assume*: *supplicium de (inflict, cf. capere)*; *laborem (spend)*.

sūmptuosus, -a, -um, [sumptu- + osus], adj., *expensive, costly*.

sūmptus, -tūs, [sub-temptus, cf. *sumo*], M., (*a taking out of the stock on hand*), *expense*.

superātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *superō*.

superbē [old case-form of *superbus*], adv., *haughtily, arrogantly, with arrogance*.

superior, see *superus*.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [superō-], 1. v. a. and n., *overtop*. Hence, *get the upper hand of, overcome, conquer, defeat, be superior to, prevail, overmatch, survive (vita)*.

supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessurus, [super-sedeo], 2. v. n., *sit above*. Hence, *be above, decline, refrain from*.

supersum, -esse, -fui, -futurus, [super-sum], irr. v. n., *be over and above, remain, survive*.

superus, -a, -um, [†supe- (st. akin to sub, perh. same) + rus (cf. inferus)], *higher, being above (of space only)*. — Compar. (in wider meanings), *superior, higher, upper, preceding (of time), past, before, superior, victorious*. — Superl., *suprēmus* [supra- (ʔ) + imus (ʔ)], *highest*. — Also, *summus* [sup- + mus], *highest, the highest part of, the top of*. — Fig., *greatest, most important, very great, most perfect, perfect, supreme, most violent*: *ab summo, from the top, at the end*; *summis copiis, with all the forces, in force, with all one's might*.

suppetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitūrus, [sub-peto, aim at], 3. v. n., (ʔ, but cf. *sufficio* and *subvenio*), *be on hand, be supplied, be to be found, hold out*.

supplēmentum, -ī, [supplē- (as st. of *suppleo*, fill up) + mentum], N., *a supply (to fill up), a reinforcement*.

supplex, -icis, [sub-†plex (PLIC

(*fold*), as st., cf. *duplex*], c., a *suppliant*.

supplicātiō, -ōnis, [supplicā- + tio], f., a *supplication*. — Esp., a *thanksgiving* (prayer to the gods upon any signal success, decreed by the senate).

suppliciter [supplici- (as st. of *supplex*) + ter], adv., in the guise of *suppliants*, as *suppliants*.

supplicium, -i, [supplic- (st. of *supplex*) + ium], n., a *supplication*, a *sacrifice*. — Also, esp., a *punishment* (usually of death).

supportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [sub-porto], i. v. a., *bring up*, *convey*, *supply*, *furnish*.

suprā [instr. (?) of *superus*], adv. and prep. with acc., *above*, *before*.

susceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *suscipio*.

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [sub(s)-capio], 3. v. a., *take up*, *take upon one's self* (sibi), *assume*, *undertake*, *engage in*, *undergo*.

suspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *suspicio*.

suspiciātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *suspicio*.

suspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [sub-specio], 3. v. a. and n., *look up*, *look up at*, *look askance at*. Hence, *suspect*: *suspecta nobis*, *an object of suspicion to us*.

suspiciō (-spitiō), -ōnis, [sub-

specio, cf. *suspicio*], f., *suspicion*, *an imputation* (timoris), *an induction*: *dabat . . . fugae* (*endeavor to excite a suspicion*); *neque abest suspicio*, *and there is a suspicion abroad*, *not without suspicion*.

suspisor, -āri, -ātus, [†suspicio- (cf. *suspicio*)], i. v. dep., *suspect*: p. p. as adj., *under suspicion*.

sustentātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *sustento*.

sustentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [sub(s)-tento (cf. *sustineo*)], i. v. a. and n., *sustain*, *hold out*: *bella* (*hold out against*); *aegre is dies sustentatur*, *with difficulty they hold out for that day*; *pecore famem* (*keep from starvation by means of*, etc.).

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, sub(s)-teneo], 2. v. a. and n., *hold up under*, *withstand*, *endure*, *hold out*, *bear*, *stop*, *rein in* (horses); *sustinere se*, *stand up*.

sustulī, see *tollo*.

suus, -a, -um, [sva + ius, cf. *se*], adj. pron. (reflex., referring back to subject), *his*, *hers*, *its*, *theirs*, etc. — Sometimes emphatic, *his own*, etc., *sua clementia*, *his characteristic clemency*. — Often without noun, *suī*, *their* (his) *men*, *countrymen*, *their friends*; *sua*, *their* (his) *possessions*, *their property*: *se suaque omnia*, *themselves and all they had*.

T

T., for *Titus*.

tabernāculum, -i, [taberna- + culum], n., (*a hut of boards*), a *tent*.

tabula, -ae, [†tabō- (TA (*stretch*)

+ bus?) + la], f., a *board*. Hence, *a record* (written on a board covered with wax), *a document*, *a list*.

tabulātus, -a, -um, [tabulā- (as

cf. *supra*: if st. of [tabulo] + tus], adj., *made with boards*. — tabulātum, N., *a flooring, a story*.

taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitus, [†taceō- (TAC + us)], 2. v. a. and n., *be silent, be silent about, keep secret, conceal, say nothing about*. — tacitus, p. p. as adj., *silent, in silence*.

tacitus, -a, -um, p. p. of taceo.

tālea, -ae, [perh. akin to tālus, *ankle-bone*], F., *a rod, a bar*.

tālis, -e, [TA (akin to *that*) + alis], adj. pron., *such, so great*.

tam [unc. case of TA (cf. quam, nam)], adv., *so* (as indicated in the context), *so much*.

tamen [unc. case-form of TA (locat.?)], adv., (introducing a thought opposed to some preceding concession expressed or implied), *yet, nevertheless, still, however, for all that, notwithstanding, after all, at least*.

Tamesis, -is, [Celtic], M., *the Thames*.

tametsī, [tamen (or tam?) -etsi], adv., *(still although, anticipating the thought to which tamen properly belongs), although, though*.

tandem [tam-dem, cf. idem], adv., *(just so, even so?), at last*. — In questions, to add emphasis, *pray, tell me*, or trans. only by emphasis.

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus, [TAG], 3. v. a., *touch, border on*.

tantopere, see opus.

tantulus, -a, -um, [tantō- + lus], adj., *so small, so little, so trifling*.

tantum, see tantus.

tantummodo [tantum modo], adv., *(so much only), only, merely, only just*.

tantundem (tantum-dem, cf. idem], adv., *just so far*.

tantus, -a, -um, [prob. TA + vant (adj. term.) + us], adj., *so much, so great, such* (of magnitude) : *tanti est, is of so much weight; tanta exiguitas temporis, so little time*. — Esp., *so much* (and no more), *only so much* : *tantum progredi (so far as)*. — tantum, N. as adv., *only, merely*.

Tarbellī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., *a tribe of Aquitania*.

tardātus, -a, -um, p. p. of tardō.

tardē [old case-form of tardus], adv., *slowly, tardily, with delay*.

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [tardō-], 1. v. a., *retard, check, hinder* : *Romanos ad insequendum (hinder from pursuing, retard the pursuit of, etc.)*.

tardus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *slow, slack, sluggish, without alacrity*.

Tarusātēs, -ium, [Celtic], M. pl., *a tribe of Aquitania*.

Tasgetius, -ī, [Celtic], M., *a prince of the Carnutes*.

taurus, -ī, [perh. STAV + rus, akin to *steer*], M., *a bull*.

Taximagulus, -ī, [Celtic], M., *a prince of Britain*.

taxus, -ī, [?], F., *a yew-tree*. — Also, *yew* (the berries used as poison).

Tectosages, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., *a branch of the Volcae, which see*.

tēctum, -ī, [N. p. p. of tēgo], N., *a roof, a house*.

tēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of tēgo.

tegimentum (tegu-), -ī, [tegi- (st. of tēgo) + mentum], N., *a covering*.

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, [TEG], 3. v. a., *cover, thatch, hide, conceal*.

tēlum, -ī, [?], N., *a weapon* (of offence), *a missile, a javelin, a spear*.

temerārius, -a, -um, [†temerō + arius], adj., *reckless, rash, hasty*.

temerō [old case-form of †temerus], adv., *blindly, without reason, without cause*. Hence, *recklessly, hastily*.

temeritās, -tātis, [†temerō (hasty) + tas], F., *blindness, thoughtlessness, recklessness, hasty temper*.

tēmō, -ōnis, [?], M., *a pole* (of a wagon, etc.).

temperantia, -ae, [temperant- + ia], F., *self-control, prudence*.

temperātus, -a, -um, p. p. of tempero.

temperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [temper- (st. of tempus)], I. v. a., *(divide), mix properly*. Hence, *control, control one's self, refrain, restrain one's self from* (quin).—Esp., *temperātus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *temperate, mild*.

tempestās, -tātis, [tempe- (st. of tempus) + tas], F., *a season, weather*.—Esp., *bad weather, a storm, a tempest*.

temptō (tentō), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [tentō-, p. p. of teneo, *hold*], I. v. a., *handle*. Hence, *try, attempt, make an attempt upon, tempt: iter (try to force)*.

tempus, -oris, [TEM (*cut*, with root determinative or accidental p) + us], N., (*a cutting*).—Esp., *a division of time, a time, time* (in general), *a season, an occasion, an emergency, a crisis: tam necessario tempore, at so critical a moment; omni tempore, at all times, always; in reliquum tempus, for the future; uno*

tempore, at once; tempore exclusus, cut off by the want of time.

Tencteri (-theri), -ōrum, [Teutonic], M. plur., a branch of the Usipetes, which see.

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsus (tentus), [TEN + dō (of unc. origin)], 3. v. a., *stretch, stretch out*.—Esp., *stretch a tent, encamp*.

tenebrae, -ārum, [?, perh. akin to temere], F. plur., *darkness*.

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (?), [†tenō- (TEN + us)], 2. v. a., *hold, retain, keep, possess, occupy: circuitus milia (occupy, extend)*.—Also, *restrain, detain: tenere obsidibus (bind); se tenere, remain; memoria tenere, remember*.

tener, -era, -erum, [TEN + rus], adj., (*stretched, thin*), *delicate, tender, young*.

tenuis, -e, [TEN + us, with accidental i, cf. gravis], adj., *thin, delicate, feeble, meagre, poor*.

tenuitās, -tātis, [tenui- + tas], F., *thinness, weakness, poverty*.

tenuiter [tenui- + ter], adv., *thinly, slightly*.

ter [prob. mutilated case of tres], num. adv., *three times, thrice*.

teres, -etis, [tere- (as st. of tero) + tis], adj., (*rubbed*), *smooth and round, tapering*.

tergum, -ī, [?], N., *the back: terga vertere, turn and fly; a tergo, in the rear*.

ternī, -ae, -a, [tri- + nus], distrib. num. adj., *three each, three at once*.

terra, -ae, [TERS (?) + a, cf. torreo, *dry up*], F., (*the dry land*), *the earth, the land*.—Also, *a land, a*

region. — Also, *the ground.* — Plur., *the world.*

Terrasidius, -ī, [Celtic], M., a Roman gentile (?) name. — Esp., *Titus Terrasidius*, a military tribune in Cæsar's army.

terrēnus, -a, -um, [terra- (as if *terrē*-) + nus], adj., *of earth.*

terreō, *terrēre*, *terruī*, *territus*, [†*terrō*- (?)], 2. v. a., *frighten, alarm, frighten off, deter.*

territō, -āre, no perf. or p. p., [†*territō*-], 1. v. a., *frighten: metu* (*alarm with fears, keep alarmed*).

terror, -ōris, [TERR + or], M., *fright, alarm, terror, dread, panic.*

tertius, -a, -um, [prob. tri- + tins], num. adj., *third* (in order); *pars* (*one-third*).

testāmentum, -ī, [testā- (*witness*) + mentum], N., *a will.*

testimōnium, -ī, [testi- + monium], N., *proof, evidence.*

testis, -is, [?], C., *a witness.*

testūdō, -īnis, [†*testu*- (akin to *testa*, *tile*) + dō], F., *a tortoise.* — Esp., *a covered column* (made by lapping the shields of one rank over those of another). — Also, *a shelter* (a small roof over attacking soldiers).

Teutomatus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a king of the Nitiobriges.

Teutones, -um, (-ī, -ōrum), [Teu- tonic], M. plur., a great German people in Jutland who overran Gaul in B.C. 113 along with the Cimbri. They were defeated by Marius in B.C. 102 at Aquæ Sextiæ (*Aix*).

tignum, -ī, [?], N., *a log, a timber, a pile.*

Tigurinus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj.,

of the Tigurini. — M. pl., *the Tigurini*, a canton or division of the Helvetii.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, no p. p., [†*timō*- (cf. *timidus*)], 2. v. a. and n., *be afraid, fear.* — With dat., *be anxious for, be anxious about: nihil* (*have nothing to fear*); *timentes*, as noun, *the timid, the fearful.*

timidē [old case-form of *timidus*], adv., *with timidity: non timide*, *fearlessly.*

timidus, -a, -um, [†*timō*- (cf. *timeo*) + dus], adj., *cowardly, frightened, timid.*

timor, -ōris, [tim- (cf. *timeo*) + or], M., *alarm, fear, dread.*

Titūrius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, a legatus of Cæsar.

Titus, -ī, [?], M., a Roman prænomen.

tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†*toler*- (TOL + us)], 1. v. a. and n., (*raise up*), *bear, endure, hold out, support: famem* (*keep from starvation*).

tollō, *tollere*, *sustulī*, *sublātus*, [TOL], 3. v. a., *raise, carry, carry off.* Hence, *remove, take away, destroy: conloquium* (*break off*). — Esp., *sublātus*, -a, -um, p. p., *elated.*

Tolōsa, -ae, [Celtic], F., *Toulouse*, a city of the Volcæ Tectosages.

Tolōsātēs, -ium, [Tolosa- + tis], M. plur., *the people of Toulouse.*

tormentum, -ī, [TORQU + mentum], N., (*means of twisting*), *torture.* — Also, *an engine* (for throwing missiles by twisted ropes). Hence, *a shot from an engine, a missile.*

torreō, *torrēre*, *torruī*, *tostus*,

[torrō- (cf. *torrus, firebrand*)], 2. v. a., *scorch, burn*.

tot [TA + ti], indecl. adj., *so many*.

totidem [toti- (cf. tot) + dem], indecl. adj., *just as many, as many, the same number*.

tōtus, -a, -um, [TA + tus], adj., *the whole, the whole of, all, entire*. — Often translated by an adverb, *entirely, throughout*.

trabs (trabēs), trabis, [?], F., *a beam, a timber*.

trāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of traho.

trādītus, -a, -um, p. p. of trado.

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [trans-do], 3. v. a., *hand over, give up, give over, deliver up, surrender, commend, recommend*. — Also, *pass along, hand down, teach, communicate*.

trādūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [trans-duco], 3. v. a., *lead over (with two accusatives), lead across, bring over, lead through, transport, draw over, win over, transfer, lead (along)*.

trāgula, -ae, [?], F., *a javelin* (perh. with a barb, like a boat-hook) used by the Gauls.

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, [TRAH (for †TRAGH)], 3. v. a., *drag, drag along, drag in, draw in*.

trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [trans-lacio], 3. v. a., *throw across, throw over*. — Also, *strike through, transfix, pierce*.

trāiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of traicio.

trāiectus, -tūs, [trans-lactus, cf. traicio], M., *(a throwing across), a passage, a route*.

trānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [trans-no], 1. v. a. and n., *swim across*.

tranquillitās, -tātis, [tranquillō + tas], F., *stillness, calm*.

trāns [?, akin to *terebra, auger*], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., *across, over*. Hence, *on the other side of*. — In comp., *over, across, through*.

Trānsalpinus, -a, -um, [trans-Alpes + inus], adj., *Transalpine* (lying beyond the Alps from Rome).

trānsceḍō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsūrus, [trans-scando], 3. v. n., *climb across, board* (ships).

trānsdūcō, see traduco.

trānseō, -īre, -īī, -itus, [trans-eo], irr. v. a. and n., *go across, cross, pass over, go over, pass through, pass, migrate, pass by*.

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [trans-fero], irr. v. a., *carry over, transfer, change the place of*: ad se bellum (*direct against*, transferring from somewhere else).

trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, [trans-figo], 3. v. a., *pierce through*.

trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, [trans-fodio], 3. v. a., *dig through*. — Also, *pierce through, wound* (by stabbing).

trānsgridior, -gridī, -gressus, [trans-gridior], 3. v. dep., *step across, step over, cross*.

trānsgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of transgridior.

trānsitus, -tūs, [trans-itus, cf. transeo], M., *a crossing: difficult transitu, of difficult passage, difficult to cross*.

trānslātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transfero.

trānsmarinus, -a, -um, [trans-mare (sea) + inus], adj., *foreign*.

trānsmissus, -ūs, [trans-missus, cf. transmitto], M., *a crossing, a distance across*: *pari spatio transmissūs, with a passage of the same length.*

trānsmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of transmitto.

trānsmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [trans-mitto], 3. v. a., *send over.*

trānsportātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transporto.

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [transporto], 1. v. a., *bring over* (with two accusatives), *transport, carry over*: *milites navibus transportari* (*were crossing, being taken over*).

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, [trans-Rhenum + anus], adj., *living across the Rhine*. — Plur. as noun, *the people across the Rhine.*

trānstrum, -ī, [trans (trant-?) + trum], N., *a thwart, cross-beam.*

trānsversus, -a, -um, [p. p. of transverto], as adj., *across, athwart, oblique, transverse*: *fossa* (*a cross-ditch*).

Treblus, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — See Gallus.

Trebōnius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Gaius Trebonius*: 1, a Roman knight; 2, a legatus in Cæsar's army.

trecentī, -ae, -a, [tri-centum], num. adj., *three hundred.*

tredecim [tres-decem], indecl. num. adj., *thirteen.*

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [trepidō-], 1. v. n., *bustle about, hurry*: *totis trepidatur castris, there is a bustle throughout the camp.*

trēs, tria, gen. trium, [st. tri-], num. adj., *three.*

Trēverī (-virī), -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people in Gaul, originally German, on the Moselle. Sing., Trevir.

Triboces, -um (-ī, -ōrum), [Celtic], M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine, about Strasburg.

tribūnus, -ī, [tribu- + nus], M., (*a chief of a tribe*). With or without plebis, *a tribune* (one of several magistrates elected in the assembly of the plebs voting by tribes, to watch over the interests of the commons). — With militum or militaris, *a tribune of the soldiers, a military tribune.*

tribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, [tribu-], 3. v. a., (*distribute by tribes*), *distribute*. Hence, *grant, render, assign, attribute*: *tantum dignitatis* (*pay such respect*); *magnopere virtuti* (*attribute it so very much to valor*); *rei publicae* (*grant out of regard to*); *plus libertati* (*have more regard for*).

tribūtum, -ī, [N. p. p. of tribuo], N., *a tribute.*

trīdūm, -ī, [tri- + st. akin to dies, cf. biduum], N., *three days' time, three days.*

triennium, -ī, [trienni- (tri-annus) + ium], N., *three years.*

trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., *thirty.*

trīnī, -ae, -a, [tri- + nus], distrib. num. adj., *three each, three sets of, three* (of things in sets).

Trinobantes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of southern Britain, in the region of Colchester.

tripartitus (tripert-), -a, -um.

[tri-partitus, p. p. of *partio*], adj., *divided in three*. — Esp., *tripartitō*, abl. as adv., *in three divisions*.

triplex, -icis, [tri-plex (PLIC as st.)], adj., *threefold*: *acies* (*in three divisions or lines*), *triple*.

triquetrus, -a, -um, [tri-+quatus (quattuor), cf. "three-square"], adj., *three-cornered, triangular*.

tristis, -e, [unc. root + *tis*], adj., *sad, gloomy, dejected*.

tristitia, -ae, [tristi- + *tia*], f., *sadness, a gloomy state* (of mind).

truncus, -i, [?], m., *a trunk*.

tū, tuī, [TVA], plur. vōs [VA], pron. 2d person, *you* (sing.), *you* (plur.).

tuba, -ae, [?], f., *a trumpet* (a straight instrument for infantry).

tueor, tuērī, tūtus (tuitus), [?], 2. v. dep., *watch, guard, protect*. See also tūtus.

tulī, perf. of *fero*.

Tulingī, -ōrum, [Teutonic], m. plur., *a German tribe*.

Tullius, -ī, [Tullo- + *ius*], m., *a Roman gentile name*. — See Cicero.

Tullus, -ī, [?], m., *a Roman family name*. — See Volcatius.

tum [prob. acc. of TA], adv., *then* (at a time indicated by the context), *at this time*: cum . . . tum, see cum; tum vero (*then, with emphasis, of the decisive point of a narrative*); tum maxime, *just then, but especially*.

tumultuor, -ārī, -ātus, [tumultu-], 1. v. dep., *make an uproar*. — As impersonal, *there is an uproar*.

tumultuōsē [old case-form of

tumultuosus], adv., *with disorder, noisily*.

tumultus, -tūs, [tumulō- (perh. reduced) + *tus*], m., (*a swelling, an uprising?*), *an uproar, confusion, a commotion*. — Esp., *an uprising, a commotion* (of revolt, or a war not regularly declared). — See servilis.

tumulus, -ī, [†tumō- (whence *tumeo, swell*) + *lus*], m., (*a swelling?*), *a hill, a mound*.

tunc [tum-ce, cf. hic], adj., *just then, then, at that time*.

turma, -ae, [TUR (cf. turba, turbo) + *ma*], f., (*a throng?*), *a squadron, a troop* (of horse, consisting of thirty men).

Turones, -um (-ī, -ōrum), [Celtic], m. plur., *a tribe of Gaul on the Loire*. Their city became afterwards *Tours*.

turpis, -e, [?], adj., *ugly* (in appearance). Hence, *unbecoming, disgraceful, base, dishonorable*.

turpiter [turpi- + *ter*], adv., *dishonorably*: turpiter factum, *an inglorious deed*.

turpitūdō, -inis, [turpi- + *tudo*], f., *baseness*. Hence, *disgrace*.

turris, -is, [?], f., *a tower*.

tūtē [old case-form of tutus], adv., *safely, with safety*.

tūtus, -a, -um, [p. p. of tueor], as adj., *protected, safe, secure*: victis nihil tutum, *no safety for the conquered*. — tūtō, abl. as adv., *in safety, safely*.

tuus, -a, -um, [TVA + *ius*], adj. pron., *your, yours*.

U

ubi [supposed to be **quō** (dat. of **quō**-) + **bi**], adv., *where, in which*: **ibi ubi**, *in the place where*. — Also, of time, *when*: **ubi primum**, *as soon as*.

Ubiī, -ōrum, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine, opposite Cologne, near which city they were afterwards settled.

ubique [ubi-que, cf. **quisque**], adv., *everywhere, anywhere*.

ulciscor, **ulcisci**, **ultus**, [?], 3. v. dep., *punish* (an injury, or the doer), *avenge* (an injury), *take vengeance* (absolutely).

ūllus, -a, -um; gen. -ius, [unō + **lus**], adj., *a single* (with negatives), *any*. — As noun (less common), *anybody, any one*.

ulterior, -us, -ōris, [comp. of **ulterō**, cf. **ultra**], adj., *farther, more remote*: **ulteriores**, *those farther off*. — Superl., **ultimus**, -a, -um, [ul- + **timus**], *farthest*: **ultimi**, *those in the rear*.

ultrā [unc. case, perh. instr., of **†ulter**], adv. and prep. with acc., *beyond*.

ultrō [dat. of **†ulter** (us)], adv., *to the farther side, beyond*: **ultra citroque**, *this way and that, back and forth*. — Esp. beyond what is expected or required, *voluntarily, without provocation, freely, besides*: **sibi parcere cogi** (*in spite of himself*); **ad se venire** (*without his asking it*).

ultus, -a, -um, p. p. of **ulciscor**.

ululātus, -tūs, [ululā- (*yell*) + **tus**], M., *a yell, a loud cry*.

umerus, -ī, [?], M., *the shoulder*.

umquam (**unquam**), [supposed to be for **cum-quam** (cf. **quisquam**)], adv. (with neg.), *ever*: **neque . . . umquam**, *and never*.

ūnā, [instr. (or abl.?) of **unus**], adv., *together, along with them*, etc., *at the same time, in the same place, also*.

unde [supposed to be for **†cunde** (cum, cf. **umquam**, + **de**, cf. **inde**)], adv., *whence, from which*.

ūndecim [**unus-decem**], indecl. num. adj., *eleven*.

ūndecimus, -a, -um, [**unus-deci-mus**], num. adj., *eleventh*.

undique [unde-que, cf. **quique**], adv., *from every side, from all quarters*. — Also (cf. **ab**), *on every side*.

ūniversus, -a, -um, [unō-versus], adj., *all together, all* (in a mass), *entire*.

ūnus, -a, -um; gen. -ius, [?, old **oenus**], adj., *one, a single, the same, alone* (as adv.): **una celeritate** (*alone*); **unum se esse**, *that he was the only one*; **ad unum**, *to a man*.

urbānus, -a, -um, [urbi- (reduced) + **anus**], adj., *of a city*. — Esp., *of the city (Rome), in the city*.

urbs, **urbis**, [?], F., *a city*. — Esp., *the city (Rome)*.

urgeō (**urgueō**), **urgere**, **ursi**, no p. p., [VARG, *press*, cf. **volgus**], 2. v. a., *press, press hard, urge*.

ūrus, -ī, [Teutonic], M., *a wild ox*.

Usipetes, -um, [Teutonic], M. pl., a German tribe who migrated from eastern Germany to the lower Rhine.

ūsitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *usitor*.

ūsitor, -ārī, -ātus, [†*usitō*- (as if p. p. of †*uso*, freq. of *utor*)], 1. v. dep., *practise*. — *ūsitātus*, -a, -um, p. p. in pass. sense, *used, practised, customary, much practised*.

ūsque [unc. case of *quō* (cf. *usquam*) -*que* (cf. *quisque*)], adv., (*everywhere*), *all the way, even to, to that degree (with eo ut), all the time, till, even till*.

ūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *ūtor*.

ūsus, -ūs, [UT (in *utor*) + *tus*], M., *use, practice, experience*. Hence, *advantage, service*. — Esp.: *usus est, it is necessary, there is need, is necessary* (with personal subject); also, *ex usu, usui, of advantage, of service, advantageous, to the advantage*; *usu venire, happen, occur, turn out, come to pass* (on trial, in practice); *usum navium eripi, be deprived of all use of the ships*; *quae sunt usui, which are serviceable, are needed, are of use*.

ut (*utī*), [supposed to be for *quoti* (*quō* + *ti*?)], adv. and conj.: a. Interrog., *how?* — b. Rel., *as, so as, when, inasmuch as, considering that it was*. — Esp. with subjv., *that, in order that, to, so that, so as to, although, granting that*. — Often with object-clause compressed in Eng. into some other form of speech: *poenam ut, etc. (of being), etc.*; *id facere ut, do this, namely*. — Esp.: *ut semel, when once, as soon as*;

timere ut, fear that not; *ut quisque est . . . ita (in proportion as)*.

uter, -tra, -trum; gen. -trius [*quō* (cf. *ubi*) + *terus* (reduced), cf. *alter*], adj.: a. Interrog., *which* (of two)? : *uter utri, which to the other*. — b. Relative, *whichever* (of two), *the one who* (of two). — Neut., *utrum*, adv., (*which of the two*), *whether*.

uterque, *utra*, *utrum*; gen. *utrius*, [*uter-que*, cf. *quisque*], adj., *both*: *medium utriusque, between the two*. — Plur., of sets: *utraque castra, both camps*; *utrique, both parties*. — Rarely of single things: *utraque, both women*.

utī, see *ut*.

ūtilis, -e, [†*uti*- (st. akin to *utor*) + *lis*], adj., *useful, of use, helpful*.

ūtilitās, -tātis, [*utili* + *tas*], F., *advantage, benefit, service*.

ūtor, *ūtī*, *ūsus*, [?, old *oetor*, akin to *aveo*?], 3. v. dep., *avail one's self of, use, exercise, practise, enjoy, adopt, employ, have* (in sense of enjoy or employ), *possess, show* (qualities which one exercises), *occupy* (a town), *navigate* (a sea): *pace* (*remain at peace*). — Esp. with two nouns, *employ as, have as*, and the like: *aliquo adiutore* (*have one's services*). — *usus*, p. p., often merely *with*.

utrimque [unc. case of *uter* (cf. *interim*) + *que* (cf. *quisque*)], adv., *on both sides*.

utrum, see *uter*.

uxor, -ōris, [?], F., *a wife*.

V

V, for *quinque*, *five*.

Vacalus, -ī, [?], M., the west branch of the Rhine, at its mouth.

vacātiō, -ōnis, [vacā- + tio], F., *freedom* (from something), *exemption*, *immunity*.

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [prob. †vacō- (cf. *vacuus*)], I. v. n., *be vacant*, *be free from*, *be unoccupied*, *lie waste*.

vacuus, -a, -um, [prob. VAC (*empty*) + *vus*], adj., *free*, *unoccupied*, *vacant*, *destitute of* (ab or abl.).

vadum, -ī, [VAD (in *vado*, *go*) + um], N., *a ford*.—Plur., *a ford*, *shoals*, *shallows*: *vado*, *by fording*.

vagātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *vagor*.

vāgīna, -ae, [?], F., *a sheath*.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus, [vagō-, *roving*], I. v. dep., *roam about*, *roam*, *wander*.

valeō, *valēre*, *valui*, *valitūrus*, [?], prob. denominative, cf. *validus*, *strong*], 2. v. n., *be strong*, *have weight*, *have influence*, *be powerful*.—Often with N. pron. or adj. as cog. acc.: *plurimum valere*, *be very strong*, *have great weight*, *have great influence*; *minus valet*, *is not very strong*; *quicquid possunt pedestribus copiis valent*, *whatever strength they have is in infantry*; *tantum valebat*, *had such weight*; *pudor valet*, *self-respect controls*.

Valerius, -ī, [akin to *valeo*], M., a Roman gentile name.—Esp.: 1. *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, proprætor in Gaul, B.C. 83.—2. *Lucius Valerius Præconinus*, a legatus under some unknown proprætor in Gaul.

He was defeated and killed in Aquitania.—3. *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who received the Roman citizenship prob. from No. 1.—4. *Gaius Valerius Procillus*, and (5) *Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus*, sons of No. 3, who fought for Cæsar in the war against Vercingetorix.

Valetiācus, -ī, [?], M., a noble of the Hædui.

valētūdō, -inis, [prob. *valent-* + *tudo*], F., *health*.—Also, *ill health*.

vallēs, -is, [?], F., *a valley*.

vāllum, -ī, [N. of *vallus*], N., *a palisade*, *a rampart* (the regular fortification of the Romans, made of stakes and built up with earth), *a wall*.

vāllus, -ī, [?], M., *a stake*.

Vangiones, -um, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine, about modern Worms.

varietās, -tātis, [variō- + *tas*], F., *diversity*, *variety*: *pellium* (*different colors*).

varius, -a, -um, [prob. akin to *vārus*, *bent*], adj., *various*, *diverse*.

vāstātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *vasto*.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [vastō-], I. v. a., *lay waste*, *devastate*, *ravage*.

vāstus, -a, -um, [?], adj., *waste*.—Also, *immense*, *vast*.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, [vaticinā- (*foretell*) + *tiō*], F., *divination*.

-*ve* [?], conj. enclit., *or*.

vectigal, -ālis, [N. of *vectigalis*], N., *an impost*, *tribute*.—Plur., *revenues* (of a state).

vectigālis, -e, [†**vectigō**- (**vectis**, akin to **veho**, + unc. term., cf. **castigo**) + **alis**], adj., *tributary*: **vectigālis habent**, *make tributary*.

vectōrius, -a, -um, [**vector**- (cf. **veho**, *carry*) + **ius**], adj., *carrying*: **navigia** (*transports*).

vehementer [**vehement**- (*violent*) + **ter**], adv., *violently, severely, strongly, hotly, exceedingly*.

vel [prob. imperat. of **volo**, *wish*], conj., or: **vel** . . . **vel**, *either* . . . or. — As adv., *even*.

Velānius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Quintus Velānius*, a tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar's army.

Veliocassēs, -ium, (-ī, -ōrum), [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe of Normandy, about Rouen.

Vellaunodūnum, -ī, [Celtic], N., a town of the Senones.

Vellāvī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of Gaul in the Cevennes mountains.

vēlōcitās, -tātis, [**veloci**- + **tas**], F., *swiftness, fleetness, speed*.

vēlōciter [**veloci**- + **ter**], adv., *swiftly, quickly*.

vēlōx, -ōcis, [st. akin to **volo** (cf. **colonus**) + **cus** (reduced?)], adj., *swift, quick*.

vēlum, -ī, [?, cf. **vexillum**], N., *a curtain, a veil*. — Also, *a sail*.

velut [vel-ut], adv., *even as, just as; velut si, just as if, as if, no less than if*.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, [**venā**- (*hunt*) + **tio**], F., *hunting, the chase*. — Plur., *hunting, hunting excursions*.

vēnātor, -tōris, [**venā**- (*hunt*) + **tor**], M., *a hunter*.

vēndō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [**venum** do], 3. v. a., *put to sale, sell*.

Venellī (**Unellī**), -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul in modern Normandy.

Veneti, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul in modern Brittany.

Venetia, -ae, [**venetō**- + **ia** (F. of -**ius**)], F., *the territory of the Veneti*.

Veneticus, -a, -um, [**Venetō**- + **cus**], adj., *of the Veneti*.

venia, -ae, [?], F., *indulgence, favor, pardon*: **petentibus veniam dare**, *grant their request*.

veniō, **venīre**, **vēnī**, **ventūrus**, [GAM (for **gvenio**)], 4. v. n., *come, go*: **in spem** (*have hopes*). — See also **usu**.

ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [as if **ventitō**- (from **vento**, old freq. of **venio**)], 1. v. n., *come often, visit*.

ventus, -ī, [?], M., *the wind*: **vento se dare**, *run before the wind*.

vēr, **vēris**, [for †**vasar**, **VAS**, *burn*], N., *spring*.

Veragrī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a Gallic people of the Alps, on the upper Rhone.

Verbigenus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a canton of the Helvetii.

verbum, -ī, [?, cf. **morbus**], N., *a word*: **pluribus verbis**, *at great length*; **animos verbis confirmavit** (*with encouraging words*); **facit verba**, *speak for, etc.*; **magna contumelia verborum**, *with most insulting words*.

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, [Celtic], M., one of the Arverni, the uncle of Vercingetorix.

Vercingetorix, -īgis, [Celtic], M., a noble of the Arverni. Being

chosen king, he made a stout resistance to Cæsar, but was finally overpowered by the Romans and surrendered by his followers.

vereor, -ēri, -itus, [prob. †verō- (akin to *wary*)], 2. v. dep., *fear, be afraid, dread*. — **veritus**, p. p. in pres. sense, *fearing*.

vergō, -ere, no perf., no p. p. [?], 3. v. n., *incline, slope, look towards* (of an exposure), *lie towards*.

vergobretus, -i, [Celtic], M., Celtic title of the chief magistrate among the Arverni.

vērīsimilis, -e, [veri similis], adj., (*like the truth*), *probable, likely*.

veritus, -a, -um, p. p. of **vereor**.

verō [abl. of **vērū**], adv., *in truth, in fact, certainly*. — With weakened force, *but, on the other hand, however*. — Often untranslatable, expressing an intensive (emphatic) opposition, or pointing to the main time, circumstance, fact, or agent in a narrative.

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [versō-], 1. v. a., *turn* (this way and that), *deal with* (some one or some thing). — Esp. in pass. as dep., *turn one's self, engage in, be, fight* (as indicated by the context).

versus, -a, -um, p. p. of **verto**.

versus (**versum**), [orig. p. p. of **verto**], adv. and prep. with acc., *towards, in the direction of*: *quoque versus* (or as one word), *in every direction, all about*.

versus, -ūs, [VERT + tus], M., *a turning*. — Esp., *a verse* (of poetry, where the rhythm turns and begins anew), *a line*.

Verticō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., one of the Nervii.

vertō, *vertere, verti, versus*, [VERT], 3. v. a., *turn*: *terga* (*turn and flee*).

Verudoctius, -i, [Celtic], M., a noble of the Helvetii.

vērū, -a, -um, [?, VER (in **vereor**) + us], adj., (?, *seen, visible*), *true*. — Neut. as noun, *the truth*: *repperit esse vera*, *found the truth to be*. — Also, *just, right*. — See also **vero**.

verūtum, -i, [veru (*a spit*) + tum], N., *a spear* (of a light kind), *a dart*.

Vesontio, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., the chief town of the Sequani, now *Besançon*.

vesper, -eri, [?], M., *the evening*.

vester, -tra, -trum, [ves- + ter (us)], poss. adj. pron., *your, yours*.

vestigium, -i, [†vestigō- (cf. **vestigo**) + ium], N., *the footstep, the footprint, a track*. — Esp.: *e vestigio*, *forthwith* (from one's tracks?); *eodem vestigio*, *in the same spot*; *in illo vestigio temporis*, *at that instant of time*.

vestiō, -ire, -ivi (-iī), -itus, [vesti-], 4. v. a., *clothe, cover*. — Pass., *clothe one's self with* (with thing in abl.), *wear*.

vestis, -is, [VES (*cover*) + tis], F., *clothing, garments*.

vestitus, -tūs, [vesti- + tus], M., *clothing, garments*.

veterānus, -a, -um, [veterā- (as if st. of **vetero**) + nus], adj., *veteran* (long in service).

vetō, *vetāre, vetui, vetitus*, [st. akin to **vetus**], 1. v. a., *forbid*.

vetus, -eris, [?], adj., *old, former, of long standing*: *milites* (*old soldiers, veterans*).

vexātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **vexo**.

vexillum, -ī, [?], apparently a dim. of **velum**, N., *a flag*: *sub vexillo, in a detachment*, without any signa, which were carried only in the regular corps.

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†**vexō**- (as if p. p. of **veho**)], I. v. a., (*carry this way and that*), *harass, annoy, commit depredations on, overrun* (a country), *ravage* (lands).

via, -ae, [for **veha**? (**veh**- + **a**)], F., *a road, a way, a route, a march*: *tridui viam, three days' journey*.

viātor, -tōris, [†**viā**- (as st. of †**vio**) + **tor**], M., *a traveller*.

vicēnī, -ae, -a, [akin to **viginti**], distrib. num. adj., *twenty* (apiece).

vicēsīmus, -a, -um [akin to **viginti**], num. adj., *twentieth*.

vicīēs (-ēns), [akin to **viginti**], num. adv., *twenty times*: *vicies centum milla passuum, two thousand miles*.

vicīnitās, -tātis, [**vicinō**- (*neighboring*) + **tas**], F., *neighborhood, vicinity*. — Plur., *neighbors*.

vicis, gen. (nom. not found), *change, turn*: *in vicem, in turn*.

victima, -ae, [akin to **vinco**, perh. going back to the sacrifice of prisoners], F., *a victim, a sacrifice*.

victor, -tōris, [**VIC** (in **vinco**) + **tor**], M., *a victor*. — Often as adj., *victorious, triumphant*.

victōria, -ae, [**victor**- + **ia**], F., *victory, success* (in war).

victus, -a, -um, p. p. of **vinco**.

victus, -tūs, [**VIG** (?), (cf. **vixi**) + **tus**], M., *living, life*. — Also, *means of living, food*: *domus victusque, intercourse, life in common*.

vicus, -ī, [**VIC** (*enter*) + **us**], M., (*a dwelling*), *a village* (a collection of dwellings).

videō, **vidēre**, **vīdī**, **vīsus**, [**VID**, perh. through a noun-st.], 2. v. a., *see, observe, examine* (*reconnoitre*), *take care* (see that). — In pass., *be seen, appear, seem, seem best*.

Vienna, -ae, [**Celtic**], F., a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone, now *Vienne*.

vigilia, -ae, [**vigil**- (*awake*) + **ia**], F., *a watch, watching*. The Romans divided the night into four watches, and reckoned the time thereby.

vīginti [**dvi**- (st. of **duo**) + form akin to **centum** (perh. the same)], indecl. num. adj., *twenty*.

vīmen, -inis, [root (or st.) **VI** (*twine*) + **men**], N., *a twig* (flexible, for weaving), *osier*.

vinciō, **vincīre**, **vinxī**, **vinctus**, [perh. akin to **vinco**], 4. v. a., *bind, fetter*.

vincō, **vincere**, **vīcī**, **victus**, [**VIC**], 3. v. a. and n., *conquer, defeat, prevail*: *naturam* (*outdo*).

vinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **vincio**.

vinculum (**vinculum**), -ī, [†**vincō**- (st. akin to **vincio**, perh. primitive of it) + **lum** (N. of **lus**)], N., *a chain*: *ex vinculis, in chains*, see **ex**: *in vincula, into prison, into confinement*.

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -atus, [**vindic**-, *defender*], I. v. a., *claim, claim one's rights against, defend*: *in aliquem* (*punish*); *Galliam in libertatem*

(*establish the liberty of*, a phrase derived from the formal defence of freedom in a Roman court).

vīnea, -ae, [vinō- + ea (F. of -eus)], F., a vineyard, a vine arbor. Hence, a shed (defence, for a besieging party, made like an arbor).

vīnum, -ī, [?], N., wine.

violō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?], I. v. a., abuse, violate (a sacred object), lay waste: hospites (injure, a guest being held sacred).

vir, virī, [?], M., a man, a husband.

vīrēs, see vis.

virgō, -inis, [?], F., a maiden, a maid, a virgin.

virgultum, -ī, [†virgula- (?) + tum, cf. tumultus], N., only in pl., shrubbery, a thicket, bushes (cut for military purposes).

Viridomārus, -ī, [Celtic], M., a noble of the Hædui.

Viridovīx, -īcis, [Celtic], M., a prince of the Venelli.

viritim [vir + itim, as if acc. of verbal in -tis], adv., man by man (of distribution), to each individual.

Viromandui, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Picardy.

virtūs, -tūtis, [virō- (reduced) + tus], F., manliness, valor, prowess, courage. — Also, merit (generally), noble conduct, virtue: virtute (with gen.), thanks to. — Plur., virtues, merits, good qualities.

vīs, vīs (?), [?], F., force, might, violence. — Esp.: vi cogere (forcibly); vim facere, use violence; vim hostium prohibere (violent attack); vi fluminis oppressi, overcome by the

violent current. — Plur., strength, force, powers, bodily vigor.

vīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of video.

vīta, -ae, [root of vivo + ta], F., life, the course of life.

vītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?, vita-?], I. v. a., (escape with life, live through?), escape, avoid, dodge.

vitrum, -ī, [?], N., wood (a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue).

vīvō, vivere, vixi, victus, [VIC (vigor?), cf. victus], 3. v. n., live: lacte (live on).

vīvus, -ā, -um, [VIGOR (?) + us], adj., alive, living.

vix [poss. VIC (in vinco)], adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely. — Also, of time, hardly (. . . when).

Vocātēs, -ium, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Aquitania, on the Garonne.

Vocciō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., a king of Noricum.

vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [voc- (st. of vox)], I. v. a., call by name, call, summon, invite.

Vocontii, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe between the Isère and the Durance.

Volcae, -ārum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Gaul in the Roman province. — See Tectosages and Arecomici.

Volcānus (Vul-), -ī, [?], M., Vulcan (the god of fire and metals).

Volcātius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Gaius Volcatius Tullus, a young man in Cæsar's suite.

volgus (vul-), -ī, [VOLG (press) + us], N., the crowd, the common people, the mass: in volgus efferri,

be spread abroad; militum (the common soldiers, the army).—volgō, abl. as adv., commonly, generally, everywhere.

volnerātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **volnero**.

volnerō (vul-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [volner-], I. v. a., *wound, hurt.*

volnus (vul-), -eris, [prob. akin to **vello**, *pluck*], N., *a wound.*

volō, *velle*, voluī, [VOL], irr. v. a. and n., *wish, be willing, want: velle aliquem aliquid, want one for anything, want anything of one; quid sibi vellent, what they wanted, or meant, or intended to do, what business they had.*

vultus (vul-), -tūs, [VOL + tus], M., (*wish, expression of countenance*), *look, countenance, face: vultūs fingere, compose one's countenance, conceal one's feelings; alicuius vultum ferre, dare to look in one's face.*

voluntārius, -a, -um, [volent- (p. of **volo**) + **arius**], adj., *voluntary.*—As noun, *a volunteer.*

voluntās, -tātis, [volent- (p. of **volo**) + **tas**], F., *willingness, goodwill, consent, desire, will, approval, an inclination: voluntates allemare (good-will).*

voluptās, -tātis, [volup- (akin to **volo**) + **tas**], F., *pleasure, delight.*

Volusēnus, -ī, [?], M., a Roman family name.—Esp., *Gaius Volusenus Quadratus*, a military tribune in Cæsar's army.

Vorēnus, -ī, [?], M., a Roman family name.—Esp., *Lucius Vorenus*, a centurion of Cæsar's army.

vōs, see **tu**.

Vosegus, -ī, [Celtic], M., *the Vosges Mountains*, running northerly from the Jura along the Rhine.

voveō, *vovēre*, vōvī, vōtus, [?], 2. v. a., *vow, make a vow.*

vōx, *vōcis*, [VOC as st.], F., *a voice, a word, an expression, a shout.*—Collectively, *cries, words, talk.*—Plur., *talk, reports: nulla vox audita (not a word); militum vocibus carpi (taunts); concursu ac vocibus cogi (outcries).*

X

X, for *decem, ten.*

XX, for *viginti, twenty.*

To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

10M-6.40

--	--	--

